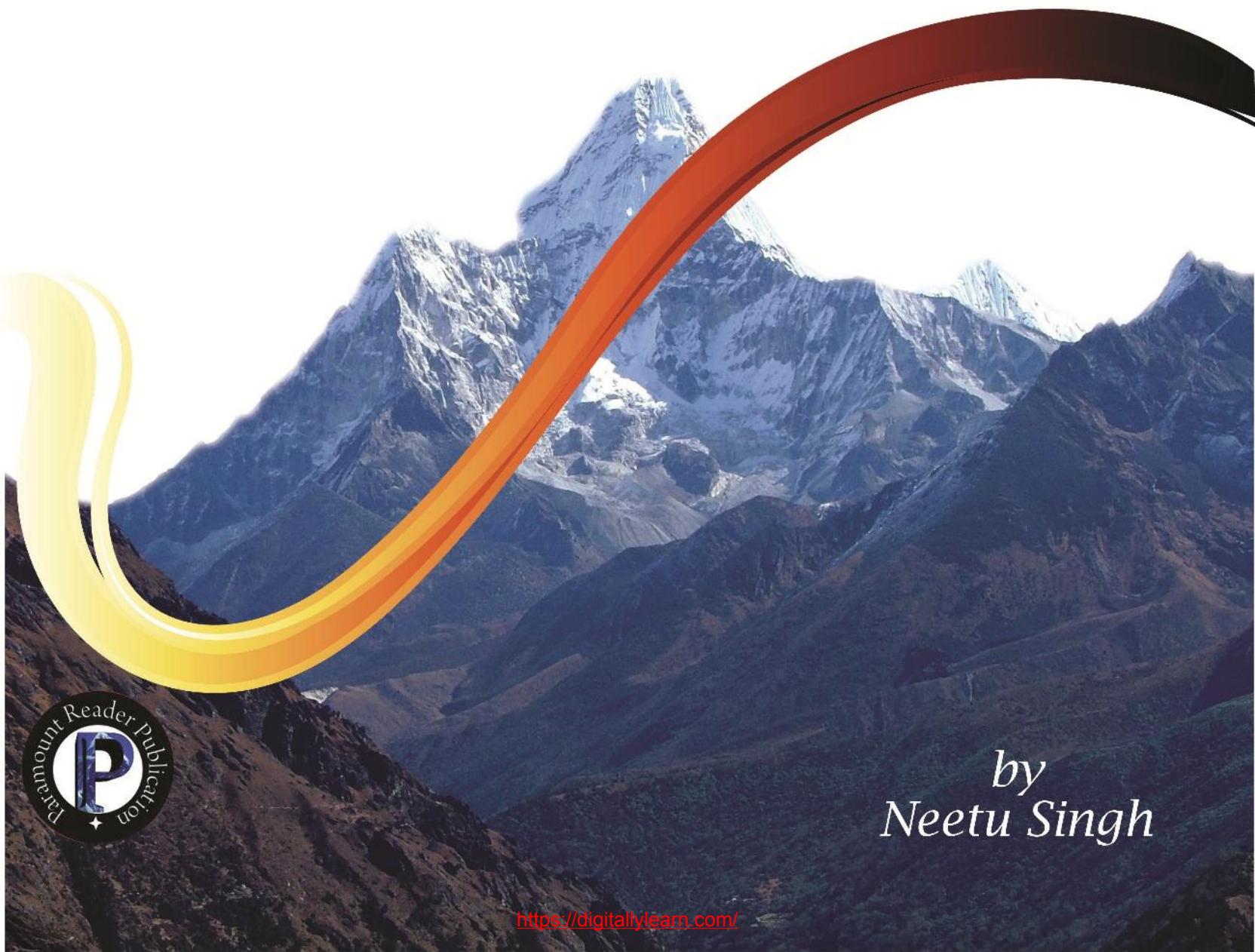


English for general competitions

from
Plinth
to
Paramount



by
Neetu Singh

ENGLISH

For General Competitions

from

Plinth

to

Paramount

*Indispensable for-
All Competitive Exams*

By
Neetu Singh

(Director)
Paramount Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd.
Delhi

Published by:

Paramount Reader Publication
704, 1st floor, Dr. Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-110009

First Edition – May 2012
Second Edition – February, 2013

Price: ` 300/-

- All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means-electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the author and the publishers.
- The publishers have taken utmost precaution in publishing the book, yet if any mistake has inadvertently crept in, the publishers shall not be responsible for the same.



PREFACE

To the First Edition

This book ‘English for General Competitions- from Plinth to Paramount’ is my gift to the aspirants of competitive exams who will surely be benefited by the approach of this book alongwith the numerous questions given at the end of every chapter carefully picked from different question papers of various competitive exams. The solution of every question has detailed explanation for easy understanding . All the latest questions especially of Passive Voice and Narration have been incorporated to help the students know the latest pattern of the questions being asked in different competitive exams. In nutshell, I would like to say that this book is an attempt to fill the void that aspirants of Hindi Medium felt when it came to preparing English for Competitive Exams.

I earnestly thank the students of Paramount Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd. who helped me detect all the typographical and other mistakes, that might have crept inadvertently, had they not detected them with their keen sight.

Our students’ constructive feedback and suggestions are most welcome which have always remained and will remain our guiding light . I will be highly obliged if you message/mail me your feedback or suggestion on 8860330003 or on paramount.no1@gmail.com.

Neetu Singh

May 31, 2012

Contents

1.	VERB (BASIC)	01 - 24
2.	TENSE	25 - 40
3.	PASSIVE VOICE	41 - 75
4.	NARRATION	76 - 109
5.	QUESTION TAG	110 - 112
6.	SUBJECT VERB AGREEMENT	113 - 126
7.	CONDITIONAL SENTENCE	127 - 133
8.	VERB (ADVANCE)	134 - 148
9.	NOUN	149 - 165
10.	PRONOUN	166 - 185
11.	ADJECTIVE	186 - 201
12.	CONJUNCTION	202 - 215
13.	ARTICLE	216 - 230
14.	PREPOSITION	231 - 269
15.	ADVERB	270 - 283
16.	WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED	284 - 294
17.	VOCABULARIES	295 - 318
18.	SYNONYMS (PRACTICE SET)	319 - 328
19.	ANTONYMS (PRACTICE SET)	329 - 338
20.	ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION	339 - 356
21.	ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION (PRACTICE SET)	357 - 366
22.	IDIOMS & PHRASES-1	367 - 380
23.	IDIOMS & PHRASES-2	381 - 396
24.	IDIOMS & PHRASES (PRACTICE SET)	397 - 416

इस किताब में प्रयुक्त *abbreviations*

S / Sub → Subject	P → Pronoun	V ₁ → First Form of Verb
O/Obj → Object	S.P → Singular Pronoun	V ₂ → Second Form of Verb
V → Verb	P.P → Plural Pronoun	V ₃ → Third Form of Verb
S.V → Singular Verb	Adj. → Adjective	Aux. Verb → Auxilliary Verb
P.V → Plural Verb	Adv. → Adverb	U.N → Uncountable Noun
N → Noun	Prep → Preposition	S.C.N. → Singular Countable Noun
S.N → Singular Noun	H.V → Helping Verb	P.C.N. → Plural Countable Noun
P.N → Plural Noun	M.V → Main Verb	

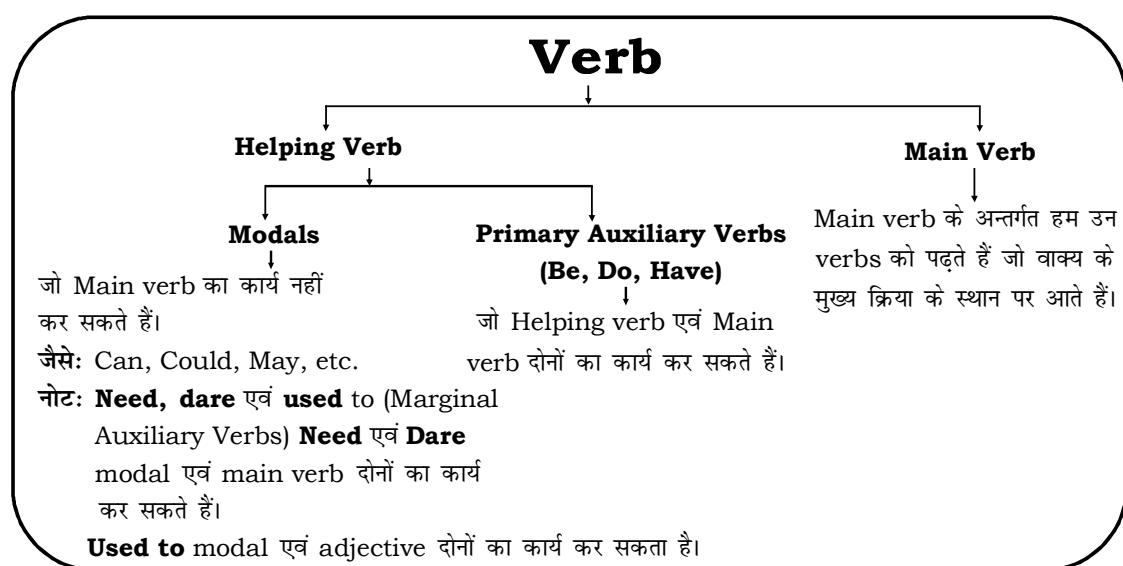
1

VERB (BASIC)

CHAPTER

Verb कार्य का होना दर्शाता है। अतः verb को 'doing word' भी कहते हैं।

Verb को दो वर्गों में बाँटा जा सकता है-



AUXILIARY VERBS: वे verbs जो अन्य verbs के साथ प्रयुक्त होते हैं Auxiliary verbs कहलाते हैं। इन्हे helping verbs भी कहा जाता है।

1. **MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS :** Can, Could, May, Might, Shall, Will, Would, Should, Must, Ought to Modal Auxiliary Verbs हैं। इनका प्रयोग सिर्फ helping verb के रूप में ही किया जा सकता है।

जैसे: 1. (a) She can run fast.
Modal M.V.

(b) You should study English.
Modal M.V.

2. **MARGINAL AUXILIARY VERBS :** Used to, need, dare Marginal Auxiliary Verbs हैं। ये ऐसे Modals हैं जिनका प्रयोग वाक्य में Main Verb (need एवं dare) और adjective (used to) के रूप में भी हो सकता है।

Verb (Basic)

जैसे: 1. I am used to sleeping late at night.
H.V. Adjective Gerund

2. (a) I need you.
M.V.

(b) You need not come tomorrow.
H.V. Direct infinitive

3. (a) She does not dare to come home late.
M.V. Infinitive

(b) I dare not enter his room without permission.
H.V. Direct infinitive

AUXILIARY VERBS के कछ मध्य बिन्द

Rule (1): Modal Auxiliary Verbs का प्रयोग **Main Verbs** के रूप में नहीं होता है। इसका प्रयोग Helping Verbs के रूप में होता है। जैसे:

I can lift this box
H.V. M.V

He should work hard.
H.V. M.V

Rule (2): Modal Auxiliary verbs का **V₁, V₂, V₃, ing-form या s/es-form** नहीं होते हैं। इसका प्रयोग सभी **Numbers** तथा **persons** के **Subjects** के साथ हमेशा एक ही रूप में होता है। अर्थात् इसके रूप (form) में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।

जैसे: She can help you.
V₁

You should understand your friends.
V₁

Rule (3): Ought तथा **Used** के बाद **Infinitive 'to + V₁'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: We ought to respect our parents.
to + V₁

He used to come late.
to + V₁

USE OF MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS

CAN एवं COULD

Rule (1): Can का प्रयोग **power** (शक्ति), **ability** (योग्यता) तथा **capacity** (सामर्थ्य/क्षमता) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। Could का प्रयोग **Past ability/ power/ capacity** (भत्काल की योग्यता/शक्ति/सामर्थ्य) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: 1. He **can** lift the box.
2. I **could** not come yesterday.

Rule (2): Can का प्रयोग **permission** (अनमति) देने के भाव को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: 1. You **can** go now.

Verb (Basic)

Rule (3): **Can** का प्रयोग **theoretical possibility** (सैद्धांतिक संभावना) को अभिव्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: Everyone **can** make a mistake.

Rule (4): **Could** का प्रयोग **remote possibility** व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: There **could** be a bomb under your seat.

Rule (5): **Can** का प्रयोग 'दोस्ताना निवेदन' करने वाले प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में किया जाता है एवं **Could** 'औपचारिक निवेदन' करने वाले प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में।

जैसे: 1. **Can** I take your scooter?

2. **Could** I talk to Mr. Shukla?

Note: 'able to' का प्रयोग 'can/could' के साथ न करें क्योंकि दोनों क्षमता दर्शाते हैं।

I cannot be able to come tomorrow. (✗)

नोट: ऐसा करके हम अपने वाक्य को **superfluous** बना देते हैं। 'superfluous' के अर्थ है '**more than what is needed**'.

इस वाक्य का सही formation होगा-

I **cannot** come tomorrow. (✓)

I will not be **able to** come tomorrow. (✓)

MAY, MIGHT ,or MUST

Rule (1): May का प्रयोग संभावना/अनिश्चितता के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: It **may** rain tonight.

Rule (2): May का प्रयोग इच्छा को व्यक्त करने के लिए **optative sentence** में होता है।

जैसे: **May** you live long !

Rule (3): यदि **Principal clause Present Tense** में हो तथा **subordinate clause that/so that/in order that** से प्रारंभ हो तथा इससे **purpose** (उद्देश्य) का बोध हो तो **subordinate clause** में **may** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: We eat **so that** we **may** live.

Rule (4): Might का प्रयोग **less possibility** (कम संभावना) के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। जबकि **may** का प्रयोग **more possibility** (ज्यादा संभावना) के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **might** pass the exam but seeing his intelligence, I do not have much hope.

Rule (5): अगर संभावना बहुत अधिक हो तो **Must** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He stays in five-star hotels and travels by flight. He **must** be very rich.

Rule (6): 'May' का प्रयोग सम्मान के साथ निवेदन करने के लिए प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में किया जाता है।

जैसे: May I come in sir?

नोट: **May** एवं **Might** के साथ '**Possibly**' एवं '**likely**' का प्रयोग न करें क्योंकि दोनों संभावना दर्शाते हैं।

We may possibly come tomorrow. (✗) (Superfluous)

We **may** come tomorrow. (✓)

We will **possibly** come tomorrow. (✓)

SHALL ,or WILL

Rule (1): Shall का प्रयोग first person के Subjects I/We के साथ future के किसी कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। बाकी subjects के साथ 'will' का का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I shall go to college tomorrow and he will come with me.

➤ Modern English में हम 'I' एवं 'we' के साथ 'will' का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं जो अब स्वीकार्य है लेकिन interrogative sentence में अब भी 'I' एवं 'we' के साथ 'shall' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Will I go? (✗)

Shall I go? (✓)

नोट: Shall का प्रयोग second person के Subject – you तथा third person के Subjects – He, she, it, they, के साथ command (आदेश), promise (वादा) threat (धमकी), determination (दृढ़ संकल्प), compulsion (अनिवार्यता) एवं Advice (सलाह) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। इसी प्रकार के वाक्यों में will का प्रयोग I एवं We के साथ होता है।

जैसे: (a) **Command** (आदेश)

You shall leave the room at once.

(b) **Promise** (प्रतिज्ञा/वादा)

You shall be awarded.

I will help you come what may.

(c) **Threat** (धमकी)

Trespassers shall be prosecuted.

I will punish you.

(d) **Determination** (दृढ़ संकल्प)

I will work hard and score good marks.

(e) **Compulsion** (अनिवार्यता)

You shall be here for the meeting.

I will have to finish this work.

Rule (2): Let us/ let's से शरू होने वाले Imperative sentences के question tags में भी 'shall' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Let us dance together, shall we ?

Rule (3): Shall का प्रयोग suggestions (सुझावों) को व्यक्त करने वाले Interrogative sentence में first person के subjects के साथ होता है।

जैसे: Shall we talk to the management?

नोट: 'Shall' एवं 'will' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित प्रकार के वाक्यों में नहीं होता है-

1. अगर वाक्य past से शरू हो-

जैसे: He hoped that he will would pass the test.

अगर वाक्य past से शुरू हो तो 'Will/ shall' नहीं 'would/ should' का प्रयोग होगा।

दरअसल ये नियम तब भी लाग होते हैं जब 'will/shall' के स्थान पर कोई और Modal या verb का प्रयोग हआ हो।

Verb (Basic)

- जैसे: He said that he **is was** coming.
2. अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य **Simple Present Tense** में होगा और दूसरा **simple future tense** में। हमें हिन्दी से English Translation करने की आदत होती है जिसकी बजह से हम पहले कार्य को भी simple future में प्रयोग कर लेते हैं।
- जैसे: अगर मैं आऊँगी तो आप से मिलाँगी।
 If I will come, I will meet you. (×)
 If I come, I will meet you. (✓)
- निम्नलिखित शब्दों को देखो। इनके तुरंत बाद simple future tense का प्रयोग नहीं होता है बल्कि simple present tense का प्रयोग होता है।
If, as soon as, in case, provided, unless, until, before, after, when. (Conditional Sentence Chapter देखें)

WOULD

Rule (1): Would का प्रयोग **Past habit** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: I **would** go to school by bus.

Rule (2): 'Would' का प्रयोग '**preference**' (पसंद/प्राथमिकता) या '**choice**' (पसंद/चनाव) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है। सामान्यतः ऐसे वाक्यों में '**rather**' का भी प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He **would rather** die **than** beg.

Rule (3): अगर वाक्य का आरम्भ Past से हो तो वाक्य आगे Past में ही रहेगा और 'Will' का Past Tense '**Would**' होता है।

जैसे: He hoped that he **will** would pass.

Rule (4): '**Would**', '**used to**' एवं '**Simple Past tense**' तीनों का प्रयोग भृतकाल के **Routine Action** को दर्शाने के लिए भी किया जाता है।

जैसे: I **used to go** to school by bus. I **would return** **on foot**. We **played** for hours before
 $\underbrace{\text{used to} + V_1}_{\text{would} + V_1}$ $\underbrace{\text{V}_2}_{\text{returning home.}}$

Rule (5): Would का प्रयोग **Present** या **Past** के कोरी कल्पना को व्यक्त करने वाले वाक्यों के **principal clause** में होता है।

जैसे: If I were a bird, I **would** fly in the sky.

नोट: अगर वाक्य काल्पनिक पद से संबंधित हो तो सभी subjects के साथ **were** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I wish, I **were** a bird.

निम्नलिखित शब्दों से वाक्य के काल्पनिक होने का आभास होता है। इनके साथ '**was**' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

जैसे: I **wish, as though, if, as if, would that** एवं **suppose**.

Rule (6): 'Would' का प्रयोग '**will**' के **Past form** के रूप में **Indirect speech** में होता है। जैसे:

He said, "He will go there."	(Direct)
He said that he would go there.	(Indirect)

Verb (Basic)

Rule (7): Would का प्रयोग **Polite request** को व्यक्त करने के लिए प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में होता है।

जैसे: **Would** you help me ?

Rule (8): Would का प्रयोग **Probability** (संभावना) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **would** be sleeping.

Rule (9): Would का प्रयोग **wish** (डच्छा) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: I wish, India **would** become a developed country soon.

Rule (10): 'Would like to' का प्रयोग भी **wish** (डच्छा) को व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: I **would like to** talk to the manager

SHOULD

Rule (1): Should का प्रयोग **suggestion** (सलाह) देने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: You **should** study English.

Rule (2): 'Should' का प्रयोग 'advice' देने के भाव को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: You **should** not laugh at his mistakes.

Rule (3): Should का प्रयोग **lest** के बाद **negative purpose** (नकारात्मक उद्देश्य) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He ran fast **lest** he **should** miss the train.

नोट: **lest** के साथ **Simple present tense** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: Take care **lest** you fall.

OUGHT TO

Rule (1): Ought to का प्रयोग **moral obligation** (नैतिक कर्तव्य) या **duty** को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: We **ought to** love our country.

MUST

Rule (1): Must का प्रयोग **compulsion** (बाध्यता) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: Candidates **must** write in ink.

Rule (2): Must का प्रयोग **fixed determination** (पक्का डरादा/दृढ़ संकल्प) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: India **must** win the world cup.

Rule (3): Must का प्रयोग **duty** (कर्तव्य) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: A soldier **must** fight for his country.

USED TO

Used to का प्रयोग **Past habit/situation** (भत्तकाल की आदत/अवस्था) को व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे: He **used to** study till 10 PM.

(ii) 'Use to' or 'uses to' का प्रयोग **Present routine action** को व्यक्त करने के लिए नहीं होता है बल्कि

Verb (Basic)

Present routine action को व्यक्त करने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He uses to study till 10 p.m and then goes to bed. (✗)

He studies till 10 p.m and then goes to bed. (✓)

नोट: (i) Used to का प्रयोग **affirmative, negative** तथा **Interrogative sentences** में इस प्रकार होता है। जैसे:

(a) **Affirmative**

He **used to** come here.

(b) **Negative**

He **used not to** come here.

He **did not use to** come here.

(c) **Interrogative**

Used he to come here?

Did he use to come here?

नोट: 'Verb + used to' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग होता है और ये 'habitual action' को दर्शाता है।

जैसे: I am **used to** $\underbrace{\text{getting}}_{V_1+ing}$ up late in the morning.

नोट: कई **Verbs/adjective/phrase** के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ **to** के बाद V_1 का प्रयोग नहीं होगा बल्कि ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: **Be used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

1. He is **addicted to** smoking.
2. I am **looking forward to** meeting you.
3. He was **used to** driving on the right when he was in London.

DARE ,or NEED

➤ 'Dare' दुस्साहस व्यक्त करता है और 'Need' जरूरत।

➤ **Dare** तथा **Need** का प्रयोग **Main Verb** एवं **modal** दोनों ही रूप में होता है।

जैसे: (1) He $\underbrace{\text{needs}}_{M.V}$ me.

(2) She does not $\underbrace{\text{dare}}_{M.V}$ to go there.

(3) You $\underbrace{\text{need}}_{\text{Modal}}$ not come tomorrow.

➤ **Need** एवं **Dare** का प्रयोग **modal** के रूप में +ve वाक्यों में नहीं होता।

जैसे: (1) $\underbrace{I}_{\text{Sub.}} \underbrace{\text{need}}_{\text{modal}} \underbrace{\text{help}}_{V_1} \underbrace{\text{him}}_{\text{Obj.}}$. (✗)

(2) I $\underbrace{\text{need}}_{M.V} \underbrace{\text{to help him}}_{\text{Infinitive}}$. (✓)

Verb (Basic)

- अगर 'dare' एवं 'need' का प्रयोग +ve वाक्यों में हो तो उसके बाद 'to + V₁' का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: (1) He **needs to work** hard.
(2) He **will not dare** to come here.
- अगर need एवं dare का प्रयोग helping verb के रूप में हो तो -ve वाक्यों में **need** एवं **dare** के बाद '**to**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
जैसे: (1) I **need not** come tomorrow.
(2) He **dare not** cheat anyone again.

निवेदन करने के लिए निम्नलिखित **Modals** का प्रयोग किया जाता है-

Modals	Use	Example
Can	Friendly request	Can I take your bike?
Could	Formal request	Could I talk to Mr. Singh?
May	Request with respect	May I come in Sir?
Would	Polite Request	Would you help me?

विभिन्न काल एवं **Voice** में **Modals** अलग-अलग **formulae** में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। नीचे दिए गए सारणी में इनका प्रयोग देखें:-

MODALS	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Indefinite	Sub+modal+V ₁ +obj.	Obj + modal + be + V ₃ + by + sub.
Continuous	Sub + modal + be + V ₁ + ing + obj.	xxxxx
Perfect	Sub + modal + have + V ₃ + obj.	Obj + modal + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub.
Perfect Continuous	Sub + modal + have + been + V ₁ + ing + obj + for / since + time.	xxxxx

- ऊपर दिए गये सभी formulae को देखें। आप पाएंगे कि **Modal** के तरंत बाद **verb** का प्रयोग 'V₁' form में होता है।
- **Modals** का प्रयोग '**Perfect**' में नीचे दिए गये **formula** में देखे और उसका विशेष अर्थ भी उदाहरण में देखें।

Sub + modal + have +V₃ + obj

- कई बार जब हम **Modal + have + V₃** का प्रयोग करते हैं, (जैसे: should have come, could have gone, need not have seen इत्यादि) तो वाक्य में एक छिपा हआ अर्थ भी होता है जो वाक्य के अर्थ के विपरीत होता है।
- जैसे: (1) I **could** score good marks. (**Meaning-I had the ability**)
(2) I **could have** scored good marks. (**Hidden meaning -I didn't score though I had the ability**)
(3) You **should** work hard. (**Just a suggestion**)

Verb (Basic)

(4) You **should have** worked hard. (**Hidden Meaning - You didn't**)

PRIMARY AUXILIARY VERBS: Do, Have, Be Primary Auxiliary Verbs हैं। इन verbs का प्रयोग **Main Verb** एवं **Helping Verb** दोनों ही रूप में किए जा सकते हैं।

जैसे:- 1. **Do** का forms इस प्रकार है- $\underbrace{\text{Do/ Does}}_{V_1}$ $\underbrace{\text{Did}}_{V_2}$ $\underbrace{\text{Done}}_{V_3}$

(a) I $\underbrace{\text{do}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ my work.

(b) I $\underbrace{\text{did}}_{\text{H.V.}}$ not $\underbrace{\text{know}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ him.

2. **Have** के forms इस प्रकार है- $\underbrace{\text{Has/ have}}_{V_1}$ $\underbrace{\text{Had}}_{V_2}$ $\underbrace{\text{Had}}_{V_3}$

(i) Have का प्रयोग **possession** (अधिकार) दर्शाने के लिए किया जाता है।

I $\underbrace{\text{have}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ a car.

(ii) Have का प्रयोग 'helping verb' के रूप में **Perfect** एवं **Perfect continuous tense** में होता है।

(a) I $\underbrace{\text{have}}_{\text{H.V.}}$ not $\underbrace{\text{seen}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ him.

(b) I $\underbrace{\text{had}}_{\text{H.V.}}$ been $\underbrace{\text{waiting}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ for him for a long time.

(iii) **Have + infinitive** का प्रयोग **forced action** (दबाव में किया जाने वाले कार्य) दर्शाने के लिए किया जाता है।

जैसे:- (a) I **have to** work hard.

(b) She **had to** leave her job.

3. **Be** के forms इस प्रकार है- $\underbrace{\text{Be, is, am, are}}_{V_1}$ $\underbrace{\text{was, were}}_{V_2}$ $\underbrace{\text{been}}_{V_3}$

अब **H.V.** एवं **M. V.** के रूप में इनका प्रयोग देखें-

(a) I $\underbrace{\text{am}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ a doctor

(b) He $\underbrace{\text{was}}_{\text{H.V.}}$ $\underbrace{\text{working}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ hard.

(b) He $\underbrace{\text{has}}_{\text{H.V.}}$ $\underbrace{\text{been}}_{\text{M.V.}}$ to London.

MAIN VERB

I. **MAIN VERBS:** वे Verbs जो Sentence में Main verbs के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं और जिनके V_1 , V_2 , V_3 , ing-form, तथा s/es-form वाक्य में प्रयुक्त होते हैं **Main verb** कहलाते हैं।

जैसे:- I $\underbrace{\text{knew}}_{V_1}$ you.

I $\underbrace{\text{knew}}_{V_2}$ you.

I have $\underbrace{\text{known}}_{V_3}$ you for two years.

- 'Main verb' वाक्य के tense के अनसार विभिन्न forms में परिवर्तित होते हैं।

FORMS OF VERB

1. Present (1st form)

3. Past Participle (3rd form)

2. Past (2nd form)

4. Present Participle (-ing form)

GROUP - I

Present (1 st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2 nd Form)	P. Participle - ing Form	s/es Form	
		(3 rd Form)			
Arise	उठना	arose	arisen	arising	arises
Awake	जागना	awoke	awaken	awaking	awakes
Be	होना	was, were	been	being	is/was
Bear	जन्म देना	bore	born	bearing	bears
Bear	सहन करना	bore	borne	bearing	bears
Become	बनना	became	become	becoming	becomes
Begin	आरंभ करना	began	begun	beginning	begins
Bite	दाँत से काटना	bit	bitten	biting	bites
Blow	हवा का चलना	blew	blown	blowing	blows
Bind	बाँधना	bound	bound	binding	binds
Bid	आज्ञा देना/बोली लगाना	bade	bidden	bidding	bids
Break	तोड़ना	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Choose	चुनना	chose	chosen	choosing	chooses
Cling	चिपटना	clung	clung	clinging	clings
Come	आना	came	come	coming	comes
Dig	खोदना	dug	dug	digging	digs
Do	करना	did	done	doing	does
Draw	खींचना	drew	drawn	drawing	draws
Drink	पीना	drank	drunk	drinking	drinks
Drive	चलाना	drove	driven	driving	drives
Eat	खाना	ate	eaten	eating	eats
Fall	गिरना	fell	fallen	falling	falls
Find	पाना	found	found	finding	finds
Fly	उड़ना, उड़ाना	flew	flown	flying	flies
Forbid	मना करना	forbade	forbidden	forbidding	forbids
Forget	भूल जाना	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	forgets
Freeze	जमाना/जमना	froze	frozen	freezing	freezes
Get	पाना	got	got	getting	gets
Give	देना	gave	given	giving	gives
Grind	पीसना	ground	ground	grinding	grinds
Grow	बढ़ना, उगना	grew	grown	growing	grows
Hang	लटकाना	hung	hung	hanging	hangs

Verb (Basic)

Hide	छिपाना/छिपना	hid	hidden	hiding	hides
Hold	थामना	held	held	holding	holds
Know	जानना	knew	known	knowing	knows
Lie	लेटना	lay	lain	lying	lies
Ride	सवारी करना	rode	ridden	riding	rides
Ring	बजना/बजाना	rang	rung	ringing	rings
Rise	उठना/उगना	rose	risen	rising	rises
See	देखना	saw	seen	seeing	sees
Shake	हिलाना	shook	shaken	shaking	shakes
Shine	चमकना	shone	shone	shining	shines
Shoot	फोटो निकालना/गोली मारना	shot	shot	shooting	shoots
Shrink	सिकुड़ना	shrank	shrunk	shrinking	shrinks
Sing	गाना	sang	sung	singing	sings
Sink	झूबना	sank	sunk	sinking	sinks
Sit	बैठना	sat	sat	sitting	sits
Slay	बध करना	slew	slain	slaying	slays
Speak	बोलना	spoke	spoken	speaking	speaks
Spit	थूकना	spat	spat	spitting	spits
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Steal	चुराना	stole	stolen	stealing	steals
Stick	चिपकना	stuck	stuck	sticking	sticks
Strike	चोट मारना/हडताल करना	struck	struck	striking	strikes
Swear	शोपथ लेना	swore	sworn	swearing	swears
Swim	तैरना	swam	swum	swimming	swims
Swing	झूलना	swung	swung	swinging	swings
Take	लेना	took	taken	taking	takes
Tear	फाड़ना	tore	torn	tearing	tears
Wear	पहनना	wore	worn	wearing	wears
Weave	बुनना	wove	woven	weaving	weaves
Win	जीतना	won	won	winning	wins
Wind	चाबी लगाना	wound	wound	winding	winds
Write	लिखना	wrote	written	writing	writes
Wring	निचोड़ना	wrung	wrung	wringing	wrings

GROUP - II

नीचे दिए गए Verbs में 2nd form एवं 3rd form एक जैसे हैं और 1st form में ed, en अथवा t

लगाकर 2nd एवं 3rd form बनाए गये हैं।

Present (1 st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2 nd Form)	P. Participle (3 rd Form)	- ing Form	s/es Form
Abuse	गाली देना/दुपर्योग करना	abused	abused	abusing	abuses
Act	काम करना/अभिनय करना	acted	acted	acting	acts

Verb (Basic)

Add	जोड़ना	added	added	adding	adds
Admire	प्रशংসা করনা	admired	admired	admiring	admires
Advise	उপदেশ দেনা	advised	advised	advising	advises
Allow	অনুমতি দেনা	allowed	allowed	allowing	allows
Answer	উত্তর দেনা	answered	answered	answering	answers
Appoint	নিযুক্ত করনা	appointed	appointed	appointing	appoints
Appear	প্রকট হোনা	appeared	appeared	appearing	appears
Arrive	পৌঁছনা	arrived	arrived	arriving	arrives
Arrest	গিরিষ্টার করনা	arrested	arrested	arresting	arrests
Ask	পূछনা/কহনা	asked	asked	asking	asks
Attack	আক্রমণ করনা	attacked	attacked	attacking	attacks
Bark	ভাঁকনা	barked	barked	barking	barks
Bathe	স্নান করনা	bathed	bathed	bathing	bathes
Beg	ভীখ মাঁগনা	begged	begged	begging	begs
Believe	বিশ্বাস করনা	believed	believed	believing	believes
Behave	ব্যবহার করনা	behaved	behaved	behaving	behaves
Bleed	খূন বহনা	bled	bled	bleeding	bleeds
Bless	আশীর্বাদ দেনা	blessed	blessed	blessing	blesses
Break	তোড়না/টন্টনা	broke	broken	breaking	breaks
Bring	লানা	brought	brought	bringing	brings
Boil	উবালনা	boiled	boiled	boiling	boils
Boast	ঢীঁঁগে মারনা	boasted	boasted	boasting	boasts
Borrow	উধার লেনা	borrowed	borrowed	borrowing	borrowes
Build	বনানা/ নির্মাণ করনা	built	built	building	builds
Burn	জলনা / জলানা	burnt	burnt	burning	burns
Buy	খরীদনা	bought	bought	buying	buys
Call	পুকারনা	called	called	calling	calls
Carry	লে জানা	carried	carried	carrying	carries
Catch	পকড়না	caught	caught	catching	catches
Clean	সাফ করনা	cleaned	cleaned	cleaning	cleans
Close	बंद করনা	closed	closed	closing	closes
Change	বদলনা	changed	changed	changing	changes
Check	রেকনা/জাঁচ করনা	checked	checked	checking	checks
Climb	চढ়না	climbed	climbed	climbing	climbs
Clap	তালী বজানা	clapped	clapped	clapping	claps
Copy	নকল করনা	copied	copied	copying	copies
Collect	ইকट্টা করনা	collected	collected	collecting	collects
Complain	শিকায়ত করনা	complained	complained	complaining	complains
Cook	পুকানা	cooked	cooked	cooking	cooks
Count	গিননা	counted	counted	counting	counts
Confuse	উলझন মেঁ ডাল দেনা	confused	confused	confusing	confuses

Verb (Basic)

Consult	सलाह देना	consulted	consulted	consulting	consults
Cover	ढ़कना	covered	covered	covering	covers
Crow	बांग लगाना	crowed	crowed	crowing	crows
Cross	पार करना	crossed	crossed	crossing	crosses
Creep	रेगना	crept	crept	creeping	creeps
Cry	चिल्लाना	cried	cried	crying	cries
Decorate	सजाना	decorated	decorated	decorating	decorates
Dance	नाचना	danced	danced	dancing	dances
Deceive	धोखा देना	deceived	deceived	deceiving	deceives
Defeat	हराना	defeated	defeated	defeating	defeats
Decide	निर्णय करना	decided	decided	deciding	decides
Desire	इच्छा करना	desired	desired	desiring	desires
Discover	खोज करना	discovered	discovered	discovering	discovers
Dip	डुबोना	dipped	dipped	dipping	dips
Die	मरना	died	died	dying	dies
Divide	बाँटना	divided	divided	dividing	divides
Dream	स्वप्न देखना	dreamed	dreamed	dreaming	dreams
Dry	सुखना/सखाना	dried	dried	drying	dries
Drown	झुबाना	drowned	drowned	drowning	drowns
Dye	रंगना	dyed	dyed	dyeing	dyes
Earn	कमाना	earned	earned	earning	earns
Enter	प्रवेश करना	entered	entered	entering	enters
Employ	काम पर रखना	employed	employed	employing	employs
Explain	समझाना	explained	explained	explaining	explains
Face	सामना करना	faced	faced	facing	faces
Fail	असफल होना	failed	failed	fails	fails
Fear	डरना	feared	feared	fearing	fears
Feed	खिलाना	fed	fed	feeding	feeds
Feel	महसूस/ अनभव करना	felt	felt	feeling	feels
Fell	गिराना	felled	felled	felling	fells
Flee	भागना	fled	fled	fleeing	flees
Fight	लड़ना	fought	fought	fighting	fights
Finish	समाप्त करना	finished	finished	finishing	finishes
Fine	जुर्माना लगाना	fined	fined	fining	fines
Float	तैरना (सतह पर)	floated	floated	floating	floats
Graze	चरना	grazed	grazed	grazing	grazes
Gather	इकट्ठा करना/होना	gathered	gathered	gathering	gathers
Have	रखना/प्राप्त करना	had	had	having	has
Hate	घृणा करना	hated	hated	hating	hates
Hang	फांसी लगाना	hanged	hanged	hanging	hangs

Verb (Basic)

Hear	सुनना	heard	heard	hearing	hears
Help	सहायता करना	helped	helped	helping	helps
Improve	सुधारना/ बेहतर होना	improved	improved	improving	improves
Invite	निमंत्रण देना	invited	invited	inviting	invites
Join	साथ में होना.	joined	joined	joining	joins
Jump	कूदना	jumped	jumped	jumping	jumps
Keep	रखना	kept	kept	keeping	keeps
Kill	जान से मारना	killed	killed	killing	kills
Knit	बुनना	knitted	knitted	knitting	knits
Kneel	घुटनों के बल झुकना	knelt	knelt	kneeling	kneels
Lay	रखना/(अंडा) देना. न्योछावर करना	laid	laid	laying	lays
Lie	झूठ बोलना	lied	lied	lying	lies
Laugh	हँसना	laughed	laughed	laughing	laughs
Learn	याद करना. सीखना	learned	learned	learning	learns
Leave	छोड़ना	left	left	leaving	leaves
Lend	उधार देना	lent	lent	lending	lends
Lose	खोना/हारना	lost	lost	losing	loses
Like	चाहना	liked	liked	liking	likes
Listen	सुनना (ध्यान से)	listened	listened	listening	listens
Look	देखना	looked	looked	looking	looks
Live	रहना	lived	lived	living	lives
Love	प्रेम करना	loved	loved	loving	loves
Lead	मार्ग दिखाना	led	led	leading	leads
Marry	विवाह करना	married	married	marrying	marries
Make	बनाना	made	made	making	makes
Mean	अर्थ लगाना	meant	meant	meaning	means
Meet	मिलना	met	met	meeting	meets
Move	हिलना	moved	moved	moving	moves
Melt	पिघलना. पिघलाना	melted	melted	melting	melts
Mend	सुधारना	mended	mended	mending	mends
Mix	मिलाना, मिलना	mixed	mixed	mixing	mixes
Name	नाम रखना	named	named	naming	names
Need	आवश्यकता होना	needed	needed	needing	needs
Nip	सख्ती से कुचलना	nipped	nipped	nipping	nips
Obey	आज्ञा मानना	obeyed	obeyed	obeying	obeys
Open	खोलना	opened	opened	opening	opens
Order	आदेश देना	ordered	ordered	ordering	orders
Oppose	विरोध करना	opposed	opposed	opposing	opposes
Pay	चकाना	paid	paid	paying	pays

Verb (Basic)

Play	खेलना	played	played	playing	plays
Pray	प्रार्थना करना	prayed	prayed	praying	prays
Praise	प्रशंसा करना	praised	praised	praising	praises
Preach	उपदेश करना	preached	preached	preaching	preaches
Peep	झाँकना	peeped	peeped	peeping	peeps
Plant	पौधा लगाना	planted	planted	planting	plants
Pluck	तोड़ना (जैसे फल तोड़ते हैं)	plucked	plucked	plucking	plucks
Prepare	�ैयार करना	prepared	prepared	preparing	prepares
Pull	खींचना	pulled	pulled	pulling	pulls
Prevent	रोकना	prevented	prevented	preventing	prevents
Punish	दण्ड देना	punished	punished	punishing	punishes
Prove	सिद्ध करना	proved	proved	proving	proves
Promise	वचन देना	promised	promised	promising	promises
Push	धक्का देना	pushed	pushed	pushing	pushes
Plough	खेत जोतना	ploughed	ploughed	ploughing	ploughs
Quarrel	झगड़ना	quarrelled	quarrelled	quarrelling	quarrels
Rain	बर्षा होना	rained	rained	raining	rains
Reply	जवाब देना	replied	replied	replying	replies
Reach	पहुँचना	reached	reached	reaching	reaches
Receive	पाना, प्राप्त करना	received	received	receiving	receives
Refuse	इंकार करना	refused	refused	refusing	refuses
Rest	आराम करना	rested	rested	resting	rests
Resign	त्यागपत्र देना	resigned	resigned	resigning	resigns
Repair	मरम्मत करना	repaired	repaired	repairing	repairs
Remember	याद करना	remembered	remembered	remembering	remembers
Return	लौटाना, लौटना	returned	returned	returning	returns
Roar	गरजना	roared	roared	roaring	roars
Say	कहना	said	said	saying	says
Seek	अपेक्षा करना/ढँढना	sought	sought	seeking	seeks
Sell	बेचना	sold	sold	selling	sells
Save	बचाना	saved	saved	saving	saves
Saw	आरे से चीरना	sawed	sawed	sawing	saws
Send	भेजना	sent	sent	sending	sends
Select	चुनना (छांटकर)	selected	selected	selecting	selects
Sleep	सोना	slept	slept	sleeping	sleeps
Stand	खड़ा होना	stood	stood	standing	stands
Stay	ठहरना	stayed	stayed	staying	stays
Spend	खर्च करना	spent	spent	spending	spends
Stop	रोकना	stopped	stopped	stopping	stops

Verb (Basic)

Sweep	झाड़ू देना	swept	swept	sweeping	sweeps
Study	पढ़ना	studied	studied	studying	studies
Slip	फिसलना	slipped	slipped	slipping	slips
Talk	बात करना	talked	talked	talking	talks
Tell	कहना	told	told	telling	tells
Teach	पढ़ाना/सिखाना	taught	taught	teaching	teaches
Think	सोचना	thought	thought	thinking	thinks
Tie	बांधना	tied	tied	tying	ties
Touch	छूना	touched	touched	touching	touches
Try	प्रयत्न करना	tried	tried	trying	tries
Trust	विश्वास करना	trusted	trusted	trusting	trusts
Use	इस्तेमाल करना	used	used	using	uses
Understand	समझना	understood	understood	understanding	understands
Walk	चलना	walked	walked	walking	walks
Wash	धोना	washed	washed	washing	washes
Wait	प्रतीक्षा करना	waited	waited	waiting	waits
Weep	रोना	wept	wept	weeping	weeps
Work	काम करना	worked	worked	working	works
Watch	निगरानी करना	watched	watched	watching	watches
Wish	चाहना	wished	wished	wishing	wishes
Wander	घूमना	wandered	wandered	wandering	wanders
Waste	नष्ट करना	wasted	wasted	wasting	wastes
Wed	विवाह करना	wedded	wedded	wedding	weds
Wound	घायल करना	wounded	wounded	wounding	wounds
Worship	पूजा करना	worshipped	worshipped	worshipping	worships
Wonder	हैरान होना	wondered	wondered	wondering	wonders
Wrap	लपेटना	wrapped	wrapped	wrapping	wraps
Yield	झकना/ पैदा करना	yielded	yielded	yielding	yields

GROUP – IIIनीचे दिए गए **Verbs** के सभी forms एक जैसे हैं।

Present (1 st Form)	अर्थ	Past (2 nd Form)	P. Participle (3 rd Form)	- ing Form	s/es Form
Bid	बोली लगाना	bid	bid	bidding	bids
Bet	शर्त लगाना	bet	bet	betting	bets
Burst	फटना	burst	burst	bursting	bursts
Cast	फेंकना/डालना	cast	cast	casting	casts
Cost	मूल्य लगाना	cost	cost	costing	costs
Cut	काटना	cut	cut	cutting	cuts
Hurt	पीड़ा पहँचाना	hurt	hurt	hurting	hurts

Verb (Basic)

Let	करने देना	let	let	letting	lets
Put	रखना	put	put	putting	puts
Read	पढ़ना *	read	read	reading	reads
Set	अस्त होना	set	set	setting	sets
Shed	बहाना/त्याग देना	shed	shed	shedding	sheds
Shut	बंद करना	shut	shut	shutting	shuts
Spread	फैलाना	spread	spread	spreading	spreads
Thrust	टूँसना/थोपना	thrust	thrust	thrusting	thrusts
Quit	छोड़ना	quit	quit	quitting	quits

* Read एवं Study में अंतर है। **Study** का अर्थ अध्ययन करना है जबकि **Read** हम Magazine, newspaper इत्यादि को करते हैं।

CONFUSING PAIR

1. Bear	bore	born	→ पैदा करना
	Bear	bore	→ बद्रीशत करना
2. Fall	fell	fallen	→ गिरना
	Fell	felled	→ गिराना
3. Find	found	found	→ पाना
	Found	founded	→ स्थापित करना
4. Grind	ground	ground	→ पीसना
	Ground	grounded	→ जमीन पर लाना/ उडान भरने पर पावंदी लगाया
5. Hang	hanged	hanged	→ फांसी पर चढ़ाना
	Hang	hung	→ टांगना, लटकाना
6. Lie	lied	lied	→ झूठ बोलना
	Lie	lay	→ लेटना
	Lay	laid	→ क्षैतिज (Horizontally) रखना → न्यौछावर करना → Hens lay eggs
7. Rend	rent	rent	→ चीरना/फाड़ना
	Rent	rented	→ किराये पर देना
8. Rise	rose	risen	→ उगना, बढ़ना, उठना, तरकी करना
	Raise	raised	→ उठाना (मुद्दा, प्रश्न इत्यादि)
	Raze	razed	→ ध्वस्त करना
9. See	saw	seen	→ देखना
	Saw	sawed/sawn	→ आरी से चीड़ना/ काटना
10. Wind	wound	wound	→ मोड़ना/ लपेटना/ चाबी लगाना
	Wound	wounded	→ घायल करना
11. Fly	flew	flown	→ उड़ना
	Flow	flowed	→ बहना

VERBS CONFUED WITH VERB/ NOUN/ ADJECTIVE

1. <u>Practice</u> – <u>Practise</u> <u>Noun</u> ↓ अभ्यास – अभ्यास करना	11. <u>Amend</u> – <u>Emend</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ संशोधन करना – अशद्धियाँ निकाल देना
2. <u>Advice</u> – <u>Advise</u> <u>Noun</u> ↓ सलाह – सलाह देना	12. <u>Bought</u> – <u>Brought</u> <u>V₂ & V₃</u> form of buy ↓ खरीदना – लाना
3. <u>Complain</u> – <u>Complaint</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ शिकायत करना – शिकायत	13. <u>Compose</u> – <u>Comprise</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ बनाना – से बना होना
4. <u>Affect</u> – <u>Effect</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ असर करना – परिणाम/ बदलाव लाना	14. <u>Deface</u> – <u>Efface</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ विकृत करना – मिटा देना
5. <u>Assure</u> – <u>Ensure</u> – <u>Insure</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ तसल्ली देना – सनिश्चित करना – बीमा करना	15. <u>Deprecate</u> – <u>Depreciate</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ नापसंद करना – मल्य कम होना
6. <u>Hear</u> – <u>Listen</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ सनना – ध्यान से सनना	16. <u>Envelop</u> – <u>Envelope</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ ढकना (आवरण करना) – लिफाफा
7. <u>Heal</u> – <u>Heel</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ ठीक होना – ऐडी (घाव या जख्म का)	17. <u>Excite</u> – <u>Incite</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ उत्तेजित करना – भड़काना
8. <u>Prescribe</u> – <u>Proscribe</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ सलाह देना – पाबंदी लगाना	18. <u>Flout</u> – <u>Flaunt</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ उल्लंघन करना – दिखावा करना
9. <u>Adopt</u> – <u>Adapt</u> – <u>Adept</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ गोद लेना – ढालना – निपण	19. <u>Hoard</u> – <u>Horde</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ छिपा कर जमा करना – लोगों का समह
10. <u>Allude</u> – <u>Elude</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ के संदर्भ में उल्लेख करना – से बचना	20. <u>Loathe</u> – <u>Loath</u> <u>Verb</u> ↓ नापसंद करना – अनिच्छक

Verb (Basic)

21. Lose – Loss – Loose
 Verb Noun Adj.
 खोना / हारना – घाटा / हानि – ढीला
22. Mitigate – Militate
 Verb Verb
 बेहतर करना (कम कर के) – प्रतिकल होना
23. Pour – Pore
 Verb Noun
 उड़लना – छिद्र
24. Proceed – Precede
 Verb Verb
 आगे बढ़ना – से पहले आना
25. Pray – Prey
 Verb Verb Noun
 प्राथना करना – शिकार करना शिकार
26. Rout – Route – Root
 Verb Noun Noun
 आसानी से हराना – रास्ता – जड़
27. Censure – Censor
 Verb Verb
 निंदा करना – पाबंदी लगाना
28. Wave – Waive
 Noun/Verb Verb
 लहर (N)/ लहराना (V) – छट देना
29. Tow – Toe – Tiptoe
 Verb Noun Verb
 खोंच कर ले जाना – पैर की अंगलियाँ – पैर की अंगुलियों पर चलना
30. Site – Sight – Cite
 Noun Noun Verb
 निर्माण स्थल – नजारा या दृष्टि – उल्लेख करना
31. Defuse – Diffuse
 Verb Verb
 तनाव कम करना – फैलाना
32. Desert – Dessert
 Noun Verb Noun
 रेगिस्तान त्याग देना – Meals के बाद का sweet dish
33. Sever – Severe – Sewer
 Verb Adj Noun
 काट के अलग कर देना – तीव्र – नाला
34. See – Look – Stare – Peep – Glare / Glower – Glance – Glimpse
 Verb Verb/Noun Verb Verb Verb/Noun Noun
 देखना – ताकना/नजर डालना घूरना – झाँकना(V) – गर्से से देखना(V) – एक झलक देखना(V) – एक झलक देखना (V)
 Appearance(N) – चपके से देखना(V) – गर्से से भरी नजर(N) – एक झलक (N) – एक झलक(N)
35. Light – Burn
 Adj Noun Verb Verb Noun
 हल्का रोशनी प्रज्वलित करना जलाना जला हआ भाग (शरीर का)
36. Catch – Hold
 Verb/Noun Verb/Noun
 किसी गतिशील को पकड़ना (V) – ठहरी हई चीज को थामना (V)
 पकड (N)

Verb (Basic)

37. Canvass – Canvas
 Verb Noun
 घम-घम के बोट मांगना - मोटा कपड़ा (जिससे जते एवं टेंट बनते हैं)
38. Refuse – Deny / Re fute – Decline
 Verb Verb Verb
 मना करना – खंडन करना – अस्वीकार करना/ कम होना
39. Peddle – Pedal
 Verb Noun/Verb
 घम-घम के सामान बेचना – साइकिल में जिस पर पैर रख कर घमाते हैं। (N), Pedal चलाना (V)
40. Ride – Drive
 Verb/Noun Verb/Noun
 सैर (N) / दोपहिये व जानवर की सवारी करना (V) – सैर (N) / चार पहिये की सवारी करना (V)
41. Wither – Weather – Whether – Whither
 Verb N Conj. Adj.
 मुरझाना – दिन-प्रतिदिन का मौसम – या या ना – Where (कहाँ) [पुराने काल की
 (Whether ... or' Co-relative है) अंग्रेजी भाषा में।
42. Sink – Drown
 Verb Verb
 डबना (निर्जीव का) – डबाना/डबना
43. Cease – Seize 44. Invent – Discover
 Verb Verb Verb
 रुकना – जब्त करना अविष्कार करना – खोज करना

vc t̪ɒfsɪn, x̪ɔ:dɪksæsəmɪʃn, ʃɪr'kɪksækɪz, ksks]ss&

जैसे: 1. The servant hung the picture on the wall

hanged

2. Lay your books aside and lie down to rest.

~~Lay~~

3. Practice makes a man perfect.

Noun

4. Practise the questions given in the assignment.

Verb

Verb (Basic)

5. I need your advice.
Noun
6. Do not advise me.
Verb
7. I have lodged a complaint against him.
Noun
8. He complained against me.
Verb
9. Bad weather affects your health and the effect is cough and cold.
Verb Noun
10. Many songs are not worthlistening to [नोटः listen के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन 'worthlistening' (सनने के लायक) के बाद नहीं। अतः 'to' हटा दें।]
11. He **lighted** the candle and **burnt** the papers.
12. The thief eluded arrest.
Verb
13. The earth's atmosphere comprises of three layers (Active voice में comprise के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता अतः 'of' हटा दें।)
14. Mirabai **composed** many songs.
15. I **refused** to help him.
16. The thief **denied** the charges.
17. I **declined** the offer.
18. Silence **precedes** the storm.
19. This is a good **site** for school.
20. Please **cite** an example.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He was so inquisitive/ (b) that he rose many/ (c) questions in the class ./ (d) No error.
2. (a) He was borne of poor parents,/ (b) but brought up/ (c) in an affluent family./ (d) No error.
3. (a) The university was/ (b) found in 1950/ (c) when India was not self dependent in many aspects./ (d) No error.
4. (a) I complaint against him/ (b) as in spite of my repeated warnings/ (c) he failed to mend his ways./ (d) No error.
5. (a) Failure must not have/ (b) permanent affect on a person/ (c)because only the tough survives./ (d) No error.
6. (a) I keep my cool/ (b) and never loose my temper/ (c) even when provoked/ (d) No error.
7. (a) He lied on the grass/ (b) for hours/ (c) enjoying the cool breeze./ (d) No error.
8. (a) During the rainy season/ (b) many rivers overflow their banks/ (c) and caused great difficulty./ (d) No error.
9. (a) He lay his luggage/ (b) aside and lay down/ (c) to rest for a while ./ (d) No error.

Verb (Basic)

10. (a) When calamity fell the village,/ (b) they faced it/ (c) bravely./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The assassin was convicted/ (b) and ordered to/ (c) be hung./ (d) No error.
12. (a) If I leave now,/ (b) I will not be able to/ (c) return back before 9 p.m ./ (d) No error.
13. (a) When the company offered him a purse on his retirement/ (b) he refused to/ (c) agree it ./ (d) No error.
14. (a) The timid creature was driven/ (b) into a narrow lane/ (c) where it was slewed by the kidnapper./ (d) No error.
15. (a) Being implicated in a murder case,/ (b) he was conclusively suspected/ (c) for all the unsolved murder cases./ (d) No error.
16. (a) My brother thinks/ (b) that somebody must have dared/ (c) him steal the scooter./ (d) No error.
17. (a) When I was young,/ (b) I can run/ (c) faster than Mohan./ (d) No error.
18. (a) Harish needs not/ (b) come here/ (c) as it is getting dark./ (d) No error.
19. (a) He dare/ (b) not to/ (c) go there/ (d) No error.
20. (a) I use to/ (b) play Hockey/ (c) when I was ten year old./ (d) No error.
21. (a) A soldier/ (b) could fight/ (c) for his country and save his country's honour./ (d) No error.
22. (a) I would rather/ (b) die/ (c) then beg./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Run fast/ (b) lest you/ (c) will miss the train/ (d) No error.
24. (a) He hoped/ (b) that he will/ (c) pass the exam with flying colours./ (d) No error.
25. (a) You need to work hard/ (b) but you need not/ (c) to waste time on unimportant lessons/ (d) No error.
26. (a) She would broke/ (b) a plate every day/ (c) when she came to Delhi last month./ (d) No error.
27. (a) The old lady/ (b) prayed that he/ (c) may live long./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Rama must not to/ (b) have treated his mistress/ (c) like that./ (d) No error.
29. (a) Waste material/ (b) should be recycle/ (c) if possible/ (d) No error.
30. (a) The Government cannot/ (b) be able to contain/ (c) Encephalitis by spending just 1% of GDP on Health sector./ (d) No error.
31. (a) The police think/ (b) that he may be there/ (c) yesterday at the scene of crime./ (d) No error.
32. (a) "He may live long"/ (b) his sad mother/ (c) prayed./ (d) No error.
33. (a) He returned the purse/ (b) though he could keep/ (c) it very easily./ (d) No error.
34. (a) When you were young/ (b) you ought to learn/ (c) good habits./ (d) No error.
35. (a) If you get good marks/ (b) I shall happy/ (c) as much as you./ (d) No error.
36. (a) We ought to/ (b) honest/ (c) in our dealings./ (d) No error.
37. (a) It is very cold here/ (b) I should bring/ (c) my woolen clothes but I didn't./ (d) No error.
38. (a) Are you/ (b) used to get/ (c) up early./ (d) No error.
39. (a) Our knowledge of history does not come to our help/ (b) and sometimes we even fail to remember/ (c) who invented America./ (d) No error.
40. (a) I think/ (b) the news/ (c) might true./ (d) No error.

Verb (Basic)

41. (a) Very soon / (b) I realised / (c) that he is at fault / (d) No error.
42. (a) He remembered / (b) that his visa / (c) will be expired in a month / (d) No error.
43. (a) I wasn't / (b) at the last meeting and / (c) neither was you / (d) No error.
44. (a) In any case no disciplinary action / (b) are required / (c) to be taken / (d) No error.
45. (a) The capital of Yemen / (b) is situating / (c) 2190 metres above the sea level / (d) No error.
46. (a) Owing to the heavy rains, / (b) the ship drowned / (c) in the middle of the ocean. / (d) No error.
47. (a) If your jogging clothes / (b) were not made of / (c) permeable fabric you will drown / (d) in your sweat.

Answers with explanation

1. (b) 'rose' (rise का V₂) का अर्थ है 'उठना'। 'कई सवाल उठाना' के लिए 'raised many questions' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (a) 'Bear' (पैदा करना) का V₃ 'born' होता है। 'Bear' (सहन करना) का V₃ 'borne' होता है।
3. (b) 'found' के स्थान पर 'founded' का प्रयोग करें। 'found' (स्थापित करना) का V₃ founded होता है।
4. (a) Complain (V₁) का V₂ एवं V₃ 'Complained' है। 'Complaint' (Noun) का अर्थ शिकायत है।
5. (b) 'Affect' (V) के स्थान पर 'effect' (N) का प्रयोग करें।
6. (b) 'loose' (adj.) का अर्थ है 'ढीला'। यहाँ Lose (V) का प्रयोग करें। 'Lose my temper' का अर्थ है 'आप खोना'।
7. (a) 'lie' (लेटना) का V₂ 'lay' होता है। 'Lie' (झठ बोलना) का V₂ 'lied' होता है।
8. (b) 'Overflow' का V₂ 'overflowed' होता है।
9. (a) 'lay' (रखना) का V₂ laid होता है।
10. (a) यहाँ 'fell' के स्थान पर 'befell' का प्रयोग करें। 'Befall' का अर्थ है 'किसी घटना का होना / आ पड़ना।'
11. (c) 'hang' (टाँगना) का V₂ 'hung' है। 'Hang' (फाँसी लगाना) का V₂ 'hanged' होगा।
12. (c) 'return' के साथ 'back' का प्रयोग न करें।
नोट: इसी प्रकार 'repeat' के साथ 'again' एवं 'enter' के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
13. (c) 'agree' के स्थान पर 'accept' का प्रयोग करें।
14. (c) 'Slay' का V₃ 'slain' होता है न कि 'slewed'。
15. (b) 'Conclusively' का अर्थ है 'putting an end to debate, question or doubt'. 'Suspect' शब्द के साथ 'conclusively' का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ को 'self contradictory' बना देता है।
16. (c) 'steal' के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग करें। 'Dare' अगर 'main verb' है तो उसके बाद 'infinitive' 'to + V₁' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः 'to steal' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
17. (b) 'Past Tense' में 'ability' दर्शने के लिए 'can' के स्थान पर 'could' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (a) यहाँ 'needs' Main verb नहीं बल्कि modal है अतः 'needs' के स्थान पर 'need' का प्रयोग करें।
19. (b) यहाँ 'dare' का प्रयोग modal के रूप में हो रहा है अतः 'to go' का नहीं बल्कि 'go' का प्रयोग होगा। Modal के बाद 'V₁' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'to + V₁' का।
20. (a) 'I used to' का प्रयोग 'I use to' के स्थान पर होगा। भत्काल के routine action को दर्शने के लिए

Verb (Basic)

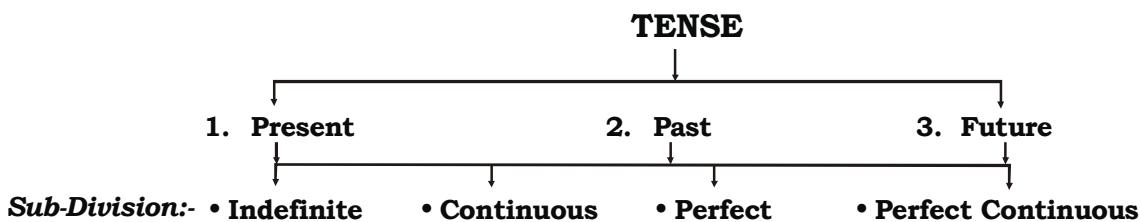
- 'used to + V₁' का प्रयोग होगा।
21. (b) यहाँ 'could' के स्थान पर 'must' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
22. (c) 'then' के स्थान पर 'than' का प्रयोग करें। 'would rather' के साथ 'than' का प्रयोग होता है।
23. (c) 'will' के स्थान पर 'should' का प्रयोग होगा। 'lest' के साथ 'should' का प्रयोग होता है।
24. (b) 'will' के स्थान पर 'would' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है। अतः 'would' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए न कि 'will' का।
25. (c) 'to waste' के स्थान पर सिर्फ 'waste' का प्रयोग होगा। 'need not' के साथ 'V₁' का प्रयोग होता है।
26. (a) 'would' के बाद 'V₁' का प्रयोग होता है न कि V₂ का। 'broke' के स्थान पर 'break' का प्रयोग करें।
27. (c) 'may' के स्थान पर 'might' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'Past' में है।
28. (a) 'To' हटा दे। वाक्य, का structure होगा 'must + not + have + V₃'।
29. (b) 'should be' के बाद 'V₃' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'V₁' का। 'recycle' को 'recycled' में परिवर्तित करें।
30. (b) 'be able to' हटा दें। 'Cannot' क्षमता दर्शाता है। अतः 'be able to' का प्रयोग जरूरी नहीं जो क्षमता ही दर्शाता है।
31. (b) 'May' को 'Might' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि 'yesterday' से जात होता है कि वाक्य 'Past' में है।
32. (a) 'May he live long' सही प्रयोग है क्योंकि वाक्य 'wish' है।
33. (b) 'Could keep' को 'could have kept' में परिवर्तित करें।
34. (b) 'Ought to learn' को 'Ought to have learnt' में परिवर्तित करें।
35. (b) 'Shall' के बाद Main verb 'be' का प्रयोग करें।
36. (a) 'Ought to' के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग करें।
37. (b) 'Should bring' को 'should have brought' में परिवर्तित करें।
38. (b) 'get' को 'getting' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य 'habitual action' है।
39. (c) 'invented' को 'discovered' में परिवर्तित करें।
40. (c) 'Might' के बाद 'be' लगायें।
41. (c) 'is' को 'was' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।
42. (c) 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।
43. (c) 'was' को 'were' में परिवर्तित करें। 'You' के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग होता है।
44. (b) 'are' को 'is' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि subject 'disciplinary action' singular है।
45. (b) 'situating' को 'situated' में परिवर्तित करें।
46. (b) निर्जीव के डबने को 'sink' कहते हैं यहाँ 'drowned' के स्थान पर 'sank' (V₂) का प्रयोग करें।
47. (c) 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि वाक्य 'Past Tense' में है।

2

TENSE

CHAPTER

Tense किसी कार्य के समय एवं अवस्था को व्यक्त करता है।



नोट: प्रश्न सामान्यतः formula अथवा confusing जोड़े पर आधारित होते हैं।

CONFUSING PAIR :

- (1) Simple Present and Present Continuous
- (2) Continous and Perfect Continuous
- (3) Present Perfect and Simple Past
- (4) Simple Past and Past Perfect

(1) **PRESENT INDEFINITE:** Present Indefinite के अंतर्गत हम विभिन्न प्रकार के कार्यों को रख सकते हैं।

- (i) **Routine action • Regular action** (नियमित कार्य) - *I come here daily.*
 • **Irregular action** (अनियमित कार्य) - *Earthquakes come in Japan.*
 • **Habits** (आदत) - *He smokes.*
 • **Universal truth** (सार्वभौमिक सत्य) - *The sun rises in the east.*

(ii) नोट: Newspaper के headlines और sports के commentary में भी simple present tense का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: PM signs deal.

Sachin strikes the ball and off it goes across the boundary line.

- (iii) निकट भविष्य के किसी **planned** कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए भी simple present tense का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: The Prime Minister leaves for China next week.

Formulae: + ve → Sub + V₁ + obj. (अगर Sub I, we, they, you अथवा plural हो)

- ve → Sub + do not (don't) + V₁ + obj.

Ques → Do + Sub + V₁ + obj?

Do + Sub + not+ V₁ + obj?

Don't + Sub + V₁ + obj?

+ ve → Sub + V₁ + s/es + obj. (अगर sub he, she, it, name वा singular हो)

- ve → Sub + does not (doesn't) + V₁ + obj.

Ques → Does + Sub + V₁ + obj?

Does + Sub + not+ V₁ + obj?

Doesn't + Sub + V₁ + obj?

Correct the following sentences:-

जैसे: (1) What he knows about you? (x)

What **does he know** about you?.(✓)

(2) I don't know what he knows about you.(✓)

(3) The **appeal** of the victims to transfer the cases related to riots to some other States **do** not affect the merit of the case. (change do to **does**)

वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या

पहले वाक्य में '**what**' का प्रयोग सवाल पुछने के लिए किया जा रहा है। अतः '**what**' के बाद '**Question form**' का प्रयोग करें। दसरे वाक्य में '**what**' दो वाक्यों को जोड़ रहा है। अतः '**what**' के बाद '**sentence form**' का प्रयोग करें न कि '**question form**' का।

वाक्य 3 की व्याख्या

(3) एक वाक्य में **verb** उस **sub** के अनुसार होना चाहिए जो वाक्य का **main sub** हो। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीक वाले Subject से match कर देते हैं लेकिन ऐसा करना गलत है।

SIMPLE PAST

➤ जो कार्य खत्म हो चका वह simple past के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I saw you but you did not see me.

Formulae: Sub + V₂ + obj

Sub + did not (didn't) + V₁ + obj

Did + Sub + V₁ + obj ?

Did + Sub + not + V₁ + obj ?

Didn't + sub + V₁ + obj ?

Tense

नोट: अगर वाक्य कि शुरूआत 'It's time' या 'It's high time' से हो और उसके बाद **sub** का प्रयोग हो तो **sub** के बाद **verb** के **2nd form** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: It's time you should study. (✗)

It's time you studied. (✓)

➤ लेकिन अगर 'It's time' के बाद **to** का प्रयोग हो तो **to** के बाद **verb** का **Ist form** आएगा।

जैसे: It's time to study.

नोट: (1) You do come here everyday. (✓)
 V₁

(2) He did make a mistake. (✓)
 V₁

➤ सामान्यतः एक वाक्य में **do**, **does** एवं **did** का प्रयोग **Helping verb** के रूप में **positive** वाक्य में नहीं होता। लेकिन अगर **main verb** पर जोर देना हो तो हम **do**, **does** एवं **did** का प्रयोग **main verb** के पहले करते हैं। ऐसे वाक्य में **main verb 'V₁' form** में होना चाहिए।

नोट: अगर वाक्य में भृतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Past Tense** का प्रयोग हाता है।

जैसे: I have come yesterday (✗)

I came yesterday (✓)

SIMPLE FUTURE

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में होगा वह **Simple Future tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I shall meet you.

Formulae: + ve → Sub + shall/ will + V₁ + obj
 -ve → Sub + shall/ will + not + V₁ + obj
 Sub + shan't/ won't + V₁ + obj
Ques → Shall/will + sub + V₁ + obj ?
 Shall/ will + sub + not + V₁ + obj ?
 Shan't/ won't + sub + V₁ + obj ?

नोट: Shall/will का प्रयोग Modals में विस्तार से दिया गया है।

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य वर्तमान में यानी वाक्य को बोलते समय हो रहा हो वह **Present Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: (1) I am studying Tense now.

➤ कई बार कार्य जारी अवस्था में होते हए भी दिखाई नहीं देते। परन्त उन्हें भी 'Present Continuous Tense' के अंतर्गत रखा जा सकता है।

जैसे: (1) Coastal areas are getting submerged.

(2) Population is increasing day by day.

Tense

नोट: निकट भविष्य में होने वाले किसी कार्य को व्यक्त करने के लिए भी हम **Present Continuous Tense** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: I am going to Mumbai tomorrow.

Formulae: + ve → Sub + is/ am/ are + v₁ + ing+ obj
 - ve → Sub + is/ are/ am/ + not + v₁ + ing+ obj
 Sub + isn't/ aren't/ am not + v₁ + ing+ obj
Ques → Is/ am/ are + S + v₁ + ing+ obj?
 Is/ am/ are + S + not + v₁ + ing+ obj?
 Isn't/ aren't + S + v₁ + ing+ obj?

नोट: 'am not' का कोई contracted form नहीं होता है लेकिन Question Tag में aren't का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: I am fine, aren't I ?

- Is/am/are का प्रयोग
 Is – he/she/it/name/singular के साथ
 Am – I के साथ
 Are – you/we/they/all/plural के साथ

नोट: My father is working in a bank and my brother is studying in a school. (✗)

My father works in a bank and my brother studies in a school. (✓)

- जब वाक्य 'routine' हो तो **Present Continuous** का प्रयोग न करें बल्कि '**simple present**' का प्रयोग करें लेकिन अगर कार्य ऐसा हो जो कछ अवधि के लिए ही **routine action** रहे तो **present continuous tense** का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: I am preparing for competitive exams now-a-days.

PAST CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भत्तकाल में हो रहा था वह **Past Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I was waiting for you

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + was/were + V₁ + ing + obj
 - Ve → Sub + was/were + not + V₁ + ing + obj
 Sub + wasn't/weren't + V₁ + ing + obj
Ques → Was/were + Sub + V₁ + ing + obj?
 Was/were + Sub + not+ V₁ + ing + obj?
 Wasn't/weren't + Sub + V₁ + ing + obj?

- **Was/were** का प्रयोग
 Was → He/she/it/name/singular/I के साथ
 Were → You/we/they/plural/all के साथ
- काल्पनिक वाक्यों में सभी **sub** के साथ '**were**' का प्रयोग होता है चाहें '**were**' का प्रयोग '**helping verb**' के रूप में हो या '**main verb**' के रूप में।

Tense ——————

जैसे: 1. I wish, I were a bird.
 M.V.

2. He pretended as if he were sleeping.
 H.V.

FUTURE CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में हो रहा होगा वह **Future Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: We shall be taking the exam at this time, next month.

Formulae:

- + Ve → Sub + shall/ will + be + V₁ + ing + obj
- Ve → Sub + shall/ will + not + be + V₁ + ing + obj
Sub + shan't/ won't + be + V₁ + ing + obj
- Ques → Will/shall + Sub + be+V₁ + ing + obj?
Will/shall + Sub + not+ be+ V₁ + ing + obj?
Won't/shan't + Sub +be+ V₁ + ing + obj?

नोट: कुछ verbs का प्रयोग हम continuous tense में नहीं कर सकते क्योंकि कछ ऐसे verbs होते हैं जिनका प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' form में नहीं होता।

Verbs of Perception

- (1) **Verbs of Perception-** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize.
- (2) **Verbs of Thinking Process-** Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose.
- (3) **Verbs Showing Possession-** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist.
- (4) **Verbs expressing Feelings or State of Mind-** Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.
- (5) **Verbs in General-** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse.

उदाहरण देखें-

जैसे: 1. He is owing a car. (x)
 He owns a car. (✓)

2. This house is belonging to me. (x)
 This house belongs to me. (✓)

3. I am not meaning anything wrong. (x)
 I don't mean anything wrong. (✓)

4. I am seeing a man standing there. (x)
 I see a man standing there. (✓)

नोट: अगर 'have' का अर्थ 'अधिकार होना' हो तो 'have' में 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। अगर 'have' का अर्थ निकलता है खाना/ enjoy करना तो 'have' में 'ing' का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: I am having a piece of cake. (✓)
 I am having a car. (x)
 I have a car. (✓)

Tense

- हम **Think, remember, feel, look, appear** etc. (जिनका प्रयोग सामान्य वाक्यों में 'ing' में नहीं होना चाहिए) का प्रयोग अगर भावनाओं को दर्शाने के लिए करते हैं तब उनका प्रयोग 'ing' form में किया जा सकता है। (eg- 2 एवं 4 देखें)

- जैसे:
1. I am thinking you are right. (✗)
I think you are right. (✓)
 2. I am thinking of you. (✓)
 3. It was appearing as if they were going to kill us. (✗)
It appeared as if they were going to kill us. (✓)
 4. You are looking good. (✓)

2. **Gerund** एवं **Present participle** में **verb 'ing' form** में होते हैं।

- जैसे:
- (1) Being ill, I could not come.
 - (2) Getting a job is easy now-a-days.
 - (3) Seeing is believing.
 - (4) Swimming is a good exercise.

नोट: विस्तार से जानकारी के लिए Verb (Advance) देखें-

3. सभी **preposition** के बाद अगर **verb** का प्रयोग होता है तो **verb 'ing' form** में होना चाहिए।

- जैसे:
- (1) Bats are capable of hearing the ultrasonic waves.
V_i + ing
 - (2) We must keep away from smoking.
V_i + ing

PRESENT PERFECT

- जो कार्य अभी-अभी या हाल फिलहाल खत्म हआ हो वह **Present Perfect Tense** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: He has come to Delhi recently.

- जब कार्य महत्वपूर्ण हो न कि कार्य होने का समय एवं कार्य होने के समय का उल्लेख भी नहीं हो तब **Present perfect Tense** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे: We have progressed a lot.

We have reached the moon.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + has/ have + V₃ + obj

- Ve → Sub + has/ have + not + V₃ + obj

Sub + hasn't/ haven't + V₃ + obj

Ques → Has/ have + Sub + V₃ + obj ?

Has/ have + Sub + not+ V₃ + obj ?

Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + V₃ + obj ?

Tense ——————

Has/have के प्रयोग

has - He/ She/ It/ Name/Singular के साथ

have- I/ We/ They/ You/ Plural/ All के साथ

अंतर देखें:

1. Science has given us many new inventions. (✓)
2. We have reached the moon. (✓)

1. Science has given us many new inventions in the 19th century. (✗)
2. We have reached the moon on 22nd Oct, 2008. (✗)

➤ अगर भूतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Present perfect** नहीं **Simple past tense** का प्रयोग करें। यानि ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों के सही रूप होंगे।

1. Science gave us many life saving drugs in the 19th century. (✓)
2. We reached the moon on 22nd Oct, 2008. (✓)

नोट: 1. I have had enough problems here (✓)
He has had his breakfast (✓)

एक वाक्य में **have** के किसी भी **form** (यहाँ **have** के forms helping verb होंगे) के बाद **had** (had main verb होगा) का प्रयोग हो सकता है। क्योंकि ये **Present perfect** एवं **Past perfect** के **Formulae** में **fit** होते हैं।

2. सामान्यतः **recently, already, yet, so far** का प्रयोग **perfect tense** में होता है। 'yet' का प्रयोग **perfect tense -ve** वाक्य में होता है।

जैसे: He has not reached home yet (present perfect)
He had not done any work so far. (past perfect)
3. अगर **since** के बाद **simple past** का प्रयोग हो तो **since** के पहले **present perfect** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: I haven't seen him since he left India.
 Present perfect Simple past

- नोट:** 1. ऐसे वाक्यों में **present perfect** के स्थान पर कोई **modal** भी **perfect form** में आ सकता है।

जैसे: He may have grown old since she last saw him.
 Modal in perfect form Simple past

2. अगर **since** का प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरूआत में कर लिया जाए तो **simple past** भी **since** के साथ वाक्य के प्रथम भाग में आ जाएगा।

जैसे: **Since** he joined the army, he has not taken any leave.
 Simple past Present perfect

PAST PERFECT

नीचे दिए गये विभिन्न वाक्यों को देखें:-

1. I saw him **before** he stopped his car. (x)
I had seen him **before** he stopped his car. (✓)
2. **Before** he understood anything the robber fled. (x)
Before he understood anything the robber had fled. (✓)
3. I met him **after** I finished my work. (x)
I met him **after** I had finished my work. (✓)
4. **By the time** I reached the theatre, the show started. (x)
By the time I reached the theatre, the show had started. (✓)
5. When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him. (✓)

- प्रथम वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

$$\frac{1^{\text{st}} \text{ action} \quad \text{before} \quad 2^{\text{nd}} \text{ action}}{\text{Past Perfect} \qquad \qquad \qquad \text{Simple Past}}$$

- द्वितीय वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

$$\text{Before} \text{ का प्रयोग अगर शरू में हो तो \frac{2^{\text{nd}} \text{ action}}{\text{S. Past}}, \frac{1^{\text{st}} \text{ action}}{\text{Past Perfect}}$$

- तीसरे वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

$$\frac{2^{\text{nd}} \text{ action} \quad \text{after} \quad 1^{\text{st}} \text{ action}}{\text{Simple Past} \qquad \qquad \qquad \text{Past Perfect}}$$

- चौथे वाक्य का formation निम्न प्रकार से है-

$$\text{By the time} \frac{2^{\text{nd}} \text{ action}}{\text{Simple Past}}, \frac{1^{\text{st}} \text{ action}}{\text{Past Perfect}}$$

- अगर दो कार्य Past में एक के बाद एक हो. तो पहला कार्य Past perfect में होगा। और दसरा Simple Past tense.

Formulae:

- + Ve → Sub + had + V₃ + obj
- Ve → Sub + had + not (hadn't) + V₃ + obj
- Ques → Had + sub + V₃ + obj ?
Had + sub + not + V₃ + obj ?
Hadn't + sub + V₃ + obj ?

नोट: वाक्य 5 को देखें:-

When Anand reached his village, he found that the news about him had preceded him.

वाक्य की व्याख्या-

- जब Anand गाँव पहुँच (Simple Past) तो पाया कि उसके बारे में जो News थी वह उससे पहले पहुँच चुकी थी। (Precede का अर्थ है 'से पहले आना')। अगर कोई action 'simple past' से पहले होता है तो वह 'past perfect tense' में होता है। अतः 'news का पहुँचना' Past perfect tense में होगा।

Tense —

FUTURE PERFECT

➤ जो कार्य भविष्य में खत्म हो चका होगा वह **Future Perfect** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: You will have finished your syllabus by this time next year.

नोट: नीचे दिया गया sentence formation देखें—

जैसे: By the time I reach the station, the train will have left,
By the time, Simple Present Future Perfect

By the time, Simple Present, Future Perfect

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + will/shall + have + V₃ + obj

- Ve → Sub + will/shall + not + have + V₃ + obj

Sub + won't/shan't + have + V₃ + obj

Ques → Will/shall + Sub + have+ V₃ + obj ?

Will/shall + Sub + not + have + V₃ + obj ?

Won't/shan't + Sub +have + V₃ + obj ?

अंतर देखें:-

1. **By the time** I reach the station, the train will have left,
Simple Present Future Perfect

2. **By the time** I reached the station, the train had left,
Simple Past Past Perfect

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

➤ जो कार्य भूतकाल में शर्स हआ हो और अभी भी चल रहा हो वह **Present Perfect Continuous tense** के अंतर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I have been living in Delhi for five years.

Formulae:

+ Ve → Sub + has/ have + been + V₁ + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

- Ve → Sub + has/ have + not + been + V₁ + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

Sub + hasn't/ haven't + been + V₁ + ing + obj+ for/ since + time.

Ques → Has/ have + Sub + + been + V₁+ ing + obj + for/ since + time?

Has/have + Sub +not+ been + V₁+ing + obj + for/since +time?

Hasn't/ haven't + Sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time?

जैसे: I am teaching you since an hour. (✗)

I have been teaching you for an hour. (✓)

- **For-** जब समय की अवधि का उल्लेख हो तब 'For' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: For two hours, for last 2 years

For five days, for last 2 months

For 10 years, for last 3 weeks

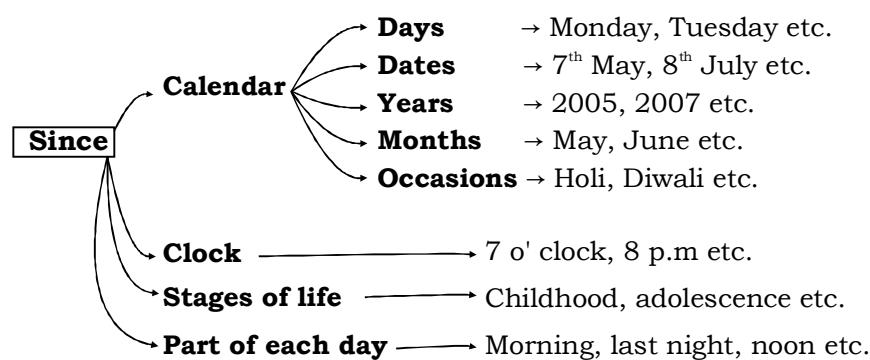
- **Since-** जब शरूआती समय का उल्लेख हो तब since का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: Since monday, since the beginning

Since 2008, since time immemorial

Since 7 P.M., since last year

Since का प्रयोग- केलेण्डर, घड़ी, दिन के पहर एवं जीवन की अवस्थाओं के साथ 'since' का प्रयोग होता है-



PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

- जो कार्य भूतकाल में शरू हआ, चला और भत्काल में खत्म हो गया वे **Past Perfect Continuous Tense** के अंतर्गत आते हैं।

जैसे: I had been waiting for you since morning.

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + had + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

-Ve → Sub + had + not (hadn't) + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time.

Ques → Had + sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Had + sub + not+ been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

Hadn't + sub + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ since + time ?

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

- जो कार्य भविष्य के किसी समय तक जारी रहेगा वह **Future Perfect Continuous tense** के अन्तर्गत आता है।

जैसे: I shall have been living in Delhi for five years by the end of this year.

He will have been playing from 2 O' clock

Tense ——————

Formulae: + Ve → Sub + shall/will + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from+time
 - Ve → Sub + shall/will + not + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/from + time
 Sub + shan't/won't + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time
 Ques → Will/shall+sub + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from+time?
 Will/shall + sub + not + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/from + time ?
 Won't/shan't + sub + have + been + V₁ + ing + obj + for/ from + time ?

नोट: 1. जिन verbs का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' में नहीं होता, उनका प्रयोग **continuous/perfect continuous** दोनों तरह के **tense** में नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि दोनों में verb 'ing' form में होते हैं। अगर ऐसे 'verbs' **continuous tense** में हो तो उन्हें **indefinite tense** में परिवर्तित कर दें।

जैसे: I am knowing you. (x)
 I know you. (✓)

2. अगर ऐसे verbs 'perfect continuous' में हो तो उन्हें '**Perfect Tense**' में परिवर्तित कर दें।

जैसे: I have been knowing him for five years. (x)
 I have known him for five years. (✓)

3. **For/Since** का प्रयोग **perfect** and **perfect continuous** दोनों प्रकार के tense में होते हैं।

जैसे: I have been living in Delhi for five years. (✓)
 I had known him for two years. (✓)

4. अगर वाक्य में **Since + time** का प्रयोग होता है तो वाक्य सिर्फ **perfect** या **perfect continuous tense** में ही होने चाहिए।

जैसे: I ate nothing since morning. (x)
 I have eaten nothing since morning. (✓)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) I have not seen him since twenty years/ (b) and so I cannot say with certainty/
 (c) whether he is alive or dead./ (d) No error
2. (a) When he did not find his cook in the kitchen/ (b) he asked his wife/ (c) where
 had he gone./ (d) No error
3. (a) Although I am playing cricket/ (b) for more than three years/ (c) I have not been
 able to score a century/ (d) No error
4. (a) I do not know where could he have gone/ (b) so early/ (c) in the morning./ (d) No error
5. (a) By the time/ (b) we got our tickets and entered the cinema theatre,/ (c) the
 show was already begun./ (d) No error
6. (a) By the time/ (b) we will get our tickets and enter the cinema theatre,/ (c) the
 show will have already begun./ (d) No error
7. (a) Gowri told me/ (b) his name after/ (c) he left./ (d) No error

Tense

8. (a) we have been / (b) celebrating many festivals/ (c) since centuries./ (d) No error
9. (a) Old age and infirmity/ (b) had began to/ (c) catch up with him./ (d) No error
10. (a) The passer-by told us/ (b) where was the marriage hall/ (c) and even led us to it./ (d) No error
11. (a) I have passed / (b) the examination/ (c) two years ago/ (d) No error
12. (a) Since he joined/ (b) this post, he did not take/ (c) any bribe./ (d) No error
13. (a) Perhaps you know/ (b) that I have passed/ (c) the examination in 1990./ (d) No error
14. (a) He has read four plays/ (b) written by Shakespeare/ (c) by the end of his vacation./ (d) No error
15. (a) When they stole / (b) the money/ (c) and where did they hide it?./ (d) No error
16. (a) The teacher/ (b) has took/ (c) the responsibility/ (d) No error.
17. (a) For time immemorial/ (b) sea shells have been used by man/ (c) in many ways./ (d) No error
18. (a) The river is in spate/ (b) and it has overflowed/ (c) its banks./ (d) No error
19. (a) The little boy/ (b) had been waiting for his turn/ (c) since a long time./ (d) No error
20. (a) This T.V. serial/ (b) is going on/ (c) for 3 years./ (d) No error
21. (a) In the early years of the renaissance of Bharatanatyam, hereditary dancers have their own set of accompanists/ (b) who lived with the dancers and travelled with them from place to place/ (c) when they gave performances./ (d) No error
22. (a) This is turned out to be/ (b) one of our most successful projects/ (c) and we have made quite/ (d) a large profit from it./ (e) No error
23. (a) He is given me/ (b) a lot of documents/ (c) to read before/ (d) the presentation tomorrow./ (e) No error
24. (a) Since the trip home/ (b) was expensive I/ (c) did not went home/ (d) during the holidays./ (e) No error
25. (a) As she is late/ (b) for work yesterday she decided/ (c) to skip breakfast and/ (d) leave for office./ (e) No error
26. (a) As soon as the CEO entered the office, the/ (b) union leaders approached him/ (c) and report the matter to him./ (d) No error
27. (a) The college/ (b) is running a computer course/ (c) since 2007./ (d) No error
28. (a) Did he tell you/ (b) why he hasn't/ (c) come yesterday?/ (d) No error
29. (a) Last night I dream/ (b) I was a Sheikh on the 169th floor/ (c) of Burj Khalifa./ (d) No error
30. (a) She and her sister/ (b) were working here/ (c) since 1983./ (d) No error

Tense —

31. (a) Nobody saw him/ (b) since the fire broke/ (c) in his locality./ (d) No error
32. (a) By this time next year/ (b) Ramesh will take/ (c) his degree./ (d) No error
33. (a) The families/ (b) are living in Gulmohar Park/ (c) for the last two decades./ (d) No error
34. (a) My uncle/ (b) has left/ (c) for Bombay last Saturday./ (d) No error
35. (a) Good heavens !/ (b) How has she/ (c) grown !/ (d) No error
36. (a) I ate/ (b) nothing/ (c) since morning/ (d) No error
37. (a) He/ (b) is having/ (c) many friends here/ (d) No error
38. (a) When I went there/ (b) Charles is playing/ (c) a game of chess / (d) No error
39. (a) The vaccine/ (b) when hit the market/ (c) is dogged by controversy/ (d) No error
40. (a) The victim tried to tell us/ (b) what has happened but/ (c) his voice was not audible./ (d) No error
41. (a) Our history can be seen as a long evolutionary dialectical development/(b) in which there have been/ (c) a painstaking forging of rational and moral self./ (d) No error
42. (a) Last year two Italian prisoners of war/ (b) escapes from a prison camp/ (c) in Kenya during the war./ (d) No error
43. (a) Madhuri Dixit/ (b) is having/ (c) a large fan following./ (d) No error
44. (a) No one heard anything/ (b) about him since/ (c) he left India for good./ (d) No error
45. (a) Before the teacher/ (b) could finish the question/ (c) the students gave the correct answer./ (d) No error
46. (a) She did not prepare/ (b) her/ (c) breakfast yet./ (d) No error
47. (a) Perhaps you do not know/ (b) I am owning/ (c) a farm house besides two bungalows./ (d) No error
48. (a) When Anand reached his village/ (b) he found that / (c) the news about him preceded him./ (d) No error
49. (a) She will already return/ (b) home/ (c) when he arrives./ (d) No error
50. (a) Each one of them/ (b) has have his share/ (c) of joy and sorrow./ (d) No error
51. (a) This custom/ (b) has come down/ (c) since times immemorial./ (d) No error
52. (a) Since his arrival in India,/ (b) he is visiting as many villages as he can/ (c) to acquire a firsthand knowledge of the rural India./ (d) No error.
53. (a) Believe me, I/ (b) am believing/ (c) whatever you have said./ (d) No error.
54. (a) It is time/ (b) we should have done/ (c) something useful/ (d) No error.
55. (a) Mother said,/ (b) "Son,/ (c) you have finished your homework?"/ (d) No error.
56. (a) I am going to buy/ (b) a computer/ (c) when the prices comes down./ (d) No error.
57. (a) I wish/ (b) I have learnt swimming/ (c) when I was young./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (a) 'twenty years' अवधि है अतः 'since' नहीं 'for' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (c) 'he' के बाद had का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है। प्रश्नात्मक वाक्यों में helping verb का प्रयोग subject के पहले होता है।
3. (a) 'am' को 'have been' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य present perfect continuous tense' में है।
4. (a) He के बाद could का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है।
5. (c) was के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें। अगर भूतकाल में दो कार्य एक के बाद एक हो तो पहले होने वाला कार्य 'Past perfect tense' में होता है और उसके बाद होने वाला कार्य 'simple past tense' में होता है।
6. (b) 'will' होता है। 'we get our tickets' सही formation है। अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो तो बाद में होने वाला कार्य 'simple present tense' में होता है और उसके पहले जो कार्य हो चका होगा वह 'future perfect tense' में।
7. (c) 'he had left' सही formation है।

Simple Past after Past Perfect

$$\underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{2nd Action}} \quad \underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{1st Action}}$$

8. (c) 'since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'centuries' अवधि है।
9. (b) had के साथ V₃ 'begun' का प्रयोग करें।
10. (b) marriage hall के बाद 'was' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
11. (a) I passed (Simple past) सही formation है।
अगर भूतकाल के समय का उल्लेख हो तो present perfect नहीं Simple past tense का प्रयोग करें।
12. (b) 'He did not take' के स्थान पर 'he has not taken' का प्रयोग करें।

Since S + V₂ S + has + V₃ (Present Perfect का आखिरी point देखें)

$$\underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{S. Past}} \quad \underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{Pres. Perf.}}$$

13. (b) 'I passed' सही formation है। (वाक्य II की व्याख्या देखें)।
14. (a) 'He will have read' का प्रयोग 'He has read' के स्थान पर होगा। जो कार्य भविष्य के किसी समय तक हो चका होगा वह future perfect tense के अंतर्गत आता है।
15. (a) 'When they stole' के स्थान पर 'When did they steal' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्या प्रश्न है।
16. (b) has के साथ V₃ 'taken' का प्रयोग करें।
17. (a) Time immemorial (अनंत काल) शरूआती समय को दर्शाता है ना कि अवधि को। अतः 'for' के स्थान पर 'since' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (b) 'Overflow' का V₃ overflowed है।
19. (c) 'since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'a long time' अवधि है।
20. (b) Is going के स्थान पर 'has been going' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य present perfect Continuous tense का है।
21. (a) 'early years of renaissance' से ज्ञात होता होता है कि वाक्य भूतकाल का है। अतः hereditary dancers के बाद 'have' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें।
22. (a) 'This is turned out' के स्थान पर 'this has turned out' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य present perfect

Tense —

tense में है।

23. (a) 'He is given me' के स्थान पर 'he has given me' का प्रयोग करें।
 24. (c) did not के साथ V₁ का प्रयोग होता है। 'went' के स्थान पर 'go' का प्रयोग करें।
 25. (a) 'She is late' के स्थान पर 'she was late' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि yesterday भत्काल के समय को दर्शाता है।
 26. (c) 'report' के स्थान पर 'reported' का प्रयोग करें verb 'report' को छोड़कर सभी verb 'V₂' form में है।
 27. (b) is 'running' के स्थान पर 'has been running' का प्रयोग करें।
 28. (b) 'he hasn't' के स्थान पर 'he hadn't' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 11 की व्याख्या देखें)।
 29. (a) 'last night' के साथ V₂ का प्रयोग करें। यानि dream के स्थान पर dreamed या dreamt का।
 30. (b) 'were' के स्थान पर 'had been' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि वाक्य में since + time (since 1983) का प्रयोग हो रहा है। वाक्य Past Perfect Continuous tense में होना चाहिए।
 31. (a) 'Nobody has seen him' का प्रयोग करें। Since के बाद 'simple past' है तो Since के पहले 'Present perfect' का प्रयोग होगा।
 32. (b) 'Ramesh will take' के स्थान पर 'Ramesh will have taken' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 14 की व्याख्या देखें)।
 33. (b) 'are' के स्थान पर 'have been' का प्रयोग करें।
 34. (b) has left के स्थान पर 'left' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 11 की व्याख्या देखें)।
 35. (b) 'has she' के स्थान पर 'she has' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं है।
 36. (a) 'I ate' के स्थान पर I have eaten का प्रयोग करें। 'Since/for + time' का प्रयोग perfect एवं perfect Continuous tense में ही होता है।
 37. (b) 'is having' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'have' का अर्थ होता है 'to possess' तो 'have' के साथ 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
 38. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'When I went there' से स्पष्ट है कि वाक्य भत्काल का है।
 39. (c) 'is' के स्थान पर was का प्रयोग करें। vaccine when hit' से स्पष्ट है वाक्य simple past tense में है।
 40. (b) 'has' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि victim (पीड़ित) ने जब बोलने की कोशिश की उस से पहले उसके साथ हादसा हो चका था। यानि घटना Past Perfect tense में होना चाहिए।
 41. (b) 'have' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें।
 42. (b) 'escapes' के स्थान पर 'escaped' का प्रयोग करें।
 43. (b) 'is having' के स्थान पर 'has' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 37 को देखें)।
 44. (a) 'No one heard' के स्थान पर 'no one has heard' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 12 की व्याख्या देखें)।
 45. (c) 'the students gave' के स्थान पर 'the students had given' का प्रयोग करें।

Before $\underbrace{\text{Simple Past}}_{\text{2nd Action}}, \underbrace{\text{Past Perfect}}_{\text{1st Action}} (\text{Past Perfect देखें})$ ।

Tense

46. (a) 'She did not prepare' के स्थान पर 'she has not prepared' का प्रयोग करें। 'yet' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'Present perfect negative sentences में होता है।
47. (b) 'I am owning' को 'I own' में परिवर्तित करें।
48. (c) 'Preceded' के स्थान पर 'had preceded' का प्रयोग करें। (47 एवं 48 की व्याख्या के लिए Past Perfect देखें।)
49. (a) 'Will have already returned' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 6 की व्याख्या देखें।)
50. (b) 'has' के बाद V₃ 'had' का प्रयोग होगा।
51. (c) 'times' को 'time' में परिवर्तित करें।
52. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'has been' का प्रयोग करें।
53. (b) 'am believing' को 'believe' में परिवर्तित करें।
54. (b) 'we should have done' को 'we did' में परिवर्तित करें।
55. (c) 'you have' को 'have you' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य प्रश्नात्मक है।
56. (c) 'Prices comes' को 'price comes' में परिवर्तित करें।
57. (b) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। क्योंकि वाक्य Past का है।

3

PASSIVE VOICE

CHAPTER

- **Verb** का वह रूप **Voice** कहलाता है जिससे पता चलता है कि कर्ता कोई काम करता है या कर्ता पर कोई काम होता है।

ACTIVE VOICE

- **Verb** का वह रूप **active voice** कहलाता है जिससे ये जात हो कि कर्ता (**Sub**) किसी क्रिया (**verb**) को किसी कर्म (**obj**) पर करता है।

General Formula:- Sub + verb + obj

PASSIVE VOICE

- **Verb** का वह रूप **Passive Voice** कहलाता है जिससे ये जात होता है कि कर्म (**obj**) पर किसी क्रिया (**verb**) का प्रभाव पड़ता है।

General Formula:- Obj + Helping Verb + V₃ + by + sub
Tense के अनुसार परिवर्तित

- **Passive Voice** का प्रयोग कहाँ होता है?

1. जब क्रिया स्वतः नहीं होता बल्कि उसे किया जाता है।

जैसे: Tea grows both in Assam and Ceylon. (✗)

Tea is grown both in Assam and Ceylon. (✓)

2. जब क्रिया महत्वपूर्ण हो यानि 'घटना'

जैसे: He was rushed to the hospital where he was declared brought dead.

- इस वाक्य में 'घटना' महत्वपूर्ण है यानि किसी 'दुर्घटना' के बाद घायल व्यक्ति को तुरंत अस्पताल ले जाना और उसे मृत घोषित किया जाना। यहाँ घायल को अस्पताल ले जाने वाले 'लोग' और ये घोषणा करने वाले 'डॉक्टर' कि घायल को मृत लाया गया अप्रासंगिक (irrelevant) है।

3. जब कर्ता का पता नहीं या ये महत्वपूर्ण नहीं कि कर्ता ज्ञात हो।

जैसे: People were relocated from the flood affected villages.

अब विभिन्न Tense के Active एवं Passive Voice देखें-

INDEFINITE TENSE

Indefinite Tense	Active	Passive
Simple Present	Sub + V ₁ + obj	Obj + is/am/are + V ₃ + by + sub.
Simple Past	Sub + V ₂ + obj	Obj + was/were + V ₃ + by + sub.
Simple Future	Sub + shall/will + V ₁ + obj	Obj + shall/will + be + V ₃ + by + sub.
Modal	Sub + modall + V ₁ + obj	Obj + modal + be + V ₃ + by + sub.

CHANGE THE VOICE

Active

- जैसे:
1. Police arrested him.
 2. People speak English all over the world.
 3. A teacher teaches English here.
 4. No one desires riots.
 5. I will not tolerate this nonsense.

Passive

1. He was arrested.
2. English is spoken all over the world.
3. English is taught here.
4. Riots are not desired.
5. This nonsense will not be tolerated by me.

Explanation of sentences no. 1, 2 & 3.

- कुछ क्रियायें निश्चित sub के द्वारा किए जाते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों में **active voice** में उसी **sub** का प्रयोग करे जो सामान्यतः वह कार्य करता हो अगर **passive voice** में sub का उल्लेख नहीं हो (वाक्य 1 से 3 देखें)।
- इसी प्रकार क्रियायें अगर किसी **indefinite pronoun** या **vague noun** के द्वारा किये जाएं तो **Passive voice** में '**by + sub**' का प्रयोग न करें। (वाक्य 2 एवं 4 देखें)। ऐसा तब भी किया जाता है जब 'sub' इतना obvious हो कि उसका उल्लेख करना जरूरी नहीं हो। (वाक्य 2 देखें)।
- **Be** (या उसके forms) अगर **main verb** के स्थान पर हो तो वाक्य **passive voice** में नहीं हो सकता।

जैसे:

1. I am happy. (A.V)
m.v.

2. He should be polite. (A.V)
m.v.

➤ इन दोनों वाक्यों का passive voice नहीं बन सकता।

CONTINUOUS TENSE

Continuous Tense	Active	Passive
Present Continuous	Sub + is/ am/ are / V ₁ + ing + obj	obj + is/am/are + being + V ₃ + by + sub
Past Continuous	Sub + was / were + V ₁ + ing + obj	obj + was/were + being + V ₃ + by + sub
Future Continuous	Sub + shall/will + be + V ₁ + ing + obj	Future Continuous का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता है।
Modal Continuous	Sub + modal + be + V ₁ + ing + obj	Modal Continuous का Passive नहीं बनाया जा सकता है।

नोट: अगर **Passive Voice 'Continuous Tense'** में हो तो '**being**' का प्रयोग करना न भूलें।

Passive Voice —————

CHANGE THE VOICE

- जैसे: 1. The committee is looking into the matter. (Active)
 The matter is being looked **into** by the committee. (Passive)
- नोट: **Verb** के बाद आने वाले **preposition** को **P.V.** में लगाना न भूलें।
2. They are laughing at you. (Active)
 You are being laughed **at** by them. (Passive)
3. The accused is being produced before the court. (Passive)
 The police are producing the accused before the court. (Active)
4. Right to protest peacefully is being demanded by the revolutionaries. (Passive)
 The revolutionaries are demanding right to protest peacefully. (Active)
5. You were not taking the exam seriously. (Active)
 The exam was not being taken seriously by you. (Passive)

PERFECT TENSE

Perfect Tense	Active	Passive
Present Perfect	Sub + has/have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + has / have + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Past Perfect	Sub + had + V ₃ + obj	Obj + had + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Future Perfect	Sub + shall/ will + have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + shall / will + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub
Modal Perfect	Sub + Modal + have + V ₃ + obj	Obj + modal + have + been + V ₃ + by + sub

नोट: अगर **Passive Voice 'Perfect Tense'** में हो तो '**been**' का प्रयोग करना न भूलें।

CHANGE THE VOICE

- जैसे: 1. **Who** has seen him? (Active)
 By whom has he been seen? (Passive)
2. The news has surprised us. (Active)
 We have been surprised **at** the news. (Passive)
3. He will have understood your ulterior motive by that time. (Active)
 Your ulterior motive will have been understood by him by that time. (Passive)
4. The committee had looked into the matter impartially before he was found guilty.
 The matter had been looked into by the committee impartially before it found him guilty.

नोट: कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद **fixed preposition** आते हैं। known **to**, surprised **at**, amazed **at**, astonished **at**, startled **at**, vexed **at**, annoyed **with** somebody, annoyed **at** something, contained **in**, embodied **in**, crammed **with**, decorated **with**, filled **with**, ornamented **with**, thronged **with**, tired **of**, engulfed **in**.

- जैसे: 1. The fire engulfed the building.
 The building was engulfed **in** the fire.
2. This box contains ten cigars.
 Ten cigars are contained **in** this box.

WH - QUESTIONS:

- **Yes/No Questions** का **Passive** बनाकर उसके पहले **Interrogative Words** जोड़ देने से **Wh-Questions** बन जाता है।

जैसे: Active: Have you broken the glass?
Passive: Has the glass been broken by you?

- अब इन **Yes/No Questions** के पहले **Interrogative Word** जोड़कर देखें-
Active: Why have you broken the glass?

Passive: Why has the glass been broken by you?
 ↓ ↓
 Interrogative word Yes / No Question

- यह Rule - **Why, How, When, Where, What** आदि के साथ लागू होते हैं। किन्तु, **Who** या **Whom** आदि से शुरू होने वाले Questions के Passive को देखें-

Active: **Who** wrote the Ramayana?
Passive: **By whom** was the Ramayana written?
or

Who was the Ramayana written by?

[Whom was the Ramayana written by? कहना गलत है।]

Active: **Whom** have you invited?

Passive: **Who** has been invited by you?

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

1. With obj

(i) Shut the door (A.V.)

1st way Let the door be shut. (P.V.)

Let + obj + be + V₃

2nd way You are ordered to shut the door. (P.V.)

You are ordered/ requested/ forbidden etc. + to + V₁ + obj.

2. Without obj

(i) Go away. (A.V.)

You are ordered to go away. (P.V.)

You are ordered/ requested/ forbidden etc. + to + V₁ + obj.

Moral Suggestion

(i) Help the poor. (A.V.)

The poor should be helped. (P.V.)

Obj + should + be + V₃

INFINITIVE (TO + V₂)

Active: **To + V₁**

Passive: **To + be + V₃**

1. Active : I am to do it.
Passive : It is to be done by me.
2. Active: You are to write it in ink.
Passive: It is to be written in ink.

Passive Voice

नोट: 'to + V₁' को passive voice में 'to + be + V₃' में परिवर्तित कर देते हैं पर ये हमेशा नहीं किया जा सकता। अगर 'to + V₁' को करने वाले **subject** का उल्लेख 'to + V₁' से पहले हो चुका हो तो 'to + V₁' को 'to + be + V₃' में परिवर्तित न करें।

जैसे: Active: The teacher gave me a book to read.
Passive: I was given a book to read by my teacher.

'HAVE/HAS/HAD + TO + V₁'

Active: **S + have / has / had + to + V₁ + Obj**

Passive: **Obj + have / has / had + to + be + V₃ + by + sub.**

जैसे: (i) Active: $\frac{\text{I}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{have}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{to}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{finish}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{this work.}}{\downarrow}$
 $\text{S} \quad \text{have} \quad \text{to} \quad \text{V}_1 \quad \text{Obj}$

Passive: $\frac{\text{This work}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{has}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{to}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{be}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{finished}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{by}}{\downarrow} \frac{\text{me}}{\downarrow}$
 $\text{Obj} \quad \text{has} \quad \text{to} \quad \text{be} \quad \text{V}_3 \quad \text{by} \quad \text{sub}$

(ii) Active: You have to choose a dress.
Passive: A dress has to be chosen by you.

VERB- LET, BID, HELP, MAKE

➤ Verb- **Let, bid, help** और **make** का प्रयोग **active voice** में **direct infinitive** (बिना 'to' के) के साथ होता है।

जैसे: 1. She let me go.
2. I bade him leave the room.
3. They must help me finish the work.
4. I made him wash all the clothes

➤ **Bid, help** और **make** का प्रयोग **passive voice** में 'to' के साथ होगा।

जैसे: 1. He was bidden to leave the room by me.
2. I must be helped to finish the work.
3. He was made to wash all the clothes by me.

नोट: 'Let' का प्रयोग वाक्य में अलग-अलग अर्थ में हो सकता है। Passive voice में भी उसी अनुसार परिवर्तन होंगे।

जैसे: 1. Let me play (अनुमति)
I may be allowed to play.
2. Let him do this work.
Let this work be done by him.
3. Let us organize a party (सलाह, वाक्य में object भी है)
A party should be organized.
4. Let us help the poor. (नैतिक सलाह)
The poor should be helped.

VERBS FOLLOWED BY ADJECTIVES.

Rose smells sweet. (Active)

Rose is sweet when it is smelt. (Passive)

- जैसे: 1. Quinine tastes bitter. (Active)
Quinine is bitter when it is tasted. (Passive)
2. Those mangoes tasted sour. (Active)
Those mangoes were sour when they were tasted. (Passive)

PRACTICE SET

Directions: A sentence has been given in Active/Passive Voice. Out of the four alternatives suggested below, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Passive/Active Voice.

1. What amused you?

- (a) What you are made to amuse by?
 - (b) By what are you being amused?
 - (c) By what were you amused?
 - (d) By what have you been amused?

2. Smoke and flames engulfed the area and made rescue operations difficult.

- (a) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and make rescue operations difficult.
 - (b) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames making rescue operations difficult.
 - (c) The area has been engulfed in smoke and flames and made rescue operations difficult.
 - (d) The area was engulfed in smoke and flames and rescue operations were made difficult.

3. He asked me to finish the work in time.

- (a) I was asked that I should finish the work in time.
 - (b) He asked me that I should finish the work in time.
 - (c) I was asked to finish the work in time.
 - (d) I was asked to finished the work in time by him.

4. Quinine tastes bitter.

- (a) Quinine is bitter when it is tasted.
 - (b) Quinine is bitter tested.
 - (c) The taste of quinine is bitter.
 - (d) Quinine is tasted bitter.

5. The vintage cars hold a special place in the hearts of their owners.

- (a) A special place in the hearts of the vintage car owners is held by them.
 - (b) A special place was held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
 - (c) A special place is held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.
 - (d) A special place is being held by the vintage cars in the hearts of their owners.

Passive Voice —————

6. The accountant took the cheque from the customer.

- (a) The cheque is taken from the customer by the accountant.
- (b) The cheque was taken from the customer by the accountant.
- (c) The customer was taken the cheque by the accountant.
- (d) The cheque had been taken from the customer by the accountant.

7. The gatekeeper refused him admittance.

- (a) He was refused admittance by the gatekeeper.
- (b) Admittance is refused to him by the gatekeeper.
- (c) Admittance was refused by the gatekeeper .
- (d) Admittance is refused him by the gatekeeper.

8. Sohan was interviewing the political leaders.

- (a) The political leaders were being interviewed by Sohan.
- (b) The political leader was being interviewed by Sohan.
- (c) The political leaders are being interviewed by Sohan.
- (d) The political leaders is being interviewed by Sohan.

9. The builders have built a perfect dam across the stream.

- (a) A perfect dam has built by the builders across the stream.
- (b) A perfect dam has been built by the builders across the stream.
- (c) A perfect dam have been built by the builders across the stream.
- (d) A perfect dam was being built by the builders across the stream.

10. They should follow all the instructions carefully.

- (a) All the instructions are carefully followed by them.
- (b) All the instructions should be carefully followed by them.
- (c) All the instructions have to be followed by them.
- (d) All the instructions can be carefully followed by them.

11. Shut the door and leave.

- (a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to leave.
- (b) Let the door be shutted and you are ordered to leave.
- (c) Let the door be shut and you be left.
- (d) Let be the door shut and you are ordered to leave.

12. Who knows you?

- (a) By whom are you known?
- (b) Whom are you known by?
- (c) To whom are you known?
- (d) Who are you known?

13. Help others but do not expect anything in return.

- (a) You are advised to help others and expect anything in return.
- (b) Let others be helped and expect nothing in return.
- (c) You were advised to help others and expect anything in return.
- (d) You are advised to help others but forbidden to expect anything in return.

14. **We are taught English here.**

- (a) A teacher teaches us English here.
- (b) English is taught here.
- (c) A lady teaches us English here.
- (d) You teach us English here.

15. **The news surprised us.**

- (a) We were surprised at the news.
- (b) We were surprised by the news.
- (c) We were surprised with the news.
- (d) We were surprised on the news.

16. **Spain expected to win the world cup.**

- (a) The world cup was expected to be won by Spain.
- (b) It was expected by Spain to win the World Cup.
- (c) To win the World Cup has been expected by Spain.
- (d) Spain expected that the World Cup be won by it.

17. **After taking her to the hospital, I dropped her at her place.**

- (a) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
- (b) After been taken to the hospital, she was dropped at her place by me.
- (c) After being taken she was sent to hospital and dropped at her place by me.
- (d) After being taken to the hospital, she was dropped on her place by me.

18. **Have this lock broken.**

- (a) Break this lock.
- (b) Get someone to break this lock.
- (c) Let this lock be broken.
- (d) Have broken this lock be.

19. **Think before you speak.**

- (a) Let thinking be done before you speak.
- (b) Let speaking be not done before you think.
- (c) You are advised to think before you speak.
- (d) You are requested to think before you speak.

20. **The case is being investigated by the police alongwith the CBI.**

- (a) The police alongwith the CBI are investigating the case.
- (b) The police alongwith the CBI is investigating the case.
- (c) The police alongwith the CBI was investigating the case.
- (d) The police alongwith the CBI were investigating the case.

21. **He doesn't like people to call him cheat.**

- (a) He doesn't like to be called a cheat.
- (b) He doesn't like to be call is a cheat.
- (c) He doesn't like anyone to call him cheat.
- (d) To call cheat is not liked by him.

Passive Voice —————

22. At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even Einstein asked questions.

- (a) At Paramount every question is answered as we believe that even questions were asked by Einstein.
- (b) At Paramount every question is answered as that is believed by us that Einstein even asked question.
- (c) At Paramount we answer every question as it is believed by us that questions were asked by even Einstein.
- (d) Every question is answered by Paramount as we believe that Einstein asked even questions.

23. You must hit the nail on the head.

- (a) The nail must hit on the head.
- (b) The nail must be hit on the head.
- (c) The nail has to be hit on the head.
- (d) The nail on the head must be hit.

24. Those mangoes smell sweet.

- (a) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smell.
- (b) Those mangoes are sweet when they are smelt
- (c) Those mangoes were sweet when those are smelt.
- (d) Sweet are smelt by those mangoes.

25. The little boy asked the man the way to Athens.

- (a) The man has been asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (b) The man was asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (c) The man was being asked the way to Athens by the little boy.
- (d) The way to Athens was asked by the man from the little boy.

26. Shut the door and go away.

- (a) Let the door be shut and you are ordered to go away.
- (b) You are ordered to go away and shut the door.
- (c) Let the door be shut and let you be gone.
- (d) Shut the door and let you be gone.

27. Your proposal was objected to and everyone laughed at you.

- (a) Everyone objected your proposal and laughed at you.
- (b) Everyone objected to your proposal and you were laughed at.
- (c) Everyone objected to and laughed at you and your proposal.
- (d) Your proposal was objected and you were laughed.

28. Let everyone be given a chance.

- (a) Give everyone a chance.
- (b) Give a chance for everyone.
- (c) Let a chance be given to everyone.
- (d) I will give up a chance.

29. Do not make a noise.

- (a) Let a noise be made not.
- (b) You are requested to not make a noise.
- (c) You are ordered to not make a noise.
- (d) You are forbidden to make a noise.

30. People are raising a hue and cry and are breaking the furniture.

- (a) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture is being broken by the people.
- (b) A hue and cry is being raised and the furniture are being broken by the people.
- (c) Hue and cry and the furniture is being broken.
- (d) A hue and cry has been raised and the furniture has been broke.

31. The fur coats were imported from Sweden by us.

- (a) Sweden imported the fur coats.
- (b) Sweden was imported the fur coats.
- (c) We imported the fur coats from Sweden.
- (d) We had imported the fur coats from Sweden.

32. A bullet in the chest is adored by the brave.

- (a) The brave adores a bullet in the chest.
- (b) The brave adore a bullet in the chest.
- (c) The brave adored a bullet in the chest.
- (d) The brave have adored a bullet in the chest.

33. Decisions must be taken.

- (a) Decisions should be taken.
- (b) We must take decisions.
- (c) It is good to take decisions.
- (d) We should take decisions.

34. Are they not cheating us?.

- (a) Are we not being cheated?
- (b) Are not we being cheated?
- (c) Are we being not cheated?
- (d) Are we being cheated?

35. The room was cleaned.

- (a) The cleaner cleaned the room.
- (b) The room should be cleaned.
- (c) I cleaned the room.
- (d) Someone cleaned the room.

36. I should have met him yesterday.

- (a) He should have met by me yesterday.
- (b) He should be meeting me yesterday.
- (c) He should have been meeting by me yesterday.
- (d) He should have been met by me yesterday.

Passive Voice ——————

37. One could see her lying on the flowerbeds.

- (a) Flowerbeds could be seen lying on her.
- (b) She could see on lying on flowerbeds.
- (c) She could be seen lying on flowerbeds.
- (d) She could be lying on flowerbeds seen.

38. We expect good news.

- (a) Good news is expected by us.
- (b) Let good news be expected.
- (c) Let us expect good news.
- (d) Expecting good news from them.

39. My teacher gave me a journal to read.

- (a) I was given a journal by my teacher to be read.
- (b) A journal to read was given to me by my teacher.
- (c) A journal was given me to read by my teacher.
- (d) I was given a journal by my teacher to read.

40. It is impossible to do this.

- (a) This is impossible to be done.
- (b) To do this by it is impossible.
- (c) It is impossible to have done this.
- (d) It can't be done.

41. Physically challenged people should not be laughed at by the public.

- (a) Physically challenged people should not laugh at the public.
- (b) The public will not be laughing at physically challenged people.
- (c) The public shall not be laughing at physically challenged people.
- (d) The public should not laugh at physically challenged people.

42. They say that people live on distant planets .

- (a) It was said that people live on distant planets .
- (b) It is being said that people live on distant planets .
- (c) It is said that people live on distant planets .
- (d) It is saying that people live on distant planets .

43. Can we send the parcel tomorrow?

- (a) Can be the parcel sent by us tomorrow?
- (b) Can we be sent by the parcel tomorrow?
- (c) Can the parcel be sent by us tomorrow?
- (d) Can the parcel sent by us tomorrow?

44. A detective arrested him as soon as he got home.

- (a) An arrest was made by a detective as soon as he got home.
- (b) He was arrested by a detective as soon as he got home.
- (c) A detective was arrested by him as soon as he got home.
- (d) An arrest was detected by him as soon as he got home.

45. They cooked the food and sent it to the orphanage.

- (a) They cooked food was sent to the orphanage by them.
- (b) The food was cooked and sent to the orphanage by them.
- (c) The food was sent to the orphanage by them.
- (d) The food was cooked and sent by them.

46. Where were they playing the cricket match?

- (a) Where was the cricket match played?
- (b) Where has the cricket match been played?
- (c) Where will the cricket match be played?
- (d) Where was the cricket match being played?

47. They say he can teach almost anything in this world.

- (a) It is said that almost anything in this world can be taught by him.
- (b) It was said that almost anything could be taught by him.
- (c) They say almost anything could be taught by him.
- (d) They say anything almost will be taught by him.

48. Please enter by the left door.

- (a) Let the left door be entered by you.
- (b) You are requested to enter by the left door.
- (c) Let it be entered by the left door.
- (d) The left door is requested to be entered.

49. I would advise you not to get on the wrong side of your boss.

- (a) It would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (b) It would be my advice not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (c) You would be advised by me not to get on the wrong side of your boss.
- (d) My advice to you would be not to get on the wrong side of your boss.

50. They have done this to defuse the crisis.

- (a) The crisis has been defused by them.
- (b) This has been done by them to defuse the crisis .
- (c) To defuse the crisis this was done by them.
- (d) To defuse the crisis this is done by them.

51. Open the door.

- (a) The door must be opened.
- (b) The door will be opened.
- (c) The door is opened.
- (d) Let the door be opened.

52. I did not trust anybody.

- (a) Nobody was trusted by me.
- (b) Anybody had been trusted by me.
- (c) Nobody would be trusted by me.
- (d) Nobody has been trusted by me.

Passive Voice —

53. Did he remember the date and time?

- (a) Are the date and time remembered by him?
- (b) Was he remembering the date and time?
- (c) Were the date and time remembered by him?
- (d) Did the date and time be remembered by him?

54. The boys were digging a hole in the ground.

- (a) A hole was being dug in the ground by the boys.
- (b) In the ground, the boys dug a hole.
- (c) A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.
- (d) A hole in the ground has been dug by the boys.

55. We must now deal with these problems.

- (a) These problems must now be dealt with by us.
- (b) These problems must now be dealing with by us.
- (c) These problems must now deal with by us.
- (d) These problems are to be dealt with by us.

56. The audience loudly cheered the leader's speech.

- (a) The leader's speech was loudly cheered by the audience.
- (b) The leader's speech in loudly cheered by the audience.
- (c) The audience loudly cheered the leader for his speech.
- (d) The speech of the leader was loudly cheered by the audience.

57. Someone is following us.

- (a) We are following by someone.
- (b) We are being followed by someone.
- (c) We were being followed by someone.
- (d) We had been followed by someone.

58. He hasn't slept in his bed.

- (a) His bed hasn't been slept in.
- (b) He had not been slept in his bed.
- (c) His bed had been slept in.
- (d) His bed had not been slept in.

59. I was recommended another lawyer.

- (a) Somebody recommended another lawyer.
- (b) Somebody recommended me to another lawyer.
- (c) Somebody recommended me another lawyer.
- (d) Somebody recommends me another lawyer.

60. Many a person has been saved from the man-eaters by these hunters.

- (a) These hunters will save many a person from the man-eaters.
- (b) These hunters say many a person from the man-eaters.
- (c) These hunters saved many a person from the man-eaters.
- (d) These hunters have saved many a person from the man-eaters.

61. Must we cut this tree?

- (a) Must this tree will cut?
- (b) Must this tree be cut?
- (c) Must his tree was cut?
- (d) Must his tree is cut?

62. You will be looked after well.

- (a) They will look after you well.
- (b) They can't look after you well.
- (c) They may look after well.
- (d) They shall look after you well.

63. Didn't they tell you to be here by six o'clock?

- (a) Weren't you told to be here by six o'clock?
- (b) Haven't they told you to be here by six o'clock?
- (c) You were expected to be here by six o'clock.
- (d) They expected you to be here by six O'clock.

64. Don't touch this switch.

- (a) This switch does not be touched.
- (b) This switch must not be touched.
- (c) This switch don't be touched.
- (d) This switch need not be touched.

65. One cannot gather grapes from thistles.

- (a) Thistles cannot be gathered from grapes.
- (b) Grapes cannot be gathered from thistles.
- (c) Grapes and thistles cannot be gathered by one.
- (d) Grapes cannot be gathered by them.

66. They will have completed the work by the time we get there.

- (a) The work will be completed by the time we get there.
- (b) The work will have been completed by the time we get there.
- (c) The work will have completed by the time we get there.
- (d) The work will have been completed by the time we have got there.

67. You will have to pull down this sky-scraper as you have not complied with the town planning regulations.

- (a) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
- (b) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down by you as the town planning regulations have not been complied by you.
- (c) This sky-scraper will be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with.
- (d) This sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied.

Passive Voice —

68. He has written a poem which fascinates every one.

- (a) A poem has been written by him which fascinates every one.
- (b) Everyone is fascinated by the poem which has been written by him.
- (c) Poem written by him fascinates everyone.
- (d) Every one fascinates the poem which is written by him.

69. Will those happy days be ever forgotten by me?

- (a) Will I ever forget those happy days?
- (b) Shall I ever forget those happy days?
- (c) Would I forget these happy days?
- (d) Ever shall I forget those happy days?

70. You are requested to permit him.

- (a) Please permit him.
- (b) I request you to permit me.
- (c) He requests to permit him.
- (d) I plead you to permit him.

71. I am not going to tolerate this nonsense anymore.

- (a) This nonsense is not going to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (b) This nonsense is not being gone to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (c) This nonsense is not being going to be tolerated by me anymore.
- (d) Tolerate is not being going to be done by me of this nonsense.

72. The boys were being laughed at by the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.

- (a) The passers-by laughed at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (b) The passers-by were laughing at the boys on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (c) The boys were laughing at the passers-by on the busy thoroughfare last evening.
- (d) None of the above.

73. The police are questioning Mr. and Mrs. Sharma.

- (a) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are questioned by the police.
- (b) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioning the police.
- (c) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma have been questioned by the police.
- (d) Mr. and Mrs. Sharma are being questioned by the police.

74. Before they invented printing, people had to write everything by hand.

- (a) Before printing was invented everything had to be written by hand.
- (b) Before printing was invented by them, everything had to be written.
- (c) Before printing was invented people had to write everything by hand.
- (d) Before printing was invented everything was written by hand.

75. Did any one ever make it clear how one operates the machine?

- (a) Was it ever made clear how the machine is operated?
- (b) Did any one ever make it by clear how the machine is operated?

- (c) Was ever it made clear how to operate the machine?
- (d) Was how to operate the machine ever made clear?

76. Why did your father refuse to give the money to you?

- (a) Why was your father refused money to you?
- (b) Why was the money not given to you by your father?
- (c) Why was the money refused to be given to you by your father?
- (d) Why the money was refused to be given to you by your father?

77. Do you expect your parents to come from Hyderabad today?

- (a) Did your parents come today from Hyderabad?
- (b) Were your parents expected to come from Hyderabad today?
- (c) Are your parents expected to come today from Hyderabad?
- (d) Do your parents are expected to come today from Hyderabad?

78. Why are you raising a hue and cry?

- (a) Why are a hue and cry being raised by you?
- (b) Why is a hue and cry being raised by you?
- (c) Why a hue and cry are being raised by you?
- (d) Why a hue and cry is being raised by you?

79. They say that there are living beings on Mars.

- (a) They say that Mars has living beings.
- (b) It is said that there are people living on Mars.
- (c) On Mars, there are living beings.
- (d) It is said that there are living beings on Mars.

80. A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate, the Delhi High Court sentenced him to death on Monday.

- (a) A fortnight after he had been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he had been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
- (b) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he has been sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
- (c) A fortnight after he was convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.
- (d) A fortnight after he was been convicted for the rape and murder of his classmate he was sentenced to death by the Delhi High Court on Monday.

81. Their dog bit our neighbour yesterday.

- (a) Our neighbour bit their dog yesterday.
- (b) Our neighbour bitten by their do yesterday.
- (c) Our neighbour was bitten by their dog yesterday.
- (d) Our neighbour were bit by their dog yesterday.

82. The MD told us about the new project.

- (a) We were told about the new project by the MD.
- (b) We are told about the new project by the MD.

Passive Voice —

- (c) We told by MD about the new project.
- (d) We had been told by MD about project.

83. The Minister had already informed his Cabinet about his decision.

- (a) His Cabinet was already informed about the Minister's decision.
- (b) His Cabinet has already informed the Minister about his decision.
- (c) His Cabinet had already been informed about his decision by the Minister.
- (d) His Cabinet will have already been informed about the Minister's decision.

84. Sayali gave the beggar an old sari.

- (a) An old sari was given to Sayali by the beggar.
- (b) An old sari was given to the beggar by Sayali.
- (c) The beggar was being given on old sari by Sayali.
- (d) The beggar had to be given on old sari by Sayali.

85. They are going to perform “Hamlet”.

- (a) “Hamlet” is going to be performed by them.
- (b) “Hamlet” is going to perform by them.
- (c) “Hamlet” is to perform.
- (d) “Hamlet” has to be performed.

86. I was shocked by the letter.

- (a) They shocked me with the letter.
- (b) I am shocked.
- (c) The letter shocked me.
- (d) I shocked with the letter.

87. Somebody stole my car last week.

- (a) Last week my car was steal by somebody.
- (b) My car was stolen last week by somebody.
- (c) My car was stolen that week by somebody.
- (d) Somebody last week has stolen my car.

88. Do they sell construction material?

- (a) Does construction material sold by them?
- (b) Is construction material selling by them?
- (c) Is construction material sold by them?
- (d) Does construction material sell by them?

89. Sharma was cleaning the house.

- (a) The house was cleaned by Sharma.
- (b) The house will be cleaned by Sharma.
- (c) The house was being cleaned by Sharma.
- (d) The house is being cleaned by Sharma.

90. I bought a new shirt last week.

- (a) Last week a new shirt was bought by I.
- (b) Last week a new shirt is bought by I.

- (c) Last week a new shirt was bought by me.
- (d) Last week a new shirt had been bought by me.

91. The plants have been watered by the gardener.

- (a) The gardener is watering the plants.
- (b) The gardener has been watering the plants.
- (c) The gardener has watered the plants.
- (d) The gardener have watered the plants.

92. The children could use the place always.

- (a) The place can be used by children always.
- (b) The place is used by children always.
- (c) The place could always be used by children.
- (d) The place has been used by children always.

93. They say that the earth is round.

- (a) It has been said that the earth is round.
- (b) That the earth is round is said by them.
- (c) It is said that the earth is round.
- (d) It was said that the earth was round.

94. This machine must not be used after 5.30 p.m.

- (a) You can't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (b) You mayn't use the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (c) You need not you the machine after 5.30 p.m.
- (d) You must not use the machine after 5.30 p.m.

95. Tiny houses dot the landscape.

- (a) The landscape was dotted by tiny houses.
- (b) The landscape is being dotted by tiny houses.
- (c) The landscape is dotted by tiny houses.
- (d) The landscape has been dotted by tiny houses.

96. Dogs always chase cats.

- (a) Cats are always chasing dogs.
- (b) Cats have been always chased by dogs.
- (c) Cats are always chased by dogs.
- (d) Cats are being always chased by dogs.

97. The farmer prepared the field.

- (a) The field was prepared by the farmer.
- (b) The field was being prepared by the farmer.
- (c) The field were prepared by the farmer.
- (d) The field were being prepared by the farmer.

98. Teachers should be respected.

- (a) Teachers deserve respect.
- (b) Teachers are to be respected.

Passive Voice —

- (c) We shall respect teaches.
- (d) We should respect teachers.

99. He will do the work tomorrow.

- (a) The work will be done by him tomorrow.
- (b) The work would be done by him tomorrow.
- (c) The work could be done by him tomorrow.
- (d) The work will have been done by him tomorrow.

100. She gave me a book.

- (a) I was given a book by her.
- (b) She was given a book.
- (c) A book is given by her to me.
- (d) I was given her a book.

101. I have bought a new car.

- (a) A new car was bought by me.
- (b) A new car is brought by me.
- (c) A new car has been bought by me.
- (d) A new car had been bought by me.

102. Teachers might have given their students some concessions.

- (a) Their students might have given some concessions to their teachers.
- (b) Their students might be given some concessions by their teachers.
- (c) Their students might be giving some concessions to their teachers.
- (d) Students might have been given some concessions by their teachers.

103. You should not offer meat to vegetarians.

- (a) Vegetarians should not be offered meat.
- (b) Meat should be offered to non-vegetarians.
- (c) Vegetarians should not offer meat.
- (d) You should offer no meat to non-vegetarians.

104. You must write off all those bad debts.

- (a) You must be written off by all those bad debts.
- (b) All those bad debts must be written off by you.
- (c) Write off all those bad debts .
- (d) All those bad debts could be written off.

105. Are they receiving the chief guest at the station ?

- (a) Was the chief guest being received at the station ?
- (b) Is the chief guest being received at the station ?
- (c) Will they be received by the chief guest at the station ?
- (d) Will the chief guest be received at the station ?

106. We make butter from milk.

- (a) Butter is make from milk by us.
- (b) Butter is made from milk by us.

- (c) Butter is make with milk by us.
(d) From milk butter is made by us.
- 107. I don't like people telling me what to do.**
(a) I don't like being told what to do.
(b) People telling me what to do was not liked by me.
(c) I do not like being told by the people.
(d) People don't like telling me what to do.
- 108. The meeting has been called off by the chairman.**
(a) The chairman called off the meeting.
(b) The chairman has called off the meeting.
(c) The chairman is calling off the meeting.
(d) The chairman had called off the meeting.
- 109. The police arrested 200 students on the University campus.**
(a) 200 students had been arrested on the University campus by the police.
(b) 200 students has been arrested by the police on the University campus.
(c) 200 students were arrested by the police on the University campus.
(d) 200 students are arrested on the University campus by the police.
- 110. Why do you like him so much ?**
(a) Why has he been liked so much by you ?
(b) Why was he liked by you so much?
(c) Why is he liked by you so much ?
(d) Why he is liked by you so much ?
- 111. The invitation cards will be sent today.**
(a) They will sent the invitation cards today.
(b) They will have sent the invitation cards today.
(c) They will send the invitation cards today.
(d) They will be sending the invitation cards today.
- 112. She has baked several cakes for her friends.**
(a) She has several cakes to be baked for her friends.
(b) Her friends had several cakes baked by her.
(c) Several cakes have been baked by her for her friends.
(d) Her friends baked several cakes for her.
- 113. We believe that God gives us misery.**
(a) It was believed that God gave us misery.
(b) It has been believed that God gives us misery.
(c) It is believed that God gives us misery.
(d) It is a belief that God gives us misery.
- 114. A lot of saplings have been planted by the chief guest.**
(a) The chief guest is planting a lot of saplings.
(b) The chief guest has planted a lot of saplings.

Passive Voice —————

- (c) The chief guest have planted a lot of sapling.
- (d) The chief guest has been planting a lot of saplings.

115. The Prime Minister has discussed the matter with the other ministers.

- (a) The matter was discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (b) The matter is discussed- by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (c) The matter had been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.
- (d) The matter has been discussed by the Prime Minister with the other ministers.

116. The Principal will meet the students this evening.

- (a) The students will be met by the Principal this evening.
- (b) The students could be met by the Principal this evening. .
- (c) The students would be met by the Principal this evening.
- (d) The students will be meeting the Principal this evening. .

117. The Chief Justice of India is appointed by the President.

- (a) The President “of India appointed the Chief Justice.
- (b) The President appoints the Chief Justice of India.
- (c) The President appointed the Chief Justice of India.
- (d) The appointment order of the Chief Justice of India was given by the President.

118. A meeting was convened by the Principal.

- (a) The Principal convened a meeting.
- (b) The Principal was convening a meeting.
- (c) The Principal has convened a meeting
- (d) The Principal is convening a meeting.

119. Someone has stolen my suitcase.

- (a) My suitcase is stolen by someone.
- (b) Someone has been stolen my suitcase.
- (c) My suitcase has someone been stolen.
- (d) My suitcase has been stolen by someone.

120. Anu is interviewing Radhika and Sarath Kumar.

- (a) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are being interviewed by Anu.
- (b) Radhika and Sarath Kumar are interviewing Anu.
- (c) Radhika and Sarath Kumar were interviewed by Anu.
- (d) Radhika is being interviewed by Sarath Kumar and Ami.

121. Our task had been completed before sunset.

- (a) We completed our task before sunset.
- (b) We have completed our task before sunset.
- (c) We complete our task before sunset.
- (d) We had completed our task before sunset.

122. The boy laughed at the beggar.

- (a) The beggar was laughed by the boy.
- (b) The beggar was being laughed by the boy.

Passive Voice

- (c) The beggar was being laughed at by the boy.
- (d) The beggar was laughed at by the boy.

123. The government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme in Jharkhand.

- (a) A massive tribal welfare programme is launched by the government in Jharkhand.
- (b) A massive tribal welfare programme has been launched by the government in Jharkhand.
- (c) Jharkhand government has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.
- (d) The government in Jharkhand has launched a massive tribal welfare programme.

124. The boys were playing cricket.

- (a) Cricket had been played by the boys.
- (b) Cricket has been played by the boys.
- (c) Cricket was played by the boys.
- (d) Cricket was being played by the boys.

125. They drew a circle in the morning.

- (a) A circle was being drawn by them in the morning.
- (b) A circle was drawn by them in the morning.
- (c) In the morning a circle have been drawn by them.
- (d) A circle has been drawing since morning.

126. They will demolish the entire block.

- (a) The entire block is being demolished.
- (b) The block may be demolished entirely.
- (c) The entire block will have to be demolished by them.
- (d) The entire block will be demolished by them.

127. The burglar destroyed several items in the room. Even the carpet has been torn.

- (a) Several items destroyed in the room by the burglar. Even the carpet he has torn.
- (b) Several items in the room were destroyed by the burglar. Even the carpet has been torn.
- (c) Including the carpet, several items in the room have been torn by the burglar.
- (d) The burglar, being destroyed several items in the room, also carpet has torn.

128. We must respect the elders.

- (a) The elders deserve respect from us.
- (b) The elders must be respected.
- (c) The elders must respected by us.
- (d) Respect the elders we must.

129. We have warned you.

- (a) You have been warned.
- (b) We have you warned.

Passive Voice —

- (c) Warned you have been.
- (d) Have you been warned.

130. Has anybody answered your question ?

- (a) Your question has been answered ?
- (b) Anybody has answered your question ?
- (c) Has your question been answered ?
- (d) Have you answered your question ?

131. The shopkeeper lowered the prices.

- (a) The prices lowered the shopkeeper.
- (b) The prices were lowered by the shopkeeper.
- (c) Down went the prices.
- (d) The shopkeeper got down the prices.

132. One must keep one's promises.

- (a) One's promises are kept.
- (b) One's promises must kept.
- (c) One's promises were kept.
- (d) Promises must be kept.

133. The government has not approved the new drug for sale.

- (a) The government approval for the sale of the new drug has not been given.
- (b) The new drug has not been approved for sale by the government.
- (c) For the sale of the new drug we have not been given the approval.
- (d) The new drug was not approved by the government.

134. They have published all the details of the invention.

- (a) All the details of the invention have been published by them.
- (b) The publication of the details of invention was done by them.
- (c) All the details have been invented by the publishers.
- (d) All the inventions have been detailed by them.

135. He teaches us grammar.

- (a) Grammar was taught to us by him.
- (b) We are taught grammar by him.
- (c) Grammar will be taught to us by him.
- (d) We were teached grammar by him.

136. The manager could not accept the union leader's proposals.

- (a) The union leader's proposals could not be accepted by the manager.
- (b) The union leader's proposals were not accepted by the manager.
- (c) The union leader's proposals will not be accepted by the manager.
- (d) The union leader's proposals would not be accepted by the manager.

137. Prepare yourself for the worst.

- (a) You be prepared for the worst.
- (b) The worst should be prepared by yourself.

- (c) Be prepared for the worst.
- (d) For the worst, preparation should be made by you.

138. Please shut the door and go to sleep.

- (a) The door is to be shut and you are to go to sleep.
- (b) Let the door be shut and you be asleep.
- (c) You are requested to shut the door and *go to sleep*.
- (d) The door is to be shut and you are requested to sleep.

139. Small strokes fell great oaks.

- (a) Great oaks are fallen by small oaks.
- (b) Great oaks are felled by small oaks.
- (c) Great oaks are fell by small oaks.
- (d) Great oaks were fallen by small oaks.

140. We must take care of all living species on Earth.

- (a) All living species on Earth are taken care of by us.
- (b) All living species on Earth must be taken care of by us.
- (c) All living species on Earth had been taken care of by us.
- (d) All living species on Earth will be taken care of by us.

141. People call him a fool.

- (a) He has been called a fool.
- (b) He is called a fool by the people.
- (c) The people have been calling him a fool.
- (d) We all people have called him a fool.

142. It is being read by us.

- (a) We are reading it.
- (b) It will be read by us.
- (c) We can read it.
- (d) We have to read it.

143. He had committed a mistake.

- (a) A mistake had committed by him.
- (b) A mistake was committed by him.
- (c) A mistake had been committed by him.
- (d) A mistake has been committed by him.

144. The most useful training of my career was given to me by my boss.

- (a) My boss has been giving me the most useful training of my career.
- (b) My boss gives me the most useful training.
- (c) My boss is giving me the most useful training.
- (d) My boss gave me the most useful training of my career.

145. We have decided to open a new branch.

- (a) To open a new branch was decided by us.
- (b) To be opened a new branch has been decided.

Passive Voice —————

- (c) It has been decided to open a new branch.
- (d) It may be decided to open a new branch by us.

146. The loan will be sanctioned by the bank.

- (a) The bank sanctioned the loan.
- (b) The bank is going to sanction the loan.
- (c) The bank would sanction the loan.
- (d) The bank will sanction the loan.

147. Paint the windows.

- (a) Windows should be painted.
- (b) Let the windows be painted.
- (c) Let be the windows painted.
- (d) Windows are let to be painted.

148. The traitors should be shot dead.

- (a) They should have shot the traitors dead.
- (b) They shall shoot the traitors dead.
- (c) They should shoot the traitors dead.
- (d) They shot the traitors dead.

149. Rahul is teaching the children in the slum areas.

- (a) The children in the slum areas are taught by Rahul.
- (b) The children are taught by Rahul in the slum area.
- (c) In the slum areas the children are learning from Rahul.
- (d) The children in the slum areas are being taught by Rahul.

150. One cannot expect children to understand these problems.

- (a) Children cannot be expected to understand these problems.
- (b) Children to understand these problems cannot be expected.
- (c) Children cannot be expected to be understood these problems.
- (d) To understand these problems cannot be expected from children by one.

151. Why did she break the garden wall ?

- (a) Why the garden wall was broken by her?
- (b) Why had the garden wall been broken by her ?
- (c) Why was the garden wall broken by her?
- (d) Why will the garden wall be broken by her ?

152. The students were laughing at the old man.

- (a) The old man was being laughed at by the students.
- (b) The old man was laughed at by the students.
- (c) The old man was being laughed by the students.
- (d) The old man is laughing at the students.

153. He admonished her for the error.

- (a) She was admonished by him for the error.
- (b) She has been admonished by him for the error.

- (c) She would be admonished by him for the error.
- (d) She is admonished by him for the error.

154. Can we send this big parcel by air ?

- (a) Can this big parcel be sent by air?
- (b) Can this big parcel sent by air ?
- (c) Could this big parcel be sent by air?
- (d) Could this big parcel sent by us by air?

155. The boys saved many elders from drowning.

- (a) Many elders are saved from drowning by the boys.
- (b) Many elders are being saved from drowning by the boys,
- (c) Many elders were saved from drowning by the boys.
- (d) Many elders have .been saved from drowning by the boys.

156. He was refused admittance.

- (a) The guards refuse him admittance.
- (b) The guards refused him for admittance.
- (c) The guards have refused him admittance.
- (d) The guards refused him admittance.

157. You will be taken care of by me.

- (a) I will be taking care of you.
- (b) I would take care of you.
- (c) I will take care of you.
- (d) I will being take care of you.

158. Promises should be kept.

- (a) You must keep the promises.
- (b) We must keep their promises.
- (c) Kept the promises.
- (d) One should keep one's promises.

159. Circumstances forced him to resign his post.

- (a) Circumstances make him to resign his post.
- (b) He was forced to resign his post.
- (c) He is forced to resign his post.
- (d) He is forced and resigned his post. .

160. He would have written this essay in time.

- (a) The essay was written on time.
- (b) This essay would haye been written by him in time.
- (c) The essay was written by him in
- (d) He wrote the essay on time.

161. I give alms to the poor on Saturdays.

- (a) Alms are given to the poor by me on Saturdays.
- (b) Alms is given to the poor by me on Saturdays.

Passive Voice —

- (c) Alms are given to the poors by me on Saturdays.
- (d) Alms were given to the poor by me on Saturdays.

162. God helps the brave.

- (a) The brave is helped by God
- (b) The brave are helped by God
- (c) The brave are help by God
- (d) The brave helped by God

163. I haven't read Three Muskeeters.

- (a) Three Muskeeters have not been read by me.
- (b) Three Muskeeters has not been read by me.
- (c) Three Muskeeters has been not read by me.
- (d) Three Muskeeters has not been readed by me.

164. I am going to buy new spectacles tomorrow.

- (a) New spectacles are going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (b) New spectacles is going to be bought by me tomorrow.
- (c) New spectacles are being bought by me tomorrow.
- (d) New spectacles are to be bought by me tomorrow.

165. Our mothers use tongs while making chapatis.

- (a) Tongs are used by our mothers while making chapatis.
- (b) Tongs is used by our mothers while making chapatis.
- (c) Tongs are used by our mothers while chapatis are being made.
- (d) Tongs are use by our mothers while making chapatis.

166. I play Billiards during my free time.

- (a) Billiards are played by me during my free time.
- (b) Billiards were played by me during my free time.
- (c) Billiards are being played by me during my free time.
- (d) Billiards is played by me during my free time.

167. Have the car painted black.

- (a) Paint the car black.
- (b) I have painted the car black.
- (c) Get someone to paint the car black .
- (d) Black has been painted by the car.

168. Who has stolen my binoculars?

- (a) By whom my binoculars have been stolen?
- (b) By whom have my binoculars been stolen?
- (c) By whom has my binoculars been stolen?
- (d) By whom my binoculars has been stolen?

169. He has been arrested and sent to jail.

- (a) The police arrested him and the court sent him to jail.
- (b) The police has arrested him and the court have sent him to jail.

Passive Voice

- (c) The police have arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.
- (d) The police has arrested him and the court has sent him to jail.

170. Anna and his team hope to fight corruption with Jan Lokpal Bill.

- (a) It is hoped by Anna and his team that they would fight corruption by Jan Lokpal Bill .
- (b) To fight corruption is been hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (c) To fight corruption was being hoped by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.
- (d) To fight corruption is being hoping by Anna and his team by Jan Lokpal Bill.

171. The Greeks expected to conquer Carthage.

- (a) People expected the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (b) It was expected by the Greeks to conquer Carthage.
- (c) To conquer Carthage was expected by the Greeks.
- (d) Carthage was expected to be conquered by the Greeks.

172. Rome was not built in a day.

- (a) They did not build Rome in a day.
- (b) They could not build Rome in a day.
- (c) The Romans did not build Rome in a day.
- (d) They have not built Rome in a day.

173. The ship is being taken to safe water by the Captain and not his crew.

- (a) The Captain and not his crew is taking the ship to safe water.
- (b) The Captain and not his crew are taking the ship to safe water.
- (c) The Captain and not his crew have taken the ship to safe water.
- (d) The Captain and not his crew is being taking the ship to safe water.

174. Strong Anti-Corruption law is liked by neither the Central Government nor the State Governments.

- (a) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments likes strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (b) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments like strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (c) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments liked strong Anti-Corruption law.
- (d) Neither the Central Government nor the State Governments are liking strong Anti-Corruption law.

175. If you cannot change the master, you cannot change the destiny.

- (a) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot change.
- (b) The destiny could not be changed if masters cannot be changed.
- (c) The destiny cannot change if masters cannot be changed.
- (d) The destiny cannot be changed if masters cannot be changed.

Passive Voice ——————

176. The curd smelt sour.

- (a) The curd is sour when smelt.
- (b) The curd was sour when it was smelling.
- (c) The curd was sour when it was smelt.
- (d) The curd is sour when it was smelt.

177. People are not going to tolerate Government's despotism.

- (a) Government's despotism is not going to be tolerated by people.
- (b) Government's despotism was not going to be tolerated by people.
- (c) Government's despotism is not being tolerated by people.
- (d) Government's despotism is not to be tolerated by people.

178. He is writing a letter.

- (a) A letter is being written by him.
- (b) A letter is written by him.
- (c) A letter has been written by him.
- (d) Let a letter be written by him.

179. The man cut the tree into thin strips.

- (a) The tree was cut into thin strips by the man.
- (b) The tree cut itself into thin strips by the man.
- (c) The tree has cut into thin strips by the man.
- (d) The tree can be cut into thin strips by the man.

180. My father gave me a hundred rupee note yesterday.

- (a) A hundred rupee note was given to me by my father yesterday.
- (b) A hundred rupee note was being given to me by my father.
- (c) A hundred rupee note had been given to me by my father.
- (d) Yesterday, my father was given a hundred rupee note by me.

181. The pilot landed the plane safely.

- (a) The plane had been landed safely by the pilot.
- (b) The plane was landed safely by the pilot.
- (c) The plane has been landed safely by the pilot.
- (d) The plane was to be landed safely by the pilot.

182. Abha sent me a card.

- (a) A card will be send to me by Abha.
- (b) A card was sent to me by Abha.
- (c) A card will be sent to me by Abha.
- (d) A card is sent to me by Abha.

183. He will never forget it.

- (a) It will never be forgotten by him.
- (b) It can never be forgotten by him.
- (c) It should never be forgotten by him.
- (d) It may never be forgotten by him.

184. Let not his insulting words be minded.

- (a) Don't be insulted his words.
- (b) Don't mind his insulting words.
- (c) Don't insult him with his words.
- (d) Do mind his insulting words.

185. The students have been punished by the teacher for negligence of duty.

- (a) The teacher has punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (b) The teacher had punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (c) The teacher punished the students for negligence of duty.
- (d) The teacher have punished the students for negligence of duty.

186. The storm has destroyed twelve houses.

- (a) Twelve houses had been destroyed by the storm.
- (b) Twelve houses have been destroyed by the storm.
- (c) Twelve houses were destroyed by the storm.
- (d) Twelve houses have been stormed.

187. She is reading a novel.

- (a) A novel is being read by her.
- (b) A novel has been read by her.
- (c) A novel is read by her.
- (d) A novel was being read by her.

188. The whole village was ravaged by the man-eater.

- (a) The man-eater ravages the whole village.
- (b) The whole village is ravaged by the man-eater.
- (c) The man-eater ravaged the whole village.
- (d) The whole village is being ravaged by the man-eater.

189. The purity of justice is maintained by the reports of proceedings in the law courts.

- (a) The law courts maintain purity of justice in the reports of the proceedings.
- (b) The reports of the proceedings in the law courts maintain the purity of justice.
- (c) Pure justice is maintained in the proceedings of the law courts.
- (d) The maintenance of justice is pure in the proceedings of the law courts.

190. Newton wrote this letter yesterday.

- (a) Yesterday was written letter by Newton.
- (b) This letter is written by Newton Yesterday.
- (c) This letter was written by Newton yesterday.
- (d) This letter was wrote by Newton yesterday.

Passive Voice —————

191. An awareness is being created among the people by the Government about the importance of trees.

- (a) The Government is creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (b) The Government are creating an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (c) The Government creates an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.
- (d) The Government created an awareness among the people about the importance of trees.

192. Ads on TV increase the sale of any commodity.

- (a) The sale of any commodity is being increased by ads on TV.
- (b) The sale of any commodity are increased by ads on TV.
- (c) The sale of any commodity are being increased by ads on TV.
- (d) The sale of any commodity is increased by ads on TV.

193. The Indian Government is encouraging the Europeans to visit India.

- (a) The Europeans are encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (b) The Europeans are encouraging by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (c) The Europeans are being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.
- (d) The Europeans is being encouraged by the Indian Government to visit India.

194. He handed her a chair.

- (a) She was handed a chair by him.
- (b) He handed a chair to her.
- (c) He will hand a chair to her.
- (d) A chair will be handed to her by him.

195. Call the police at once.

- (a) Let the police be called at once.
- (b) The police was to be called at once.
- (c) The police is to be called at once.
- (d) Let the police called at once.

196. Post the letter.

- (a) The letter is posted.
- (b) The letter was posted.
- (c) Let the letter be posted.
- (d) The letter will be posted.

197. Who painted it?

- (a) It was painted?
- (b) Was it painted?
- (c) Had it been painted by?
- (d) By whom was it painted?

Answer key

1. (c)	2. (b)	3. (c)	4. (a)	5. (c)	6. (b)	7. (a)	8. (a)	9. (b)
10. (b)	11. (a)	12. (c)	13. (d)	14. (a)	15. (a)	16. (b)	17. (a)	18. (b)
19. (c)	20. (a)	21. (a)	22. (c)	23. (b)	24. (b)	25. (b)	26. (a)	27. (b)
28. (a)	29. (d)	30. (a)	31. (c)	32. (b)	33. (b)	34. (a)	35. (a)	36. (d)
37. (c)	38. (a)	39. (d)	40. (a)	41. (d)	42. (c)	43. (c)	44. (b)	45. (b)
46. (d)	47. (a)	48. (b)	49. (c)	50. (b)	51. (d)	52. (a)	53. (c)	54. (a)
55. (a)	56. (a)	57. (b)	58. (a)	59. (c)	60. (d)	61. (b)	62. (a)	63. (a)
64. (b)	65. (b)	66. (b)	67. (a)	68. (b)	69. (b)	70. (a)	71. (a)	72. (b)
73. (d)	74. (a)	75. (a)	76. (c)	77. (c)	78. (b)	79. (d)	80. (c)	81. (c)
82. (a)	83. (c)	84. (b)	85. (a)	86. (c)	87. (b)	88. (c)	89. (c)	90. (c)
91. (c)	92. (c)	93. (c)	94. (d)	95. (c)	96. (c)	97. (a)	98. (d)	99. (a)
100. (a)	101. (c)	102. (d)	103. (a)	104. (b)	105. (b)	106. (b)	107. (a)	108. (b)
109. (c)	110. (c)	111. (c)	112. (c)	113. (c)	114. (b)	115. (d)	116. (a)	117. (b)
118. (a)	119. (d)	120. (a)	121. (d)	122. (d)	123. (b)	124. (d)	125. (b)	126. (d)
127. (b)	128. (b)	129. (a)	130. (c)	131. (b)	132. (d)	133. (b)	134. (a)	135. (b)
136. (a)	137. (c)	138. (c)	139. (b)	140. (b)	141. (b)	142. (a)	143. (c)	144. (d)
145. (c)	146. (d)	147. (b)	148. (c)	149. (d)	150. (a)	151. (c)	152. (a)	153. (a)
154. (a)	155. (c)	156. (d)	157. (c)	158. (d)	159. (b)	160. (b)	161. (a)	162. (b)
163. (b)	164. (a)	165. (a)	166. (d)	167. (c)	168. (b)	169. (c)	170. (a)	171. (b)
172. (c)	173. (a)	174. (b)	175. (d)	176. (c)	177. (a)	178. (a)	179. (a)	180. (a)
181. (b)	182. (b)	183. (a)	184. (b)	185. (a)	186. (b)	187. (a)	188. (c)	189. (b)
190. (c)	191. (a)	192. (d)	193. (c)	194. (a)	195. (a)	196. (c)	197. (d)	

chNmÙkj chO;k[;k‰

16. (a) नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि इससे वाक्य का ये अर्थ निकलता है कि ये उम्मीद की जा रही थी कि Spain वर्ल्ड कप जीतेगी। Question 16. में ये स्पष्ट है कि Spain को वर्ल्ड कप जीतने की उम्मीद थी। अतः उत्तर (b) होगा जिसका अर्थ Question 16 के अर्थ से मेल खाता है।
18. (b) वाक्य में 'Have' Causative Verb है। यहाँ कार्य किया नहीं करवाया जा रहा है। अतः (b) उपयुक्त उत्तर होगा।
32. (b)'The brave' plural common noun है। अगर brave, poor, rich इत्यादि जैसे adjectives के पहले article 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाए तो वह plural common noun बन जाता है एवं plural verb के साथ आता है।
35. (a) जब Passive Voice में 'by + sub' का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो इसका अर्थ है कि कर्ता सामान्यतः उस कार्य की करता है जिसका उल्लेख करना जरूरी नहीं। अतः उत्तर (a) होगा।
39. (d) अगर 'to read' के स्थान पर 'to be read' का प्रयोग किया जाए तो 'by + sub' का option खुल जाता है जबकि 'to read' का sub. 'I' का उल्लेख पहले हो चुका है। अतः 'to read' का ही प्रयोग करना उपयुक्त होगा।
161. (a) Alms (दान) Plural Noun है। अतः Plural verb 'are' का प्रयोग करें।
164. (a) Spectacles plural noun है। अतः spectacles के साथ 'are' का प्रयोग होगा।
165. (a) Tongs plural noun है। अतः tongs के साथ plural verb 'are' का प्रयोग होगा।
166. (d) Billiards form से plural है परन्तु एक खेल का नाम है। अतः अर्थ से singular है। अतः singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग होगा।
167. (c) वाक्य Passive voice में है और वाक्य में Causative verb 'have' का प्रयोग है। अतः Sub (कर्ता) के स्थान पर someone का उल्लेख है।

Passive Voice —————

168. (b) Binoculars plural noun है। अतः binoculars के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।
169. (c) Police plural noun है। अतः plural के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।
171. (b) वाक्य 16 की व्याख्या देखें।
173. (a) जब दो subjects को 'and not' से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb 1st sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः 'the captain' के अनुसार verb 'is' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
174. (b) जब दो sub को 'either.....nor' से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb नजदीक वाले subject के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः verb 'State Governments' (Plural noun) के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा।

SPOTTING THE ERROR —————

1. (a) The officers/ (b) who were on inspection in this factory / (c) were discovered many discripancies. / (d) No error.
2. (a) The teacher asked / (b) the students whether they could/ (c) tell the name of the man who had been invented steam engine. / (d) No error.
3. (a) He held a bomb / (b) in his hand which was totally hiding / (c) in the long cloak that he was wearing. / (d) No error.
4. **(a) I was surprise / (b) at his brazenness/ (c) as he was considerd an obedient student / (d) No error.**
5. (a) Had the police not/ (b) reached here / (c) on time, the traders would have robbed . / (d) No error.
6. **(a)He seriously wounded / (b) during the cross fire and / (c) was rushed to hospital / (d) No error.**
7. (a) Police Officers sent / (b) to the theatre and every nook and corner / (c) was throughly checked. / (d) No error.
8. (a) When the minister was shot dead,/ (b) people were run here and there / (c) to save themselves. / (d) No error.
9. (a) Mother's milk / (b) cannot substituted by / (c) any thing else./ (d) No error.
10. (a) When the thief broke into their house / (b) they raised a hue and cry / (c) and the thief caught immediately by the people. / (d) No error
11. (a)The city / (b) was tore / (c) by riots./ (d) No error.
12. (a) It was suggested / (b) by him that the baby / (c) should be immediately taken care. / (d) No error.
13. (a) The truck driver was accused / (b) the lady for walking / (c) in the middle of the road./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Some passengers / (b) were flew/ (c) to Paris on the last trip./ (d) No error.
15. (a) By the time he arrived, / (b) everybody had / (c) been gone./ (d) No error.
16. (a) I am extremely annoyed / (b) by/ (c) the mismanagement./ (d) No error.
17. (a) The mall was / (b) engulfed/ (c) by the fire/ (d) No error.
18. (a) It believed earlier / (b) that the sun/ (c) revolved round the earth./ (d) No error.
19. (a) As she was wearing / (b) skimpy clothes/ (c) she was stared./ (d) No error.

Passive Voice

20. (a) You behave in such / (b) a weird manner that / (c) everybody disgusted with you./ (d) No error.
21. (a) Ten mangoes / (b) are contained / (c) by this box. / (d) No error.
22. (a) A gang of robbers were arrested/ (b) by the police / (c) last night near the island./ (d) No error.
23. (a) The streets of Rome / (b) were thronged/ (c) by the common people. / (d) No error.
24. (a) Everyone says that/ (b) he born / (c) of poor parents. / (d) No error.
25. (a) The ship sank / (b) and everyone / (c) aboard drowned. / (d) No error.
26. (a) If motorists do not observe the traffic regulations, (b) they will be stopped, ticketed / (c) and have to pay a fine. / (d) No error
27. (a) There will be no more supplies/ (b) unless all arrears of payment / (c) were cleared by next Monday. / (d) No error
28. (a) The news of his father's death / (b) was not declared / (c) so far. / (d) No error

Answers with Explanation

1. (c) 'were' हटा दें। वाक्य 'Past Indefinite' के Active Voice में है। अतः V_2 का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'were + V_3 ' का।
2. (c) 'been' हटा है। वाक्य Active Voice में है। अतः 'had + V_3 ' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'had + been + V_3 ' जिसका प्रयोग Past Perfect Tense के Passive Voice में होता है।
3. (b) 'hiding' को 'hidden' में परिवर्तित करें। 'which was totally hiding' का अर्थ होगा जो सम्पूर्ण रूप से छिप रहा था। 'which was totally hidden' का अर्थ है जो 'सम्पूर्ण रूप से छिपा हुआ था'।
4. (a) 'Surprise' को 'surprised' में परिवर्तित करें Passive Voice में Main Verb हमेशा V_3 form में होना चाहिए।
5. (c) 'would have' के बाद 'been' का प्रयोग करें। 'traders would have robbed' का अर्थ है 'traders' ने लूट किया होता। वाक्य को अर्थपूर्ण बनाने के लिए 'traders would have been robbed' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होगा 'traders' लूट लिए गये होते।
6. (a) 'He was seriously wounded' का प्रयोग करें 'He wounded' का अर्थ होगा। 'उसने घायल कर दिया। 'He was wounded' का अर्थ होगा 'वह घायल हो गया।'
7. (a) 'sent' के पहले 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
8. (b) 'were run' को 'ran' में परिवर्तित करें।
9. (b) Cannot के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग करें। Passive Voice में 'Cannot + be + V_3 ' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (c) 'thief was caught' का प्रयोग करें। 'thief caught' का अर्थ निकलेगा 'चोर ने पकड़ लिया' जबकि होना चाहिए 'चोर पकड़ा गया।'
11. (b) 'was' के साथ V_3 का प्रयोग होगा अगर वाक्य passive voice में है तो। अतः torn (tear का V_3 form) का प्रयोग करें।
12. (c) 'Care' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें। Passive Voice में 'Preposition' का ध्यान रखें।
13. (a) यहाँ 'truck driver' subject है। अतः 'was' हटा दें। वाक्य passive voice में नहीं है।
14. (b) 'were' के बाद ' V_3 ' का प्रयोग करें। 'fly' का V_3 form 'flown' होता है।
15. (c) 'been' हटा दें।
16. (b) 'by' को 'at' में परिवर्तित करें। 'annoyed' के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग होता है अगर 'something' का उल्लेख हो। Eg- 'annoyed at the mismanagement.' अगर 'someone' का प्रयोग हो तो 'annoyed' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Eg- annoyed with you'.

Passive Voice ——————

17. (c) 'by' के स्थान पर 'in' का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
18. (a) 'It was believed' का प्रयोग करें 'Engulfed' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होता है।
19. (c) 'Stared' के बाद preposition 'at' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (c) 'everybody is disgusted' का प्रयोग सही होगा।
21. (c) 'by' के स्थान पर 'in' का प्रयोग करें। Contained के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
22. (a) 'Gang' Collective noun है। अतः 'were' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग होगा।
23. (c) 'Thronged' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'by' का। 'By' के स्थान पर 'with' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (b) 'he was born' का प्रयोग करें।
25. (c) 'drowned' के पहले 'was' का प्रयोग करें।
26. (c) 'and will have to' सही formation है। 'and' के बाद sentence formation 'active voice' में परिवर्तित हो जा रहा है। अतः 'and' से पहले आने वाला helping verb 'will' का प्रयोग 'and' के बाद के भाग के लिए नहीं है।
27. (c) 'Were' के स्थान पर 'are' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य 'future conditional' का है। अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करें तो पहला कार्य simple present में होगा (arrears of payment are cleared) और दूसरा कार्य simple future tense (there will be no more supplies) में होगा।
28. (b) 'Was not declared' के स्थान पर 'has not been declared' का प्रयोग करें। 'So far' का प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'Present Perfect' में होता है।

4 NARRATION

CHAPTER

Narration के अंतर्गत हम Direct एवं Indirect Speech पढ़ते हैं।

DIRECT SPEECH

- जब कोई व्यक्ति किसी वक्ता के कहे हुए कथन को बिना किसी परिवर्तन के अभिव्यक्त कर दें तो वह Direct Speech कहलाता है।

जैसे: Ram $\underbrace{\text{says}}_{\text{Reporting Verb}}$, " $\underbrace{\text{I work hard}}_{\text{Reported Speech}}$."

INDIRECT SPEECH

- जब कोई व्यक्ति किसी वक्ता के कथन को अपने शब्दों में कुछ ज़रूरी परिवर्तन कर प्रस्तुत करें तो वह Indirect Speech कहलाता है।

जैसे: Ram says that he works hard.

ASSERTIVE SENTENCES (कथनात्मक वाक्य)

- (1) He says, "I work hard." (Direct Speech)
- He says that he works hard. (Indirect speech)

ASSERTIVE SENTENCES के DIRECT एवं INDIRECT SPEECH

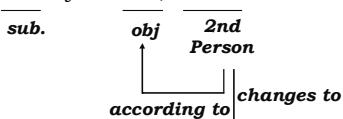
- (1) Comma एवं inverted commas को हटाएं और Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग करें।
- (2) Pronoun नीचे दिए गए नियमानुसार परिवर्तित करें।

S O N	Sub	Obj	No	
1 2 3	यानि	1 st Person	2 nd Person	3 rd Person
		I, we	you	he, she, it, they

जैसे: 1. $\frac{\text{He says, " I work hard" }}{\substack{\text{sub.} \\ \text{1st} \\ \text{Person}}}$
 ↑
 according to
 ↓ changes to
 He says that **he** works hard.

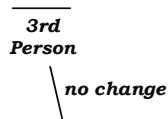
Narration

2. He says to me, " **You** work hard."



He tells me that **I** work hard

3. He says to me, " **She** works hard."



He tells me that **she** works hard.

- (3) **Say/said** को **indirect speech** में यथावत रहने दें। लेकिन 'say to' को 'tell' बना दे और 'said to' को 'told'

जैसे: He says to me, "you work hard".

He tells me that I work hard.

नोट:- 1. **tell** और **told** के बाद **to** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

2. **tell** और **told** के बाद **obj** का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। इसी प्रकार **ordered, requested, forbade** इत्यादि के बाद भी एक **object** का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।

- (4) अगर **Reporting verb present** अथवा **future tense** में हो, तो **reported speech** के **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।

जैसे: He says, "I come here".

He says that he comes here.

- (5) अगर **Reporting verb past** में हों लेकिन **reported speech universal truth / Idiom / Phrase/ habitual action** अथवा **historical fact** हो तो **reported speech** के **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं किया जाता है।

जैसे: He said, "The Sun is a star"

He said that the Sun is a star

- (6) अगर **Reporting verb past** में हो और **Reported speech idiom / phrase** इत्यादि नहीं हो तो **Reported Speech** में निम्नलिखित परिवर्तन किये जाते हैं।

जैसे: He said, "I came here yesterday".

He said that he had come there the previous day.

(1) CHANGE IN TENSE

➤ **Simple present** → **Simple past** → **Past perfect** → **No change**
 $V_1/\text{do}/\text{does}$ → V_2/did → $\text{had}+V_3$

➤ **Present continuous** → **Past continuous** → **Past perfect continuous** → **No change**
 $\text{is}/\text{am}/\text{are}$ → was/were → had been

➤ **Present perfect / present perfect continuous** → **Past perfect / past perfect continuous** → **No change**
 has/have → had

Narration

(2) CHANGE OF MODALS

<i>shall/will</i>	→	<i>should / would</i>
<i>may</i>	→	<i>might</i>
<i>can</i>	→	<i>could</i>

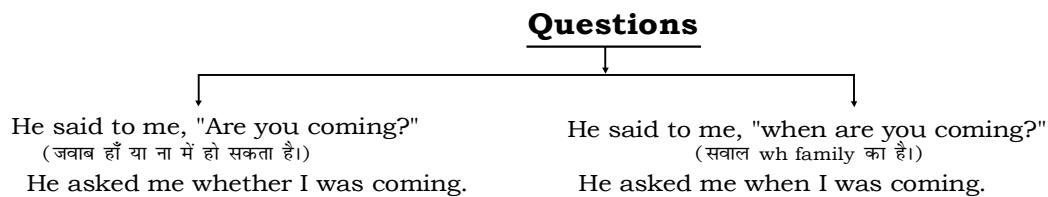
(3) CHANGE IN TIME AND PLACE

**today → that day, tomorrow → the next day, yesterday → the previous day/
the day before, tonight → that night, Last → the previous, here → there,
this → that, these → those, ago → before, now → then.**

Examples

1. She said, "I cannot help you at this time."
She said that she couldn't help me at that time.
2. He said to me, "I shall come to meet you tomorrow."
He told me that he would come to meet me the next day.
3. Ram said, "I haven't taken any exam this year but I intend to take two exams the next year"
Ram said that he hadn't taken any exam that year but he intended to take two exams the next year.
4. He said, "Virtue is its own reward"
He said that virtue is its own reward (वाक्य phrase है)
5. Our teacher said, "We have to finish this work today as we know that tomorrow never comes."
Our teacher said that we had to finish that work that day as we know that tomorrow never comes.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES (iz 'uk'Red okD;)



INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES dks DIRECT ls INDIRECT SPEECH esa ifjorZu djs ds five

- (1) 'Said to' को **asked, questioned, enquired, interrogated** इत्यादि में परिवर्तित करें।
- (2) **Question mark (?)** को **full stop (.)** में परिवर्तित करें।
- (3) वाक्य का **formation interrogative** नहीं होगा। यानि **helping verb** का प्रयोग **subject** के बाद होगा।
- (4) **Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।
- (5) अगर सवाल का जवाब 'हाँ' या 'ना' में दिया जा सकता है तो **conjunction 'if'** या '**whether**' का प्रयोग करें। '**wh family**' के सवाल में कोई **conjunction** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

Narration ——————

Examples-

1. He said to me, "Do you know me?"
He asked me if I knew him.
2. She said to him, "What are you doing now?"
She asked him what he was doing then.
3. He said to him, "Did you intend to come with me?"
He asked him if he had intended to come with him.
4. He said to her, "Haven't you seen this movie?"
He asked her if she hadn't seen that movie.
5. He said to her, "Madam, can I help you?"
She said, "no"
He asked her respectfully if he could help her.
She answered in the negative.
6. He said to me, "When will the train arrive?"
He enquired of me when the train would arrive

Explanation to sentence 5:

5. अगर Direct Speech में Sir/Madam / Your Honour जैसे सम्मानसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो Indirect Speech में इन्हें हटा दें और 'respectfully' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।
- लेकिन अगर Dear / Darling / My beloved जैसे प्रेमसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो उन्हें हटाकर 'lovingly' या 'affectionately' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।
- अगर जवाब 'yes' हो तो 'answered in the affirmative' का प्रयोग करें और अगर जवाब 'No' है तो 'answered in the Negative' का प्रयोग करें।

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES (vKkklwpd okD;)

He said to me, "Go away."

He ordered me to go away.

IMPERATIVE SENTENCES cks DIRECT ls INDIRECT SPEECH esa ifjorZu djuds ds fu;e

1. 'Said to' को जरूरत के अनुसार ordered / requested/ forbade / suggested इत्यादि में परिवर्तित करें।
2. Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग करें।
3. 'To' के बाद V₁ आता है।
4. Tense, pronoun इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।

Examples-

1. She said to me, "Do not come here"
She forbade me to come there.
or
She ordered me not to come there.
2. He said, "call the first witness now."
He ordered them to call the first witness then.
3. She said, "Spread the clothes in the sunlight and do not wash anything else."
She ordered him to spread the clothes in the sunlight and not to wash anything else.
4. The captain said to the soldiers, "Stand at ease."
The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.
5. My mother said to me, "Help others but do not expect anything in return."
My mother advised me to help others but not to expect anything in return."

Narration

EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES (foLe;kfncks/d okD;)

She said, "Alas! I am undone."

She exclaimed with sorrow that she was undone.

EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES dks DIRECT 1s INDIRECT SPEECH esa ifjorZu djus ds fu;e

1. (a) Said + Alas ! changes to **exclaimed with sorrow.**

Said + Hurray ! changes to **exclaimed with joy**

Said + Fi ! / Ugh ! changes to **exclaimed with despise/disgust.**

Said + Wow ! changes to **exclaimed with joy.**

Said + Oh ! changes to **exclaimed with surprise / regret.**

2. Conjunction 'that' का प्रयोग करें

3. **Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में परिवर्तन नियमानुसार होंगे।

Examples:

1. She said, "Hurray ! we have won this match."
She exclaimed with joy that they had won that match.
2. She said, "How beautiful is the rain!"
She exclaimed with joy that the rain was very beautiful.
3. He said, "Bravo ! you have done well."
He applauded him saying that he had done well
4. She said, "What a pleasant surprise!"
She exclaimed that it was a pleasant surprise.

OPTATIVE SENTENCES (bPNklwpd okD;)

He said, "May God bless you."

He prayed that God might bless me.

OPTATIVE SENTENCES dks DIRECT 1s INDIRECT SPEECH esa ifjofrZr djus ds fu;e

1. 'Said' को 'wished' अथवा 'prayed' में परिवर्तित करें।
2. **Conjunction 'that'** का प्रयोग करें।
3. **Tense, pronoun** इत्यादि में नियमानुसार परिवर्तन करें।

Examples:

1. She said, "May, God pardon him."
She prayed that God might pardon him.
2. They said, "long live the king."
They prayed that the king might live long.

Narration ——————

कुछ अन्य महत्वपूर्ण बिन्दु:

1. **Need not, used to, would rather, would better, had rather, had better** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।
जैसे: He said, “I used to go to school by bus.”
He said that he used to go to school by bus.
2. अगर **past continuous** का प्रयोग **time clause** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
जैसे: He said to me, “While I was studying, you were playing.”
He told me that while he was studying, I was playing.
3. अगर **past indefinite tense** का प्रयोग **time clause** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
जैसे: He said, “When I met him, he was playing.”
He said that when he met him, he was playing.
4. जब **past indefinite** का प्रयोग दो **simultaneous actions** में हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
जैसे: She said, “I prepared the tea and he fried the chips.”
She said that she prepared the tea and he fried the chips.
5. जब **past indefinite** का प्रयोग **historical** (ऐतिहासिक) घटना के लिए हो तो **tense** में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा।
जैसे: He said, “Gandhiji started the Quit India Movement.”
He said that Gandhiji started the Quit India movement.
6. **Will/ shall** का परिवर्तन **would/ should** में होता है पर **will/ shall** का परिवर्तन ‘**should**’ में होगा अगर वाक्य सलाह सम्बन्धित हो।
जैसे:
 1. He said, “I shall come tomorrow.”
He said that he would come the next day.
 2. She said to me, “What shall I do after the exam?”
She asked me what she should do after the exam.
7. वाक्य के अर्थ को देखते हुए कई बार **modals** में परिवर्तन किए जाते हैं।
जैसे:
 1. She said, “If I get selected, I need not take any exam further.”
She said that if she got selected, she would not have to take any exam further.
 2. He said, “Need I send an e-mail?”
He asked me if he had to send an e-mail.
 3. He said, “When I was a kid, I could not go out alone,” (यहाँ ‘could’ का प्रयोग अनुमति के लिए हुआ है।)
He said that when he was a kid, he was not allowed to go out alone.
 4. She said, “Rohit, you must be prudent.” (यहाँ ‘must’ का प्रयोग आदेश के लिए हुआ है।)
She ordered Rohit to be prudent.

Narration

PRACTICE SET

Directions: A sentence has been given in direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

1. **“Call the first witness”, said the Judge.**
(a) The judge commanded to call the first witness.
(b) The judge commanded them to call the first witness.
(c) The judge commanded that the first witness be called.
(d) The judge commanded the first witness to be called.
2. **The queen said to her son, “You must go to the forest and remain there till your father calls you back.”**
(a) The queen ordered her son to go to the forest and remain there till his father calls him back.
(b) The queen told her son that he must go to the forest and remain there till his father called him back.
(c) The queen told his son that you must go to the forest and remain there till your father called you back.
(d) The queen told her son to go to the forest and remained there till his father called him back.
3. **I said to her, “All your faults will be pardoned if you confess them.”**
(a) I told her that all her faults will be pardoned if you confess them.
(b) I told her that all her faults would be pardoned if she confessed them.
(c) I told her that all her faults will have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
(d) I told her that all her faults would have to be pardoned if she confessed them.
4. **He said to Sita, “When do you intend to pay back the money you borrowed from me?”**
(a) He enquired Sita when did she intend to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
(b) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
(c) He enquired Sita when she intended to pay back the money she had borrowed from him.
(d) He enquired when Sita intended to pay back the money she borrowed from him.
5. **“Let’s give a party”, said Jaya.
“Let’s not”, said her husband.**
(a) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband answered in the negative.
(b) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband opposed the idea.
(c) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband contradicted her.
(d) Jaya suggested giving a party but her husband refused.
6. **The old man of Latur said, “Alas! my only son is dead.”**
(a) The old man of Latur exclaimed with sorrow that his only son was dead.
(b) The old man of Latur told with pain that his only son was dead.

Narration _____

- (c) The old man of Lature expressed with anguish that his only son was dead.
(d) The old man of Latur sorrowfully narrated that his only son was dead.

7. She said to the girl, “Did you do this ?”

- (a) She asked the girl that she did that.
(b) She asked the girl if she did that.
(c) She asked the girl if she had done that.
(d) She told the girl that she had done that.

8. “Many happy returns of your birthday”, we said.

- (a) We greeted him on his birthday.
(b) We said that many happy returns of your birthday.
(c) We wished him many happy returns of his birthday.
(d) We prayed for many happy returns of his birthday.

9. “Doctor”, the patient cried, “please tell me how much time I have.”

- (a) The patient pleaded the doctor how much time he will have.
(b) The patient exclaimed to the doctor that how much time he had.
(c) The patient pleaded with the doctor to tell him how much time he had.
(d) The patient cried to the doctor that how much time had he.

10. “So help me Heaven!” he cried, “I never steal again.”

- (a) He wanted Heaven to help him so that he would never steal again.
(b) She exclaimed to heaven that he would never steal again.
(c) He exclaimed heaven to help him that he would never steal again.
(d) He called upon heaven to witness his resolve never to steal again.

11. She said, “I'll give you Rs. 100/- to keep your mouth shut.”

- (a) She said that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(b) She offered him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(c) She suggested to him that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.
(d) She proposed that she would give him Rs. 100/- to keep his mouth shut.

12. From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Qutub Minar’, said my friend.

- (a) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
(b) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.
(c) My friend said that from one of the windows of his flat he could see the Qutub Minar.
(d) My friend told that from one of the windows of his flat he can see the Qutub Minar.

13. The teacher said to the student, “Why were you absent yesterday?”

- (a) The teacher asked the student why had been he absent the previous day.
(b) The teacher asked the student why had he been absent the previous day.
(c) The teacher informed the student that why he had been absent the next day.
(d) The teacher asked the student why he had been absent the previous day.

Narration

- 14. The teacher said to Ashok, “I shall report the matter to the Principal if you misbehave again.”**
- (a) The teacher told Ashok that he would be reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
 - (b) The teacher warned Ashok that he would report the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
 - (c) The teacher threatened Ashok to report the matter to the Principal if he misbehave again.
 - (d) The teacher cautioned Ashok about reporting the matter to the Principal if he misbehaved again.
- 15. “Fi! A soldier and afraid of fighting!” said Babar.**
- (a) Babar exclaimed with surprise that a soldier should be afraid of fighting.
 - (b) Addressing a soldier, Babar cursed him that he should be afraid of fighting.
 - (c) Babar cursed the soldier who was afraid of fighting.
 - (d) Babar cursed and exclaimed that a soldier should not be afraid of fighting.
- 16. The teacher said to Ram, “Would you like to go on a trip to Kashmir?” Ram said, “Yes.”**
- (a) The teacher asked if Ram would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
 - (b) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied yes.
 - (c) The teacher asked Ram if he would have like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
 - (d) The teacher asked Ram if he would like to go on a trip to Kashmir and Ram replied in the affirmative.
- 17. Everybody said, “How well she sings!”**
- (a) Everybody told us that she sings very well.
 - (b) Everybody exclaimed that she sings very well.
 - (c) Everybody exclaimed that she sang very well.
 - (d) Everybody told us that how she sang very well.
- 18. “Suppose your children go out for a nice long walk”, she said.**
- (a) She proposed that his children went out for a nice long walk.
 - (b) She advised that his children go out for a nice long walk .
 - (c) She suggested that his children go out for a nice long walk.
 - (d) She suggested that his children should go out for a nice long walk.
- 19. I said, “When it gets dark, light the lantern and hang it out.”**
- (a) I said that when it got dark he light the lantern and hung it out.
 - (b) I requested that when it got dark he may light the lantern and hang it out.
 - (c) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hung it out.
 - (d) I said that when it got dark he should light the lantern and hang it out.
- 20. “Do as you wish, but don’t come and ask me for help if you get into difficulties.”, He said to me**

Narration _____

- (a) He told me to do as he wished or he wouldn't come and help me if I got into difficulties.
- (b) He told me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
- (c) He ordered me to do as I wished, but not to come and ask him for help if I got into difficulties.
- (d) He told me that unless I did as I wished he would not come and help me if I got into difficulties.

21. "May you live long and prosper", said the old lady to her son.

- (a) The old lady blessed her son with long life and wished him prosperity.
- (b) The old lady prayed for her son's long life and prosperity.
- (c) The old lady prayed for her son and said that he might live long and prosper.
- (d) The old lady blessed her son and prayed for his long life and prosperity.

22. Socrates said, "Virtue is its own reward."

- (a) Socrates said that virtue had its own rewards.
- (b) Socrates says that virtue is its own reward.
- (c) Socrates said that virtue is its own reward.
- (d) Socrates said that virtue was its own reward.

23. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question?"

- (a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
- (b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
- (c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
- (d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

24. He said, "It used to be a lovely, quiet street."

- (a) He said that it used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (b) He pointed out that it had used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (c) He said that there used to be a lovely, quiet street.
- (d) He inquired whether there was a lovely, quiet street.

25. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.

- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."
- (b) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow any one to disturb the peace."
- (c) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."
- (d) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."

26. The spectators said, "Bravo ! Well done, players."

- (a) The spectators shouted that the players were doing very well.
- (b) The spectators exclaimed with joy that the players were doing very well.
- (c) The spectators applauded the players saying that they had done well.
- (d) The spectators applauded the players joyfully to do well.

27. I said to my friend, "Good Morning.Let us go for a picnic today."

- (a) I told good morning to my friend and asked to go for a picnic that day.
- (b) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that we should go for a picnic that day.
- (c) I wished my friend good morning and proposed that they should go for a picnic

Narration

that day.

- (d) I told good morning to my friend and suggested to go for a picnic today.

28. The new student asked the old one, “Do you know my name?”

- (a) The new student asked the old one if he knew his name.
(b) The new student asked the old one that whether he knew his names.
(c) The new student asked the old one did he know his name.
(d) The new student asked the old one if he knows his name.

29. I warned her that I could no longer tolerate her coming late.

- (a) I said to her, “You can no longer tolerate my coming late.”
(b) I said to her, “I can no longer tolerate your coming late.”
(c) I said to her, “He can no longer tolerate her coming late”.
(d) I said to her, “I can no longer tolerate she coming late.”

30. I said to my mother, “I will certainly take you to Bangalore this week.”

- (a) I told my mother he would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
(b) I told my mother that I would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
(c) I told my mother that she would certainly take her to Bangalore that week.
(d) I told to my mother that I would take you to Bangalore that week.

31. “How clever of you to have solved the puzzle so quickly!” said the mother.

- (a) The mother exclaimed admiringly that it was very clever of him to have solved the puzzle so quickly.
(b) The mother expressed that he was so clever to have solved the puzzle quickly.
(c) The mother told that he was very clever in solving the puzzle so quickly.
(d) The mother exclaimed with joy that he was clever enough to solve the puzzle so quickly.

32. He said that he went for a walk every morning.

- (a) He said, “I went for a walk every morning”.
(b) He said, “I go for a walk every morning”.
(c) He said, “I will go for a walk morning”.
(d) He said, “he went for a walk every morning”.

33. I reiterated, “I don’t care about the job”.

- (a) I reiterated I didn’t care about the job.
(b) I said again and again I didn’t care about the job.
(c) I reiterated that I did not care about the job.
(d) I repeatedly said that I cared about the job.

34. I said to my brother, “Let us go to some hill station for a change.”

- (a) I suggested to my brother that they should go to some hill station for a change.
(b) I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change.
(c) I suggested to my brother that let us go to some hill station for a change.
(d) I suggested to my brother that let them go to some hill station for a change.

35. I wondered how many discoveries went unheeded.

- (a) I said, “How many discoveries have gone unheeded?”

Narration ——————

- (b) I said, "How many discoveries went unheeded?"
- (c) I said, "Do discoveries go unheeded?"
- (d) I said, "How many discoveries go unheeded?"

36. Gopan said to me, "Can you do these sums for me?"

- (a) Gopan asked me if I could do those sums for him.
- (b) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.
- (c) Gopan asked me if I can do those sums for him.
- (d) Gopan asked if I could do these sums for him.

37. The boss said, "It's time we began planning our work".

- (a) The boss said that it was time they had begun planning their work.
- (b) The boss said that it was time we had began planning our work.
- (c) The boss said that it was time they began planning their work.
- (d) The boss said that it was time we began planning his work.

38. He said to the judge, "I did not commit this crime."

- (a) He told the judge that he did not commit the crime.
- (b) The told the judge that he had not committed the crime.
- (c) He told the judge that he had not committed that crime.
- (d) He told the judge that he had not committed this crime.

39. Rahul said, "I will do it now or never".

- (a) Rahul said that he will do it now or never.
- (b) Rahul said that he will now or never do it.
- (c) Rahul said that he would do it then or never.
- (d) Rahul said that he would now or never do it.

40. My father once said to me, "If I can't trust my people, then I don't want to be doing this."

- (a) His father once told him that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (b) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (c) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust my people then he didn't want to be doing that.
- (d) My father once told me that if he couldn't trust his people then he didn't want to be doing this.

41. Doshi said to his wife, "Please select one of these necklaces."

- (a) Doshi requested his wife to select one of these necklaces.
- (b) Doshi said to his wife to please select one of these necklaces.
- (c) Doshi told his wife to please select one of these necklaces.
- (d) Doshi requested his wife to select one of those necklaces.

42. He wrote in his report, "The rainfall has been scanty till now."

- (a) He reported that the rainfall has been scanty till now.

English – from Plinth to Paramount ——————

Narration

- (b) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till now.
(c) He reported that the rainfall has been scantily till then.
(d) He reported that the rainfall had been scanty till then.
- 43. "Govind," said the manager sternly, "I command you to tell me what the old man said."**
- (a) The manager sternly commanded Govind to tell him what the old man had said.
(b) The manager commanded sternly to Govind to tell him what the old man had to say.
(c) The manager commanded Govind to tell him what the old man said.
(d) The manager told Govind to tell him what the old man said.
- 44. He says, "I am going to the market now."**
- (a) He says that he is going to the market now.
(b) He said that he was going to the market then.
(c) He says that he was going to the market then.
(d) He said that he was going to the market now.
- 45. She said to Rita, "Please help me with my homework."**
- (a) She requested Rita to help her in her homework.
(b) Rita requested her to help her with her homework.
(c) She requested Rita to help her with her homework.
(d) She requested Rita to help her homework.
- 46. He said to me, "Do not run after money and then you will see money running after you."**
- (a) He told to me that I did not run after money and then I would see money running me.
(b) He advised me not to run after money and then I would see money running after me.
(c) He warned me not to run after money and then I will see money running after me.
(d) He warned me not to run after money and then money would run after me.
- 47. He said to me, "Do you know English?"**
- (a) He asked me if I did know English.
(b) He asked me if I knew English.
(c) he asked me that if I know English.
(d) He asked me if I know English.
- 48. My father said to me, "Bravo! You have done well."**
- (a) My father applauded me saying that I had done well.
(b) My father applauded me saying that I have done well.
(c) My father applauded me saying that I did well.
(d) My father applauded me saying that you had done well.
- 49. Tom said that he had had a strange experience the day before.**
- (a) Tom said, "I have a strange experience yesterday."

Narration

- (b) Tom said, "I have had a strange experience yesterday."
- (c) Tom said, "I had a strange experience yesterday."
- (d) Tom said, "I had had a strange experience yesterday."

50. Our teacher said to us, "I am not going to tolerate your nonsense anymore."

- (a) Our teacher warned us that she is not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (b) Our teacher warned us that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (c) Our teacher told us that she was not going to be tolerate our nonsense anymore.
- (d) Our teacher said that she was not going to tolerate our nonsense anymore

51. Sheela said, "I am going to finish this work now before I start a new work tomorrow."

- (a) Sheela told me that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (b) Sheela said that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (c) Sheela said that she is going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.
- (d) Sheela told that she was going to finish that work then before she started a new work the next day.

52. "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?" shouted her angry mother.

- (a) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed whether she knew better than her own father.
- (b) Her angry mother shouted and asked that she supposed that she knew better than her own father.
- (c) Her angry mother shouted whether she supposed that she known better than her own father.
- (d) Her angry mother shouted and asked her whether she supposed that she knew better than her own father.

53. "So help me, Heaven !" he cried "I will never drive recklessly".

- (a) He called upon Heaven to see his resolve never to drive recklessly.
- (b) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.
- (c) He called upon Heaven to witness his resolved never to drive recklessly.
- (d) He ordered Heaven to witness his resolve never to drive recklessly.

54. The dwarf said to her, "Promise me that when you are a queen you will give me your first-born child."

- (a) The draft advised her to promised that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.
- (b) The draft requested her to promise that when she had been a queen she would give him her first born child.
- (c) The draft requested her to promise that when she is a queen she would give

Narration

- him her first born child.
- (d) The draft asked her to promise him that when she was a queen she would give him her first born child.
- 55. "Dear bird", she said, stroking its feathers, "have you come to comfort me in my sorrow?"**
- (a) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately that she had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
- (b) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort in her sorrow.
- (c) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether they had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
- (d) Stroking the bird's feathers, she asked affectionately whether it had come to comfort her in her sorrow.
- 56. He said, "My God ! I am ruined."**
- (a) He exclaimed sadly that he was ruined.
- (b) He exclaimed that he was ruined.
- (c) He exclaimed sadly that he had been ruined.
- (d) He exclaimed sadly that he ruined.
- 57. "Ah me!" exclaimed the man, "What a rash and bloody deed you have done!"**
- (a) The man exclaimed that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.
- (b) The man exclaimed sadly that he had done a very rash and bloody deed.
- (c) The man exclaimed with sorry that you had done a very rash and bloody deed.
- (d) The man exclaimed with sorrow that they had done a very rash and bloody deed.
- 58. Bhishma said, "Boys! Boys! Remember you are playing a game. If it be Arjuna's turn let him have it."**
- (a) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.
- (b) Bhishma asked the boys to remembered that they were playing a game. If it is Arjuna's turn he must have it.
- (c) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that they were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.
- (d) Bhishma asked the boys to remember that we were playing a game. If it was Arjuna's turn he must have it.
- 59. "What are you doing, grandma?" said the little boy. "I'm planting saplings, my little prince." "Ah, how interesting! Let me try , if I can also do so."**
- (a) The little boy said to his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
- (b) The little boy asked his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately

Narration _____

that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.

- (c) The little boy asked his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.
- (d) The little boy asked his grandma what she was doing. She replied affectionately that she was planting saplings. The boy exclaimed that it was very interesting and wanted to try if he could also do so.

60. "You say," said the judge, "that the bag you lost contained one hundred and ten pounds". "Yes, your honour," replied the cheat. "Then as this one contains one hundred pounds it cannot be yours."

- (a) The judge asked the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (b) The judge ordered the cheat if the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (c) The judge ordered the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied respectfully in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded that as that one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.
- (d) The judge asked the cheat that the bag he had lost contained one hundred and ten pounds. The cheat replied in the affirmative. Then the judge concluded as this one contained one hundred pounds it could not be his.

61. The child said, 'Mommy, can you bring the moon for me?' Mommy said, 'No.'

- (a) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
- (b) The child told his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.
- (c) The child asked his mommy if she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied no.
- (d) The child said to his mommy that she could bring the moon for him. Mommy replied in the negative.

62. He said, "Fil!" and vomited

- (a) He exclaimed with disgust and had vomited
- (b) He exclaimed with disgust and vomited
- (c) He exclaimed with sorrow and vomited
- (d) He exclaimed with disgust and then had vomited

Narration

63. The captain said to the soldiers, "Stand at ease."

- (a) The captain commanded the soldiers to stand at ease.
- (b) The captain said the soldiers to stand at ease.
- (c) The captain told the soldiers to stand at ease.
- (d) The captain commanded the soldiers that they stand at ease.

64. "I can show no mercy," said the king, "except permitting you to choose what kind of death you wish to die."

- (a) The king asked that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
- (b) The king advised that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
- (c) The king ordered that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.
- (d) The king said that he could show no mercy except permitting him to choose what kind of death he wished to die.

65. Kausalya said to Rama, "Do not desire, O my child, to possess the stars, because they are thousands of miles off."

- (a) Kaushalya forbade her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
- (b) Kaushalya requested her child Rama to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
- (c) Kaushalya ordered her child Rama to not desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.
- (d) Kaushalya said to her child Rama not to desire to possess the stars because they were thousands of miles off.

66. "What a stupid fellow you are!" she remarked.

- (a) She exclaimed that what a stupid fellow he was.
- (b) She exclaimed that he was a very stupid fellow.
- (c) She exclaimed in disgust how he could be so stupid.
- (d) She asked him what a stupid fellow he was

67. The police said to the thief, "Don't move."

- (a) The police ordered the thief not to move.
- (b) The police ordered the thief that he should not move.
- (c) The police told the thief that he did not move.
- (d) The police ordered to the thief to not move.

68. He said, "I am going to college just now."

- (a) He said that he was going to college just now.
- (b) He asked that he was going to college just then.
- (c) He said that he was going to college just then.
- (d) He asked that he was going to college just now.

Narration ——————

69. The teacher said to the student “Can you explain this?”

- (a) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain this.
- (b) The teacher asked the student whether he can explain that.
- (c) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain this.
- (d) The teacher asked the student whether he could explain that.

70. Ramu said, “My master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.”

- (a) Ramu said that his master planned to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (b) Ramu said that his master is planning to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (c) Ramu said that his master’s plan is to build a huge house in Khandala.
- (d) Ramu said that his master was planning to build a huge house in Khandala.

71. Nandita said to Nitin, “Can you solve this sum?”

- (a) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve this sum.
- (b) Nandita asked Nitin if could he solve that sum.
- (c) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve this sum.
- (d) Nandita asked Nitin if he could solve that sum.

72. He said, “How lovely the scene is!”

- (a) He exclaimed that the scene is very lovely.
- (b) He exclaimed that how the scene was lovely.
- (c) He exclaimed that the scene was very lovely.
- (d) He exclaimed that the scene is indeed lovely.

73. Bill said, “I am here to help you all.”

- (a) Bill said that he is here to help you all.
- (b) Bill said that he was there to help us all.
- (c) Bill said that he was here to help us all.
- (d) Bill said that he is there to help us all.

74. The kids yelled in a loud voice, “We love our family.”

- (a) The kids yelled loudly that they love our family.
- (b) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved their family.
- (c) The kids yelled in a loud voice that they loved our family.
- (d) The kids were shouting loudly that they loved their family.

75. He said to me, “Please visit my company tomorrow”.

- (a) He said to me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (b) He requested me to visit his company tomorrow.
- (c) He requested me to visit his company the next day.
- (d) He said to me to visit his company the next day.

76. He said, “My parents are arriving tomorrow”.

- (a) He said that his parents are arriving the next day.
- (b) He said that his parents were arriving the next day.
- (c) He said that his parents are arriving tomorrow.
- (d) He said that his parents have arrived the next day.

English – from Plinth to Paramount ——————

Narration

77. He said, “How cruel of him!”

- (a) He remarked that it was very cruel of him.
- (b) He remarked on his great cruelty.
- (c) He remark that it was very cruel of him.
- (d) He remarked that it is very cruel of him.

78. “How did it get here?” She wanted to know.

- (a) She wanted to know how did it get here.
- (b) She wanted to know how it had got there.
- (c) She wanted to know how did it got there.
- (d) She wanted to know how it get there.

79. The author said, “It took me three years to finish the novel.”

- (a) The author said that it took him three years to finish the novel.
- (b) The author said that it had taken me three years to finish the novel.
- (c) The author said that it would take him three years to finish the novel
- (d) The author said that it had taken him three years to finish the novel.

80. “Go away!” she said to the man, “do not trouble your family anymore”.

- (a) She asked the man to go away and not trouble the family any more.
- (b) She asked the man not to trouble the family that was away, any more.
- (c) She asked the man not to trouble your family any more and go away.
- (d) She asked the man to go away and not to trouble his family any more.

81. He asked me, “Have you finished reading the magazine?”

- (a) He asked me whether I had finished reading the magazine.
- (b) He asked me if had I finished reading the magazine.
- (c) He asked me if I have finished reading the magazine.
- (d) He asked me whether I finished reading the magazine.

82. He said, “We have done our work.”

- (a) He said that he had done his work.
- (b) He said that they have done their work.
- (c) He said that they had done their work.
- (d) He said that they should do their work.

83. “I’m sorry I’m unable to repay the loan in time,” said the customer.

- (a) The customer regrets that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
- (b) The customer regretted that he is unable to repay the loan in time.
- (c) The customer regretted that he was unable to repay the loan in time.
- (d) The customer said that he could be unable to repay the loan in time.

84. “Please, take me to the officer,” said the visitor.

- (a) The visitor requested them to take him to the officer.
- (b) The visitor told them to take him to the officer.
- (c) The visitor requested for the officer to be taken.
- (d) The visitor wanted the officer to take him there.

Narration ——————

85. Nitin said, “What a pleasant atmosphere this place has!”

- (a) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place was a pleasant atmosphere.
- (b) Nitin exclaimed with joy that was a pleasant atmosphere in that place.
- (c) Nitin exclaimed with joy that that place had a pleasant atmosphere.
- (d) Nitin exclaimed with joy that what a pleasant atmosphere that place had.

86. Aarti said, “I am in a hurry today.”

- (a) Aarti said that she was in a hurry that day.
- (b) Aarti said that I am in a hurry today.
- (c) Aarti said that she is in a hurry today.
- (d) Aarti said that she is in a hurry that day.

87. They said, “We are practising for the next match.”

- (a) They said that they are practising for the next match.
- (b) They said that they practised for the next match.
- (c) They said that they were practising for the next match.
- (d) They said they were going to practise for the next match.

88. He said, “ May you live long.”

- (a) He suggested that my life might be long.
- (b) He prayed that my life might be long.
- (c) He prayed that my life may be longer.
- (d) He declared that my life is longer.

89. “When did you meet my brother?” She asked me.

- (a) She wanted to know when did I meet her brother.
- (b) She asked when did I meet my brother.
- (c) She asked me when I had met her brother.
- (d) She wants to know when I had met my brother.

90. Ruby requested me to lend her Rs. 1000 the next day.

- (a) Ruby said to me, “Please lend me Rs. 1000 the next day.”
- (b) Ruby said to me, “Please lend her Rs. 1000 the next day.”
- (c) Ruby said to me, “Please lend her Rs. 1000 tomorrow.”
- (d) Ruby said to me, “Please lend me Rs. 1000 tomorrow.”

91. “You’d better leave the dog along,” the man said.

- (a) The man said to me to leave the dog alone.
- (b) The man told me to better leave the dog alone.
- (c) the man warned me to leave the dog alone.
- (d) The man said I should leave the dog alone.

92. “I’d have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to me hadn’t snored all the time,” said John.

- (a) John said that he enjoyed the journey but the man next to me snored.
- (b) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey more if the man next to him hadn’t snored all the time.

English – from Plinth to Paramount ——————

Narration

- (c) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the next man hadn't snored all the time.
- (d) John said that he would have enjoyed the journey if the man next to him did not snore.

93. A poet said, "The night is dark and I am far from home."

- (a) A poet said that the night was dark and he was far from home.
- (b) A poet told his friend that the night is dark and that he is far from home.
- (c) The friend was told by the poet that the night was dark and he was far from home.
- (d) A poet said that the night is dark and he is far from home.

94. The players reported that the spectators were cheering while they were playing.

- (a) "The spectators have been cheering while we played.", said the players.
- (b) "The spectators cheered while we were playing.", said the players.
- (c) "The spectators were cheering while we were playing.", said the players.
- (d) "The spectators played while we cheered.", said the players.

95. She requested the boys to listen to what she was saying.

- (a) She said to the boys, "Please listen to what I am saying."
- (b) I said to the boys, "Listen to what I am saying."
- (c) She said, "Boys, listen to what I was saying."
- (d) She said, "I requested you to listen to what I am saying."

96. "Do you want balloons ?" he said to the child.

- (a) He asked the child if it wanted balloons.
- (b) He asked the child whether it had wanted balloons.
- (c) He asked the child did it want balloons.
- (d) He asked the child if it would want balloons.

97. She said, "How ugly I look in this dress!"

- (a) She said that how ugly she was looking in that dress.
- (b) She exclaimed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (c) She expressed how ugly she looked in that dress.
- (d) She exclaimed that she looked very ugly in that dress.

98. She said "You can leave the books here."

- (a) She said that they can leave the books there.
- (b) She said that they could leave the books there.
- (c) She said that they can leave the books here.
- (d) She said that they could leave the books here.

99. My friend said "I am leaving today."

- (a) My friend said that he is leaving today.
- (b) My friend said that he was leaving today.
- (c) My friend said that he leaves today.
- (d) My friend said that he was leaving that day.

Narration ——————

100. Mukta said to Puneet, “My mother is a good cook.”

- (a) Mukta told Puneet that her mother was a good cook.
- (b) Mukta told Puneet that my mother was a good cook.
- (c) Mukta told to Puneet that her mother is a good cook.
- (d) Mukta asked Puneet that her mother is a good cook.

101. The commander said to the army, “March forward”.

- (a) The commander asked the army march forward.
- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
- (c) The commander requested the army to go forward.
- (d) The army requested the commander to march.

102. He promised, “I will do it tomorrow.”

- (a) He promised that he will do it tomorrow.
- (b) He promised that he will do it the next day.
- (c) He promised that he would do it tomorrow.
- (d) He promised that he would do it the next day.

103. Geeta said, “I did not do this deliberately.”

- (a) Geeta said that I had not done that deliberately.
- (b) Geeta said that she had not done that deliberately.
- (c) Geeta said that she has not done this deliberately.
- (d) Geeta said that I have not done this deliberately.

104. She said, “I’m afraid we are rather late!”

- (a) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
- (c) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
- (d) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.

105. She said to me, “What can I do for you ?”

- (a) She asked me what she could do for me.
- (b) She asked me what can she do for me.
- (c) She asked me what she can do for me.
- (d) She asked me whether she can do anything for me.

106. He said, ‘Alas! I am undone !’

- (a) He said that it was his undoing.
- (b) He exclaimed pathetically that he was undone.
- (c) He stated that he was undone.
- (d) He cried that he was being undone.

107. “I shall unlock the secrets of their success,” he said.

- (a) He said that he shall unlock the secrets of their success.
- (b) He said that he should unlock the secrets of their success.
- (c) He said that he would unlock the secrets of their success.
- (d) He said that he will unlock the secrets of their success.

English – from Plinth to Paramount ——————

Narration

108. "I wonder what he wants of us," said Quint.

- (a) Quint said that he was wondering what he wanted of them.
- (b) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of us.
- (c) Quint said he wondered what he wants of them.
- (d) Quint said that he wondered what he wanted of them.

109. Dinesh said, "I want to eat a good mango one of these days."

- (a) Dinesh said he wants to eat a good mango one of these days.
- (b) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of those days.
- (c) Dinesh said that he wants to eat a good mango one of those days.
- (d) Dinesh said that he wanted to eat a good mango one of these days.

110. He said, "I intend to leave for Delhi tonight."

- (a) He said that he will intend to leave for Delhi tonight.
- (b) lie said that he should intend to leave for Delhi that night.
- (c) He said that he intended to leave for Delhi that night.
- (d) He said that his intention is to leave for Delhi tonight.

111. He said, "The Sun rises in the east."

- (a) He said that the Sun rised in the east.
- (b) He said that the Sun rises in the east.
- (c) He said that the Sun will rise in the east.
- (d) He said that the Sun may rise in the east.

112. Ram asked Krishna, "Where are you going today?"

- (a) Ram asked Krishna where he was going that day.
- (b) Ram asked Krishna as to where he was going on the previous day.
- (c) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the next day.
- (d) Ram asked Krishna where was he going the day before.

113. He said, "What a fool Tom is!"

- (a) He exclaimed that he was a big fool.
- (b) He exclaimed that Tom was a big fool.
- (c) He wondered what kind of a fool Tom was.
- (d) He claimed that Tom was a big fool.

114. "What kind of scheme do you have?" Amif said to the insurance agent.

- (a) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she had.
- (b) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she has.
- (c) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she is having.
- (d) Amit asked the insurance agent what kind of scheme he/she was having.

115. The doctor said to the patient, "Take complete rest."

- (a) The doctor told to the patient that take complete rest.
- (b) The doctor advised the patient to take complete rest.
- (c) The doctor suggested the patient to take complete rest.
- (d) The doctor asked the patient take complete rest.

Narration ——————

116. Mini said to me, “I have bought this flat for my mother.”

- (a) Mini told that she had bought that flat for her mother.
- (b) Mini said that she bought that flat for her mother.
- (c) Mini said she has bought that flat for her mother.
- (d) Mini told me that she had bought that flat for her mother.

117. He said, “I will come again.”

- (a) He said that he will come again.
- (b) He says he is coming again.
- (c) He says he'll come again.
- (d) He said that he would come again.

118. “Don’t do any more work until you have had a rest,” her mother said to her.

- (a) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she has had a rest.
- (b) Her mother advised her not to do any more work until she had had a rest.
- (c) Her mother advised her that she not do any more work until she had had a rest.
- (d) Her mother advised her that she need not do any more work until she had had a rest.

119. “Make me another suit like this,” he said to the tailor.

- (a) He asked the tailor to make him another suit like this.
- (b) He asks the tailor to make him another suit like this.
- (c) He told the tailor to make him another suit like that.
- (d) He told the tailor to make me another suit like this.

120. My Principal told me, “Don’t conduct any test tomorrow.”

- (a) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
- (b) My Principal told me not to conduct any test tomorrow.
- (c) My Principal ordered me don't conduct any test.
- (d) My Principal ordered me not to conduct any test the next day.

121. Kiran said to me, “Did you see the cricket match on television last night?

- (a) Kiran asked me if I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night
- (b) Kiran asked me if I had seen the cricket match on television the previous night
- (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night
- (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night

122. David said to Anna, “Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow.”

- (a) David told Anna that Mona will leave for her native place tomorrow
- (b) David told Anna that Mona left for her native place the next day
- (c) David told to Anna that Mona would be leaving for her native place tomorrow
- (d) David told Anna that Mona would leave for her native place the next day

123. I said to him, “Why are you working so hard ?”

- (a) I asked him why he was working so hard
- (b) I asked him why was he working so hard

Narration

- (c) I asked him why he had been working so hard
- (d) I asked him why had he been working so hard

124. Pooja said, “Ridhi, do you want another cake?”

- (a) Pooja asked Ridhi do you want another cake.
- (b) Pooja asked Ridhi if she wanted another cake.
- (c) Pooja said to Ridhi you wanted another cake.
- (d) Pooja said if you wanted another cake.

125. The tailor said to him, “Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening?”

- (a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening
- (b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening
- (c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening
- (d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening

126. He ordered his servant to do as he was told.

- (a) He ordered his servant, “Do as you are told.”
- (b) He said to his servant, “Do as you are told.”
- (c) He said to his servant, “Do as I told you.”
- (d) He said to his servant, “Do as you were told.”

127. He said, “Be quiet and listen to my words.”

- (a) He urged them to be quiet and listen to his words
- (b) He urged them and said be quiet and listen to words
- (c) He said they should be quiet and listen to his words
- (d) He said you should be quiet and listen to my words

128. He said to me, “I have often told you not to play with fire.”

- (a) He said that he has often been telling me not to play with fire
- (b) He told me that he had often told me not to play with fire
- (c) He reminded me that he often said to me not to play with fire
- (d) He said to me that he often told me not to play with fire

129. “I have seen the film before” Sunita says.

- (a) Sunita said that she had seen the film before.
- (b) Sunita says that she has seen the film before.
- (c) Sunita said that the film was seen by her before.
- (d) Sunita said that she saw the film earlier.

130. Pawan said to me, “If I hear any news, I’ll phone you.”

- (a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me
- (b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me
- (c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me
- (d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me

131. The teacher said to Mahesh, “Congratulations ! Wish you success in life.”

- (a) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and said wish you success in life
- (b) The teacher wished congratulations and success in life to Mahesh

Narration —————

- (c) The teacher said congratulations to Mahesh and wished him success life
- (d) The teacher congratulated Mahesh and wished him success in life

132. The poor examinee said, “O God! take pity on me.”

- (a) The poor examinee prayed God to take pity on him
- (b) The poor examinee, invoking God, implored him to take pity on him
- (c) The poor examinee exclaimed that God take pity on him
- (d) The poor examinee asked God to take pity on him

133. “Where will you be tomorrow,” I said, “in case I have to ring you ?”

- (a) I asked where you will be the next day in case I will ring him
- (b) I asked where he would be the next day in case I had to ring him
- (c) I said to him where he will be in case I have to ring him
- (d) I enquired about his whereabouts the next day in case I would have to ring up

134. Seeta said to me, “Can you give me your pen ?”

- (a) Seeta asked me can I give her my pen
- (b) Seeta asked me if I can give me your pen
- (c) Seeta asked me if I could give her my pen
- (d) Seeta asked me if I gave her my pen

135. The father warned his son that he should be beware of him.

- (a) The father warned his son, “Beware of him !”
- (b) The father warned his son, “Watch that chap !”
- (c) The father warned his son, “Be careful about him.”
- (d) The father warned his son, “Don’t fall into the trap.”

136. Manna said to Rohan, “Have you sat in a trolley bus before ?”

- (a) Manna asked Rohan whether he had sat in a trolley bus earlier.
- (b) Manna asked Rohan had he sat in a trolley bus before.
- (c) Manna asked Rohan-if he sat on a trolley bus before.
- (d) Manna asked Rohan if he has ever sat in a trolley bus

137. Farhan said to Geeta, “Could you lend me a hundred rupees until tomorrow ?”

- (a) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until tomorrow.
- (b) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend him a hundred rupees until the next day.
- (c) Farhan asked Geeta whether she could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.
- (d) Farhan asked whether Geeta could lend me a hundred rupees until the next day.

138. “What about going for a swim,” he said, “It’s quite fine now.”

- (a) He asked me what about going for a swim as it was quite fine then
- (b) He proposed going for a swim as it was quite fine.
- (c) He suggested going for a swim as it was quite fine.
- (d) He advised me to go for a swim as it was quite fine.

139. “You can’t bathe in this sea,” he said to me, “it’s very rough.”

- (a) He said that I can’t bathe in this sea because it’s very rough.
- (b) He said that you couldn’t bathe in that sea if it was very rough.

Narration

- (c) He said that I couldn't bathe in that sea as it was very rough.
- (d) He said that you can't bathe in this sea since it was very rough.

140. Jagdish said, "We passed by a beautiful lake when we went on a trip to Goa."

- (a) Jagdish said that they passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
- (b) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.
- (c) Jagdish said that they had passed by a beautiful lake when they had gone on a trip to Goa.
- (d) Jagdish said they passed by a beautiful lake when they went on a trip to Goa.

141. He said to me, "I expect you to attend the function."

- (a) He told me that he had expected me to attend the function.
- (b) He told me that he expected me to attended the function.
- (c) He told me that he expected me to have attended the function.
- (d) He told me that he expected me to attend the function.

142. He said, "Why didn't you send your application to me ?"

- (a) He enquired why I had not sent my application to him.
- (b) He enquired why I did not send my application to him.
- (c) He enquired why had I not sent my application to him.
- (d) He enquired why did I not send my application to him.

143. Dinesh asked, "Are you going to the party tomorrow, Eliza ?"

- (a) Dinesh asked whether Eliza was going to the party the next day.
- (b) Dinesh asked Eliza whether you are going to the party the next day.
- (c) Dinesh asked Eliza whether she was going to the party the next day.
- (d) Dinesh asked Eliza are you going to the party tomorrow.

144. John said, "How long will it take to travel from Germany to South Africa?"

- (a) John asked how long it will take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (b) John asked how long would it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (c) John asked how long it would take to travel from Germany to South Africa.
- (d) John was asking how long must it take to travel from Germany to South Africa.

145. "What did you see at the South Pole ?" Ashok asked Anil.

- (a) Ashok asked Anil if he saw anything at the South Pole.
- (b) Ashok asked Anil what he had. seen at the South Pole.
- (c) Ashok asked Anil what did he see at the South Pole.
- (d) Ashok asked Anil that he saw anything at the South Pole.

146. "Do you want some more sweets ?" asked my friend.

- (a) My friend asked me if I want some more sweets.
- (b) My friend said to me if I wanted some more sweets.
- (c) My friend asked me whether I wanted some more sweets.
- (d) My friend asked me that I wanted some more sweets.

Narration _____

147. I said to my sister, “I brought you a doll yesterday.”

- (a) I told my sister that I brought you a doll the previous day.
- (b) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll the previous day.
- (c) I told my sister that I had brought her a doll yesterday.
- (d) I told my sister that I brought her a doll yesterday.

148. The captain said to the army, “March forward, now.”

- (a) The captain said to the army that march forward now.
- (b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.
- (c) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.
- (d) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.

149. They said, “We’ve lived here for a long time.”

- (a) They said that they have lived there for a long time.
- (b) They said that they lived here for a long time.
- (c) They said that they had lived there for a long time.
- (d) They said that they have lived for a long time.

150. “Would you open the door please ?”

- (a) She asked me to please open the door.
- (b) She requested me to open the door.
- (c) She requested me to please open the door.
- (d) She asked me open the door.

151. The teacher said, “Gandhiji was born in India.”

- (a) The teacher said that Gandhiji had been born in India.
- (b) The teacher says that Gandhiji was born in India.
- (c) The teacher said that Gandhiji had born in India.
- (d) The teacher said that Gandhiji was bom in India.

152. “Where do you live ?” asked the stranger.

- (a) The stranger asked where I lived.
- (b) The stranger enquired where I was living.
- (c) The stranger questioned where did live.
- (d) The stranger wanted to know where I live.

153. I said to him, “How do you know this ?”

- (a) I asked him how I knew that.
- (b) I asked him that how he knew that.
- (c) I told him how I knew that.
- (d) I asked him how he knew that.

154. He said, “We are all sinners.”

- (a) He said that we are all sinners.
- (b) He said they were all sinners.
- (c) He said that he was a sinner.
- (d) He said all were sinners.

English – from Plinth to Paramount _____

Narration

155. "Would you mind taking off your shoes before entering the house ?" He said to the foreigner.

- (a) He requested the foreigner to take off his shoes before entering the house.
- (b) He told the foreigner that he must take off his shoes before entered the house.
- (c) He said the foreigner that to take off His shoes before entered the house.
- (d) Before entering the house he said that shoes must be taken off.

156. "I lost my book yesterday", she said to her teacher.

- (a) She admitted to her teacher that she had lost her book the previous day.
- (b) To her teacher she was admitted that she has lost her book the previous day.
- (c) She admitted losing her book to her teacher yesterday.
- (d) She said to her teacher that I have lost my book the previous day.

157. They said, "The boy will soon be found and we will bring him."

- (a) They said that boy would be found and brought.
- (b) They said that the boy would soon be found, and that they would bring him.
- (c) They informed him that the boy would soon be found, and they ought to bring him.
- (d) They told that the boy will be found soon and they will bring him.

158. "Stop talking children," said the teacher.

- (a) The teacher ordered the children to stop talking.
- (b) The teacher asked the children to stop talking.
- (c) The teacher told to the children to stop talking.
- (d) The teacher said the children to stop talking.

159. The teacher said that the Earth moves round the Sun.

- (a) The teacher stated: "The Earth has been moving round the Sun."
- (b) The teacher said, "The Earth is moving round the Sun."
- (c) The teacher said, "The Earth will move round the Sun."
- (d) The teacher said, "The Earth moves round The Sun."

160. The lady said that they had been witnessing the programme.

- (a) The lady said, "We were witnessing the programme."
- (b) The lady says, "We are witnessing the programme."
- (c) The lady said, "We witnessed the programme."
- (d) The lady says, "We had witnessed the programme."

161. The Principal told us, "Wait here till I return."

- (a) The Principal told us wait here till her return.
- (b) The Principal told us to wait there till he returned.
- (c) The Principal told us to wait there till I return.
- (d) The Principal told us please wait here till he returned.

Narration _____



162. My mother said to me, “Who is your best friend?”

- (a) My mother questioned me as to who my best friend was.
- (b) My mother asked me who was my best friend.
- (c) My mother asked me who my best friend was.
- (d) My mother asked me who my best friend is.

163. The teacher said to the boys, “If you do your best you will surely pass.”

- (a) The teacher asked the boys to work hard so that they can pass.
- (b) The teacher told the boys that unless they work hard they will not pass.
- (c) The teacher requested the boys that if they work better, they will surely pass.
- (d) They teacher told the boys that if they did their best they would surely pass.

164. The boy pleaded that he had not stolen the book.

- (a) The boy said, “I don’t steal the book.”
- (b) The boy said, “I didn’t steal the book.”
- (c) They boy said, “I hadn’t stolen the book.”
- (d) The boy said, “I haven’t stolen the book.”

165. Kavitha said, “I saw the photograph.”

- (a) Kavitha told that she saw the photograph.
- (b) Kavitha said that she had seen the photograph.
- (c) Kavitha said that the photograph was seen by her.
- (d) Kavitha said that she has seen the photograph.

166. The king said to his man, “Put the man in prison.”

- (a) The king implored his men to put the man in prison.
- (b) The king commanded his men to put the man in prison.
- (c) The king requested his men to put the man in prison.
- (d) The king informed his men to put the man in prison.

167. He said, “I have made a kite.”

- (a) He says that he made a kite.
- (b) He will say that he had made a kite.
- (c) He said that I had made a kite.
- (d) He said that he had made a kite.

168. David’s neighbour said, “Do you like to play golf?”

- (a) David’s neighbour questioned him and said if he liked to play golf.
- (b) David’s neighbour asked him to like golf.
- (c) David’s neighbour asked him if he would like to play golf.
- (d) David’s neighbour asked him if he liked to play golf.

English – from Plinth to Paramount _____

105

Narration

169. She announced that they had selected Pradeep as their leader.

- (a) She said, "Pradeep is our leader."
- (b) She announced, "We have selected Pradeep as our leader."
- (c) She announced, "Let us select Pradeep as our leader."
- (d) She declared, "Pradeep had been selected as our leader."

170. He told the boy not to sit there.

- (a) "Didn't sit here," he said to the boy.
- (b) "Don't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (c) "Didn't sit there," he said to the boy.
- (d) "Don't sit here," he said to the boy.

ANSWER KEY

1. (b)	2. (b)	3. (b)	4. (c)	5. (b)	6. (a)	7. (c)	8. (c)	9. (c)
10. (d)	11. (a)	12. (c)	13. (d)	14. (b)	15. (d)	16. (d)	17. (c)	18. (a)
19. (d)	20. (b)	21. (c)	22. (c)	23. (c)	24. (a)	25. (a)	26. (c)	27. (b)
28. (a)	29. (b)	30. (b)	31. (a)	32. (a)	33. (c)	34. (b)	35. (d)	36. (a)
37. (a)	38. (c)	39. (c)	40. (b)	41. (d)	42. (d)	43. (a)	44. (a)	45. (c)
46. (b)	47. (b)	48. (a)	49. (c)	50. (b)	51. (b)	52. (d)	53. (b)	54. (d)
55. (d)	56. (a)	57. (b)	58. (c)	59. (b)	60. (a)	61. (a)	62. (b)	63. (a)
64. (d)	65. (a)	66. (b)	67. (a)	68. (c)	69. (d)	70. (d)	71. (d)	72. (c)
73. (b)	74. (b)	75. (c)	76. (b)	77. (a)	78. (b)	79. (d)	80. (d)	81. (a)
82. (c)	83. (c)	84. (a)	85. (c)	86. (a)	87. (c)	88. (b)	89. (c)	90. (d)
91. (c)	92. (b)	93. (a)	94. (c)	95. (a)	96. (a)	97. (d)	98. (b)	99. (d)
100. (a)	101. (b)	102. (d)	103. (b)	104. (b)	105. (a)	106. (b)	107. (c)	108. (d)
109. (b)	110. (c)	111. (b)	112. (a)	113. (b)	114. (a)	115. (b)	116. (d)	117. (d)
118. (b)	119. (c)	120. (d)	121. (b)	122. (d)	123. (a)	124. (b)	125. (c)	126. (b)
127. (a)	128. (b)	129. (b)	130. (d)	131. (d)	132. (b)	133. (b)	134. (c)	135. (a)
136. (a)	137. (b)	138. (a)	139. (c)	140. (c)	141. (d)	142. (a)	143. (c)	144. (c)
145. (b)	146. (c)	147. (b)	148. (b)	149. (c)	150. (b)	151. (d)	152. (a)	153. (d)
154. (a)	155. (a)	156. (a)	157. (b)	158. (a)	159. (d)	160. (a)	161. (b)	162. (c)
163. (d)	164. (d)	165. (b)	166. (b)	167. (d)	168. (d)	169. (b)	170. (d)	

Narration

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He said / (b) that / (c) he will come. / (d) No error
2. (a) He said / (b) that / (c) I shall work hard if I want to pass. / (d) No error
3. (a) He asked me/ (b) that if / (c) I was fine./ (d) No error
4. (a) He asked me/ (b) that what / (c) had happened./ (d) No error
5. (a) He asked me/ (b) what / (c) did I say about him./ (d) No error
6. (a) He told to me / (b) that / (c) the Sun is a star./ (d) No error
7. (a) The king commanded to / (b) call the/ (c) first witness./ (d) No error
8. (a) The judge asked me / (b) if I knew the / (c) accused or not./ (d) No error
9. (a) Ram was telling / (b) that everyone / (c) was happy with the bonus./ (d) No error
10. (a) My teacher said that / (b) a bad carpenter / (c) fights with his tools./ (d) No error
11. (a) She ordered the servant shut / (b) the door / (c) and leave the room./ (d) No error
12. (a) She exclaimed with surprise / (b) that / (c) how tall has she grown./ (d) No error
13. (a)The teacher asked the little boy/(b) if he knows the / (c) correct answer to the question./ (d) No error
14. (a) Mother allowed me to / (b) go wherever/ (c) I want./ (d) No error
15. (a) The father forbade his son / (b) not to make the / (c) same mistake again./ (d) No error
16. (a) He exclaimed with sorrow / (b) that his father died just two / (c) months before. / (d) No Error.
17. (a) She requested him/ (b) to take her to the doctor / (c) as she has very high fever. / (D) No Error
18. (a) When my boss said / (b) that he was coming to see / (c) me the next day, I wondered what problems he will have with me. / (d) No Error
19. (a) I suggested that she should / (b) stay at home if it / (c) rained but she does not give any answer. / (d) No Error
20. (a) He asked me / (b) why had I gone to office / (c) when I knew there would be fewer buses on road that day. / (d) No Error
21. (a) My friend asked me / (b) what could she do/ (c) for me in that critical situation. / (d) No Error
22. (a) The Government warned the multiplexes that if / (b) they continue charging prices higher than MRP , their / (c) licences would be cancelled. / (d) No Error
23. (a) My father told me / (b) that if I work for the / (c) betterment of mankind, God would certainly do good to me . / (d) No Error
24. (a) My teacher wanted to know / (b) if I had done / (c) the homework or not. / (d) No Error
25. (a) She says, "I studied / (b) hard so that I / (c) may get good marks/ (d) No Error
26. (a) She said that she was going to / (b) theatre and wanted to know that I could / (c) accompany him. / (E) No Error
27. (a) She requested me / (b) to wait for her / (c) until she returns from school. / (d) No Error

English – from Plinth to Paramount

Narration

28. (a) The players exclaimed / (b) with joy that / (c) they have won the match / (d) No Error
29. (a) The Principal said / (b) that the gates should / (c) be locked as the classes have started. / (d) No Error
30. (a) He told us / (b) that / (c) he has not read the book. / (d) No Error

Answers with explanation

1. (c) will के स्थान पर would का प्रयोग करें। Said (Reporting Verb) Past में है। अतः reported speech (he will come) भी past में होना चाहिए।
2. (c) Shall के स्थान पर should का प्रयोग करें और want के स्थान पर wanted का। (वाक्य 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
3. (b) 'that' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता। यहाँ 'that' हटा दें। अगर कोई सवाल पुछा जाता है और सवाल 'wh family' का नहीं होता है तो Conjunction 'if' अथवा 'whether' का प्रयोग होता है।
4. (b) 'that' एवं 'what' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होगा। यहाँ 'that' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। अगर सवाल 'wh family' का हो तो किसी भी Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
5. (c) Reported speech में Question form का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अतः 'did I say' के स्थान पर 'I said' का प्रयोग करें।
6. (a) 'Tell' एवं 'told' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
7. (a) Commanded के बाद एक object (them/ him इत्यादि) का प्रयोग जरूरी होता है। Commanded के अलावा reporting verbs tell , told, advise, forbid इत्यादि के बाद भी एक object का उल्लेख होना जरूरी होता है।
8. (b) 'if' के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य के अंत में 'or not' का प्रयोग हो रहा है। 'whether.....or' Co-relative है। 'If' का जोड़ 'or' नहीं होता है।
9. (a) Telling के बाद एक object का उल्लेख होना चाहिए। (वाक्य 7 की व्याख्या देखें)
10. (d) वाक्य सही है। Reported speech एक कहावत (idiom) है। अतः यह Present tense में हो सकता है।
11. (a) shut के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग करें। Imperative sentences (आदेश व निवेदन वाले वाक्य) में Conjunction 'to' का प्रयोग होगा।
12. (c) 'How tall has she grown' interrogative form में है। सही formation होगा 'She has grown very tall'.
13. (b) Knows के स्थान पर knew का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
14. (c) 'I want' को 'I wanted' में परिवर्तित करें। to के बाद तो V₁ का प्रयोग (go) सही है लेकिन उसके बाद नियमानुसार V₂ का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
15. (b) 'forbade' का अर्थ है 'मना करना' / अगर शब्द अर्थ में नकारात्मक हो तो उसके साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। अन्य शब्द जिनके साथ not का प्रयोग नहीं होता- Until, Unless, deny, decline एवं lest! नोट:- Both के साथ ही 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
जैसे:- Both of them did not go. (×)
Neither of them went. (✓)
16. (b) 'died' के पहले 'had' का प्रयोग करें। 'Simple Past' 'past perfect' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
17. (c) 'has' के स्थान पर 'had' का प्रयोग होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।

Narration ——————

18. (c) 'Will' का 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। Indirect Speech में will/shall को would/should में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है।
19. (c) 'does not' को 'did not' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Simple Present', 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है।
20. (b) 'had' का प्रयोग 'I' के बाद करें। Indirect Speech में 'Question Form' नहीं बल्कि 'sentence form' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
21. (b) 'She' के बाद 'Could' का प्रयोग करें। Indirect Speech में 'Question Form' का।
22. (b) 'Continue' का Past 'Continued' होगा। Indirect Speech में 'Simple Present' 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।
23. (b) 'Work' को 'worked' में परिवर्तित करें (वाक्य 22 की व्याख्या देखें)
24. (b) 'if' को 'whether' में परिवर्तित करें। 'if' का जोड़ा 'or' नहीं बल्कि 'whether....or' सही pair है।
25. (c) 'May' को 'Might' में परिवर्तित करें।
26. (b) 'that' को 'if' में परिवर्तित करें।
27. (c) 'returns' को 'returned' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Simple Present' का 'Simple Past' में परिवर्तित करें।
28. (c) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Indirect Speech' में 'Present Perfect' को 'Past Perfect' में परिवर्तित करें।
29. (c) 'have' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। (वाक्य 28 की व्याख्या देखें।)
30. (c) 'has' को 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। (वाक्य 28 की व्याख्या देखें।)

5

QUESTION TAG

CHAPTER

Ram works hard, **doesn't he?**

He is not coming, **is he?**

- किसी भी वाक्य के बाद आने वाला एक छोटा सवाल, 'Question tag' कहलाता है।

QUESTION TAG क्या है?

1. वाक्य एवं **Question tag** एक ही **tense** में होने चाहिए।
2. अगर 'वाक्य' **positive** हो तो '**Question tag**' **negative** होना चाहिए और अगर 'वाक्य' **negative** हो तो '**Question tag**' **positive** होना चाहिए।
3. **Question tag** में हमेशा **Pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।
4. **Negative question tag** में **helping verb** एवं **not** के **contracted form** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: **didn't, hadn't, won't** इत्यादि।

नोट:

1. सामान्यतः '**am not**' का **contracted form** नहीं होता है। लेकिन **Question tag** में '**aren't**' का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: I am fine, aren't I?
2. **Everyone, everybody, no one, none, each, every** इत्यादि **form** से **singular** है। इनके साथ **singular verb, singular pronoun** इत्यादि का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन **Question tag** में ये बहुवचन के रूप में प्रयोग किये जाते हैं।

जैसे: Everyone has come, **hasn't he?** (✗)

Everyone has come, **haven't they?** (✓)

None of your friends likes her, **do they?** (✓)

Everybody can speak English, **can't they?** (✓)

3. **Collective noun** का प्रयोग **singular form** में होता है। इनके **Question Tag** में **singular verb** एवं **singular pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: The jury has taken its decision, **hasn't it?**
S.V. S.P.

Question Tag ——————

4. लेकिन अगर **collective noun** में मतभेद हो या हम प्रत्येक व्यक्ति की बात करें, तब **plural verb** एवं **plural pronoun** प्रयुक्त होंगे।

जैसे: The committee are divided in their opinion, **aren't they?**
P.V. P.P.

The audience have taken their seats, **haven't they?**
P.V. P.P.

5. कुछ शब्द जैसे **hardly, seldom, scarcely** इत्यादि अर्थ से नकारात्मक होते हैं हालांकि इनमें 'not' स्पष्ट रूप से नहीं दिखता। इनके **Question tag positive** होंगे।

- जैसे:
1. He **hardly** does any work, **does he?**
 2. He has **barely** anything to eat, **has he?**
 3. He is **seldom** absent, **is he?**

6. अगर sentence की शुरूआत 'Let us'/Let's' से किया जाए तो **Question tag 'shall we'** होगा।

जैसे: Let us go to party tonight, **shall we?**

7. (a) आदेश/निवेदन वाले वाक्यों (**Imperative sentences**) में आग्रह के लिए **Question Tag** में '**won't you?**' का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे:
- (a) Come in, **won't you?**
 - (b) किसी व्यक्ति से कोई कार्य करने को कहने के लिए या कुछ **offer** करते समय भी '**will you/ would you?**' का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे:
1. Open the door, **would you?**
 2. Have some more tea, **would you?**

(c) '**Can't you?**' बेसब्र अवस्था (**impatience**) को दर्शाता है।

जैसे: Shut your mouth, **can't you?**

(d) **Negative imperative** वाक्यों में '**will you?**' का प्रयोग '**Question tag**' के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: Don't worry, **will you?**

8. अगर वाक्य में '**there**' subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हो तो '**there**' के बाद आने वाला **verb** एवं '**there**' **question tag** के रूप में प्रयुक्त होंगे।

जैसे: There is no water, **is there?**

There weren't good schools, **were there?**

9. **Question Tag** हमेशा वाक्य के मुख्य भाग के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए।

जैसे: I think, he is right, **isn't he?**

Question Tag

PROVIDE SUITABLE QUESTION TAG FOR THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES

Find the meaning of the difficult words and learn them by heart

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. I am happy, | 20. We hadn't got any remuneration, |
| 2. I don't write letter, | 21. Polygamy has been banned in many countries, |
| 3. I didn't go to college yesterday, | 22. Charles Shobraj was an imposter, |
| 4. It is very cold, | 23. Hindus practise idolatry, |
| 5. You haven't eaten anything, | 24. My nephew is an ambidextrous, |
| 6. She doesn't drive carelessly, | 25. He is a pessimist, |
| 7. I have called him up, | 26. Everyone has come late today, |
| 8. The boys are quite boisterous, | 27. The mob has lynched the thief, |
| 9. My friend Ram is an egoist, | 28. The audience have taken their seats, |
| 10. God is Omnipotent, omnipresent and Omniscient, | 29. Have some more tea, |
| 11. The mob killed the District Magistrate, | 30. Wait for me, |
| 12. Bhim was a glutton, | 31. Let's go out for a walk, |
| 13. We see somnambulists in movies very often, | 32. He has barely anything to wear, |
| 14. Bhagat Singh was a martyr, | 33. Somebody entered the room, |
| 15. We see conjurors in circus, | 34. I think, you are right, |
| 16. Asthma is not a contagious disease, | 35. I feel, he is hungry, |
| 17. We used to see epidemic in villages earlier, | 36. There are many boys in this school, |
| 18. Sanjivini was considered to be a panacea, | 37. Nobody bothers, |
| 19. We find too many monologues in Shakespeare's plays, | 38. It hardly rains here, |
| | 39. The jury was unanimous in its decision. |
| | 40. I am tired, |

Answers

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. aren't I? | 11. didn't it | 21. hasn't it? | 31. Shall we? |
| 2. do I? | 12. wasn't he? | 22. wasn't he? | 32. Has he? |
| 3. did I? | 13. don't we? | 23. don't they? | 33. didn't they? |
| 4. isn't it? | 14. wasn't he. | 24. isn't he? | 34. aren't you? |
| 5. have you? | 15. don't we? | 25. Isn't he? | 35. Isn't he? |
| 6. does she ? | 16. is it? | 26. haven't they? | 36. aren't there? |
| 7. haven't I? | 17. didn't we? | 27. hasn't it? | 37. do they? |
| 8. aren't they? | 18. wasn't it? | 28. haven't they? | 38. does it? |
| 9. isn't he? | 19. don't we? | 29. will /would you? | 39. wasn't it? |
| 10. isn't he? | 20. had we? | 30. will you?/can you? | 40. aren't I? |

6

SUBJECT VERB AGREEMENT

CHAPTER

- किसी भी Sentence में Subject के Number तथा Person के अनुसार Verb का प्रयोग Subject-Verb Agreement कहलाता है।
- 1. $\frac{\text{He}}{\text{S.S}} \frac{\text{comes}}{\text{S.V}}$. (यदि Subject 'Singular' हो तो Verb 'Singular' प्रयुक्त होता है।)
- 2. $\frac{\text{They}}{\text{P.S}} \frac{\text{come}}{\text{P.V}}$. (यदि Subject 'Plural' हो तो Verb 'Plural' प्रयुक्त होता है।)
- Verb का सही रूप में प्रयोग करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि आप Singular व Plural Verb को पहचानें।

Singular Verb	Plural Verb	Singular Verb	Plural Verb
is	are	was	were
has	have	V_1+s/es (plays, goes etc.)	V_1 (play, go etc.)

Verb एवं Noun के बीच का अंतर

Noun + s/ es → Plural Noun (Noun में s/es लगाने पर वह Plural बन जाता है)

Verb + s/ es → Singular Verb (Verb में s/es लगाने पर वह Singular बन जाता है)

RULE 1

- अगर दो Sub. को 'and' से जोड़ा जाये तो Plural Verb का प्रयोग होगा।
जैसे: (1) Ram and Shyam $\frac{\text{are}}{\text{P.V}}$ coming.

RULE 2

- यदि दो या दो से अधिक Nouns या Adjectives को 'and' से जोड़ा जाये लेकिन वे एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु या idea को प्रदर्शित करें तो Singular verb का प्रयोग होगा।
My friend, philosopher and guide have come. (change 'have' to 'has')
Slow and steady win the race. (change 'win' to 'wins')
Fish and chips is my favorite dish.(✓)
- नोट: (i) यदि दो uncountable nouns 'and' से जुड़कर sentence के subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हों तथा इससे अलग-अलग sub. का बोध हो तो इसके साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे-

- (1) $\frac{\text{Poverty}}{\text{U.N}} \frac{\text{and}}{\text{U.N}} \frac{\text{misery}}{\text{P.V}} \frac{\text{come}}{\text{P.V}}$ together. (✓)

Subject Verb Agreement

RULE 3

- यदि दो Sub को 'as well as', 'with', 'alongwith', 'together with', 'and not', 'In addition to', 'but', 'besides', 'except', 'rather than', 'accompanied by', 'like', 'unlike', 'no less than', 'nothing but' से जोड़ा जाये तो 'verb' पहले sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होना चाहिये।

जैसे: (1) Ram as well as his parents is coming.
 S. S. S. V.

(2) The Captain along with the sailors was drowned.
 S. S. S. V.

(3) My father unlike my uncles is very strict.
 S. S. S. V.

RULE 4

- अगर Article का प्रयोग सिर्फ 1st sub के पहले हो तो इसका अर्थ होगा एक ही व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु। अतः singular verb का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: (1) A white and black gown was bought by her.
 S. V.

(2) Churchil was a great orator and a great politician of his time.(×)
 Churchil was a great orator and politician of his time.(✓)

लेकिन अगर Article का प्रयोग सभी Sub. के पहले हो तो इसका अर्थ होगा अलग-अलग व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु।
 अतः plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: The director and the producer have come.(✓)
 P. V.

RULE 5

- यदि दो subject को 'neither.....nor', 'either.....or', 'not only'.....'but also', 'nor', 'or' या 'none-but' से जोड़ा जाये तो verb नजदीक वाले sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होना चाहिये।

जैसे: (1) **Neither** Ram **nor** Shyam has come.
 S. S. S. V.

(2) **Either** Ram **or** his friends have come.
 P. S. P. V.

(3) Has Ram **or** Shyam come?
 S. S. S. S.

RULE 6

- 'Neither of' का अर्थ 'दो में से एक भी नहीं'। 'दो से अधिक' में से 'एक भी नहीं' के लिए 'none of

Subject Verb Agreement ——————

का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (✗)
 None of his four sons looked after him. (✓)
- 'Either of' का अर्थ है 'दो में से एक। 'दो से अधिक' में से 'एक' के लिए 'One of' का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: Either of the five members is at fault. (✗)
 One of the five members is at fault. (✓)
- नोट: 'Both' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता क्योंकि 'दो में से एक भी नहीं' के लिए 'neither of' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: Both of them did not take the exam. (✗)
 Neither of them took the exam. (✓)

RULE 7

- कुछ 'Noun' form से Plural होते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में Singular. इनके साथ singular Verb का प्रयोग करते हैं।
- जैसे: (a) बीमारियों का नाम: Measles, Mumps, Rickets, Shingles etc.
 (b) खेल के नाम: Billiards, Darts, Draughts, etc.
 (c) देश के नाम: The United States, The West Indies, etc.
 (d) पुस्तकों के नाम: The Arabian Nights, Three Musketeers, etc.
 (e) विषयों के नाम: Physics, Economics, Civics, Statistics, Politics, Linguistics.
- जैसे: (1) Mathematics is an interesting subject.
 S.V.
 (2) Politics is not my cup of tea.
 S.V.
- नोट: यदि 'Statistics' से हमारा तात्पर्य 'data' हो, 'Mathematics' से हमारा तात्पर्य 'Calculation' हो और 'Politics' से हमारा तात्पर्य 'राजनीतिक विचारों' से हों, तो इनका प्रयोग बहुवचन के रूप में होगा।
- जैसे: Statistics have revealed multiple scams in the organisation of Commonwealth Games.
 P.V.

RULE 8

- एक वाक्य में verb उस subject के अनुसार होना चाहिए जो वाक्य का main subject हो। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीक वाले subject से match करते हैं पर ऐसा करना गलत होता है।
- जैसे: (1) The quality of apples is good.
 (2) He and not his parents is guilty.
 (3) The appeal of the victims for the transfer of the cases related to riots to some other States has
 been accepted.

RULE 9

- Collective Noun के साथ हमेशा Singular Verb का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: (1) The herd of cows is grazing in the field.
 S.S. S.V.
 ↑ ↑

-Subject Verb Agreement

- (2) The committee has unanimously taken its decision.
S. S. S.V. S.P.

नोट: लेकिन अगर **Collective Noun** में मतभेद हो या प्रत्येक व्यक्ति की बात की जाये तो '**Plural verb**' एवं '**Plural Pronoun**' का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: (1) The jury are divided in their opinion.
P.V. P.P.
(2) The audience have taken their seats.
P.V. P.P.

RULE 10

- Plural संख्या के साथ plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: Hundred boys are in my class.
P V

नोट: अगर **Cardinal Adjectives** (**one, two, three, four...etc.**) के बाद **Plural Noun** का प्रयोग हो तथा **Plural Noun** से **certain amount** (निश्चित रकम) **certain weight** (निश्चित वजन), **certain period** (निश्चित अवधि), **certain distance** (निश्चित दूरी), **certain height** (निश्चित ऊँचाई) का बाध हो, तो इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है न कि **Plural Verb** का यानि अगर **Plural** संख्या को **Singular unit** के रूप में प्रयोग करें तो **singular verb** का प्रयोग होगा।

- जैसे: (1) Hundred rupees is in my pocket.
 S. V.

- (2) Ten miles is a long distance to cover on foot.
S.V.

नोट: लेकिन, **Cardinal Adjectives** के बाद प्रयुक्त **Plural Noun** से अलग-अलग **unit** का बोध हो या करना हो, तो इसे **Plural** माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: Hundred rupees are to be distributed among the students. (✓)

Note the difference

- Five thousand rupees is a handsome amount.
 Numeral (Adj.) P. N. S. V.
 - Five thousand rupees have been spent on different useful commodities.
 Numeral (Adj.) P. N. P. V.

RULE 11

- अगर एक **Relative Pronoun** (**who, which, that** इत्यादि) के द्वारा एक **sub** को एक **verb** से जोड़ा जाये तो **verb** उस **sub** के अनुसार होना चाहिए जो उस **Relative Pronoun** का **antecedent** हो।

- जैसे: (1) She is one of the noblest **women** that has ever lived on this earth.

- (2) I am not one of those who will trust everyone whom I meet .

- हमें वाक्य के अर्थ को समझे। दूसरे वाक्य का अर्थ है “मैं उन लोगों में से नहीं हूँ जो उन सभी पर भरोसा कर लेते हैं जिन से वे मिलते हैं।” अतः ‘I meet’ नहीं ‘They meet’ का प्रयोग करें।

Subject Verb Agreement ——————

RULE 12

- **Each, Every, Everyone, Someone, Somebody, Nobody, None, One, Any, Many a, More than one** अर्थ से **Singular** हैं। इनके साथ **Singular verb, Singular noun** व **Singular pronoun** का प्रयोग होता है।
 जैसे: (1) **Each** student **has** come.
 (2) **Each** boy and **each** girl **has** come.
 (3) **One** must tolerate **one's** friend as well as **his** enemy.
 (4) **Many a** student **have** not done **their** home work.
 (5) **More than one** **man** **was** present there.

नोट: 'Many' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में देखें:-

- जैसे: (1) **Many a** **man** **has** come.
 (2) **Many** **men** **have** come.
 (3) **A great/ A good many** **men** **have** come.

RULE 13

- अगर **each, every, one** इत्यादि के बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होता है, तो '**of**' के बाद आने वाला **Noun** अथवा **Pronoun** तो **plural** होता है लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाला **Verb, Pronoun** इत्यादि **Singular** होगा।
 जैसे: One of **the boys/ them** **has** done **his** work.

Noun/Pronoun (Plural) S.V. S.P.

RULE 14

- Plural Noun** या **Plural Pronoun** के बाद **each** का प्रयोग हो, तो इसे **Plural** माना जाता है तथा इसके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।
 जैसे: **We each** **have** a duty towards our nation. (✓)

P.S. P.V.

RULE 15

- Indefinite Pronoun – 'One'** का प्रयोग **Sentence** के **Subject** के रूप में हो, तो इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसके लिए **Singular Pronouns – one, one's, oneself** का प्रयोग होता है न कि he, him, his, himself का।
 जैसे: **One** should keep his promise. (✗)
One should keep **one's** promise. (✓)

RULE 16

- काल्पनिक वाक्य प्रायः **if, as if, as though, suppose, I wish, in case** अथवा **would that** से शुरू

Subject Verb Agreement

होते हैं। इन शब्दों के बाद चाहे किसी भी Number तथा Person के Subject का प्रयोग हो, **Plural Verb ‘were’** का ही प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘was’ का।

- जैसे:
- (1) I wish, I **were** a bird.
 - (2) If he **were** rich, he would help others.

RULE 17

➤ **Optative Sentence** में **Singular Subject** के साथ भी **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: (1) God save the king!

S.S. P.V.

- (2) Long live the Queen !

P.V. S.S.

RULE 18

➤ **A number of/A large number of/A great number of** का प्रयोग **Plural Countable Noun** के साथ होता है तथा इसके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: A number of students were present. (✓)

नोट: लेकिन, **The number of** का प्रयोग एक निश्चित संख्या, के अर्थ में होता है इसके बाद **Plural Sub.** का प्रयोग होता है तथा इसका प्रयोग **Sentence** के **Subject** के रूप में होने पर, इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: The number of boys are fifty. (✗)

P.S. P.V.

The number of boys is fifty. (✓)

P.S. S.V.

RULE 19

➤ अगर 'Amount of/quantity of' **Uncountable Noun** के साथ प्रयोग होते हैं तब इनका प्रयोग **Sentence** के **Subject** के रूप में होने पर इनके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **The amount of** money are not sufficient.(✗)

U.N. P.V.

The amount of money is not sufficient. (✓)

U.N. S.V.

RULE 20

➤ **All** का प्रयोग **uncountable** के अर्थ में हो तो, इसे **Singular** माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **All** is well that ends well.

S.V. S.V.

➤ लेकिन, '**All**' का प्रयोग 'व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या' का बोध करने के लिए हो, तो इसे **Plural** माना जाता है, तथा इसके साथ **Plural verb** के प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: All are well at home. (✓)

P.V.

Subject Verb Agreement ——————

RULE 21

- Furniture, advice, work, evidence, equipment, news, information, luggage, baggage, percentage, poetry, knowledge, dirt, dust, traffic, electricity, music, breakage, stationary, scenery, confectionery, pottery, bakery, crockery, behaviour का प्रयोग Uncountable Nouns के रूप में होता है। इसलिए इसके साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: (1) The scenery of Kasmir has enchanted us.
 S.N. S.V.

(2) I passed but the percentage of marks was not good.
 S.N. S.V.

RULE 22

- कुछ Nouns का प्रयोग हमेशा Plural form में ही होता है। इन Nouns के अन्त में लगे s को हटाकर, इन्हें Singular नहीं बनाया जा सकता है। ये दिखने में भी Plural लगते हैं, एवं इनका प्रयोग भी Plural की तरह होता है। ऐसे Nouns निम्न हैं:

Scissors, tongs (चिमटा), pliers, pincers, bellows (फूँकनी),

trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts,

gallows (फाँसी का फंदा), fangs (डंक),

spectacles, goggles, binoculars (दूरबीन), sunglasses,

Alms (दान), amends (संशोधन), archives (ऐतिहासिक दस्तावेज), arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers (राख), fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings, braces, etc.

- जैसे:
- (a) Where are my **pants**?
 - (b) Where are the **tongs**?
 - (c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.
 - (d) All his **assets** were seized.
 - (e) **Alms** were given to the beggars.
 - (f) The **embers** of the fire were still burnings.

RULE 23

- कुछ Nouns दिखने में Plural लगते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में Singular होते हैं। इनका प्रयोग हमेशा Singular में ही होता है। जैसे: News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Athletics etc.

- जैसे:
- (a) No **news** is good news.
 - (b) **Politics** is a dirty game.
 - (c) **Economics** is an interesting subject.
 - (d) **Ethics** demands honesty.

Subject Verb Agreement

RULE 24

- कुछ **Nouns** दिखने में **Singular** लगते हैं, लेकिन इनका प्रयोग हमेशा **Plural** में होता है। जैसे: **cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people, etc.** इनके साथ कभी भी 's' नहीं लगाया जाता, जैसे: cattles, childrens लिखना गलत है।
 जैसे:
 - Cattle** are grazing in the field.
 - Our **infantry** have marched forward.
 - Police** have arrested the thieves.
 नोट: 'People' का अर्थ है 'लोग'। 'Peoples' का अर्थ है 'विभिन्न मूलवंश के लोग'।

RULE 25

- कुछ **Nouns** का प्रयोग, केवल **Singular form** में ही किया जाता है। ये Uncountable Nouns हैं। इनके साथ Article A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:
Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Money, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Work, Evidence, Word (जब 'word' का अर्थ वाद, संदेश या परिचर्चा हो), **Fuel** एवं **Paper**.

 जैसे:
 - The **scenery** of Kashmir is very charming.
 - I have no **information** about her residence.
 - The **mischief** committed by him is unpardonable.
 - His **hair** is black.
 - I have bought some **equipment** that I needed for the project.

(i) इन **Nouns** का बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता। जैसे: *Sceneries, informations, furnitures, hairs* इत्यादि लिखना गलत है।

(ii) यदि उक्त **Noun** का **Singular** या **Plural** दोनों **forms** में आवश्यकता हो तो, इनके साथ कुछ शब्द जोड़े जाते हैं।

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:

 - He gave me **a piece of** information.
 - All pieces of** information given by her were reliable.
 - Many kinds of** furniture are available in that shop.
 - I want **a few articles of** jewellery.
 - He ate **two slices of** bread.
 - Please show me **some items of** office stationery.
 - The Police have found **a strand of** hair in the car.

RULE 26

- कुछ **Nouns**, **Plural** एवं **Singular** दोनों में एक ही रूप में रहते हैं। जैसे: **deer, sheep, series, species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel etc.**
 जैसे:
 - Our team **is** the best.
 - Our team **are** trying their new uniform.
 - There are two fish in the pond.
 - There are many fishes in the aquarium. ('Fishes' का अर्थ है विभिन्न प्रजातियों के fish)

Subject Verb Agreement ——————

RULE 27

➤ नीचे दिये गए Table को ध्यान से पढ़ें-

S.N	WORDS	+NOUN/PRONOUN	VERB
1.	No	+ U. N	Singular Verb
2.	No	+ S. C. N	Singular Verb
3.	One-third of / three-fourths of / The rest of / A quarter of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty Percent of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
4.	One-third of / three-fourths of / Part of / Ten percent of / Twenty percent of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
5.	Most of / Some / Some of / Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ U. N.	Singular Verb
6.	Most of / Some / Some of /Half of/ Enough / Enough of / Not enough of/ Plenty of / A lot of/ Lots of	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
7.	The percentage of	+ U.N./P.C.N.	Singular Verb
8.	More than one	+ S. C. N.	Singular Verb
9.	More than two/three. etc.	+ P. C. N.	Plural Verb
10.	More	+ P. C. N. + than one	Plural Verb

नीचे दिए गए उदाहरण देखें:-

1. No air is present on the Mars.
2. No student was interested in taking the exam.
3. One-third of the work has been finished.
4. One- third of the students have passed.
5. Ninety percent of the work is done.
6. Most of the knowledge is gained by experience.
7. Most of the girls are absent today.
8. Ninety percent of the students have passed with good marks.
9. Half of the candidates have passed with flying colours.
10. Some of the students have not taken the exam.
11. The percentage of unsuccessful candidates is ten.
12. More than one city was in ruins.
13. More cities than one were in ruins.
14. More than two theives have been caught red handed.
15. More plans than one were made.

नोट: वाक्य 12 एवं 13 के बीच का अंतर देखें।

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to attend/ (c) the party on 10th October./ (d) No error
2. (a) He walked five miles which are really a great distance/ (b) for a man like him who is not only old but also ill./ (d) No error

English – from Plinth to Paramount ——————

Subject Verb Agreement

3. (a) Either my colleague/ (b) or a peon are coming home/ (c) with the material today./ (d) No error
4. (a) The rise and fall/ (b) of the tide are due/ (c) to lunar influence./ (d) No error
5. (a) Many a man/ (b) have succumbed/ (c) to this temptation./ (d) No error
6. (a) The introduction of tea, coffee/ (b) and such other beverages/ (c) have not been without some effect./ (d) No error
7. (a) The newer type of automatic machines/ (b) wash/ (c) clothes faster./ (d) No error
8. (a) Each of the students in the computer class/ (b) has to type/ (c) their own research paper this semester./ (d) No error
9. (a) Everyone of the films/ (b) you suggested/ (c) are not worth seeing./ (d) No error
10. (a) The Secretary and Principal of the college/ (b) are attending/ (c) the District Development Council Meeting at the Collectorate./ (d) No error
11. (a) There is/ (b) only one of his novels/ (c) that are interesting./ (d) No error
12. (a) Knowledge of/ (b) at least two languages/ (c) are required to pass the examination./ (d) No error
13. (a) It is I/ (b) who is to blame/ (c) for this bad situation./ (d) No error
14. (a) Romansticism of melancholy/ (b) in art and literature are the reason/ (c) for insensitivity to those suffering from depression./ (d) No error
15. (a) Patience as well as perseverance (b) are necessary/ (c) for success./ (d) No error
16. (a) In Singapore/ (b) my brother-in-law with his wife/ (c) were present at the function./ (d) No error
17. (a) A hot and/ (b) a cold spring/ (c) was found near each other./ (d) No error
18. (a) Either of the roads/ (b) lead/ (c) to the park/ (d) No error
19. (a) One of my desires/ (b) are to become/ (c) a doctor./ (d) No error
20. (a) The whole block of flats/ (b) including two shops were/ (c) destroyed in fire./ (d) No error
21. (a) The sum and substance/ (b) of his poem/ (c) are as follows./ (d) No error
22. (a) Neither of the/ (b) five accused/ (c) could be convicted./ (d) No error
23. (a) The strain of all/ (b) the difficulties, vexations and anxieties/ (c) were more than he could beat./ (d) No error
24. (a) Everybody/ (b) it must be admitted/ (c) has their ups and downs./ (d) No error
25. (a) Every woman in the world/ (b) fervently hopes that their child/ (c) will be a normal and healthy baby/ (d) No error
26. (a) Neither of them/ (b) sent their papers/ (c) in time for the last seminar/ (d) No error
27. (a) This is a strange world/ (b) where each one pursues their own golden bubble/ (c) and laughs at others for doing the same./ (d) No error
28. (a) If it were possible to get near when/ (b) one of the volcanic eruptions take place/ (c) we would see a grand sight./ (d) No error

Subject Verb Agreement —————

29. (a) A rise in rents and wages/ (b) have been found/ (c) to go together./ (d) No error
30. (a) He is one of those few post-colonial writer who believes/ (b) that this talk about colonialism has gone too far/ (c) and has turned into a cliche./ (d) No error
31. (a) One of the peculiarities/ (b) which distinguishes the present age/ (c) is the multiplication of books/ (d) No error
32. (a) Neither of them/ (b) are going to attend/ (c) the party on 10th October/ (d) No error
33. (a) Ten miles are/ (b) a long distance / (c) to cover on foot./ (d) No error
34. (a) If Mahatma Gandhi/ (b) was alive, he would feel sorry for the poor and downtrodden who/ (c) still struggle everyday to make both ends meet. / (d) No Error
35. (a) Having acquired some experience/ (b) she is no longer one of those who believes/ (c) every explanation they are given./ (d) No error
36. (a) With regard to implementation of the/ (b) details of the proposal, the committee was divided/ (c) in their opinion./ (d) No error
37. (a) Most of the funds/ (b) we get from/ (c) America is used to build roads and bridges./ (d) No error
38. (a) The tiger was not/ (b) the only dangerous animal/ (c) in the forest there was hyenas too./ (d) No error
39. (a) She immediately quit/ (b) the job in which/ (c) neither skill nor knowledge were required./ (d) No error
40. (a) The type of qualities you acquire/ (b) depend upon your company/ (c) and so you associate yourselves with simple and good natured people./ (d) No error
41. (a) Our success or our failure/ (b) largely depend/ (c) upon our actions./ (d) No error
42. (a) He is/ (b) one of the tallest boy/ (c) in the class./ (d) No error
43. (a) That day when they brought her back for the last time/ (b) there was many old-timers/ (c) who were shocked and fearful./ (d) No error
44. (a) A computer virus works exactly/ (b) like the biological variety/ (c) which invade the human body./ (d) No error
45. (a) Many a boy/ (b) have not done their/ (c) homework properly./ (d) No error
46. (a) Two miles beyond/ (b) that building was seen dozens/ (c) of antisocial elements/ (d) No error
47. (a) Along the northern frontier/ (b) of India is seen/ (c) the beautiful and mighty Himalayas./ (d) No error
48. (a) A body of volunteers/ (b) have helped in/ (c) making this celebration a great success/ (d) No error
49. (a) There appears/ (b) a number of problems/ (c) and I really do not know how to solve them. (d) No error
50. (a) Shingles are a disease/ (b) in which a person develops/ (c) lots of inflamed spots round the waist./ (d) No error
51. (a) Whether she should get married/ (b) or whether she should remain/ (c) single are her personal problem./ (d) No error

Subject Verb Agreement

52. (a) Two and two / (b) makes / (c) four. / (d) No error.
53. (a) Many a men / (b) attended the meeting / (c) last night. / (d) No error.
54. (a) The perquisites / (b) to this job makes it / (c) even more attractive than the salary indicated / (d) No error.
55. (a) Either you / (b) or he / (c) are happy. / (d) No error.

Note: 21-26 से संबंधित प्रश्नों के लिए **Noun** देखें।

Answers with explanation

1. (b) के स्थान पर 'is' का प्रयोग करें। 'Neither of' के बाद आने वाले 'noun/pronoun' तो plural होता है। (अतः 'them (Pl. Pronoun)' तक का वाक्य तो सही है) लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाले verb इत्यादि singular होना चाहिए।
2. (a) इस वाक्य में 'five miles' plural होने के बावजूद singular unit के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। अतः five miles के साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'are' का।
3. (b) 'are' को 'is' में परिवर्तित करें। जब दो subjects को either . . . or, neither . . . nor, 'or' अथवा 'nor' से जोड़ा जाए तो verb निकटतम 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। Peon (S.S.) के साथ S.V. 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (b) 'The rise and fall' एक singular subject है जिसके साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (b) 'Many a' singular pronoun है। इसके साथ noun, verb व pronoun के singular form प्रयुक्त होंगे। have (P.V.) के (S.V.) में परिवर्तित करें।
6. (c) एक वाक्य में 'verb' उस वाक्य के मुख्य 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए। मुख्य sub 'introduction' singular है। अतः verb भी singular होगा यहाँ 'has' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'have' का।
7. (b) Verb मुख्य sub 'newer type' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। verb singular होगा यानि 'washes' का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (c) 'Each of' के बाद आने वाले verb एवं pronoun singular होगा। अतः 'their' के बदले 'his' का प्रयोग करें।
9. (c) Verb मुख्य sub 'everyone' के अनुसार प्रयोग होगा। 'Everyone' singular है अतः singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें।
10. (b) यहाँ 'the' का प्रयोग सिर्फ 'Secretary' के पहले हुआ है। इसका अर्थ है कि एक ही व्यक्ति को Secretary एवं Principal दोनों का पद प्राप्त है। चुंकि 'sub' singular है अतः verb भी singular 'is' होगा।
11. (c) 'Are' के स्थान पर 'is' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'Novels' में से 'one' का बात की जा रही है। 'One' singular sub है अतः Verb भी singular होगा।
12. (c) यहाँ languages मुख्य sub नहीं है बल्कि 'knowledge' मुख्य sub है। अगर knowledge के अनुसार verb का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो verb 'are' नहीं 'is' होगा।
13. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'am' का प्रयोग करें। यदि who, which तथा that का प्रयोग Relative Pronouns के रूप में हो तो इनके बाद प्रयुक्त verb इनके antecedents के number व person पर निर्भर करता है।
14. (b) Verb 'is' का प्रयोग 'are' के स्थान पर होगा क्योंकि मुख्य sub 'Romansticism' है जो singular sub है।
15. (b) जब दो subjects को 'as well as' से जोड़ा जाता है तब verb 1st subject के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'Patience' singular subject है। अतः verb 'are' नहीं 'is' (s.v.) का प्रयोग करें।

Subject Verb Agreement ——————

16. (c) Were के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें। जब दो subjects को 'with' के द्वारा जोड़ा जाता है, तो verb पहले sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'Brother-in-law' singular subject है। अतः verb भी singular प्रयुक्त होगा।

17. (c) 'was' के स्थान पर 'were' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो subjects को and से जोड़ा जाए और दोनों sub के पहले 'article' का प्रयोग हो, तो इसका अर्थ होगा अलग-अलग sub। अतः Plural verb का प्रयोग होगा।

18. (b) 'Either of' के बाद आने वाला noun/pronoun तो plural होता है, लेकिन उसके पछात आने वाला verb/pronoun singular होता है।
Either of the roads/ them leads to the park.

↓ ↓ ↓
Plural Plural Singular
Noun Pronoun Verb

19. (b) 'One of' के बाद भी उसी नियम का पालन करें जो 'Either of' पर लागू होता है।
(प्रश्न 20 की व्याख्या देखें)

यहीं नियम neither of , none of, any of , everyone of , each of इत्यादि पर भी लागू होता है।

20. (b) 'were' को 'was' में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ मुख्य sub 'shops' नहीं है बल्कि block है। हम अक्सर verb को नजदीकी sub से match कर देते हैं जो गलत है। verb के उस sub से match करना चाहिए जो वाक्य का मुख्य sub हो।

Block was
Singular Sub Singular Verb.

21. (c) 'The sum and substance' का अर्थ है 'सारांश'। अतः verb 'are' नहीं 'is' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो या दो से अधिक subjects को 'and' से जोड़ा जाए लेकिन उनका तात्पर्य एक ही व्यक्ति, वस्तु अथवा भाव से हो तो verb भी singular form में होगा।

22. (a) 'Neither of' के स्थान पर 'none of' का प्रयोग करें। 'Neither of' का प्रयोग 'दो में से एक भी नहीं' के संदर्भ में होता है।

23. (c) 'Were' के स्थान पर 'was' का प्रयोग करें। 'Strain' singular है, अतः verb भी singular होगा।

24. (c) Everybody singular sub है। अतः singular pronoun 'his' का प्रयोग करें।

25. (b) 'Their' के स्थान पर 'her' का प्रयोग करें। 'Every woman' singular subject है। अतः pronoun भी singular होगा।

26. (b) 'Neither of P.N./P.P' के बाद verb/pronoun इत्यादि singular होगा। 'Their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें।

27. (b) 'Each one' के साथ 'his' का प्रयोग करें।

28. (b) 'One of' के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग करें। 'Take' के बदले 'takes' का प्रयोग होता। परन्तु वाक्य Past Tense में है। अतः 'took' का प्रयोग करें।

29. (b) Verb 'have' (Plural verb) के स्थान पर 'has' (singular verb) का प्रयोग करें।

30. (a) 'One of' के साथ Plural noun 'writers' का प्रयोग करें। 'believes' के स्थान पर 'believe' का प्रयोग करें।

31. (b) 'Which' का antecedent 'peculiarities' है जो Plural noun है। अतः Which के बाद आने वाला verb plural होगा। Distinguishes' को 'distinguish' में परिवर्तित करें।

32. (b) 'Neither of' के साथ singular verb 'is' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'are' का।

33. (a) 'Ten miles' एक Plural संख्या है जिसका प्रयोग Singular unit के रूप में हो रहा है। अतः singular

Subject Verb Agreement

- verb ‘is’ का प्रयोग होगा।
34. (b) If के साथ ‘was’ का प्रयोग कभी नहीं होता। ‘were’ का प्रयोग करें।
35. (b) ‘Those’ relative pronoun ‘who’ का antecedent है। who के बाद आने वाला verb those (Pl. Sub) के अनुकूल होगा। Believes (S.V.) के स्थान पर believe (P.V.) का प्रयोग करें।
36. (b) Was the स्थान पर Plural verb ‘were’ का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि committee में मतभेद है।
37. (c) ‘is’ के स्थान पर ‘are’ का प्रयोग होगा। क्योंकि मुख्य sub ‘funds’ plural noun है।
38. (c) ‘Hyenas’ plural noun है। अतः Plural verb ‘were’ का प्रयोग ‘Hyenas’ के पहले करें।
39. (c) जब दो subjects को ‘Neither Nor’ से जोड़ा जाता है तो verb नजदीकी sub के अनुसार प्रयोग होता है। अतः ‘were’ नहीं ‘was’ का प्रयोग करें।
40. (b) The type, (singular sub) के अनुसार verb ‘depends’ (singular verb) का प्रयोग होना चाहिए।
41. (b) अगर दो sub को ‘or’ से जोड़ा जाए तो verb nearest sub के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए। ‘failure’ के अनुसार verb ‘depends’ होना चाहिए।
42. (b) ‘One of’ के साथ ‘noun’ plural होता है। ‘Boys’ का प्रयोग करें।
43. (b) Many old timers के साथ plural verb ‘were’ का प्रयोग होगा। There के बाद ‘was’ नहीं ‘were’ का प्रयोग करें।
44. (c) Which का antecedent ‘variety’ (Singular noun) है। इसके साथ singular verb ‘invades’ का प्रयोग करें।
45. (b) ‘Many a’ के साथ noun, pronoun एवं verb singular form में प्रयोग किये जाते हैं। ‘have’ के स्थान पर ‘has’ एवं ‘their’ के स्थान पर ‘his’ का प्रयोग करें।
46. (b) ‘Was’ के स्थान पर ‘were’ का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि ‘dozens’ (Plural sub) के साथ were (plural verb) का प्रयोग होगा।
47. (b) ‘is’ के स्थान पर ‘are’ का प्रयोग करें। इस वाक्य में ‘verb’ का प्रयोग sub (Himalayas) के पहले हो रहा है। ऐसे वाक्य में Confusion हो सकता है। लेकिन वाक्य के अर्थ से ये स्पष्ट है कि India के लिए ‘is seen’ का प्रयोग नहीं हो रहा बल्कि Himalayas के लिए हो रहा है। ‘Himalayas’ के साथ ‘is seen’ नहीं ‘are seen’ का प्रयोग होगा।
48. (b) Body, group, class इत्यादि के साथ singular verb का प्रयोग होगा। अतः ‘have’ के स्थान पर ‘has’ का प्रयोग करें।
49. (a) यहाँ verb ‘appears’ (s.v.) के स्थान पर ‘appear’ (p.v.) का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि sub (a number of problems) plural form में है।
50. (a) ‘Shingles’ form में plural है लेकिन अर्थ में singular। अतः singular verb ‘is’ का प्रयोग करें।
51. (c) ‘are’ के स्थान पर ‘is’ का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि निर्णय का विषय (विवाह) एक ही मुद्दा है।
52. (b) ‘makes’ को ‘make’ में परिवर्तित करें।
53. (a) ‘Many a’ के साथ ‘man’ का प्रयोग होगा।
54. (b) ‘makes’ को ‘make’ में परिवर्तित करें। ‘Perquisites’ plural noun है।
55. (c) ‘are’ को ‘is’ में परिवर्तित करें।

7

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CHAPTER

- जब एक कार्य का होना दूसरे कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तब वाक्य **conditional sentence** कहलाता है।
जैसे: आप सफल होंगे बशर्ते आप मेहनत करे तो।
You will succeed **provided** you work hard.
- ऊपर दिये गये वाक्य में सफल होना कड़ी मेहनत पर निर्भर कर रहा है।
- Conditional Sentences में नीचे दिए गये कुछ शर्तसूचक शब्द अवश्य दिखते हैं।

1. अगर	2. बशर्ते	3. जैसे ही.....वैसे ही
If.....,	provided	as soon as....., no sooner.....than
.....		
4. जब	5. जबतक	तब तक
when	Unless.....,	
	Until.....,	

Conditional Sentence के दो भाग होते हैं-

1. **If Clause**

2. **Main Clause**

Conditional Sentences मुख्यतः तीन प्रकार के होते हैं-

- 'If clause' in present tense.
- 'If clause' in past tense.
- 'If clause' in past perfect tense.
- Other types of conditional sentences.

A. 'IF CLAUSE' IN PRESENT TENSE

General Formula— **If + Simple Present, Simple Future**

- ऐसे Conditional Sentences में 'If Clause' **Simple Present** में होता है और 'Main Clause' **simple future** में होता है।
अगर मैं दिल्ली आऊँगा तो आपसे मिलूँगा।

जैसे: If I will come to Delhi, I will meet you. (x)
 Ist action IInd action

If I come to Delhi, I will meet you. (✓)

Conditional Sentences

- अगर दो कार्य भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य **Simple Present Tense** में होगा और दूसरा **Simple Future Tense** में।

नीचे दिए गये कुछ उदाहरण देखें:-

1. She will come to meet you as soon as you will reach Delhi. (x)
She will come to meet you **as soon as** you reach Delhi. (✓)
 2. If the government will become strict, corruption will surely finish. (x)
If the government becomes strict, corruption will surely finish. (✓)
 3. I will help him provided he will mend his ways. (x)
I will help him **provided** he mends his ways. (✓)
 4. Unless he will not take care of his health, he will not recover. (x)
Unless he takes care of his health, he will not recover. (✓)
 5. There will be rush at the platform when the train will arrive. (x)
There will be rush at the platform **when** the train arrives. (✓)
- उपरोक्त वाक्यों में **If** वाले भाग में **will/shall/would** का प्रयोग न करें -

नोट: नीचे दिये गये शब्द देखें, इनके तुरंत बाद sub + will / shall का प्रयोग नहीं होना चाहिए।

If, as soon as, provided, before, after, until, unless, in case, when, lest.

1. **Unless or until** के साथ **not** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होता। (वाक्य 4 देखें)
 2. Conditional Sentences में **when** के बाद **will/shall** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। (वाक्य 5 देखें)
- लेकिन अगर वाक्य पूर्णतः वर्तमान का हो तो 'Main Clause' **Simple Present** में भी हो सकता है।
- जैसे: 1. If it rains, the schools remain closed.
- अगर वाक्य संभावना का हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर **may/might** का प्रयोग होगा।
- जैसे: 1. If it rains, the students **may** not come for class.
2. If the fog remains, the plane **may** get late.
- अगर वाक्य अनुमति देता हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर '**May**' का प्रयोग हो सकता है।
- जैसे: 1. If you finish your work, you **may** go home.
- अगर वाक्य में सलाह/उपदेश हो तो '**will**' के स्थान पर **should/must** का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: 1. If you want to remain healthy, you **should** exercise daily.
2. If you do not know him, you **must** not open the door.
- अगर वाक्य शिष्टाचार संबंधित निवेदन का हो तो **could, may** इत्यादि का जरूरतानुसार प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: 1. If you meet him, **could** you tell him to call me up?
2. If you come to Delhi, **would** you come to meet me?
- '**If clause** में **simple present tense** के स्थान पर **present continuous tense** भी आ सकता है।
- जैसे: 1. If you are waiting for the bus, you **should** better take a taxi.
2. If you are not reading the newspaper, you **should** let others read it.

Conditional Sentences

➤ 'If Clause' में **Present perfect tense** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: 1. If you have finished the work, you **may** leave.

2. If they have bought tickets, they **will** surely go to see the movie.

PAST CONDITIONAL

B. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST TENSE

General Formula— **If + Simple Past, Subject + would+ V₁**

जैसे: If I had money, I would lend it to you.

➤ ऐसे वाक्य 'improbability' व्यक्त करते हैं यानि 'If clause' में जिस कार्य का उल्लेख है वह नहीं हुआ।

➤ उपरोक्त वाक्य में **If I had money** से ये स्पष्ट है कि पैसे नहीं थे।

C. 'IF' CLAUSE IN PAST PERFECT TENSE

General Formula— **If + Past Perfect, Sub + would + have + V₃**

जैसे: If I had seen you, I would have stopped my car.

➤ ऐसे वाक्य में 'If clause' में जिस कार्य का उल्लेख होता है उस कार्य का न होना दर्शाया जाता है। यानि '**If I had seen you**' से तात्पर्य है कि '**I had not seen you**'।

➤ ऐसे वाक्यों में 'If' को 'had' से replace किया जा सकता है। तब Formula होगा-

Had + Subject + V₃ + obj, Subject + would + have + V₃

जैसे: Had I seen you, I would have stopped my car.

THREE IMPORTANT FORMULAE

• **If + Present Indefinite , Simple Future**

• **If + S + had + V₃ , S + would + have + V₃**

• **If + S + V₂ , S + would + V₁**

D. OTHER TYPES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

(i) काल्पकि पद

General Formula— **If + subject + were, subject + would + V₁**

जैसे: If I were a bird, I would fly in the sky.

Conditional Sentences

- काल्पनिक पद (**Post**) के लिए सभी **subjects** के साथ '**were**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
नीचे दिए गये शब्दों के साथ '**was**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

If, as though, in case, as if, would that एवं **I wish.**

Ex. He scolded me as if he was my father. (✗)

He scolded me **as if** he **were** my father. (✓)

- (ii) '**If Clause** में हम '**Unless**', **so long**, **as soon as**, **when**, **provided**, **suppose**, **in case**, **but**, **for** इत्यादि का भी प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: (1) **Unless** you work hard, you will not pass.

नोट: **Unless** के साथ '**not**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। Unless you work hard से हमारा तात्पर्य है 'If you do not work hard.' यानि '**Unless + affirmative = If + negative.**'

2. I shall support him **so long as** I am alive.
3. **As soon as** the train comes, there will be rush for seats.
4. **When** he comes to Delhi, I will go to meet him.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) If he came to me / (b) I would have given/ (c) him my car. / (d) No error
2. (a) Had he invited me / (b) I would have attended / (c) the function. / (d) No error
3. (a) If he had called me up (b) I would inform/ (c) him ./ (d) No error
4. (a) If he will work hard / (b)/ he will surely / (c) get the job of his choice. / (d) No error
5. (a) Unless I do not / (b) see his ticket, / (c) I will not let him sit here. / (d) No error
6. (a) Before the police will come / (b) You should better / (c) get the anticipatory bail. / (d) No error
7. (a) We will come to know the truth / (b) after / (c) the investigation finished. / (d) No error
8. (a) Until the train will not get the signal , (b) it will not / (c) leave the platform. / (d) No error
9. (a) If I had money/ (b) I will have lent / (c) it to her. / (d) No error
10. (a) If I was you/ (b) I would not tolerate him / (c) for a moment. / (d) No error
11. (a) Suppose she does not agree/ (b)what could/ (c) we do ? / (d) No error
12. (a) Supposing if you do not reach / (b) the station in time,/ (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
13. (a) If you saw a tiger / (b) what will your / (c) reaction be?/ (d) No error
14. (a) If I had two houses, / (b) I would have given / (c) one to you./ (d) No error
15. (a) If we will heat dry ice / (b) it turns / (c) to vapour. / (d) No error
16. (a) "Suppose if you are / (b) late, you will be / (c) in trouble." / (d) No error.

Conditional Sentences

17. (a) Unless / (b) he will not understand the concept/ (c) he will not be able to solve the questions. / (d) No error
18. (a) If he tried again,/ (b) he can pass the exam/ (c) with flying colours. / (d) No error
19. (a) I will wait for you / (b) unless / (c) you come. / (d) No error
20. (a) If I was you / (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson. / (d) No error
21. (a) If I were the Prime Minister of India / (b) I will work for the / (c) welfare of the poor. / (d) No error
22. (a) If she would have come to me / (b) I would have given her the / (c) money she needed / (d) No error
23. (a) If he drove fast/ (b) he can reach the station / (c) in time / (d) No error
24. (a) If I was a millionaire/ (b) I would support / (c) the millinium project / (d) No error
25. (a) If both of you stood / (b) on the table/ (c) it would have broken/ (d) No error
26. (a) If she would have worked hard , / (b) she would / (c) have passed. / (d) No error
27. (a) If you had seen me, / (b) you should have stopped your car / (c) and come to help me. / (d) No error
28. (a) If the Government will make strict law/ (b) the law and order situation / (c) will improve. / (d) No error
29. (a) But for his help / (b) the patient would / (c) have died. / (d) No error
30. (a) But for his prompt action / (b) many people would/ (c) have lost their savings. / (d) No error
31. (a) I will not come / (b) in case / (c) it will rain. / (d) No error
32. (a) Had the river overflown its bank,/ (b) flood would / (c) have come. / (d) No error
33. (a) Had I known him, / (b) I would allow him / (c) to enter my house. / (d) No error
34. (a) You will not get well / (b) unless you will not / (c) follow the doctor's instructions. / (d) No error
35. (a) Supposing if he refuses / (b) to meet you, / (c) what will you do? / (d) No error
36. (a) I shall take you for a long drive /(b) after you /(c) will return from the meeting. / (d) No error
37. (a) When you complete your service / (b) you will be / (c) retired on pension / (d) No error
38. (a) Were she I, / (b) she will not allow/ (c) you to go anywhere at this time of crisis./ (d) No error
39. (a) I told her when / (b) she came to Delhi,/ (c) I would show her all historical monuments. / (d) No error
40. (a) You can scale this high peak, / (b) provided you/ (c) will wear the right kind of shoes. / (d) No error
41. (a) Had you / (b) worked hard/ (c) you will have passed./ (d) No error
42. (a) When I shall see him/ (b) I shall/ (c) tell him/ (d) No error.
43. (a) He will tell you/ (b) about it when/ (c) he will come back/ (d) No error.
44. (a) When I will get back/ (b) I shall pay back/ (c) the money that I borrowed/ (d) from you last month

Conditional Sentences

45. (a) I will/ (b) meet him/ (c) when he will come./ (d) No error.
 46. (a) Had I realized/ (b) your house was such a long way off, / (c) I would take a taxi./
 (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (a); 'If he had come' का प्रयोग करें।
2. (d);
3. (b); 'I would have informed' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'if clause' sub + had + v₃ हो तो main clause 'sub + would + have + v₃' में होना चाहिए।
4. (a); 'If he works hard' का प्रयोग करें। 'If clause' में will नहीं आता है।
5. (a); 'do not' हटा दें। Unless के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
6. (a); 'Before the police come' का प्रयोग करें। 'Before' के बाद 'will/ shall' का प्रयोग गलत है।
7. (c); 'the investigation has finished' का प्रयोग करें।
8. (a); 'Until the train gets' का प्रयोग करें। 'Until' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
9. (b); 'will have lent' को 'would lend' में परिवर्तित करें। 'If clause' past tense में है। अतः 'main clause' भी past tense में होगा।
10. (a); 'If I were you' का प्रयोग करें। 'If clause' में 'was' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। काल्पनिक वाक्यों में सभी 'subjects' के साथ 'were' का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (b); 'could' को 'can' में परिवर्तित करें। 'If clause' present tense में है। अतः main clause भी present tense में होगा।
12. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें। दोनों का अर्थ एक है।
13. (b); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 9 की व्याख्या देखें)
14. (b); 'I would give' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 1 की व्याख्या देखें)
15. (a); 'will' हटा दें। (प्रश्न 4 की व्याख्या देखें)
16. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'if' का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें। दोनों का अर्थ एक है।
17. (b); 'he understands' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 5 की व्याख्या देखें)
18. (b); 'Can' को 'Could' में परिवर्तित करें क्योंकि 'If clause' past tense में है।
19. (b); 'Unless' को 'Until' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Until' 'समय सूचक' होता है और 'Unless' 'शर्त सूचक'।
20. (a); 'Was' के स्थान पर 'were' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 10 की व्याख्या देखें)
21. (b); 'Will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 9 की व्याख्या देखें)
22. (a); 'If she had come to me' सही प्रयोग होगा।

Formula → If + Sub + had + V₃, Sub. + would + have + V₃

23. (b); 'Can' को 'Could' में परिवर्तित करें।
24. (a); 'Was' को 'were' में परिवर्तित करें। (प्रश्न 10 की व्याख्या देखें)
25. (c); 'it would break' का प्रयोग करें।

Formula → If + Sub + V₂, Sub. + would + V₁

Conditional Sentences

26. (a); 'If she had worked hard' का प्रयोग करें (प्रश्न 22 देखें)
27. (d);
28. (a); 'If the government makes' का प्रयोग होगा। (प्रश्न 4 की व्याख्या देखें)
29. (d); यहाँ 'but' का अर्थ है 'without'.
30. (d);
31. (c); 'it rains' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (a); 'overflow' का V₃ 'overflowed' होता है।
33. (b); 'I would have allowed him' का प्रयोग करें। (प्रश्न 3 की व्याख्या देखें)
34. (b); 'Unless' के साथ 'will' एवं 'not' का प्रयोग न करें। 'Unless you follow' सही प्रयोग होगा।
35. (a); 'Supposing' एवं 'If' में से एक को हटा दें।
36. (c); 'will return' को 'have returned' में परिवर्तित करें।
37. (a); 'when you have completed your service' सही प्रयोग होगा।
38. (b); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें।
39. (a); 'I told her' के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग करें।
40. (c); 'will' हटा दें।
41. (c); 'will' को 'would' में परिवर्तित करें।
42. (a); 'when I see him' सही 'formation' होगा।
43. (c); 'he will come' को 'he comes' में परिवर्तित करें।
44. (a); 'when I will get back' के स्थान पर 'when I get back' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (c); 'when he will come' के स्थान पर 'when he comes' का प्रयोग करें।
46. (c); 'I would take' को 'I would have taken' में परिवर्तित करें।

8

VERB (ADVANCE)

CHAPTER

KINDS OF VERB

1. FINITE VERBS
2. Non-Finite Verbs
3. Transitive Verbs
4. INTRANSITIVE VERBS

1. **FINITE VERBS:** Finite Verbs का एक Sub होता है और ये **Subject** की संख्या एवं **Person** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

जैसे: He is **playing**.

They are **playing**.

2. **NON-FINITE VERBS:** Non-Finite Verbs किसी **Person** या संख्या से **limited** नहीं होते हैं।

जैसे: I like **watching** television.

She wants **to go** abroad.

NON-FINITE VERBS:- तीन प्रकार के होते हैं-

- (A) **INFINITIVE**
- (B) **GERUND**
- (C) **PARTICIPLE**

(A) **INFINITIVE:** '**to + V₁**' Infinitive एक प्रकार का **noun** है जिसमें **verb** के भी गुण होते हैं। अतः हम infinitive को **verb-noun** भी कह सकते हैं।

जैसे: 1. **To err** is human

2. I want **to study**

3. I want **to study** English.

ऊपर दिए गये वाक्य देखें-

वाक्य (1) में '**to err**' (**to + V₁**) **subject** के रूप में प्रयुक्त है।

वाक्य (2) में '**to study**' (**to + V₁**) **object** के रूप में प्रयुक्त हैं।

वाक्य (3) में '**to study**' want (verb) का object है लेकिन अगर 'English' को object के रूप में लिया जाए तो '**to study**' verb का कार्य कर रहा है।

➤ अतः '**to + V₁**' को हम **noun** एवं **verb** दोनों के रूप में प्रयुक्त कर सकते हैं।

(B) **GERUND:** '**V₁ + ing**' Gerund एक प्रकार का verb है जो '**ing**' में खत्म होता है और जिसमें **noun** के भी गुण होते हैं।

Verb (Advance)

- जैसे:
1. **Swimming** is a good exercise.
 2. I learnt **driving**.
 3. I love **watching** television.

ऊपर दिए गये वाक्य देखें-

वाक्य (1) में 'Swimming' ($V_1 + \text{ing}$) **subject** के रूप में प्रयुक्त है।

वाक्य (2) में 'driving' ($V_1 + \text{ing}$) **object** के रूप में प्रयुक्त है।

वाक्य (3) में 'watching' love (verb) का object है लेकिन अगर television को object के रूप में लिया जाए तो 'watching' verb का कार्य कर रहा है। अतः ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ ' को हम 'noun' एवं 'verb' दोनों के रूप में प्रयुक्त कर सकते हैं।

नोट: कई **Verbs/adjective/phrase** के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ 'to' के बाद ' V_1 ' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा बल्कि ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ ' का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: **Verb + used to, accustomed to, averse to, with a view to, addicted to, devoted to, in addition to, look forward to, object to, owing to, given to, taken to, prone to.**

- जैसे:
1. He is **addicted to** smoking.
 2. I am **looking forward to** meeting you.
 3. He was **used to** driving on the right when he was in London.

➤ दूसरे शब्दों में कहा जाए तो अगर कोई **Phrasal verb 'to'** में खत्म हो तो उसके बाद ' V_1 ' नहीं, ' $V_1 + \text{ing}$ ' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (a) I am looking forward to meeting you.

$\overbrace{\quad\quad\quad}^{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(b) He is given to drinking.

$\overbrace{\quad\quad\quad}^{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(c) He is prone to making the same mistake again and again.

$\overbrace{\quad\quad\quad}^{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

(d) He got used to driving on the right when he was in London.

$\overbrace{\quad\quad\quad}^{V_1 + \text{ing}}$

लेकिन **modals** में 'used to' के बाद V_1 का प्रयोग होता है।

(e) I used to drive on the right.

$\overbrace{\quad\quad\quad}^{V_1}$

वाक्य d एवं e के बीच का अंतर:

Sentence (d)		Sentence (e)	
(1)	अगर used to के पहले verb हो तो used to के बाद $V_1 + \text{ing}$ लगायें	(1)	अगर used to के पहले verb नहीं हो तो used to के बाद V_1 लगायें।
(2)	ये आदतन् किया को दर्शाता है।	(2)	ये past के routine action को दर्शाता है।
(3)	ये किसी भी tense में हो सकते हैं और Used to के पहले आने वाला verb वाक्य के tense का निर्धारण करता है।	(3)	ये सिर्फ Past tense में होंगे।

Verb (Advance)

(C) **PARTICIPLE:** जो शब्द 'verb' एवं 'adjective' दोनों का कार्य करें वह **Participle** है।

(i) **PRESENT PARTICIPLE (V₁ + ING)**

जैसे: 1. **Hearing** the noise, we rushed out of the restaurant.

2. **Thinking** all is well, he went to bed.

➤ ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों में 'V₁ + ing' का प्रयोग किसी घटना को **incomplete** या होता हुआ दर्शाने के लिए हो रहा है। यह

'V₁ + ing' **Present Participle** है।

(ii) **PAST PARTICIPLE (V₃)**

जैसे: 1. **Driven** by poverty, he committed suicide.

2. **Deceived** by his best friend, he was left in the lurch.

➤ ऊपर दिए गए दोनों वाक्यों में 'V₃' का प्रयोग किसी घटना को **Complete** दर्शाने के लिए किया गया है। इस 'V₃' form को **Past Participle** कहते हैं।

(iii) **PERFECT PARTICIPLE (HAVING V₃)**

जैसे: 1. **Having done** with it, they got down to work.

2. **Having rested**, they started their journey again.

➤ ऊपर दिए गये दोनों वाक्यों में किसी कार्य को भूतकाल में ही **Complete** होता दर्शाया गया है। ऐसा करने के लिए 'having + V₃' यानि **Perfect Participle** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

3. **TRANSITIVE VERB-** जब वाक्य में क्रिया के बाद एक कर्म (obj.) की आवश्यकता पड़े तो क्रिया **transitive verb** कहलाता है।

जैसे: 1. I $\frac{\text{write}}{\text{V}}$ $\frac{\text{essay}}{\text{obj.}}$.

2. Children $\frac{\text{fly}}{\text{V}}$ $\frac{\text{kites}}{\text{obj.}}$.

4. **INTRANSITIVE VERB-** जब वाक्य में क्रिया के बाद कर्म (obj.) की आवश्यकता न पड़े तो क्रिया **intransitive verb** कहलाता है।

जैसे: Birds $\frac{\text{fly}}{\text{v}}$.

She $\frac{\text{slept}}{\text{v}}$.

नोट: अगर verb transitive (t.v.) होता है तो verb के उल्लेख मात्र से 'क्या' जैसे सवाल उठते हैं।

जैसे: 1. He killed (क्या?)

He $\frac{\text{killed}}{\text{t.v.}}$ $\frac{\text{a rabbit}}{\text{obj.}}$.

2. I helped (किसे ?)

I $\frac{\text{helped}}{\text{t.v.}}$ $\frac{\text{him}}{\text{obj.}}$.

Verb (Advance)

CAUSATIVE VERB

- **Have, Get** एवं **Make** का प्रयोग '**Causative verb**' के रूप में किया जाता है। सामान्यतः कर्ता (sub) किसी क्रिया (verb) को क्रम (obj.) पर करता है।

जैसे: He helps the poor.
Sub. Verb obj.

- लेकिन जब 'sub' ही **verb** को **experience** करे यानि क्रिया का फल क्रम पर न पड़ कर कत्ता पर पड़े तो Causative verb का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: 1. He got caught.
2. The environment gets polluted due to our ignorance.

- कई बार वाक्य से ये तात्पर्य निकलता है कि कर्ता किसी कार्य को करता नहीं बल्कि कराता है यानि यहाँ **S₁** (कार्य करने वाला) एवं **S₂** (कार्य कराने वाला का) प्रत्यक्ष अथवा अप्रत्यक्ष रूप से मौजूद होते हैं।

जैसे:

1. I made him do the whole work.
 $\underbrace{I}_{S_2} \quad \underbrace{\text{made}}_{\text{'Make' according to tense}} \quad \underbrace{\text{him}}_{S_1} \quad \underbrace{\text{do}}_{V_1} \quad \underbrace{\text{the whole work}}_{\text{obj.}}$
2. We got him arrested by the police.
 $\underbrace{We}_{S_2} \quad \underbrace{\text{got}}_{\text{'Get' according to tense}} \quad \underbrace{\text{him}}_{\text{obj.}} \quad \underbrace{\text{arrested}}_{V_3} \quad \underbrace{\text{by the police}}_{S_1}$
3. Have the box opened.
 $\underbrace{\text{Have}}_{\text{'Have' according to tense}} \quad \underbrace{\text{the box}}_{\text{obj.}} \quad \underbrace{\text{opened}}_{V_3}$
4. We have to make the system work.
 $\underbrace{We}_{S_2} \quad \underbrace{\text{have to make}}_{\text{'make' according to tense}} \quad \underbrace{\text{the system}}_{S_1} \quad \underbrace{\text{work}}_{V_1}$
5. I cannot get your work done by him.
 $\underbrace{I}_{S_2} \quad \underbrace{\text{cannot get}}_{\text{'get' according to tense}} \quad \underbrace{\text{your work}}_{\text{obj.}} \quad \underbrace{\text{done}}_{V_3} \quad \underbrace{\text{by him}}_{S_1}$

नोट: **Make/Have** एवं **Get** के प्रयोग के बीच का अंतर:

1. **Get/Have** के प्रयोग के बाद **S₁** का उल्लेख **by + S₁** के **form** में होता है। लेकिन **Passive voice** के तरह ही **S₁** का प्रयोग किया भी जा सकता है और नहीं भी।

Make के बाद **S₁** का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक होता है।

2. **Get/Have** के बाद **V₃** का प्रयोग होता है।

Make के बाद **V₁** का प्रयोग होता है।

- वाक्य में '**Get**'/'**Have**' एवं '**Make**' **tense** के अनुसार परिवर्तित होते हैं।

Verb का प्रयोग विभिन्न **Pattern** में हो सकता है। नीचे दिए गये कुछ **patterns** में **verb** का प्रयोग देखें-

PATTERN - 1

Subject + Verb

- ये '**Verb**' के प्रयोग का सब से साधारण Pattern है। ऐसे sentence formation में **sub** के बाद अकर्मक क्रिया (**intransitive verb**) का प्रयोग होता है। वाक्य का अर्थ किसी कर्म (**object**) के बिना भी स्पष्ट होता है। इस sentence pattern to **passive voice** में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता है।

18

S.N	Subject	Verb
1.	Birds	fly.
2.	The moon	is shining
3.	The baby	is sleeping.
4.	I	was going

PATTERN - 2

Subject + verb + subject complement

- ऐसे 'sentence form' में complement या तो Noun होता है, या pronoun या फिर adjective. इस sentence pattern को भी **passive voice** में परिवर्तित नहीं किया जा सकता है।

19

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Subject Complement
1.	This	is	a pen.
2.	It	is	I
3.	He	looks	happy.
4.	My father	got	angry.

PATTERN - 3

Subject + verb + direct object

- कई 'verbs' सकर्मक क्रिया (transitive verb) होते हैं। **Transitive verbs** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख होना जरूरी होता है वर्णा वाक्य का अर्थ स्पष्ट नहीं होता।

20

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object
1.	I	know	him.
2.	She	opened	the door.
3.	You	should help	yourself.

PATTERN - 4

Subject+verb + indirect object + direct object

- जब वाक्य में दो 'objects' हो, तो **Indirect object** (जो सामान्यतः सजीव होता है) का उल्लेख पहले होता है और फिर **direct object** का।

21

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
1.	I	gave	her	my book.
2.	I	bought	her	a purse
3.	He	showed	me	his notes.

Verb (Advance)

PATTERN - 5

Subject + verb + direct object + preposition + prepositional object

- अगर pattern 4 को हम इस तरह परिवर्तित करना चाहे कि **direct object** का उल्लेख पहले हो तो **direct object** के बाद एक **preposition** का प्रयोग होगा और फिर **indirect object** का।

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	I	gave	my book	to	her.
2.	I	bought	a purse	for	her.
3.	He	showed	his notes	to	me and my friends.

- कोई verbs का प्रयोग pattern 4 एवं 5 दोनों में किया जा सकता है। **Pattern 5** का प्रयोग ज्यादा उचित होता है अगर **direct object** कम महत्वपूर्ण हो या फिर **indirect object** ज्यादा लम्बा हो।

PATTERN - 6

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + adjective

- ऐसे sentence form में **adjective** उस अवस्था को दर्शाता है जो किया के बजह से हुआ या फिर **noun** एवं **adjective** को मिला के **object** बनाया जाता है।

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Adjective
1.	He	pushed	the door	open.
2.	She	washed	the plates	clean.
3.	I	like	my tea	strong.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **get, keep, beat, drive, make, paint, leave, turn, find, like, wish.**

PATTERN - 7

Subject + verb + preposition + prepositional object.

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Preposition	Prepositional object
1.	This car	belongs	to	me.
2.	She	met	with	an accident.
3.	He	succeeded	in	his attempt.

PATTERN - 8

Subject + verb + to-infinitive (as object of the verb)

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Infinitive
1.	She	wants	to sleep.
2.	He	forgot	to take his medicine.
3.	I	hoped	to pass the exam.

Verb (Advance)

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **like, love, prefer, begin, start, agree, try, attempt, choose, continue, intend, propose, desire, wish, want, hate, dislike, hope, expect, promise, fear, remember, forget, offer, learn.**

PATTERN - 9

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + infinitive.

ts

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Infinitive + etc.
1.	I	want	you	to help him.
2.	The doctor	advised	him	to rest.
3.	I	allowed	Rohit	to go.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य verb हैं- **ask, tell, order, command, persuade, encourage, urge, want, wish, request, intend, expect, force, tempt, teach, invite, help, warn, like, love, hate, allow, permit, remind, cause, mean, dare.**

PATTERN - 10

Subject + verb + gerund.

ts

- इस pattern में **Gerund** वाक्य के **object** का कार्य करता है।

ts

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Gerund, etc.
1.	She	started	singing.
2.	He	has finished	talking.
3.	I	love	teaching.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य शब्द हैं- **begin, start, love, like, hate, stop, finish, enjoy, prefer, fear, remember, forget, mind, miss, suggest, practice, try, understand, keep, help, advise, admit, avoid, consider, intend, delay, deny, detest, can't help, rest, defer, worth, risk , it is noun/good, propose, regret, anticipate.**

PATTERN - 11

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + present participle.

ts

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Present Participle
1.	I	saw	him	crossing the bridge.
2.	I	heard	him	shouting
3.	You	kept	me	waiting

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले verbs हैं- **see, hear, smell, feel, watch, notice, find, observe, listen, get, catch, keep, leave, set, start.**

Verb (Advance)

PATTERN - 12

Subject + verb + noun/ pronoun + plain infinitive.

S.N.	Subject	Verb	Noun/ Pronoun	Plain Infinitive
1.	I	will not let	you	go
2.	We	made	him	finish the work.
3.	I	bade	the boy	leave the room.

- इस pattern में प्रयुक्त होने वाले मुख्य verbs हैं- **see, watch, notice, observe, hear, listen, feel, make, let, help, bid.**

VERB के अहम नियम

- (i) Being ill, I could not come. (✓)
(ii) Being a rainy day, I could not come (✗)
(iii) Walking along the road, my pen fell down. (✗)
 - (i) अगर पहले वाक्य में being के पहले किसी subject का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो 2nd भाग का sub 'I' पहले भाग का भी sub बन जाता है। और वाक्य (i) का अर्थ सही निकलता है।
 - (ii) अगर दूसरे वाक्य में 'being' के पहले sub 'it' का प्रयोग न किया जाए तो 'I', rainy day का भी sub बन जाता है और इससे वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाता है। अतः '**It being a rainy day**' का प्रयोग करें।
 - (iii) इसी प्रकार तीसरे वाक्य में भी **walking** के लिये उपयुक्त sub. का प्रयोग करें अन्यथा 'my pen' पहले भाग का sub बन जायेगा।
अतः '**While I was walking along the road**' का प्रयोग करें।
- (i) The girls watched intently as the model applied her make-up with a practiced hand. (✗)
किसी क्रिया (Verb) का प्रयोग विशेषण (adjective) के रूप में किसी Noun की विशेषता बताने के लिये किया जाता है तो क्रिया 3rd form में ही होना चाहिये। अतः **Practised (v) form** का प्रयोग करें।
'Practice' noun है।

अन्य उदाहरण:
Spoken English
Revised edition

Written document

- उपरोक्त उदाहरण में **English, edition** व **document** संज्ञा (Noun) है जिनकी विशेषता बताने के लिए 'verb' का प्रयोग हो रहा है। अतः Verb 3rd form में है।
- लेकिन अगर क्रिया (Verb) को जारी (**continuous**) अवस्था में दर्शाया जाये तो verb 'ing' form में होना चाहिये।
- जैसे:
- Rising** price.
 - Developing** country.
 - Steaming** cup of tea.
3. अगर क्रिया का प्रयोग noun form में किया जाये तो उसे '**ing form** (Gerund)/'**to+V₁ form** (Infinitive)'/ में होना चाहिये।
- जैसे:
- Smoking** is prohibited here.
obj

Verb (Advance)

- (ii) Swimming is a good exercise.
 sub
- (iii) To err is human.
 Sub.
4. क्रिया कैसे हुआ, ये adverb of manner बताता है और **adverb of manner** सामान्यतः 'ly' में खत्म होता है।
 जैसे: (i) He works honestly.
 Verb Adv

- (ii) He talks politely.
 Verb Adv
- आगे **verb** हमारी पाँचों इंद्रियों से सम्बंधित हो तो उसके बाद **adverb** नहीं, **adjective** का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: (i) He looks honest.
 Verb Adj
- (ii) He sounds polite.
 Verb Adj

नीचे दिए गये सात क्रियाएं **verbs of sensation** हैं-

Look, seem, sound, appear, smell, taste, feel

- **Verbs of sensation** के अलावा **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep** (रहना), **make** एवं **prove** को भी **adverbs** नहीं बल्कि **adjective modify** करते हैं।
 जैसे: When he heard the news, he **became** sad.
 adj
5. We adapt to the environment. (×)
 We **adapt ourselves** to the environment. (✓)
- Adapt के जैसे कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद एक **Reflexive Pronoun** का आना जरूरी होता है।

ऐसे **verbs** की सूची-

Acquit (to do better than expected), absent, avail, reconcile (to accept a situation reluctantly), amuse, resign, avenge, enjoy, exert, apply (to work hard on something), adapt, adjust, pride

1. The officers **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
2. She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in laws.
3. The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
4. You will have to **apply yourself** to this task whole heartedly.
5. I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
6. You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.
7. He **resigned** himself to yet another day without food.

- नोट: (1) They **enjoyed** the party. (reflexive pronoun की जरूरत नहीं है)
 They **enjoyed** during vacation. ('themselves' का प्रयोग enjoyed' के बाद करें)
 ➤ अगर **enjoy** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख हो तो **reflexive pronoun** न लगायें परन्तु अगर **object** का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

Verb (Advance) —

- (2) He was **absent**. (✓)
He **absented** himself. (✓)

अगर **absent** का प्रयोग **verb** के रूप में हो तभी **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

नोट: (i) अगर 'acquit' का अर्थ है 'बरी करना' तो 'acquit' के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग न करें।

जैसे: The court acquitted him.

➤ अगर 'acquit' का अर्थ है 'व्यवहार करना' तो 'acquit' के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He **acquitted himself** well during the riot.

➤ अगर 'reconcile' का अर्थ है 'सुलह करना' तो **reconcile** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

जैसे: I reconciled with him after the bitter argument.

➤ अगर 'reconcile' का अर्थ है 'बेमन से ही सही पर स्वीकार कर लेना' तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He **reconciled himself** to the arrogant attitude of his boss.

➤ संक्षेप में कहा जाए तो अगर **sub** ही क्रिया का **receiver** हो तो ऊपर दिए गये **verbs** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग होगा।

- (b) (1) Keep yourself away from bad company. (✗)
Keep away from bad company. (✓)

(2) He hid himself in the room. (Drop 'himself').

➤ keep के जैसे कुछ ऐसे **verbs** होते हैं जिनके बाद **Reflexive Pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

ऐसे **verbs** की सूची

Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest, hide.

6. (i) I prefer tea than coffee. (✗)

I **prefer** tea **to** coffee. (✓)

- (ii) He invited me on/for tea. (✗)

He **invited** me **to** tea. (✓)

➤ **Verb** के बाद आने वाला **preposition** या तो **fixed** होता है या फिर किसी **preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। verb के बाद आने वाला Preposition Hindi Translation के अनुसार नहीं होना चाहिये। (Preposition देखें)

7. (i) The poor had no bed to sleep **in**.

(ii) He had no pen to write **with**.

(iii) Do you have a chair to sit **on**?

➤ जब किसी **noun** (**bed, pen** इत्यादि) को कोई **infinitive** (**to sleep, to write** इत्यादि) **qualify** करें, तो '**infinitive**' के बाद **preposition** (**in, with** इत्यादि) का प्रयोग होता है।

8. (i) I have never and will never cheat you. (✗)

I have never cheated _{V₃} and will never cheat _{V₁} you. (✓)

- (ii) Nothing has or will be more tragic than his demise. (✗)

Verb (Advance)

Nothing has been or will be more tragic than his demise. (✓)
V₃ V₁

- अगर एक वाक्य में एक verb के दो forms की ज़रूरत हो तो दोनों forms का प्रयोग करें। हम एक form से काम नहीं चला सकते।
- 9. (i) If he was a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (✗)
It he were a millionaire, he would help the millennium project. (✓)
- काल्पिनिक पद के लिये सभी sub के साथ were का प्रयोग करें।
- 10. (i) Long live the king ! (✓)
P.V. S.S.
- optative वाक्यों में singular subject के साथ भी plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।
- 11. ऐसे कई verbs हैं जिनके पहले article का प्रयोग करके उसे Noun का रूप दिया जाता है।
- जैसे: (i) He is walking.
verb
- (ii) He is going for a walk.
noun
- (iii) He rides a horse.
verb
- (iv) He went for a ride.
noun
- 12. अगर अलग-अलग verb के साथ अलग-अलग preposition की ज़रूरत पड़े तो सभी preposition का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: (i) Amphibians can live **on** land and **in** water.
(ii) He was acquitted **of** and absolved **from** all the charges of corruption.
- 13. (i) I am having a car. (✗)
I have a car. (✓)
- कुछ ऐसे verbs होते हैं जिनका प्रयोग सामान्यतः 'ing' form में नहीं किया जा सकता।
ऐसे verbs की सूची
 - (1) **Verbs of Perception-** See, taste, smell, hear, prefer, please, notice, recognize.
 - (2) **Verbs of Thinking Process-** Think, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose.
 - (3) **Verbs Showing Possession-** Own, have, belong, comprise, possess, contain, consist.
 - (4) **Verbs expressing Feeling or State of Mind-** Believe, like, dislike, love, adore, want, wish, desire, hate, agree, trust, imagine.
 - (5) **Verbs in General-** Look, seem, appear, affect, resemble, cost, require, become, hope, refuse.
(विस्तार से जानकारी के लिए Tense में Continous भाग देखें)
- 14. (A) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ किया जा सकता है।
'regard, describe, define, treat, view, know'.
(B) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ न करें।
'name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose.'
- जैसे: 1. I **regard** him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')

Verb (Advance)

2. Biology has been **defined** the study of organism. (Add 'as' after 'defined')
3. She is **considered** as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')
4. The teacher **called** him as stupid. (Drop 'as')
5. The principal **appointed** him as a lecturer. (Remove 'as')
6. He **thinks** her as a fool. (Remove 'as')
15. अगर वाक्य में '**It is high time**' या फिर '**it's time**' का प्रयोग हो और उसके बाद '**sub**' का उल्लेख हो तो **sub** के बाद '**V₂**' का प्रयोग करें।
जैसे: It's high time you **did** something.
16. कई noun का प्रयोग एक निश्चित verb के साथ किया जाता है—
जैसे: **Have** — lunch etc. **take** —an exam **make** —a demand अन्य उदाहरण

a good time	advantage	a gesture	Launch scheme
a shower	an action	a noise	Render help
a dream	risk	a promise	Impart education
a conversation	your time	a request	
		a mistake	
17. '**To**' के बाद '**V₁**' का प्रयोग होता है। परन्तु अन्य सभी **Prepositions** के बाद अगर '**verb**' का प्रयोग होता है तो **verb 'V₁+ing' form** में होना चाहिए।
जैसे:
1. He is afraid **to** **do** anything against his boss.
V₁
2. He is afraid **of** **going** out after sunset.
V₁+ing

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Walking along the road/ (b) a car knocked/ (c) him down./ (d) No error.
2. (a) Having done my homework/ (b) my mother allowed me/ (c) to go out and play./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Being a rainy day,/ (b) I had to cancel/ (c) all my appointments./ (d) No error.
4. (a) A few selfish leaders/ (b) are bent to harm/ (c) the very foundation of Democracy./ (d) No error.
5. (a) As I have worked hard,/ (b) I am confident to pass / (c) with flying colours ./ (d) No error.
6. (a) We went to that place/ (b) with a view to help/ (c) the earthquake victims./ (d) No error.
7. (a) You should avoid/ (b) to go to school/ (c) as you have severe eye infection./ (d) No error.
8. (a) I have/ (b) no achievement/ (c) to boast./ (d) No error.
9. (a) One must avail of/ (b) every opportunity/ (c) that comes in life./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Have the letter/ (b) send/ (c) by someone who is trustworthy./ (d) No error.
11. (a) Would you please order/ (b) for tea and biscuits/ (c) for all of us./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Everyone considered him as/ (b) a brave man/ (c) but he fled from the battlefield./ (d) No error.

Verb (Advance)

13. (a) My father does not mind/ (b) to be disturbed/ (c) while he is reading the newspaper./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Perhaps you do not know/ (b) I am having a car and a jeep/ (c) besides a big house in a good locality./ (d) No error.
15. (a) The lawyer asked me/ (b) if it were worth to take/ (c) the matter to court./ (d) No error.
16. (a) I bade him/ (b) to submit all the important documents/ (c) before he left the job./ (d) No error.
17. (a) He thinks/ (b) himself/ (c) as a great scholar ./ (d) No error.
18. (a) All the candidates/ (b) will give/ (c) a test on Friday./ (d) No error.
19. (a) Mrs Dorai would rather/ (b) spend a quiet evening/ (c) than attending a party./ (d) No error.
20. (a) The audience/ (b) watched the clowns/ (c) performed their act ./ (d) No error.
21. (a) The life-guard would not/ (b) let the children/ (c) to swim at the deep end of the pool ./ (d) No error.
22. (a) He denied/ (b) to help/ (c) me./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Walking along the/ (b) bank of the river/ (c) the road began to rise./ (d) No error.
24. (a) It is time you/ (b) decide on your next/ (c) course of action ./ (d) No error.
25. (a) As I was feeling sleepy/ (b) I asked for/ (c) a steamed cup of tea./ (d) No error.
26. (a) I remember/ (b) meet him/ (c) five years ago./ (d) No error.
27. (a) I have always/ (b) and will always/ (c) be faithful to you./ (d) No error.
28. (a) I am afraid/ (b) I did a mistake/ (c) in the calculation./ (d) No error.
29. (a) The lights went out/ (b) while we/ (c) took the examination./ (d) No error.
30. (a) His assistants have and/ (b) are still doing/ (c) excellent work for the organization./ (d) No error.
31. (a) After the teacher had told the boys/ (b) how to pronounce the word/ (c) all of them in one voice repeated the word again ./ (d) No error.
32. (a) The company is not doing well./ (b) Isn't it time you/ (c) sell off your shares in it?./ (d) No error.
33. (a) He caught the boy/ (b) steal/ (c) the parcel./ (d) No error.
34. (a) I declined the invitation/ (b) not because I did not want to go,/ (c) but because I have no time./ (d) No error.
35. (a) It is a known fact/ (b) that time does not return back/ (c) once it is lost./ (d) No error.
36. (a) Even after sixty years of independence/ (b) lakhs of people/ (c) do not have bed to sleep./ (d) No error.
37. (a) The dinosaurs could not/ (b) adapt to the/ (c) changing environment./ (d) No error.

Verb (Advance) —

38. (a) The students were / (b) looking forward to/ (c) meet the eminent scientist./ (d) No error.
39. (a) The lady made the/ (b) little boy to wash/ (c) all the clothes./ (d) No error.
40. (a) We must get this letter/ (b) send/ (c) as soon as possible./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

- (a) 'walking' के पहले 'while he was' जोड़े। ऐसा न करने पर 'a car' पहले verb का भी subject बन जाएगा यानि 'walking' का और फिर वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाएगा।
- (a) After I had done my homework' का प्रयोग करें। ऐसा न करने पर my mother पहले भाग (having done my homework) का भी subject बन जाएगा और वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाएगा।
- (a) 'Being' के पहले 'it' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
- (b) 'Bent on harming' का प्रयोग 'bent to harm' के स्थान पर करें। 'Bent on' का अर्थ है 'determined to do' 'Bent on' के बाद 'harming' ($V_1 + ing$) का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि 'bend on' जैसे कुछ verbs/phrases के बाद 'Gerund' ($V_1 + ing$) का प्रयोग होता है।
- (b) 'Confident to pass' के स्थान पर 'Confident of passing' का प्रयोग करें। Confident के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग होता है और 'of' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' (Gerund) का।
- (b) 'with a view to' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग होता है। अतः 'help' के स्थान पर 'helping' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'to go' के स्थान पर 'going' का प्रयोग करें। 'Avoid' के बाद 'gerund ($V_1 + ing$)' का प्रयोग होता है।
- (c) 'boast' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'noun' को कोई 'infinitive qualify' करता है तो 'infinitive' के बाद उपयुक्त preposition का प्रयोग होता है।
- (a) 'Avail' के बाद एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'one' subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। अतः 'avail' के बाद 'oneself' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'Send' के स्थान पर V_3 'sent' का प्रयोग करें। 'Get' एवं 'Have' का प्रयोग अगर 'Causative Verb' के रूप में हो तो Main Verb ' V_3 ' form में होगा।

Eg: Have it $\underbrace{\text{painted}}_{V_3}$.

Get it $\underbrace{\text{done}}_{V_3}$.

- (b) 'Order' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग न करें।
- (a) 'Considered' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग करना गलत है। 'as' हटा दें। (Chapter adverb देखें)
- (b) 'Mind' के बाद 'Gerund' का प्रयोग होगा। 'to be' के स्थान पर 'being' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'Have' का अर्थ अगर 'to possess' हो तो 'have' के साथ 'ing' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'I am having' के स्थान पर 'I have' का प्रयोग करें।
- (b) 'worth' के बाद ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा। 'worth taking' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
- (b) 'bade' (bid का V_2) के बाद plain infinitive (V_1) का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'infinitive' (to + V_1) का। 'to' हटा दें।
- (c) 'as' हटा दे। 'think' के साथ 'as' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
- (b) हिन्दी में हम कहते हैं प्रत्याशी परीक्षा देंगे। इसका 'transliteration' कर के English में कहते हैं 'Candidates

Verb (Advance)

- will give test'। ये गलत वाक्य है। 'Give' के स्थान पर 'take' का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (c) 'than' के बाद 'attend' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'would rather' के बाद भी verb V_1 form में है।
20. (c) 'watch' के बाद या तो 'gerund' ($V_1 + ing$) का प्रयोग होता है या फिर plain infinitive (V_1) का। 'Performed' के स्थान पर या तो 'performing' का प्रयोग करें या फिर 'perform' का।
21. (c) 'Let' के बाद V_1 का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'to + V_1 ' का। 'to' हटा दें।
22. (b) 'to help' के स्थान पर 'helping' का प्रयोग करें। 'Deny' के बाद 'gerund' का प्रयोग होता है।
23. (a) 'while I was' का प्रयोग 'walking along' के पहले करें (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
24. (b) 'decide' को 'decided' में परिवर्तित करें। 'It is time + sub' के बाद ' V_2 ' का प्रयोग होता है।
25. (c) 'steamed' से 'action complete' का आभास होता है। Action still going on दर्शाने के लिए ' $V_1 + ing$ ' का प्रयोग adjective के रूप में करें। 'Steaming' के प्रयोग से (भाँप निकलता हुआ यानि गर्म चाय) 'action in continuation' का आभास होता है।
26. (b) 'remember' के बाद 'Gerund' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Meet' के स्थान पर 'meeting' का प्रयोग करें।
27. (a) 'have' के साथ ' V_3 ' का प्रयोग होता है और will के साथ ' V_1 ' का। 'will always' के बाद 'be' का प्रयोग है। अतः 'have always' के बाद ' V_3 ' 'been' का प्रयोग करें।
28. (b) 'Mistake' के साथ 'do' का प्रयोग नहीं होता बल्कि 'make' का होता है। अतः 'did' के स्थान पर 'made' का प्रयोग करें।
29. (c) 'took' के स्थान पर 'were taking' का प्रयोग करें। 'while' का अर्थ है 'के दौरान'। ये कार्य को Continuous Tense में दर्शाता है।
30. (a) 'have' के बाद 'done' का प्रयोग करें। अगर एक वाक्य में एक 'verb' (यहाँ-*do*) के अलग-अलग forms की जरूरत पड़े (यहाँ 'done' एवं 'doing') तो दोनों 'forms' का प्रयोग करें। हम एक form से काम नहीं चला सकतें।
31. (c) 'repeat' के साथ 'again' का प्रयोग न करें। (वाक्य 1 एवं 2 की व्याख्या देखें)
32. (c) 'sell' को 'sold' में परिवर्तित करें। 'It's time + sub' के बाद ' V_2 ' का प्रयोग करें।
33. (b) 'steal' को 'stealing' में परिवर्तित करें। 'catch' के बाद 'Verb ing' form में होगा।
34. (c) 'have' to 'had' में परिवर्तित करें। वाक्य past में है।
35. (b) 'Return back' superfluous English है। 'back' हटा दें।
36. (c) 'Sleep' के बाद 'in' लगायें। Noun के बाद अगर infinitive का प्रयोग हो तो infinitive के बाद उपयुक्त preposition लगाता है।
37. (b) 'adapt' के बाद 'themselves' लगायें।
38. (c) 'Meeting' ($V_1 + ing$) का प्रयोग 'looking forward to' के साथ होगा।
39. (b) 'to' हटा दें। 'make' के बाद plain infinitive ' V_1 ' का प्रयोग होगा।
40. (b) 'Send' का 'sent' में परिवर्तित करें। 'Get' के बाद verb V_3 form में होता है।

9

NOUN

CHAPTER

‘किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु, स्थान, गुण, कार्य या अवस्था के नाम को **Noun** (संज्ञा) कहा जाता है।’

A noun is a word used as a **name of a person, place or thing.**

Noun पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं:

1. **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक)
2. **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक)
3. **Collective Noun** (समूहवाचक)
4. **Material Noun** (द्रव्यवाचक)
5. **Abstract Noun** (भाववाचक)

(1) PROPER NOUN

- **Proper noun** से हमारा तात्पर्य किसी व्यक्ति, वस्तु तथा स्थान के नाम से होता है।
 जैसे: Ram, Delhi, Gita etc.
 (a) **Ram** is my friend.
 (b) I live in **Delhi**.

(2) COMMON NOUN

- जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से एक वर्ग अथवा जाति के व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध हो, उसे **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं। जैसे- King, boy, girl, city etc.
 (a) According to the **boy**, the nearest **town** is very far.
 (b) The **boys** are going to the nearest **village**.

(3) COLLECTIVE NOUN

- जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से समूह का बोध हो, उसे **Collective Noun** (समूहवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं। जैसे:
 Team, Committee, Army etc.
 सामान्यतः **Collective Noun** का प्रयोग **Singular** में होता है। इनका प्रयोग **Plural** में तभी किया जाता है जब मतभेद दर्शाया जाए या फिर प्रत्येक सदस्य के बारे में कुछ कहा जाए।
 (a) The **flock** of geese spends most of its time in the pasture.
 (b) The **jury** is _{S.V.} deciding the matter.
 (c) The **committee** meets _{S.V.} every week.

- (d) The **team** are divided over the issue of captainship. (मतभेद)
P.V.
- (e) The **audience** have taken their seats. (प्रत्येक व्यक्ति)
P.V. P.P.

(4) MATERIAL NOUN

- जिस Noun (संज्ञा) से ऐसे पदार्थ का बोध हो जिससे दूसरी वस्तुएं बन सकें, उसे **Material Noun** (पदार्थवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं।
 जैसे: Silver, iron, wood etc.
 (a) The necklace is made of **gold**.
 (b) She has purchased a tea set of **silver**.
 (c) He got his furniture made of teak **wood**.
- *Material Nouns, Countable* नहीं होते हैं अर्थात् इनकी गिनती नहीं की जा सकती है। इन्हें मापा या तौला जा सकता है। इनके साथ सामान्यतः **Singular verb** का प्रयोग किया जाता है एवं इनके पहले **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

(5) ABSTRACT NOUN

- *Abstract Noun*, ऐसे गुण, भाव, क्रिया एवं अवस्था को व्यक्त करता है जिन्हें छूआ नहीं जा सकता है, देखा नहीं जा सकता है, बल्कि केवल महसूस किया जा कसता है।
 जैसे: Honesty, bravery (quality), hatred, laughter (action), poverty, youth (state).
- **Abstract Noun** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः **Singular** में किया जाता है।
 जैसे: (a) People respect his **sincerity**.
 (b) **Honesty** is the best policy.
- **Noun** को (A) **Countable** एवं (B) **Uncountable** में भी बाँटा जा सकता है।
- (A) Countable Nouns**
 ➤ **Countable Noun** वह **Noun** होता है, जिसकी गणना की जा सके।
 जैसे: (a) We bought **six** tables.
 (b) I have a **few** friends.
 (c) She saw **many** movies last month.

(B) NON-COUNTABLE NOUNS

- **Uncountable Noun** वह **Noun** होता है, जिसकी गणना न की जा सके।
 जैसे: (a) J. Priestly discovered **oxygen**.
 (b) They decided to sell the **furniture**.
 (c) Much **money** was wasted on the show.

	Countable Noun	Uncountable Noun
Eg:-	Stars, Seconds, Rupees etc.	Money, time, knowledge etc.
Verb-	Singular with Plural with Noun Noun	Singular Verb
Adjective-	Many, few, a number of, the number of.	Much, little, quantity of
Article -	A/An/ the can be used.	only 'the' can be used

IMPORTANT POINTS

RULE 1

- कुछ Nouns का प्रयोग हमेशा Plural form में ही होता है। इन Nouns के अन्त में लगे s को हटाकर, इन्हें Singular नहीं बनाया जा सकता है। ये दिखने में भी Plural लगते हैं, एवं इनका प्रयोग भी Plural की तरह होता है। ऐसे Nouns निम्न हैं:

Scissors, tongs (चिमटा), **pliers, pincers, bellows** (फूँकनी), **trousers, pants, pajamas, shorts, gallows** (फॉसी का फंदा), **fangs** (डंक), **spectacles, goggles, binoculars** (दूरबीन), **eyeglasses, Alms** (दान), **amends** (संशोधन), **archives** (ऐतिहासिक दस्तावेज), **arrears, auspices, congratulations, embers** (राख), **fireworks, lodgings, outskirts, particulars, proceeds, regards, riches, remains, savings, shambles, surroundings, tidings, troops, tactics, thanks, valuables, wages, belongings etc.**

जैसे: (a) Where are my **pants**?

(b) Where are the **tongs**?

(c) The **proceeds** were deposited in the bank.

(d) All his **assets** were seized.

(e) **Alms** are given to the beggars.

(f) The **embers** of the fire were still burning.

नोट: 'Wages' का प्रयोग singular एवं plural दोनों forms में किया जा सकता है। निम्नलिखित वाक्यों को देखें-

	<u>अर्थ</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>Example</u>
Wages	मजदूरी	Plural	Wages <u>are</u> paid in cash. <small>P.v</small>
	परिणाम	Singular	Wages of hard work <u>is</u> sweet. <small>S.v</small>

RULE 2

- कुछ Nouns दिखने में Plural लगते हैं लेकिन अर्थ में Singular होते हैं। इनका प्रयोग हमेशा Singular में ही होता है। जैसे: **News, Innings, Politics, Summons, Physics, Economics, Ethics, Mathematics, Mumps, Measles, Rickets, Shingles, Billiards, Athletics** etc.

जैसे: (a) No **news** is good news.

(b) **Politics** is a dirty game.

(c) **Economics** is an interesting subject.

(d) **Ethics** demands honesty.

RULE 3

- कुछ Nouns दिखने में Singular लगते हैं, लेकिन इनका प्रयोग हमेशा Plural में होता है। जैसे: **cattle, cavalry, infantry, poultry, peasantry, children, gentry, police, people, etc.** इनके साथ कभी भी 's' नहीं लगाया जाता, जैसे: cattles, childrens लिखना गलत है।

जैसे: (a) **Cattle** are grazing in the field.

Noun

- (b) Our **infantry** have marched forward.
 (c) **Police** have arrested the thieves.
- नोट:** 'People' का अर्थ है 'लोग'। 'Peoples' का अर्थ है 'विभिन्न मूलवंश (different races) के लोग'।

RULE 4

➤ कुछ Nouns का प्रयोग, केवल **Singular form** में ही किया जाता है। ये Uncountable Nouns हैं। इनके साथ Article A/An का प्रयोग भी नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे:

Scenery, Poetry, Furniture, Advice, Information, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery, Crockery, Luggage, Baggage, Postage, Knowledge, Wastage, Jewellery, Breakage, Equipment, Work (Works का अर्थ है साहित्य लेख), Evidence, Word (जब 'word' का अर्थ वाद, संदेश या परिचर्चा हो), **Fuel**, एवं **Cost**.

- जैसे: (a) The **scenery** of Kashmir is very charming.
 (b) I have no **information** about her residence.
 (c) The **mischief** committed by him is unpardonable.
 (d) His **hair** is black.
 (e) I have bought some **equipment** that I needed for the project.

(i) इन Nouns का बहुचरन नहीं बनाया जा सकता। जैसे: *Sceneries, informations, furnitures, hairs* इत्यादि लिखना गलत है।

(ii) यदि उक्त Noun का **Singular** या **Plural** दोनों **forms** में आवश्यकता हो तो, इनके साथ कुछ शब्द जोड़े जाते हैं।

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:

- (a) He gave me **a piece of** information.
 (b) **All pieces of** information given by her were reliable.
 (c) **Many kinds of** furniture are available in that shop.
 (d) I want **a few articles of** jewellery.
 (e) He ate **two slices of** bread.
 (f) Please show me **some items of** office stationery.
 (g) The Police have found **a strand of** hair in the car.

नोट: **Money** का plural form '**Monies**' हो सकता है जिसका अर्थ निकलता है '**sums of money**'.

जैसे: Monies have been collected and handed to the women's welfare society.

RULE 5

➤ कुछ Nouns, Plural एवं Singular दोनों में एक ही रूप में रहते हैं। जैसे: **deer, sheep, series , species, fish, crew, team, jury, aircraft, counsel** etc.

- जैसे: (a) Our team **is** the best.
 (b) Our team **are** trying their new uniform.
 (c) There **are** two fish in the pond.
 (d) There **are** many fishes in the aquarium. ('Fishes' का अर्थ है विभिन्न प्रजातियों के fish)

Noun

RULE 6

- **Hyphenated noun** का प्रयोग कभी भी **plural form** में नहीं होता।
 जैसे: (a) He gave me two hundred-rupees notes. (rupees को rupee में परिवर्तित करें)
 (b) He stays in five- stars hotels. (stars को star में परिवर्तित करें)

RULE 7

- कुछ nouns का प्रयोग लोग बोल-चाल की भाषा में करते हैं लेकिन वास्तव में उनका प्रयोग करना बिलकुल गलत होता है।
 उदाहरण: गलत प्रयोग सही प्रयोग
 1. Cousin brother Cousin
 or
 Cousin sister
 2. Pickpocket Pickpocket
 3. Good name Name
 4. Big/small blunder Blunder (Blunder का अर्थ होता है बड़ी भूल। अतः big का प्रयोग गलत है।)
 5. Strong breeze Strong wind (Breeze हमेशा light एवं gentle होता है)
 6. Bad dream Nightmare
- निम्नलिखित nouns में भी हमें confusion रहता है -
 1. Floor Ground
 फर्श जमीन
 2. Skill Talent
 सीख कर प्राप्त करते हैं Inborn(जन्म से होता है)
 3. Envy Jealousy
 ईर्ष्या जो दूसरों के चीज़ों का देख कर हो ईर्ष्या जो अपनी चीज़ों के खोने के डर से हो

RULE 8

- कुछ Nouns जो अर्थ में तो Plural होते हैं लेकिन यदि इनके पूर्व किसी निश्चित संख्यात्मक विशेषण (**Definite numeral adjective**) का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो इन Noun को Pluralise नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे : **Pair, score, gross, stone, hundred, dozen, thousand, million, billion, etc.**
 जैसे: (a) I have two **pairs** of shoes.
 (b) I have **two hundred** rupees only.
 (c) She purchased **three dozen** pencils.
 (d) He has already donated **five thousand** rupees.
- लेकिन यदि इनके साथ **Indefinite countable** का प्रयोग हो तो इन्हें Pluralise किया जाता है।
 जैसे: **dozens of women, hundreds of people, millions of dollars, scores of shops, many pairs of shoes etc.**
 जैसे: (a) **Hundreds of people** came to see the fair.
 (b) He donated **millions of rupees**.

RULE 9

- यदि किसी Noun के बाद Preposition का प्रयोग हो और फिर वही 'Noun' repeat हो तो वह 'Noun' **Singular form** में होना चाहिए। जैसे:
 जैसे: (a) **Town after town** was devastated.
 (b) **Row upon row** of marble looks beautiful.
 (c) He enquired from **door to door**.
 (d) **Ship after ship** is arriving.

Noun

- इस तरह के वाक्यों में Towns after towns, Rows upon rows, doors to doors या ships after ships लिखना गलत है।

RULE 10

- Common Gender Nouns जैसे: **Teacher, student, child, clerk, advocate, worker, writer, leader, musician** etc. ऐसे nouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग **male** एवं **female** दोनों के लिए किया जाता है। इन्हें **Dual Gender** भी कहा जाता है। जब इस तरह के Noun का प्रयोग Singular में किया जाता है तो सामान्यतः **he/his/him** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे:
- (1) Every **leader** should perform **his** duty.
 - (2) A **teacher** should perform **his** duty sincerely.

यहाँ विवाद का विषय यह है कि हम **Masculine Gender (He/His etc.)** का ही प्रयोग करें करें?

- इस सम्बन्ध में यदि matter legal तो ही ही अपनाकर उसे स्पष्ट कर देना चाहिये।

WORDS DENOTING GROUPS

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A band of musicians. 2. A board of directors, etc. 3. A bevy of girls, women, officers etc. 4. A bunch of grapes, keys, etc. 5. A bundle of sticks and hay. 6. A caravan of Merchants, pilgrims, travellers. 7. A chain/range of mountains or hills. 8. A choir of singers. 9. A class of students. 10. A retinue of servants/ attendants. 11. A clump/grove of trees. 12. A code of laws. 13. A cluster / constellation/ galaxy of stars. 14. A company/regiment/army of soldiers. 15. A convoy of ships, cars etc. moving under an escort. 16. A course or series of lectures. 17. A crew of sailors. 18. A crowd/mob of people. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 19. A curriculum of studies. 20. A flight of steps, stairs. 21. A fleet of ships or motorcars. 22. A flock of geese, sheep and birds. 23. A gang of robbers, labourers. 24. A garland/bunch/bouquet of flowers. 25. A heap of ruins, sand, stones. 26. A herd of cattle. 27. A litter of puppies. 28. A pack of hounds, cards. 29. A pair of shoes, scissors, compasses, trousers. 30. A series of events. 31. A sheaf of corn, arrows. 32. A swarm of ants, bees or flies. 33. A train of carriages, followers etc. 34. A troop of horses (cavalry) scouts; etc. 35. A volley of shots, bullets 36. A forum of people (discussing issues) 37. A congregation of people (discussing religious issues) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

NOUN-GENDER

Gender को चार भागों में विभाजित किया गया है:

- (1) **Masculine Gender** (पुलिंग): ऐसे Noun जो **male sex** को व्यक्त करते हैं, **Masculine Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Tiger, Power, Violence, Father, Sun, Summer, Time, Thunder** etc.
- (2) **Feminine Gender** (स्त्रीलिंग): ऐसे Noun जो **Female sex** को व्यक्त करते हैं, **Feminine Gender** कहलाते हैं ऐसे: **Tigress, Woman, Lioness, Mother, Sister, Peace, Nature, Earth, Goddess** etc.
- (3) **Common Gender** (उभय लिंग) ऐसे Noun जो स्त्री एवं पुरुष दोनों के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Common Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Child, Baby, Teacher, Servant, Student, Cousin, Infant, Thief, Neighbour** etc.
- (4) **Neuter Gender** (नपुंसक लिंग): ऐसे Noun जो उन निर्जीव वस्तुओं को व्यक्त करते हैं जो न male हैं और न ही female हैं, **Neuter Gender** कहलाते हैं। जैसे: **Copy, Book, Room, Paper, T.V., Box**, etc.

— English — from Plinth to Paramount

Noun**RULES FOR CHANGING MASCULINE NOUN TO FEMININE NOUN****RULE 1**

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के बाद 'ess' लगाने से Feminine Noun बनाया जा सकता है। जैसे:

Masculine	Feminine
Author (लेखक)	Authoress
Host (मेजबान)	Hostess
Jew	Jewess
Mayor	Mayoress
Poet (कवि)	Poetess
Tutor	Tutoress
Shepherd(गड़ेडिया)	Shepherdess
Giant (दानव)	Giantess
Heir (उत्तराधिकारी)	Heiress
Lion	Lioness
Priest(पुजारी)	Priestess
Tailor (दर्जी)	Tailoress

RULE 2

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के **अन्तिम vowel** एवं उसके पहले आने वाले **consonant** को हटाकर 'ess' जोड़ने से भी Feminine Noun बन जाता है। जैसे:

Masculine	Feminine
Actor	Actress
Benefactor(उपकार करने वाला)	Benefactress
Hunter (शिकारी)	Huntress
Prince (राजकुमार)	Princess
Waiter	Waitress
Ambassador	Ambassadress
Director	Directress
Negro	Negress
Tiger	Tigress

RULE 3

- कुछ cases में Masculine Noun के शब्दों में कुछ **change** किया जाता है एवं अन्त में 'ess' लगाने पर भी Feminine Noun बन जाता है। जैसे:

Masculine

Emperor(राजा)
Governor
Duke
God
Master
Sorcerer (जादूगर)

Feminine

Empress
Governess
Duchess
Goddess
Mistress
Sorceress

RULE 4

- कुछ cases में Compound Masculine Noun के **first** अथवा **second** शब्द में कुछ परिवर्तन किये जाता है। जैसे:

Masculine

Man-servant
Washerman
Buck-rabbit
Brother-in law
He-bear
Bull-calf
Jack-ass
Headmaster
Milkman
Postmaster
Peacock
Landlord
Father-in-law
Step-Father
He-goat
Cock-sparrow
Dog-wolf
Stepbrother
Grandson

Feminine

Maid - servant
Washerwoman
Doe-Rabbit
Sister-in-law
She-bear
Cow-calf
Jenny-ass
Headmistress
Milkmaid
Postmistress
Peahen
Landlady
Mother-in-law
Step-Mother
She-goat
Hen-sparrow
Bitch-wolf
Stepsister
Granddaughter

RULE 5

- Foreign words एवं अन्य विविध शब्दों के Masculine एवं Feminine gender नीचे दिये गये हैं। इनको किसी विशेष नियम के तहत परिवर्तित नहीं करते हैं As:

Masculine

Administrator
Executor (कार्यान्वित करने वाला)
Lad(लड़का)

Feminine

Administratrix
Executrix
Lass

Noun

Prosecutor	Proscutrix	Czar	Czarina
Sultan	Sultana	Hero	Heroine
Boar (बनैला सूअर)	Sow	Testator (वसीयतकर्ता)	Testatrix
Brother	Sister	Bachelor	Maid
Colt (बछड़ा)	Filly	Boy	Girl
Dog	Bitch	Cock	Hen
Buck (मृग)	Doe	Drake (बत्तक)	Duck
Earl	Countess	Drone (नर मक्खी)	Bee
Monk	Nun	Bull	Cow
Gander (हंस)	Goose	Father	Mother
Hart (हिरण)	Roe	Bridegroom	Bride
Horse	Mare	Gentleman	Lady
King	Queen	He	She
Man	Woman	Husband	Wife
Mr.	Miss	Lord	Lady
Sheep	Ewe	Male	Female
Son	Daughter	Nephew (भतीजा)	Niece
Uncle	Aunt	Sir	Madam/ Dame
Fox	Vixen	Widower (विद्युर)	Widow
Ox	Cow	Wizard (जादूगर)	Witch

NOUN-NUMBER (SINGULAR-PLURAL)

Singular Noun: इससे एक व्यक्ति, एक स्थान या एक वस्तु का बोध होता है। जैसे: Boy, Girl, Table.

Plural Noun: इससे एक से अधिक व्यक्ति, स्थान या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है जैसे: Cities, Boys, Girls.

Changing Singular to Plural: Some Rules

RULE 1

- कुछ Noun के अन्त में 's' लगाने से वह Plural बन जाता है। जैसे: Boy, Girl, Kite, Telephone etc.

RULE 2

- जिन Noun के अन्त में **s, ss, ch, sh, z या x** आता है उनका Plural बनाने के लिए अन्त में **es** जोड़ दिया जाता है। जैसे:

Singular Plural Singular Plural

Bus	Buses	Fox	Foxes
Watch	Watches	Switch	Switches
Ass	Asses	Canvas	Canvases
Fix	Fixes	Class	Classes
Church	Churches	Quiz	Quizes

Tax	Taxes	Dish	Dishes
Box	Boxes	Coach	Coaches

➤ इसके कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Stomach	Stomachs	Radius	Radii
Locus	Loci	Ox	Oxen

RULE 3

- कुछ Noun के अन्त में 'o' आता है एवं उससे पूर्व कोई व्यंजन (**consonant**) हो तो, उसका Plural बनाने के लिए Noun के अन्त में 'es' लगाते हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Hero	Heroes	Potato	Potatoes
Mosquito	Mosquitoes	Mango	Mangoes
Cargo	Cargoes	Echo	Echoes

➤ इससे कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Dynamo	DYNAMOS	Memento	Mementos
Ratio	Ratios	Piano	Pianos
Solo	Solos	Photo	Photos

Noun**RULE 4**

- यदि किसी Noun के अन्त में **double vowel** लगे हुए हों तो उसका Plural बनाने के लिए उसके अन्त में **s** लगा दिया जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Bee	Bees	Tree	Trees
Zoo	Zoos	Radio	Radios
Woe	Woes	Portfolio	Portfolios

RULE 5

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'y' आये एवं 'y' से पूर्व कोई व्यंजन(**consonant**) आता है तो 'y' की जगह 'ies' लगाने से उसका plural बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Cry	cries	Country	countries
Family	families	Pony	ponies
City	cities	Dictionary	dictionaries
Lorry	lorries	Reply	replies

RULE 6

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'y' आये एवं 'y' से पूर्व कोई **Vowel** आता हो तो 's' लगाने से उसका **Plural** बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Key	Keys	Donkey	Donkeys
Ray	Rays	Monkey	Monkeys
Way	Ways	Valley	Valleys
Toy	Toys	Storey	Storeys

RULE 7

- यदि Noun के अन्त में 'f' या 'fe' आये तो **Plural** बनाने के लिए 'f' या 'fe' को हटाकर 'ves' लगाते हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Calf	Calves	Half	Halves
Wife	Wives	Thief	Thieves
Wolf	Wolves	Life	Lives
Leaf	Leaves	Knife	Knives
Shelf	Shelves	Loaf	Loaves

- इसके कुछ Exceptions भी हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Belief	Beliefs	Chief	Chiefs
Cliff	Cliffs	Dwarf	Dwarfs
Grief	Grieves	Gulf	Gulfs
Proof	Proofs	Roof	Roofs
Safe	Safes	Scarf	Scarfs
Turf	Turfs	Brief	Briefs

RULE 8

- Compound noun में मुख्य शब्द के साथ 's' लगाने पर उसका **Plural** बन जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural
Brother-in-law	Brothers-in-law
Bed-room	Bed-rooms
Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Step-daughter	Step-daughters
Maid-servant	Maid-servants
Pea-hen	Pea-hens
Peacock	Peacocks
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law
Sister-in-law	Sisters-in-law
Member of Parliament	Members of Parliament
Man hater	Man haters
Woman lover	Woman lovers
Man lover	Man lovers

RULE 9

- निम्न Nouns ऐसे हैं जिनका **Plural** बनाने के लिए **Inside Vowels** में परिवर्तन करते हैं।

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Man	Men	Woman	Women
Foot	Feet	Tooth	Teeth
Mouse	Mice	Louse (जू)	Lice
Goose	Geese	Oasis	Oases

RULE 10

- निम्नलिखित Nouns ऐसे हैं जिनका Plural बनाने के लिए 'en' जोड़ते हैं। जैसे:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Child	Children	Ox	Oxen

RULE 11

- कुछ Nouns के दो तरह के Plural बनते हैं जिनका अर्थ भी अलग होता है। जैसे:

(1)	Brother	Brothers	- Sons of the same parents.
	Brethren	- Members of a society, community or a religious group.	
(2)	Cloth	Cloths	- Unstitched cloth.
	Clothes	- Stitched clothes (Garments)	
(3)	Die	Dies	- Stamps used for printing and coining.
	Dice	- Small cubes used in games.	
(4)	Index	Indexes	- tables of contents in a book.
	Indices	- Signs used in algebra.	

SOME TYPICAL PLURAL NOUNS (NUMBER)

- (A) **Latin words:** Latin के कुछ शब्द, जिनके अन्त में 'um' आता है, एकवचन होते हैं। इनका Plural बनाने के लिए 'um' हटाकर 'a' लगाया जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural
Datum	Data
Ovum	Ova
Agendum	Agenda
Dictum	Dicta
Memorandum	Memoranda
Stratum	Strata

IMPORTANT

- Latin के निम्न शब्दों पर ध्यान दें: इन शब्दों के पीछे 'um' आता है, लेकिन इनके Plural बनाने हेतु पीछे 's' लगाया जाता है।

Singular	Plural
Asylum	Asylums
Museum	Museums
Premium	Premiums
Forum	Forums
Pendulum	Pendulums

- (B) कुछ Latin words के अन्त में 'us' आता है। इनका Plural 'us' को 'i' के बदलकर बनाया जाता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural
Radius	Syllabus

- (C) कुछ Greek शब्दों के अन्त में 'is' आता है इनका Plural 'is' को 'es' में बदलकर बनाया जाता है।

Singular	Plural
Analysis	Analyses
Crisis	Crises
Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Basis	Bases
Thesis	Theses

- (D) कुछ Greek शब्दों के अन्त में 'on' आता है इनका Plural 'on' को 'a' में बदलने से बनता है। जैसे:

Singular	Plural
Phenomenon	Phenomena
Criterion	criteria

- (E) अन्य कई Nouns के Plural निम्न प्रकार बनते हैं:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
If	Ifs	I	I's
5	5s	P	P's
BA	BAs	ATM	ATMs
But	Buts	T	T's
10	10s	MP	MPs
MA	MAs	UPC	UPCs

Noun

(F) कुछ Nouns के **Singular** एवं, **Plural forms** के अर्थ पूर्णतया अलग होते हैं, अतः इनका प्रयोग सावधानीपूर्वक करना चाहिए।

जैसे:	Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
	Air	(हवा)	Airs	(दिखावटी व्यवहार)
	Return	(वापसी)	Returns	(आय का हिसाब)
	Iron	(लोहा)	Irons	(जंजीरें)
	Sand	(रेत)	Sands	(रेगिस्तान)
	Wood	(लकड़ी)	Woods	(जंगल)
	Abuse	(दुरुपयोग)	Abuses	(कुरीतियाँ)
	Good(adj)	(अच्छा)	Goods	(सामान)
	Water	(पानी)	Waters	(समुद्र)
	Work	(काम)	Works	(साहित्य लेख)
	Fruit	(फल जैसे सेब इत्यादि)	Fruits	(नतीजा (मेहनत इत्यादि का))
	Wit	(वाक्‌पटुता)	Wits	(बुद्धिमता)

(G) कुछ Nouns का **Singular form** में एक अर्थ होता है परन्तु **Plural Form** में एक से अधिक।

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
Custom	रिवाज़	Customs	रिवाज़, सीमा शुल्क
Manner	तरीका	Manners	तरीके, शिष्टाचार
Pain	दर्द	Pains	दर्द, अथक प्रयास
Quarter	एक-चौथाई	Quarters	एक-चौथाई, आवास
Letter	अक्षर, चिट्ठी	Letters	अक्षर, चिट्ठी, साहित्य

NOUNS OF / APOSTROPHE

(A) **Apostrophe** का प्रयोग **Possessive case** के लिए निम्न स्थिति में करना ही उचित है। जैसे:

(1) जीवित वस्तु

जैसे: (a) Mohan's book (b) a cow's horn (c) a woman's purse

(2) जब किसी निर्जिव का मानवीयकरण (**Personification**) किया जाए।

जैसे: (a) Sun's fury (b) Nature's love

(3) समय, भार एवं जगह संबंधित **Nouns** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) a day's leave. (b) arm's length. (c) a pound's weight.

(4) कुछ सम्मानजनक **Nouns** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) court's orders (b) at duty's call

(5) कुछ **Phrases** के साथ।

जैसे: (a) at one's wit's end. (b) at a stone's throw

(6) भौगोलिक पिण्ड के साथ

जैसे: (a) Earth's atmosphere.

Noun

- (B) यदि Plural शब्द का अन्तिम अक्षर 's' है तो apostrophe का प्रयोग करते समय 's' नहीं लगाते हैं, केवल apostrophe (') का ही प्रयोग करते हैं।
 जैसे: (a) Boys' college (b) Girls' school (c) Working women's hostel
- (C) जब Noun सिस्कार ध्वनि (hissing sound) से खत्म हो में भी 's' नहीं लगता है।
 for peace' sake, for conscience' sake, for goodness' sake, for Jesus' sake, Ganesh' book.
- नोट: God's sake.
- (D) Possessive Pronoun (his, hers, yours, ours, theirs) के साथ apostrophe नहीं लगाते हैं।
 जैसे: Yours faithfully, Yours truly.
- (E) निम्न titles के साथ apostrophe अन्तिम शब्द के साथ ही लगाते हैं।
 जैसे: (a) Commander-in-chief's orders.
 (b) My son-in-law's sister.
- (F) निर्जीव वस्तु के साथ 's का प्रयोग नहीं करते हैं 'Of' का प्रयोग करते हैं।
 जैसे: Table's leg के स्थान पर Leg of table का प्रयोग करें।
- (G) 'Double apostrophe' का प्रयोग न करें
 जैसे: (a) My wife's secretary's mother has expired. (x)
 इसकी जगह हमें लिखना चाहिये।
 The mother of my wife's secretary has expired.
 (b) Mrs. Sharma the society's chairman's proposal was rejected by the members of the society. (x)
 The proposal of Mrs. Sharma, the chairperson of society, was rejected by the members of the society. (✓)
- (H) anybody/ Nobody/ Everybody/ Somebody/ Anyone/Someone/No one/Everyone के साथ 's का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।
 जैसे: (a) Everyone's concern is no one's concern.
 (b) Everybody's business is nobody's business.
 ➤ यदि इनके बाद else का प्रयोग हो तो apostrophe को else के साथ लगाते हैं।
 जैसे: (a) I can rely on your words, not somebody else's.
 (b) I obey your orders and nobody else's.
 (यहाँ Somebody's else या Nobody's else लिखना गलत होगा।)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) My sister / (b) has read / (c) pages after pages of the Bible. / (d) No error
2. (a) I went to the temple / (b) with my parents, aunts / (c) and cousin sisters. / (d) No error
3. (a) He / (b) takes pain / (c) over his work. / (d) No error
4. (a) The Manager put forward / (b) a number of criterions / (c) for the post. / (d) No error
5. (a) I like / (b) the poetries / (c) of Byron and Shelley. / (d) No error

Noun

6. (a) The beautiful / (b) surrounding of the place / (c) enchanted me./ (d) No error
7. (a) No Porter being available/ (b) he carried / (c) all his luggages himself./ (d) No error
8. (a) The table's legs / (b) have been / (c) elaborately carved./ (d) No error
9. (a) The sceneries / (b) of Kashmir / (c) is very charming./ (d) No error
10. (a) The driver showed / (b) great talent in keeping / (c) the damaged car under control./ (d) No error
11. (a) When I entered the bedroom / (b) I saw a snake crawling / (c) on the ground./ (d) No error
12. (a) Alms / (b) are given/ (c) to the poors./ (d) No error
13. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery./ (d) No error
14. (a) If you have a way with words / (b) a good sense of design and administration ability / (c) you may enjoy working in high pressure world of advertising./ (d) No error
15. (a) Last week's sharp hike in the wholesale price of beef / (b) is a strong indication for / (c) higher meat costs to come./ (d) No error
16. (a) Whenever he goes to Mumbai / (b) he stays in/ (c) five-stars hotels./ (d) No error
17. (a) The company has ordered / (b) some / (c) new equipments./ (d) No error
18. (a) A strong breeze / (b) blew his / (c) cap off./ (d) No error.
19. (a) One of her firmest belief among the Hindus is that/ (b) Karma affects their / (c) life and also the life after death./ (d) No error
20. (a) He was advised to take/ (b) two spoonsful of / (c) medicine times a day./ (d) No error
21. (a) It is a big blunder/(b) but we had / (c) to ignore it/(d)No error
22. (A) The police have received / (b) two important informations / (c) that can help them solve the triple murder case (E) No error
23. (a) The sheafs / (b) of the wheat plants were too heavy / (c) for the weak farmer to carry them on his head./ (d) No error
24. (a) The population of India /(b) is divided into two classes- / (c) Haves and Haves not./ (d) No error
25. (a) All his sister-in laws / (b) are extremely co- operative / (c) and she doesn't miss her real sisters at all./ (d) No error
26. (a) Envy strikes a woman / (b)when she sees her husband / (c) talking to another woman./ (d) No error
27. (a) Two summons have been issued by the court / (b) but he has not / (c) yet appeared before the court./ (d) No error
28. (a) The Vaidya's / (b) have been living here / (c) for about a decade./ (d) No error.
29. (a) You are among those/ (b) man who earned name and fame not by / (c) chance but by hard work ./ (d) No error
30. (a) Children are playing / (b) and making mischiefs/ (c) as their holidays have started./ (d) No error.

Noun

31. (a) Sheeps are economically useful/ (b) and so they are reared/ (c) for wool and meat./ (d) No error.
32. (a) I read the letter/ (b) and made him aware/ (c) of its content./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I shall not go to party tonight/ (b) since I have many works to complete/ (c) before I give presentation tomorrow./ (d) No error.
34. (a) One must be always/ (b) true to one's words/ (c) if one wants to get respect from everyone./ (d) No error.
35. (a) Even after the enactment of several Acts and Provisions / (b) we can see five years old boys/ (c) working in hazardous factories./ (d) No error.
36. (a) The fan's blade / (b) has broken/ (c) and we must buy a new fan before disposing it of./ (d) No error.
37. (a) She wears spectacle/ (b) and so she was unable to see the gansgter/ (c) that attacked her last night./ (d) No error.
38. (a) All the furnitures have been/ (b) sold for a song/ (c) as we were in a hurry to leave the town./ (d) No error.
39. (a) The angry mob/ (b) attacked the police officers/ (c) when they came to raze the illegal construction./ (d) No error.
40. (a) They left/ (b) their luggages/ (c) at home by mistake and went to the railway station./ (d) No error.
41. (a) The car could not/ (b) ascend the steep hill/ (c) because it was in the wrong gears./ (d) No error.
42. (a) The ticket window/ (b) remained closed / (c)throughout the day./ (d) No error.
43. (a) Satyajit Ray, who conceived, co-authored / (b) and directed a number of good films, was/ (c) one of India's most talented film maker./ (d) No error.
44. (a) I think this/ (b) is not your book. / (c) It is some body's else./ (d) No error.
45. (a) You should not put/ (b) your sign on any paper / (c) that you haven't read./ (d) No error.
46. (a) Towns after towns were/ (b) conquered / (c) by him but he found no peace./ (d) No error.
47. (a) When we reached the fair/ (b) we found that there / (c) was no place to stand./ (d) No error.
48. (a) All the evidences were/ (b) against him and he was / (c) held guilty./ (d) No error.
49. (a) My cousin brother is a cheater/ (b) and he / (c) cheats his family members and friends too./ (d) No error.
50. (a) The committee/ (b) could not come to/ (c) a final conclusion./ (d) No error.
51. (a) The cattle in the meadow/ (b) was terrified to hear/ (c) the roar of a lion which appeared to be wild with anger./ (d) No error.
52. (a) There should be/ (b) no furnitures/ (c) in my room./ (d) No error.
53. (a) That house/ (b) is built of/ (c) stones./ (d) No error.
54. (a) Santosh lives/ (b) by the principals/ (c) he professes./ (d) No error.
55. (a) The astronomer/ (b) who predicts the future/ (c) has arrived./ (d) No error.
56. (a) He told me that/ (b) it was/ (c) his friend's Sankar's house./ (d) No error.

Noun

Answers with explanation

1. (c) 'Page after page' का प्रयोग सही होगा। अगर किसी preposition के पहले और के बाद same noun का प्रयोग होता है तो noun का प्रयोग 'singular form' में करें।
2. (c) 'Cousin sisters' कहना गलत होता है। Cousins का प्रयोग करें।
3. (b) takes pains का प्रयोग करें। इस phrase का अर्थ है 'काफी प्रयास करना'।
4. (b) 'Criterion' का plural form 'Criteria' है।
5. (b) 'Poetry' uncountable noun है। इसका बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता।
6. (b) 'Surroundings' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है आस-पास की जगह। 'Surrounding' surround (verb) का 'ing' form है।
7. (c) 'Luggage' का प्रयोग करें। 'Luggage' uncountable noun है और इसका कोई plural form नहीं है।
8. (a) table's legs के स्थान पर 'Legs of table' का प्रयोग करें। सामान्यतः निर्जीव वस्तु के साथ s का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
9. (a) 'Scenery' का प्रयोग करें। 'Scenery' uncountable noun है।
10. (b) 'talent' के स्थान पर 'skill' का प्रयोग करें। Talent का अर्थ है natural ability to do something. 'Skill' का अर्थ है 'type of activity that requires special training and knowledge'. Driving skill का प्रयोग सही होता है।
11. (c) Ground का अर्थ है 'मकान के बाहर की भरती का उपरी सतह'। Ground के स्थान पर 'floor' का प्रयोग करें। floor का अर्थ 'मकान के अंदर का फर्श' होता है।
12. (c) 'the poors' के स्थान पर 'the poor' का प्रयोग करें। 'The poor' का अर्थ है गरीब वर्ग। 'Poor' adjective है। इस में 's' का प्रयोग न करें। 'The poor' plural common noun है।
13. (c) 'eyes surgery' के स्थान पर 'eye surgery' का प्रयोग करें। 'Eyes' noun है परन्तु यहाँ 'eyes' surgery की विशेषता बता रहा है एवं adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। अगर noun adjective का कार्य करें तो वह singular form में होता है। अतः 'eyes' नहीं 'eye' का प्रयोग होगा।
14. (b) 'administration' noun है। यहाँ हमें 'ability' की विशेषता बताने वाले 'adjective' का प्रयोग करना चाहिए। administration का adjective form 'administrative' का प्रयोग करें।
15. (c) 'Costs' के स्थान पर 'Cost' का प्रयोग करें। Noun के रूप में 'Cost' uncountable noun है और इसका बहुवचन नहीं हो सकता।
16. (c) 'five-stars' hyphenated noun है जो कभी भी plural form में नहीं होता। 'five star' का प्रयोग करें।
17. (c) 'Equipment' uncountable noun है जिसका plural form नहीं होता।
18. (a) 'breeze' हमेशा gentle होता है। तेज हवा के लिए 'Strong wind' शब्द का प्रयोग करें।
19. (a) 'One of the' के बाद आने वाला 'noun plural form' में होता है। अतः 'One of the firmest beliefs' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (b) 'Spoonsful' नहीं 'Spoonfuls' का प्रयोग करें।

Noun

21. (a) 'blunder' का अर्थ होता है 'big mistake.' अतः blunder के साथ 'big' का प्रयोग गलत होगा।
22. (b) 'Information' uncountable noun है। इसका plural बनाने के लिए 'pieces of information' का प्रयोग करें।
23. (a) 'Sheaf' का plural form 'Sheaves' होता है न कि 'Sheafs'।
24. (c) 'Have nots' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होता है रहित वर्ग।
25. (a) 'Sisters-in-law' का प्रयोग करें। 'Sister-in-law' का बहुवचन 'Sisters-in-law' होता है।
26. (a) जो हमारा है और उसे खाने के डर से हमें ईच्छा होती है तो Jealousy का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जब उस वस्तु के लिए ईच्छा हो जो हमारा नहीं तो envy का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
27. (a) 'Summons' एक Countable noun है और Singular है। इसका plural summonses होता है। अतः 'two summonses' का प्रयोग करें।
28. (a) Vaidyas का प्रयोग करें। apostrophe (') हटा दें।
29. (b) 'men' का प्रयोग होगा। 'Those' के साथ plural countable noun का प्रयोग होगा।
30. (b) 'Mischief' uncountable noun है। इसका plural form नहीं हो सकता है।
31. (a) 'Sheep' का singular तथा plural form 'sheep' ही होता है। 'Sheeps' के स्थान पर Sheep का प्रयोग करें।
32. (c) Content के स्थान पर 'Contents' का प्रयोग करें। 'Contents' का अर्थ है 'things contained in something'.
33. (b) 'work' uncountable noun है। 'Many pieces of work' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (b) 'true to one's word' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ होता है 'जुबान का पक्का'।
35. (b) 'five year old boys' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ five year adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। अतः यह plural form में नहीं होगा।
36. (a) fan निर्जीव है। अतः 's' का प्रयोग 'fan' के साथ न करें। 'The blade of fan' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
37. (a) 'Spectacles' का प्रयोग करें।
38. (a) 'furniture' का प्रयोग करें। साथ ही ध्यान रखें कि 'furniture' singular noun है अतः singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
39. (a) 'angry mob' का प्रयोग गलत है। 'Mob' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि Mob का अर्थ होता है- उग्र भीड़। Angry के साथ mob का प्रयोग superfluous होगा।
40. (b) 'luggage' का प्रयोग luggages के स्थान पर करें।
41. (c) 'wrong gear' का प्रयोग करें। Car एक समय में एक ही gear में हो सकती है।
42. (a) 'ticket window' के स्थान पर 'ticket counter' का प्रयोग करें।
43. (c) 'One of' के बाद आने वाला noun plural form में होना चाहिए। अतः 'One of' के साथ 'film makers' होगा न कि 'film maker'
44. (c) 'Somebody else's' सही प्रयोग है।
45. (b) 'Sign' verb है। your के बाद noun का प्रयोग होगा यानि signature का
46. (a) 'Town after town' का प्रयोग करें। अगर किसी preposition के पहले और बाद में same noun का प्रयोग हो तो noun singular form में होना चाहिए।

Noun —

47. (c) 'no place' के स्थान पर 'no room' का प्रयोग करें। 'Room' का noun के अर्थ 'enough empty space for people or things to be fitted in' भी होता है।
48. (a) 'evidence' uncountable noun है अतः इसका कोई plural form (evidences) नहीं हो सकता। साथ ही singular verb 'was' का प्रयोग करें।
49. (a) 'Cousin brother' एवं 'Cheater' दोनों ही ऐसे nouns हैं जो लोग बोल-चाल की भाषा में अक्सर प्रयोग करते हैं परन्तु ऐसा करना गलत होता है। Cousin एवं Cheat का प्रयोग करें।
50. (c) 'final' शब्द हटा दें। Conclusion सदा final होता है।
51. (b) 'Cattle' plural noun है। अतः 'was' नहीं 'were' का प्रयोग करें।
52. (b) 'furniture' के साथ 's' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है।
53. (c) 'stones' को 'stone' में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ 'Stone' से हमारा तात्पर्य उस material से है जिससे house का निर्माण हुआ है।
54. (b) 'principals' (प्रधानाचार्य) को 'principles' (सिद्धान्त) में परिवर्तित करें।
55. (a) 'Astronomer' को 'astrologer' में परिवर्तित करें। 'furure predict' करने वाले को 'astrologer' कहते हैं।
56. (c) 'friend's' को 'friend' में परिवर्तित करें। एक साथ 'double apostrophe' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

10

PRONOUN

CHAPTER

- **Pronoun (सर्वनाम):** A word used **in place of a Noun**.
 - **Noun** के बदले प्रयुक्त होने वाले शब्द को **Pronoun** कहते हैं।
 - **Noun** के **repetition** से बचने के लिए ही **Pronoun** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। किसी भी वाक्य में एक ही Noun का प्रयोग बार-बार करने से वाक्य की सुन्दरता खत्म हो जाती है। यही मुख्य कारण है, कि Noun के बदले Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- जैसे: Mrs. Shukla, being a good teacher, she is liked by all the students. (**She** हटा दें। Noun के स्थान पर pronoun का प्रयोग होता है न कि Noun के साथ)

PRONOUNS ds izdkj%

1. **PERSONAL PRONOUNS** (पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम): I, me, we, us, you, he, him, she, her, it, they, them.
 2. **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS** (अधिकारवाचक सर्वनाम): Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs.
 3. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS** (संकेतवाचक सर्वनाम): This, that, these, those.
 4. **DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS** (व्यष्टिवाचक सर्वनाम): each, either, neither, every, none etc.
 5. **RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS** (पारस्परिक-सम्बन्ध वाचक सर्वनाम): each other, one another.
 6. **REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS** (निजवाचक सर्वनाम): Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself.
 7. **EMPHATIC OR EMPHASIZING PRONOUNS** (दबावसूचक सर्वनाम): Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself का प्रयोग जब subject (कर्ता) पर दबाव डालने के लिए किया जाता है, तब ये **Emphatic** या **Emphasizing Pronouns** कहलाते हैं।
- जैसे: You, **yourself** are responsible for your problems.
He hurt **himself**.
8. **INDEFINITE PRONOUNS** (अनिश्चयवाचक सर्वनाम): everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, everybody, someone, no one, anyone, everything, something, nothing, anything, all, some, any, both, another, much, few, little.
 9. **RELATIVE PRONOUNS** (संबंधवाचक सर्वनाम): Who, whom, whose, which, that इत्यादि। ये जोड़ने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं।
 10. **INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS** (प्रश्नवाचक सर्वनाम): Who, whom, whose, which इत्यादि। ये प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

Pronoun

The Case of Personal Pronouns		Subject	Object	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
First Person	Singular	I	me	my	mine
	Plural	We	us	our	ours
Second Person		You	you	your	yours
Third Person	Singular	She, He, It	her, him, it	her, his, its	hers, his, ---
	Plural	They	them	their	theirs

अब सभी प्रकार के **Pronoun** को विस्तार से देखे-

1. USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUN

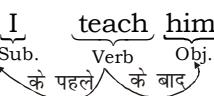
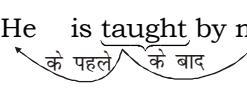
- वे Pronouns जो तीनों Pronouns जैसे **First person**, **Second person** तथा **Third person** में प्रयुक्त होते हैं **Personal pronouns** कहलाते हैं।

PERSONAL PRONOUN

Nominative Case	Objective Case	Nominative Case	Objective Case
I	me	He	him
She	her	It	it
They	them	You	you
We	us		

RULE 1

किसी sentence के **verb** के पहले Pronoun का प्रयोग हो तो वह **Nominative case** में होता है। अगर Pronoun का प्रयोग **verb** के बाद हो तो **Objective Case** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: (1)  (Active Voice) (2)  (Passive)

RULE 2

जब विभिन्न Pronouns एक ही sentence में प्रयुक्त हों और किसी बुरी बात का आभास न हो, तो उन्हें 231 के क्रम में लगाते हैं, पहले 2nd Person, फिर 3rd Person और अंत में 1st Person.

1. **You, he** and **I** shall study for the exam. (231)
2. **He** and **I** have finished our work. (31)
3. **You** and **he** have done a great job. (23)

RULE 3

एक ही वाक्य में विभिन्न **Pronouns** का प्रयोग करते समय यदि उसमें अपना दोष स्वीकार किया गया हो अथवा कोई बुरी बात कही गई हो, तो Pronouns को 123 के क्रम में रखते हैं,

- जैसे:
1. **I, you and he** have made a blunder. (123)
 2. **You and he** have done this mischief. (23)

RULE 4

जब Pronoun बहुवचन में हो तो Pronoun **123** के क्रम में होना चाहिए यानि पहले **1st Person**, फिर **2nd Person** और फिर **3rd Person**.

1. **We, You and they** should now get down to work.

RULE 5

Let, like, between, but, except एवं prepositions के बाद **Objective Case** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

- जैसे:
1. Let me do this work.
 2. There is no problem between she and I. (✗)
There is no problem between **her** and **me**. (✓)
 3. Everybody but **him** was present for the meeting. (✓)
 4. He laughed at I. (✗)
He laughed at me. (✓)
 5. Everyone attended the party except he. (✗)
Everyone attended the party except **him**. (✓)

RULE 6

यदि दो **nominatives** के बीच तुलना हो तो **As/than** के बाद **Nominative Case** के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे:
1. He is **as** fast **as** me. Objective Case . (✗)
 2. He is **as** fast **as** I. Nominative Case . (✓)
 3. I run faster **than** him. Objective Case . (✗)
 4. I run faster **than** he. Nominative Case . (✓)

➤ ऊपर दिये गए उदाहरण में दो **subjects** के बीच तुलना किया गया है। अतः दोनों Pronoun 'nominative case' में होना चाहिए।

नोट: लेकिन दो **objects** के बीच तुलना होने पर, 'as/than' के बाद **Objective Case** के Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: I know you as much as **him**. (✓)

अर्थ: I know you as much as I know him.

RULE 7

अगर 'It' का प्रयोग **subject** के रूप में हो और उसके बाद 'be' के किसी 'form' का प्रयोग हो तो उसके बाद pronoun के nominative case का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: It is I who am to blame.
Nominative case

Pronoun

USE OF 'IT'

RULE 1

It का प्रयोग जानवर, निर्जीव पदार्थ, देश व शिशु के लिए होता है। 'It' का बहुवचन 'they' होता है।

जैसे: America is a developed country. It is a super power.

Sri Lanka and Pakistan are developing countries. They are facing internal terrorism.

RULE 2

It का प्रयोग time, weather (मौसम), temperature (तापमान) तथा distance (दूरी) या अन्य प्राकृतिक घटना को express (अभिव्यक्त) करने के लिए Introductory subject के रूप में होता है। इस case में 'it' को 'empty it' कहा जाता है क्योंकि इसका कोई अर्थ नहीं होता है।

जैसे: It is raining. It is morning.

It is winter. It is 6 o'clock.

It is March. It is Monday.

RULE 3

It का प्रयोग Infinitive, Gerund तथा Clause के बदले में भी होता है।

जैसे: It is easy to solve it.

It is said that virtue is its own reward.

Rule 4: It का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में noun या pronoun पर जोर डालने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: It was he who made this mistake.
Pron.

RULE 5

It का प्रयोग Phrase या clause को introduce करने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: That the record will break today is probable.

Clause

= It is probable that the record will break today.

Differences Between 'This' and 'It'

➤ This का प्रयोग किसी व्यक्ति/वस्तु के नाम/पहचान/परिचय/समीपता आदि का बोध करने के लिए होता है, न कि It का।

जैसे: This is a book.

This is a pen.

➤ It का प्रयोग समय, दूरी, मौसम, आदि का बोध करने के लिए होता है न कि This का।

जैसे: It is 10 a.m.

It is winter.

It is night.

नोट: (1) This के बाद noun का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: This book is mine.
Noun

Pronoun

- It के बाद 'noun' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता क्योंकि noun के स्थान पर pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
It book is mine (✗)
It is my book (✓)
- This का प्रयोग किसी **singular noun** के तरह इंगित करने के लिए किया जाता है जब वह **noun** समीप हो।
जैसे: This boy is very intelligent.
- It का प्रयोग किसी **singular** निर्जीव वस्तु/शिशु के लिए **pronoun** के रूप में होता है।
जैसे: It is a splendid monument.
- (1) This के बाद noun का प्रयोग हो सकता है।
जैसे: This book is mine.

USE OF THE PRONOUNS OF POSSESSIVE CASE

Nominative Case	Possessive Adjective	Possessive Pronoun
I	my	mine
We	our	ours
You	your	yours
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It	its	×
They	their	theirs

RULE 1

'Possessive pronouns' का प्रयोग noun के पहले नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Ours school was closed for four days. (✗)
Noun

Our school was closed for four days. (✓)

नोट: (i) : Possessive adjectives का प्रयोग Noun के पहले होता है।

जैसे: This is my book.

(ii) अगर Noun का उल्लेख हो चुका हो या वह पहले से ज्ञात हो तो उसका उल्लेख फिर से नहीं करना चाहिए तथा Possessive Pronoun का प्रयोग किया जाना चाहिए।

जैसे: This book is mine.

Possessive pronouns	Meaning (Possessive Adjective + Noun)
Mine	My + noun
Ours	Our + noun
Yours	Your + noun
His	His + noun
Hers	Her + noun
Theirs	Their + noun

Pronoun

- (iii) His का प्रयोग **Possessive Adjective** एवं **Possessive Pronoun** दोनों ही रूप में होता है।
 (iv) Its का प्रयोग **Possessive Adjective** के रूप में होता है। इसका प्रयोग **Possessive Pronoun** के रूप में नहीं होता है।

RULE 2

- Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** के **verb** के **subject** के रूप में होता है।
- जैसे: **Yours** is a new car.
 S.V.
- अर्थ: **Your car** is a new car.
- Hers** is a beautiful house.
 S.V.
- अर्थ: **Her house** is a beautiful house.

RULE 3

- Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** के **verb** के **object** के रूप में होता है।
- जैसे: He has lost **my books** as well as yours.
 Verb
- अर्थ: He has lost my books as well as your books.
- Save **your time** and mine too.
 Obj.
- अर्थ: Save your time and my time too.

RULE 4

- Possessive Pronouns** का प्रयोग किसी **sentence** में **preposition** के **object** के रूप में होता है।
- जैसे: (1) I prefer your help to her. (✗)
 Prep. Obj.
- I prefer your help to hers. (✓)
 Prep. Obj.
- (2) Your house is better than my. (✗)
 Prep. Obj.
- Your house is better than mine. (✓)
 Prep. Obj.

RULE 5

- ‘**Separation, leave, excuse, mention, report, pardon, sight, favour**’ के साथ
Possessive case का प्रयोग गलत है।
 उदाहरण देखे-

1. Your separation is very painful to me. (‘**separation from you**’ का प्रयोग करें।)
2. At his sight the robbers fled. (‘**At the sight of him**’ का प्रयोग करें।)

3. I need your favour, please. ('favour of/from you' का प्रयोग करें।)
4. She did make mention of you. (✓)

RULE 6

Possessive Pronoun में 's' के पहले 'apostrophe' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। **your's, her's, it's** इत्यादि का प्रयोग करना गलत होता है।
जैसे: 1. The bear had a ring around its nose. (✗)
 2. The bear had a ring around its nose. (✓)

RULE 7

Gerund के पहले '**possessive adjective**' का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: 1. I was confident of **my** winning the match.
 2. She was not confident of **her** doing well in the examination.

USE OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

जब वाक्य में 'स्वंय', 'खुद ही', 'खुद को', 'अपने आप' जैसे शब्दों का प्रयोग हो तो Reflexive Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: The poor man poisoned himself and his children.

RULE 1

'Acquit' (प्रशंसाजनक व्यवहार करना), 'avail' (लाभ उठाना), 'reconcile' (बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार कर लेना), 'amuse' (मनोरंजन करना), 'resign' (हथियार डाल देना/बेमन से ही पर स्वीकार कर लेना), 'avenge' (बदला लेना), 'exert' (काफी मेहनत करना), 'apply' (ध्यान लगाना), 'adapt' (ढालना), 'adjust', 'pride', 'absent' एवं 'enjoy' के बाद reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग करें।
जैसे: 1. The officers **acquitted themselves** well during the crisis.
 2. She has **reconciled herself** to the demands of her in-laws.
 3. The students **exert themselves** a lot at the time of examination.
 4. You will have to **apply yourself** to this task whole-heartedly.
 5. I **pride myself** on being able to work smoothly under pressure too.
 6. You should **avail yourself** of this opportunity.

नोट: नीचे दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें-

1. They enjoyed the party. (reflexive pronoun की जरूरत नहीं है)
 2. They enjoyed during vacation. ('**themselves**' का प्रयोग **enjoyed**' के बाद करें)
- अगर **enjoy** के बाद **object** का उल्लेख हो तो **reflexive pronoun** न लगायें परन्तु अगर **object** का उल्लेख नहीं हो तो **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

नोट: नीचे दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें-

- He was absent. (✓)
 He absented himself. (✓)
- अगर **absent** का प्रयोग **verb** के रूप में हो तभी **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग करें।

RULE 2

Keep, stop, turn, qualify, bathe, move, rest एवं **hide** के साथ **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
जैसे: You should keep yourself away from bad boys. ('yourself' हटा दें).
 He hid himself in the room. ('himself' हटा दें).

Pronoun

RULE 3

Subject अथवा **object** के रूप में एक **reflexive pronoun** का प्रयोग तब तक नहीं हो सकता जब तक उसके पहले सम्बन्धित **noun/pronoun** का उल्लेख ना हो।

- जैसे:
1. Myself Ramesh from Delhi. ('myself' के स्थान पर '**I am**' का प्रयोग करें)
 2. Yourself and he reached there in time. ('yourself' के स्थान पर '**you**' का प्रयोग करें)
 3. **I myself** did this work(✓)
 4. Rohit will do this work for myself ('myself' के स्थान पर '**me**' का प्रयोग करें)

USE OF DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN

RULE 1

Either का प्रयोग 'दो में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में होता है।

- जैसे: Either of these three friends is naughty. (✗)

Either of these **two** pens is red. (✓)

नोट: लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई एक' के अर्थ में '**any**' या '**one**' का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: One of these three friends is naughty.(✓)

RULE 2

'**Neither**' का प्रयोग 'दो से से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में होता है।

Neither of these **two** girls is active. (✓)

नोट: लेकिन 'दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं में से कोई भी नहीं' के अर्थ में '**none**' का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: Neither of his four sons looked after him. (✗)

None of his **four** sons looked after him. (✓)

USE OF RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

- 'Each other' तथा 'one another' को 'Reciprocal pronoun' कहते हैं। ये पारस्परिक संबंध को व्यक्त करते हैं।

RULE 1

'**Each other**' का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है, जबकि '**one another**' का प्रयोग दो से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

- जैसे:
1. He was so afraid that his knees knocked one another ('one another' को '**each other**' में परिवर्तित करें)
 2. After the farewell, the students of class XII bade each other goodbye. (each other को **one another** में परिवर्तित करें)

USE OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

- वे **Pronouns** जो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को **point out** या **demonstrate** (संकेतित/प्रदर्शित) करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Demonstrative Pronouns** कहलाते हैं। जैसे- **This, that, these, those, such, the same.**
- इनका प्रयोग जब **nouns** के पहले होता है तो ये **Demonstrative Adjectives** कहलाते हैं।

RULE 1

'**This**' का प्रयोग समीप की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि '**These**' का प्रयोग समीप की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है।

Pronoun

जैसे: **This** is a cat.
S. N.

These are cats.
P. N.

RULE 2

‘That’ का प्रयोग दूर की एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है, जबकि ‘those’ का प्रयोग दूर की एक से अधिक व्यक्ति या वस्तु के लिए होता है।

जैसे: **That** is a book.
S. N.

Those are books.
P. N.

- **Singular noun** के repetition को रोकने के लिए ‘that of’ तथा **plural noun** के repetition को रोकने के लिए ‘those of’ का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The climate of Pune is better than **that** (अर्थः climate) **of** Mumbai.
The streets of Delhi are wider than **those** (अर्थः streets) **of** Mumbai.

RULE 5

किसी **sentence** में **Singular Countable Noun** को दोबारा लिखने से बचने के लिए ‘one’ का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **Plural Countable Noun** को दुबारा लिखने से बचने के लिए ‘ones’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि one’s का।

जैसे:

1. **This** is the new version, but that is an old **one**.
2. **These** are new books, but those are old **ones**.

USE OF RELATIVE PRONOUN

- वे **Pronouns** जो जोड़ने का कार्य करते हैं **Relative pronouns** कहलाते हैं जैसे- **who, which, that, what, why** इत्यादि।

I met Veena, **who** was returning from school.

RULE 1

Relative Pronouns (who/which/that) का प्रयोग **subordinate clause** के **subject** के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: The boy who _{Subj.} came here is a player.

Pronoun

RULE 2

Relative Pronouns (whom/which/that) का प्रयोग subordinate clause में verb के object के रूप में होता है।

जैसे: I have a son whom I love very much.
 Obj. Verb

RULE 3

अगर 'and' से जुड़कर दो antecedents का प्रयोग हो, जिनमें से एक मनुष्य तथा दूसरा जानवर या वस्तु हो, तो इसके बाद **Relative Pronoun 'that'** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The man and his dog **that** I saw yesterday have been kidnapped.

RULE 4

Superlative degree के बाद ‘that’ का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Mr. Mishra is the **most** laborious man **that** I have ever seen.

RULE 5

All का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद 'who/that' का प्रयोग होता है, न कि whom/which का।

जैसे: All **who/that** are interested to do this work can start now.

RULE 6

All का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए हो, तो इसके बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होता है, who, whom, which का नहीं।

जैसे: All **that** glitters is not gold.

नोट: All + Uncountable Noun के बाद that का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: All the money **that** I gave her has been spent.

RULE 7

Everything, nothing, the only, any, all, everyone, none, no, nobody, much, little, the same, the few, the little के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: My father has given me **everything that** I needed.

This is **the only pen that** I bought yesterday.

My wife has spent **the little** money **that** I gave her.

RULE 8

Verb के स्पष्ट रहने पर '**the same + Noun**' के बाद '**that**' का प्रयोग होता है।

USE OF INTERROGATIVE PROUNOUN

- वे Pronouns जो प्रश्न पूछने के लिए प्रयुक्त होते हैं, **Interrogative pronouns** कहलाते हैं।
 जैसे: **Who, whom, whose, which** इत्यादि **Interrogative pronouns** हैं।

RULE 1

- A, B तथा C** को ध्यान से देखें-
- (A) **Who** का प्रयोग **subject** का पता करने के लिए होता है।
 जैसे: **Who** is playing ?
 - (B) **Whom** का प्रयोग **object** का पता करने के लिए होता है।
 जैसे: **Whom** has he invited?
 - (C) **Whose** का प्रयोग मालिक का पता करने के लिए होता है।
 जैसे: **Whose** book is this?

RULE 2

Preposition + whom का प्रयोग होता है, लेकिन Preposition + who का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: (A) **By whom** was the Ramayana written?

नोट: लेकिन **Preposition** का प्रयोग वाक्य के अंत में करने/होने पर **who** का प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरूआत में होता है-
 यह प्रचलित है।

जैसे: **Who** was the Ramayana written **by**?

अन्तर देखें:

1. Who are you? (✓)
V sub.
 2. I don't know who are you. (✗)
- I don't know who you are. (✓)
sub. V

RULE 3

जब दो या दो से अधिक में से एक का चुनाव करना हो तो '**which**' का प्रयोग होगा।

- जैसे:
1. Who is your brother in the crowd? (✗)
Which is your brother in the crowd? (✓)
 2. Who of the servants do you want? (✗)
Which of the servants do you want? (✓)
- 'Questions' में 'wh' family के बाद **tense** का **interrogative form** लगाये यानि **sub** के बाद **verb/helping verb**. (वाक्य 1 देखें) लेकिन अगर 'wh' family दो वाक्यों को जोड़ रहा हो यानि relative pronoun हो तो **relative pronoun** के बाद **tense** का **assertive form** का प्रयोग करें। यानि

Pronoun

subject के पहले **helping verb/ verb.**

RULE 4

'Whose' का प्रयोग निर्जीव वस्तु के लिए नहीं होता है।

- जैसे: 1. Whose book is this? (✓)
2. This is the flyover whose inauguration was done by the transport minister. (✗)
This is the flyover **the inauguration of which** was done by the transport minister? (✓)

PRONOUN IN RELATION TO SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

- 'Pronoun' के संबंधित प्रश्न 'subject-verb agreement' अध्याय से भी पूछे जाते हैं।

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

RULE 1

जब दो subjects को ‘as well as’, ‘with’, ‘alongwith’, ‘together with’, ‘and not’, ‘In addition to’, ‘but’, ‘besides’, ‘except’, ‘rather than’, ‘accompanied by’, ‘like’, ‘unlike’, ‘no less than’, ‘nothing but’ से जोड़ा जाये तो Possessive Pronoun 1st subject के अनसार होगा।

- जैसे: (1) Rita **as well as her friends** has done **her** work.



- (2) My friend Reena **along with** her sister is doing **her** job at Delhi.



RULE 2

जब दो Subjects को either-or, neither-nor, not only-but also, none-but' से जोड़ा जाए तो possessive pronoun nearest subject के अनुसार होंगा।

- जैसे: **Neither** the staff members **nor** the manager was taking his task seriously.



RULE 3

जब 'each, every, neither, either, anyone' का प्रयोग subject के रूप में हो तो possessive case third person singular के अनसार होना चाहिए।

- जैसे: **Neither of** the two brothers has brought their luggage. (our के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें)
Each one of us is doing our duty properly. ('Our' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें)

RULE 4

यह **collective noun** जैसे- Jury, army, fleet, crew, का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में होता है।

Pronoun

तथा इससे 'समूह' का बोध हो तो इसके लिए **singular pronoun** तथा **adjective** जैसे **it, its, itself** का प्रयोग जरूरत के अनुसार होता है।

- जैसे: The jury has given their verdict. (✗)
The jury **has** given **its** verdict. (✓)

RULE 5

यदि **collective noun** का प्रयोग **sentence** के **subject** के रूप में हो तथा इससे **separate individuals** (अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या सदस्यों) का बोध हो तो इसे **plural** माना जाता है तथा इसके लिए **plural pronoun** तथा **plural adjective – they, them, their, theirs, themselves** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: The team are divided in its opinion. (✗)
The team are divided in their opinion. (✓)

RULE 6

यदि दो या दो से अधिक **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़कर प्रयुक्त हों तो इसके लिए **plural pronoun** तथा **adjective (they, them, their, theirs, themselves)** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: Ram **and** Shyam do **their** work. (✓)

RULE 7

यदि दो **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा सिर्फ पहले **singular noun** के पूर्व **Article** या **Possessive Adjectives** का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो इससे एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए **singular pronoun** तथा **adjective – he, him, his, himself** का प्रयोग व्यक्ति के लिए तथा **it, its, itself** का प्रयोग वस्तु के लिए होता है, न कि **they, them, their, theirs, themselves** का।

- जैसे: **The** secretary and treasurer is negligent of **their** duty. (✗)
The secretary and treasurer is negligent of **his** duty. (✓)

RULE 8

यदि दो **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक **singular noun** के पहले **article** या **possessive adjective** का प्रयोग हो तो इससे दो विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं का बोध होता है तथा इसके लिए **Plural pronouns** और **Adjective – They, them their, theirs, themselves** का प्रयोग जरूरत के मुताबिक होता है।

- जैसे: **The** secretary and **the** treasurer did not do **his** work. (✗)
The secretary and **the** treasurer did not do **their** work. (✓)

RULE 9

यदि दो या दो से अधिक **singular nouns 'and'** से जुड़े हों तथा प्रत्येक **singular noun** के पहले **each** या **every** का प्रयोग हुआ हो तो वाक्य में **singular pronoun, singular adjective** एवं **singular verb** का प्रयोग होता है न कि **plural pronoun** एवं **plural adjective** का।

Pronoun

जैसे: **Every** soldier and **every** sailor was in their place. (✗)

Every soldier and **every** sailor was in **his** place. (✓)

RULE 10

Many a/an + Singular noun का प्रयोग sentence के **subject** के रूप में हो तो इसके लिए **singular pronoun** व **adjective** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: **Many a** soldier has met his death in the battlefield. (✓)
S. N. S.V. S.P.

DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS

RULE 1

Each of / Either of / Neither of के बाद **plural noun** या **plural pronoun** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Each of the boy has a note book. (✗)

Each of the boys has a note book. (✓)
P. N. S.V.

RULE 2

Each of / either of / neither of के बाद प्रयुक्त **plural noun** के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।

➤ **Each, either, neither, any** के लिए **singular pronoun** एवं **singular verb** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: Each of the boys has their own book. (✗)

Each of the boys has his own book. (✓)
P. N. S.V. S.P.

RULE 3

यदि **each** का प्रयोग **subject** के लिए हो तो **each** का प्रयोग **subject** के बाद अर्थात **auxiliary verb** के पहले होता है।

जैसे: We have each advised him to give up smoking. (✗)

We **each** have advised him to give up smoking. (✓)
Sub. Aux. Verb

नोट: ऐसे वाक्यों में '**verb**' **sub** के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए।

RULE 4

Both का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के लिए होता है।

जैसे: All of the two students are guilty. (✗)

Both of the two students are guilty. (✓)

➤ **Both** का प्रयोग नाकारात्मक वाक्य में नहीं होता है।

Both of them are not going. (✗)

Neither of them is going. (✓)

USE OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

RULE 1

यदि 'One' का प्रयोग sentence के subject के रूप में हो, तो इसके लिए **Nominative case – one** तथा **Objective pronoun - oneself** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे:
1. One should do one's duty oneself.
 2. One should keep one's promise.

नोट: 'Pronoun' से संबंधित सवाल 'Question Tag' अध्याय से भी आते हैं। 'Question Tag' अध्याय देखें।

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Unless two or more members object/ (b) to him joining the club, we shall have to/ (c) accept his application for membership./ (d) No error.
2. (a) I was surprised and pleased (b)/ when I was informed of me (c) winning the contest./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Our dog may look/ (b) fierce but/ (c) that wouldn't hurt a fly./ (d) No error.
4. (a) No one can/ (b) challenge destiny,/ (c) isn't it?/ (d) No error.
5. (a) All the doubts are cleared/ (b) between/ (c) you and I./ (d) No error.
6. (a) The front page story was about a school girl/ (b) that had hurt herself/ (c) while saving a child in an accident./ (d) No error.
7. (a) The last thing that the fond mother/ (b) gave her only son/ (c) was his blessing./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is not/ (b) I who is/ (c) to blame./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I shall avail of/ (b) this opportunity/ (c) to meet you there./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Put you in my position/ (b) and you will realise/ (c) the problems faced in my profession./ (d) No error.
11. (a) Each of them/ (b) has to understand/ (c) their responsibility/ (d) No error.
12. (a) We are proud to announce/ (b) that every one of us have earned/ (c) a good name./ (d) No error.
13. (a) Here is/ (b) the man whom I think/ (c) committed the crime./ (d) No error.
14. (a) He took/ (b) his younger sister/ (c) with himself./ (d) No error.
15. (a) The company is in debt/ (b) and has been unable/ (c) to pay their employees' salaries/ (d) for the past six months./ (e) No error.
16. (a) The company has appointed/ (b) consultants to help them/ (c) increase its revenue and/ (d) improve its financial position./ (e) No error.
17. (a) You cannot change/ (b) people, but you/ (c) can definitely/ (d) change own./ (e) No error.
18. (a) Governments and business houses must reduce/ (b) its own energy use/ (c) and promote conservation/ (d) to their citizens and employees./ (e) No error.
19. (a) Even those which/ (b) have no previous/ (c) work experience have/ (d) applied for this job./ (e) No error.
20. (a) He talked on the phone/ (b) for hours together/ (c) who really irritated/ (d) his

Pronoun

- parents a lot./ (e) No error.
21. (a) Instead of laying off/ (b) the workers, the company/ (c) decided to ask them/ (d) to avail voluntary retirement./ (e) No error.
22. (a) The two sisters shouted/ (b) at one another/ (c) in public./ (d) No error.
23. (a) We must supplement/ (b) our diet with vitamins and minerals/ (c) in order to keep/ (d) oneself fit.
24. (a) Mrs. Pratap, being a good teacher/ (b) she is selected/ (c) for the National Award./ (d) No error
25. (a) The poor man/ (b) poisoned him/ (c) and his own children./ (d) No error.
26. (a) It was in 2006/ (b) that we first flew/ (c) to the United States./ (d) No error.
27. (a) I was driving under the bridge/ (b) as a football/ (c) hit my window./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Many a student/ (b) have passed/ (c) the I.I.T. examination./ (d) No error.
29. (a) It was me who was/ (b) responsible for/ (c) making all the arrangements for the successful completion of his studies./ (d) No error.
30. (a) I wonder/ (b) why are you tinkering with the wire./ (c) You might get a shock./ (d) No error.
31. (a) John, I and Hari/ (b) have finished/ (c) our studies./ (d) No error.
32. (a) He doesn't/ (b) know/ (c) to swim./ (d) No error.
33. (a) All the dresses/ (b) looked good and so I/ (c) bought all of it./ (d) No error.
34. (a) Those people who/ (b) do not work hard/ (c) they do not succeed in life./ (d) No error.
35. (a) He bathed himself/ (b) in/ (c) a river./ (d) No error.
36. (a) She could not/ (b) bear/ (c) his separation./ (d) No error.
37. (a) If you want this job/ (b) you will need/ (c) his favour./ (d) No error.
38. (a) Both of them will not/ (b) refute/ (c) the charges./ (d) No error.
39. (a) She is the kind / (b) of woman whom every body knows/ (c) is benign and magnanimous./ (d) No error.
40. (a) The master did not know/ (b) who of the servants/ (c) broke the expensive dinner set/ (d) No error.
41. (a) The Congress Party stood/ (b) for implementation of the Nuclear Liability Bill/ (c) and was ready to stake their political existence/ (d) No error.
42. (a) He is not one of those/ (b) who will help every Tom, Dick and Harry/ (c) whom he meets/ (d) No error.
43. (a) It is not easy for anyone to command/ (b) respect from both one's friends and critics/ (c) as Mahatma Gandhi did/ (d) No error.
44. (a) He, You and I/ (b) shall arrange everything/ (c) and shall not ask them for help/ (d) No error.
45. (a) Was it me/ (B) who had to face/ (c) the music?/ (d) No error.
46. (a) The audience/ (b) are requested/ (c) to be in its seats and stay away from the track/ (d) No error.
47. (a) The number of vehicles/ (B) plying on the roads of Delhi/ (c) is more than on the roads of Bangalore/ (D) No error.
48. (A) Being a destitute/ (b) I admitted him/ (c) to an orphanage/ (d) No error.

Pronoun

49. (a) One should keep/ (b) his promise/ (c) if one wants respect from both friends and enemies/(d) No error.
50. (a) Last summer I went to Shimla/ (b) and enjoyed very/ (c) much/ (d) No error.
51. (a) If I were him/ (b) I would teach/ (c) him a lesson/ (d) No error.
52. (a) Being a/ (b) rainy day I/ (c) could not go to school/ (d) No error.
53. (a) One of them/(b) forgot to take their passport/ (c) and found himself in a difficult situation/(d) No error.
54. (a) Mr. Sharma, our representative,/ (b) he will attend the meeting/ (c) on our behalf./ (d) No error.
55. (a) Each girl was/ (b) given a packet of sweets/ (c) and she was happy/ (d) No error.
56. (a) Myself and he/ (b) will manage/ (c) everything/ (d) No error.
57. (a) The Ganga is a river/ (b) whose origin/ (c) has always been a matter of speculation/ (d) No error.
58. (a) My friend/ (b) is laborious and intelligent, (c) isn't it?/ (d) No error.
59. (a) It is difficult to say/ (b) who is the better/ (c) of the two players/ (d) No error.
60. (a) It is the best/ (b) which the government can do/ (c) for the downtrodden/ (d) No error.
61. (a) Neither of the two friends/ (b) has got their money back/ (c) from the company/ (d) No error.
62. (a) This is the road/ (b) whose inauguration/ (c) was done by the President/ (d) No error.
63. (a) Many women/ (b) reconcile to the/ (c) demands of their in-laws./ (d) No error.
64. (a) May I know/ (b) to who/ (c) I am speaking?/ (d) No error.
65. (a) The person who/ (b) I met yesterday/ (c) was my classmate./ (d) No error.
66. (a) Owing to me being a new comer/ (b) I was unable/ (c) to get a good house./ (d) No error.
67. (a) A good friend of/ (b) me has been/ (c) in London for twenty years/ (d) No error.
68. (a) It was him/ (b) who came running/ (c) into the classroom./ (d) No error.
69. (a) I and Raju/ (b) left for Delhi/ (c) last summer./ (d) No error.
70. (a) I will certainly/ (b) avail of your offer/ (c) when the occasion arises./ (d) No error.
71. (a) The book/ (b) is well illustrated/ (c) and attractively bound/ (d) making altogether an attractive volume
72. (a) Besides me/ (b) many other/ (c) were present./ (d) No error.
73. (a) My house/ (b) is farther/ (c) than her's./ (d) No error.
74. (a) He is the person,/ (b) whom, everyone thought,/ (c) has stolen the ring./ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (b) 'his joining' का प्रयोग करें। 'Joining' के पहले possessive adjective 'his' का प्रयोग होगा।
2. (b) Winning के पहले possessive adjective 'my' का प्रयोग करें।

Pronoun

3. (c) 'Dog' के लिए Pronoun 'it' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (c) Isn't it?' के स्थान पर 'Can they' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (c) 'Between and' के साथ pronoun के objective form का प्रयोग होगा।
6. (b) 'that' के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें। 'School girl' का प्रयोग subject के रूप में हो रहा है। इसके साथ relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग होगा।
7. (c) 'Mother' के लिए possessive pronoun 'her' का प्रयोग होगा।
8. (b) 'is' के स्थान पर 'am' का प्रयोग करें। Relative pronoun के बाद आने वाला verb relative pronoun के antecedent से match करना चाहिए। 'I' (जो relative pronoun 'who' का antecedent है) के अनुसार verb 'am' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'is' का।
9. (a) 'Avail' के साथ एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। यहाँ 'I' के कारण 'myself' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (a) 'You' के स्थान पर 'yourself' का प्रयोग करें।
11. (c) their के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 61 की व्याख्या देखें)
12. (b) 'everyone' के साथ singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
13. (b) 'the man' subject है। अतः इसके लिए relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग होगा। ध्यान रहे ऐसे वाक्यों में ये अवश्य देखें कि क्रिया किसके द्वारा की जा रही है। यहाँ 'I think' से Confusion पैदा होती है और हम 'whom' का प्रयोग करने की गलती कर बैठते हैं।
14. (c) 'himself' के स्थान पर 'him' का प्रयोग करें।
15. (c) 'Company' singular noun है। इसके लिए singular possessive pronoun 'its' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'their' का।
16. (b) 'them' के स्थान पर 'it' का प्रयोग करें। Company singular noun है। इसके लिए singular pronoun 'it' का प्रयोग होगा।
17. (d) 'Own' के स्थान पर 'yourself' का प्रयोग करें।
18. (b) 'its' के स्थान पर 'their' का प्रयोग करें। 'Governments and business houses' मिल कर plural noun होते हैं। अतः plural pronoun 'their' का प्रयोग होगा।
19. (a) Which के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें।
20. (c) 'यहाँ बात करने की क्रिया' के लिए relative pronoun 'who' का प्रयोग हो रहा है 'who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें।
21. (d) Avail के साथ एक reflexive pronoun और preposition 'of' का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। 'Avail' के बाद 'themselves of' का प्रयोग करें।
22. (b) 'One another' के स्थान पर 'each other' का प्रयोग करें।
23. (d) 'Oneself' के स्थान पर 'ourselves' का प्रयोग करें। Reflexive pronoun 'sub' के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। 'we' के अनुसार 'ourselves' प्रयुक्त होगा। लेकिन Keep के साथ reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। (देखें- Page 172 में Rule 2) अतः 'Ourselves' हटा दें।
24. (b) 'She' हटा दे। एक ही वाक्य में noun (Mrs. Pratap) एवं pronoun (she) का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
25. (b) 'Him' के स्थान पर 'himself' का प्रयोग करें।
26. (b) 'That' के स्थान पर 'when' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि '2006' समय है।
27. (b) 'as' के स्थान पर 'when' का प्रयोग करें।

Pronoun

28. (b) 'Many a' singular है। इसके साथ singular verb 'has' का प्रयोग होगा।
29. (a) 'It was I' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'I' sub है।
30. (b) 'You' के बाद 'are' का प्रयोग करें। वाक्य प्रश्नात्मक नहीं है।
31. (a) 231 के नियम के अनुसार 1st person सभी के बाद आना चाहिए। अतः John, Hari and I सही क्रम होगा।
32. (c) 'know' और 'wonder' के बाद 'wh' family का प्रयोग करना जरूरी होता है। 'to swim' के स्थान पर 'How to swim' का प्रयोग करें।
33. (c) 'All of it' के स्थान पर 'all of them' का प्रयोग करें।
34. (c) 'They' हटा दे। 'Those people' और 'they' का प्रयोग एक ही वाक्य में एक ही subject के लिए करना गलत होगा।
35. (a) 'Bathe' के बाद reflexive pronoun का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। 'Himself' हटा दे।
36. (c) 'His separation' का प्रयोग गलत है। 'Separation from him' का प्रयोग करें।
37. (c) 'his favour' के स्थान पर 'favour from/of him' का प्रयोग करें।
38. (a) 'Both' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग न करें। 'Both of them will not' के स्थान पर 'Neither of them will' का प्रयोग करें।
39. (b) 'Whom' के स्थान पर 'who' का प्रयोग करें।
40. (b) 'who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें। 'of' के पहले सिर्फ 'which' का प्रयोग हो सकता है 'who' और 'whom' का नहीं।
41. (c) 'their' के स्थान पर 'its' का प्रयोग करें। Congress Party (Singular noun) के लिए singular possessive pronoun 'its' का प्रयोग होगा।
42. (c) 'he meets' के स्थान पर 'they meet' का प्रयोग होगा।
43. (b) Critics के पहले one's का प्रयोग करें।
44. (a) नियम 231 के अनुसार 'you, he and I' का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
45. (a) 'Was it I' का प्रयोग करें।
46. (c) 'its' के स्थान पर 'their' का प्रयोग करें। जब Collective noun का प्रयोग प्रत्येक व्यक्ति के संदर्भ में हो तो Plural Pronoun एवं Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।
47. (c) 'than' के बाद 'that of' का प्रयोग करें। 'the number of vehicles' (Delhi में) की तुलना 'number of vehicles' (Bangalore में) से होनी चाहिए। लेकिन 'number of vehicles' repeat करने के बदले 'that of' का प्रयोग होगा।
48. (a) 'Being' के पहले 'he' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'destitute' का sub 'he' न लगाया जाए तो 'I' 'destitute' के 'sub' का भी कार्य करने लगता है जिससे वाक्य का अर्थ गलत हो जाता है।
49. (b) 'his' के स्थान पर one's का प्रयोग करें। 'One' का possessive pronoun one's होता है।
50. (b) Enjoyed के बाद 'myself' का प्रयोग करें। अगर 'enjoy' के बाद 'object' नहीं हो तो एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग होगा।
51. (a) 'Him' के स्थान पर 'he' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'him' कोई object नहीं है जिसपर 'I' (sub) कोई क्रिया 'were' कर रहा हो।
52. (a) Being के पहले 'it' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 48 की व्याख्या देखें)

Pronoun

53. (b) 'their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। 'One' singular pronoun है। अतः 'One of them' के लिए singular possessive pronoun 'his' का प्रयोग होगा।
54. (b) 'He' हटा दें। एक ही वाक्य में जब noun 'Mr Sharma' का प्रयोग हो चुका हो तो उसके लिए pronoun 'he' का प्रयोग न करें।
55. (c) 'She was' के स्थान पर 'they were' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'and' के बाद वाक्य परिवर्तित हो जा रहा है और अब सभी लड़कियों की बात की जा रही है।
56. (a) 'Myself' के स्थान पर 'I' का प्रयोग करें। 'Myself' का प्रयोग subject के रूप में नहीं हो सकता। 231 नियम के अनुसार he and I का प्रयोग होगा।
57. (b) 'Whose origin' के स्थान पर 'the origin of which' का प्रयोग करें। 'Whose' का प्रयोग 'non-living' के लिए नहीं हो सकता।
58. (c) 'Isn't it?' के स्थान पर 'Isn't he?' का प्रयोग करें। 'My friend is' का Question tag 'isn't he?' होगा।
59. (b) 'Who' के स्थान पर 'which' का प्रयोग करें। 'of' के पहले 'which' का प्रयोग होगा। 'of' के पहले who अथवा whom का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
60. (b) best के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होगा। Superlative Degree के बाद 'that' का प्रयोग होता है।
61. (b) 'Their' के स्थान पर 'his' का प्रयोग करें। Neither of/Either of/Each of इत्यादि के बाद आने वाला noun अथवा pronoun तो plural होगा लेकिन उसके बाद आने वाला verb/pronoun इत्यादि singular होगा।

Neither of the two friends has got his money back.
 Plural Noun Singular Verb Singular Pronoun

62. (b) 'Whose inauguration' के स्थान पर 'the inauguration of which' का प्रयोग करें। (वाक्य 57 की व्याख्या देखें)
63. (b) Reconcile के बाद एक reflexive pronoun का होना जरूरी होता है। Reconcile के बाद themselves का प्रयोग करें।
64. (b) 'who' के स्थान पर 'whom' का प्रयोग होगा।
65. (a) 'who' के स्थान पर 'whom' का प्रयोग होगा।
66. (a) 'being' यानि 'V₁ + ing' के पहले possessive case 'my' का प्रयोग होगा।
67. (b) 'me' के स्थान पर 'mine' का प्रयोग करें।
68. (a) 'him' के स्थान पर 'he' का प्रयोग होगा।
69. (a) '231' के नियम के अनुसार 'Raju and I' का प्रयोग होगा।
70. (b) 'avail' के साथ एक 'reflexive pronoun' का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ 'myself' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि subject 'I' है।
71. (c) 'making' के बाद 'it' का प्रयोग होगा।
72. (b) 'many' के साथ plural pronoun 'others' का प्रयोग होगा।
73. (c) 'her's' को 'hers' में परिवर्तित करें।
74. (b) 'whom' को 'who' में परिवर्तित करें।

11

ADJECTIVE

CHAPTER

Adjective (विशेषण): An adjective is a word used to qualify a Noun or a Pronoun.

- **Adjective** किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता बताता है।
Ram is a **good** boy.
He is **intelligent**.
- ऊपर दिए गये वाक्यों में '**good**' एवं '**intelligent**' 'Ram' एवं 'he' की विशेषता बता रहे हैं। अतः वे **Adjective** हैं। **Adjective** का प्रयोग **noun** के पहले या **verb** के बाद होता है।

THE ADJECTIVE: KINDS

Adjective आठ प्रकार के हैं:

1. **Adjective of Quality** (गुणवाचक)
 2. **Proper Adjective** (व्यक्तिवाचक)
 3. **Adjective of Quantity** (परिमाणवाचक)
 4. **Adjective of Number** (संख्यावाचक)
 5. **Demonstrative Adjective** (संकेतवाचक)
 6. **Distributive Adjective** (विभागसूचक)
 7. **Interrogative Adjective** (प्रश्नवाचक)
 8. **Possessive Adjective** (संबंधवाचक)
1. **Adjective of Quality** (गुणवाचक): वह **Adjective** जो **Noun** का गुण, या दोष या रंग-रूप प्रकट करता है, उसे **Adjective of Quality** (गुणवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं। जैसे: an **honest** man. यहाँ '**honest**' गुणवाचक विशेषण है।
- **Adjective of Quality** (गुणवाचक विशेषण) : निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार से वाक्य में प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं:
 - (i) **Attributive use:** जब किसी **Adjective** का प्रयोग **Noun** के पहले होता है, तो **Adjective** के ऐसे प्रयोग को **Attributive use** कहते हैं।
जैसे: Solomon was a **wise** ^{Noun}king.
 - ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य में **king** के पहले **wise** का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो **Attributive** है।
 - (ii) **Predicative use:** जब किसी **Adjective** का प्रयोग **Verb** के बाद होता है, तो **Adjective** के ऐसे प्रयोग को **Predicative use** कहते हैं।
जैसे: The weather ^{Verb}is **pleasant**

Adjective

- ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य में **pleasant** का प्रयोग **Predicative part** में हुआ है।
- 2. Proper Adjective (व्यक्तिवाचक):** Proper Noun से बनने वाले Adjective को Proper Adjective (व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं: जैसे: **Buddhist** Monastery, **British** rule.
यहाँ ‘**Buddhist**’ एवं ‘**British**’ Proper adjective हैं।
- 3. Adjective of Quantity (परिमाणवाचक):** जिस Adjective से वस्तु की मात्रा ज्ञात हो, उसे Adjective of Quantity (परिमाणवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं: जैसे: **Some** milk; **enough** oil; **sufficient** sugar; **no** manners. यहाँ ‘**some**’, ‘**enough**’, ‘**sufficient**’ एवं ‘**no**’ adjective of quantity हैं।
- 4. Adjective of Number (संख्यावाचक):** जिस शब्द से वस्तु की संख्या ज्ञात हो, उसे Adjective of Number (संख्यावाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं।
ये दो प्रकार के होते हैं: (i) Definite (ii) Indefinite
➤ जब वे निश्चित संख्या/व्यक्ति को संबोधित करे तो वे **definite adjective of number** कहलाते हैं।
जैसे: **Five** boys, **fifth** class.
(i) **Indefinite:** जब वे निश्चित संख्या व्यक्त न करें तो वे **Indefinite adjective of number** कहलाते हैं।
जैसे: **Few** girls, **several** boys.
(a) **Cardinal Adjectives** (निश्चित संख्यावाचक विशेषण): निश्चित संख्या जैसे one, two three, four का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Cardinal Adjective कहते हैं।
जैसे: He has **four** pens.
She has **two** books.
(b) **Ordinal Adjectives** (निश्चित क्रमवाचक विशेषण): निश्चित क्रम (order) का बोध कराने वाले Adjectives को Ordinal Adjectives कहते हैं।
जैसे: **First, second, third, fourth....** etc.
The **first** chapter of this book is on verb.
➤ Article ‘**the**’ का प्रयोग ordinal के पहले होता है, cardinal के पहले नहीं।
जैसे: Lesson **one** is on verb.
The **first** lesson is on verb.
- 5. Demonstrative Adjective (संकेतवाचक):** जो Adjective अपने तुरंत बाद प्रयुक्त Noun की ओर संकेत करें, उसे Demonstrative Adjective (संकेतवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं।
जैसे: **This** boy, **that** group, **these** people, **those** countries.
नोट: यदि **this, that, these, those** के तुरंत बाद Noun है, तो ये शब्द Demonstrative Adjectives होंगे और यदि इनके तुरंत बाद Verb है तो ये शब्द Demonstrative Pronouns होंगे;

Adjective

जैसे: **Demonstrative Adjective**

This girl is good.

That pen is new.

These shirts are white.

Demonstrative Pronoun

This is a good girl.

That is a new pen.

These are white shirts.

6. Distributive Adjective (विभागसूचक): जो **Adjective** किसी वर्ग की प्रत्येक वस्तु या व्यक्ति को सम्बोधित करे, उसे **Distributive Adjective** (विभागसूचक विशेषण) कहते हैं।

जैसे: **Each** candidate is honest.

Every boy is present today.

नोट: **Each, every, either, neither** के तुरन्त बाद यदि **Noun** है, तो ये शब्द **Distributive Adjectives** होंगे; और यदि **each, every, either, neither** के तुरन्त बाद कोई अन्य शब्द है, तो ये शब्द **Distributive Pronouns** होंगे:

जैसे, **Distributive Adjective**

Each boy took the test.

Distributive Pronoun

Each of the boys took the test.

7. Interrogative Adjective (प्रश्नवाचक): जो **Adjective** प्रश्न पूछने का कार्य करे, उसे **Interrogative Adjective** (प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं,

जैसे: **Which** room is hers?

Whose book is this?

नोट: **What, which, whose** के तुरन्त बाद यदि **Noun** है, तो ये शब्द **Interrogative Adjectives** होंगे और यदि उनके तुरन्त बाद **Verb** है, तो ये शब्द **Interrogative Pronouns** होंगे;

जैसे: **Interrogative Adjective**

Interrogative Pronoun

What colour is your bag? **What** did you do?

8. Possessive Adjectives (संबंधवाचक विशेषण) : जो **Adjectives** किसी व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु से संबंध बताते हैं, उसे **Possessive Adjectives** (संबंधवाचक विशेषण) कहते हैं,

जैसे: **My** book, **our** class.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

➤ **Adjective** का प्रयोग तीन **degrees** में किया जाता है- **Positive, Comparative** एवं **Superlative degree**.

➤ जब एक (व्यक्ति, वस्तु, समूह इत्यादि) की विशेषता का वर्णन करना हो तो **Positive degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He is a **good** boy.

➤ जब एक की तुलना दूसरे से की जाए तो **Comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: He is **better** than you.

➤ जब सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He is the **best** student of my class.

Adjective

RULE 1

सामान्यतः किसी **adjective** का **comparative degree** बनाने के लिए **positive degree** में ‘er’ लगाया जाता है और **superlative degree** बनाने के लिए **positive degree** में ‘est’ लगाया जाता है।

I.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Bold	Bolder	boldest
	Deep	Deeper	Deepest
	High	Higher	Highest
	Strong	Stronger	Strongest
	Thick	Thicker	Thickest
	Weak	Weaker	Weakest

RULE 2

यदि **positive degree** के अंत में ‘e’ हो तो **comparative** में केवल ‘r’ और **superlative** में ‘st’ लगाते हैं।

II.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Able	Abler	Ablest
	Brave	Braver	Bravest
	Fine	Finer	Finest
	Noble	Nobler	Noblest
	True	Truer	Truest
	Wise	Wiser	Wisest

RULE 3

जब **positive degree consonant** में खत्म हो और उसके पहले कोई **short vowel** आये तो **consonant** को **double** करने के बाद क्रमशः ‘er’ एवं ‘est’ लगाकर **comparative** एवं **superlative degree** बनाया जाता है।

III.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Big	Bigger	Biggest
	Fit	Fitter	Fittest
	Hot	Hotter	Hottest
	Sad	Sadder	Saddest
	Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
	Wet	Wetter	Wettest

RULE 4

जब **positive degree** का अंत ‘y’ में हो और उसके पहले एक **consonant** हो तो ‘y’ को ‘i’ में परिवर्तित करें और **Comparative** एवं **superlative** बनाने के लिए क्रमशः ‘er’ एवं ‘est’ लगायें।

IV.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Dry	Drier	Driest
	Happy	Happier	Happiest
	Heavy	Heavier	Heaviest

Adjective

Pretty	Prettier	Prettiest
Merry	Merrier	Merriest
नोट: अगर 'y' के पहले vowel हो तो सिर्फ 'er' एवं 'est' लगायें।		
Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Grey	Greyer	Greyest

RULE 5

दो शब्द खण्ड (syllables) के कई **adjectives** एवं दो से अधिक शब्द खण्ड के सभी **adjectives** के **comparative** एवं **superlative** क्रमशः '**more**' एवं '**most**' लगा कर बनाये जाते हैं।

V.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	Beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
	Courageous	more courageous	most courageous
	Intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent
	Pleasant	more pleasant	most pleasant

नोट: कुछ **adjectives** किसी भी नियम का पालन नहीं करते। वे पूरी तरह से परिवर्तित हो जाते हैं।

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good/well	better	best
Bad/ill	worse	worst
Little	less/lesser	least
Fore	former	foremost/first
Late	later/latter	last/latest
Far	farther	farthest
Near	nearer	nearest/next
Old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
Much/many	more	most

CORRECT USE OF SOME ADJECTIVES

1. Use of 'some' and 'any'

- **Some/ any** का अर्थ कोई, कुछ और थोड़ा होता है, पर दोनों के प्रयोग में फर्क है।
- (a) **Some** का प्रयोग **Affirmative Sentence** में **Uncountable Noun (U.N.)** के पहले मात्रा (**quantity**) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, तथा **Plural Countable Noun (P.C.N.)** के पहले संख्या (**number**) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है।

जैसे: I have **some** water.
 U.N.

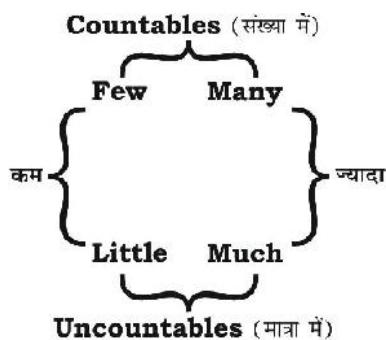
I have **some** friends.
 P.C.N.

- **Some** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः +ve वाक्यों में होता है।
 - **Any** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः -ve वाक्यों और **Questions** में होता है।
- जैसे:
1. I have **some** problems.
 2. I do not have **any** problem.

Adjective —————

3. Do you have **any** problem?
- जब हम जवाब की उम्मीद 'हाँ' में करते हैं तो भी **Questions** में 'some' का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।
 जैसे: Do you have **some** food?
 नोट: 'no **any**' का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं हो सकता।

2. USE OF FEW, LITTLE, MUCH AND MANY.



- | | |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Few | a few (संख्या में कम है लेकिन है) |
| | few (संख्या में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है) |
| | the few (संख्या में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं।) |
-
- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Little | a little (मात्रा में कम है लेकिन है) |
| | little (मात्रा में इतना कम की ना के बराबर है) |
| | the little (मात्रा में कम लेकिन निर्धारित व जिसके तरफ हम इंगित कर सकते हैं।) |

FILL IN THE BLANKS USING FEW/LITTLE, A FEW/A LITTLE OR THE FEW/ THE LITTLE.

- _____ Knowledge is a dangerous thing.
- The doctor advised him to rest for _____ days.
- _____ water I kept for you has been finished by him.
- The show was cancelled as _____ people turned up to see it.
- I cannot prepare tea for you. There is _____ milk in the refrigerator.

Answer:-

- A little (यहाँ वाक्य का अर्थ ये है कि अगर जानकारी अधूरी हो तो खतरा बढ़ जाता है यानि Knowledge है लेकिन थोड़ा है)
- a few. (days countable noun है अतः few का इस्तेमाल होगा न कि little का। Doctor ने कुछ एक दिन आराम करने की सलाह दी है अतः a few का प्रयोग होगा)
- The little. ('water' uncountable है लेकिन जो थोड़ा सा पानी मैंने आप के लिए रखा था वह definite है अतः 'the little' का प्रयोग होगा)
- Few (जब न के बराबर लोग आयेंगे तभी show cancel होगा अतः few का प्रयोग होगा)
- Little. (जब milk न के बराबर हो तभी चाय नहीं बन सकती)

Adjective

- 'Quantity' एवं 'Number' शब्द के साथ 'Little' एवं 'Few' शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है। इनके साथ 'small' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: Little quantity of food was wasted. (✗)
Small quantity of food was wasted. (✓)

ADJECTIVE as, as, so, than, very, how, such

RULE 1

- 'as as' and 'so as' के बीच **adjective/adverb** के **positive degree** का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: He is as good as his brother
Adj.
 - He ran as fast as he could.
Adv.

RULE 2

- Comparative degree** में '**adjective + er.... than**' का प्रयोग होता है। **Than** के पहले हमेशा **comparative degree** का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: He is better **than** his brother.
 - Comparative degree के बाद '**than**' का प्रयोग हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी।
 - Today I am feeling **better**.

RULE 3

- Superlative degree** के पहले article '**the**' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: He is **the best** player of the team.

RULE 4

- अगर सिर्फ दो व्यक्ति/वस्तु इत्यादि के बीच में से एक का चुनाव किया जाये हो तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग नहीं **comparative degree** का प्रयोग करें जिसके पहले **article 'the'** और जिसके बाद **preposition 'of'** लगाये।
- जैसे: She is the best of the two sisters. (✗)
She is the **better** of the two sisters.(✓)
 - अगर सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाये तो '**superlative degree**' का प्रयोग होगा जिसके पहले भी **article 'the'** का प्रयोग होगा और जिसके बाद **preposition 'of'** का।
 - जैसे: He is **the best of** all the players.

RULE 5

- जब एक **Noun** या **Pronoun** की दो विशेषताओं के बीच तुलना हो तो Comparative degree नहीं **more+ positive degree** का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: He is wiser than intelligent (✗)
He is **more wise** than intelligent. (✓)

Adjective

RULE 6

- तुलना करते समय दूसरा पहले को या अन्य सभी को **exclude** करने के लिए 'any other' का प्रयोग करता है।
- जैसे: Gold is more precious than any metal. (✗)
 Gold is more precious than **any other** metal. (✓)
 नीचे दिये गये वाक्य देखें-
 Diamond is more precious than any metal. (✓)
 ऊपर दिये गये वाक्य बिलकुल सही है क्योंकि Diamond metal नहीं है।

RULE 7

- 'ior' में खत्म होने वाले **adjectives** के बाद 'than' नहीं 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: **superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior, anterior, posterior.**
 He is senior than me. (replace 'than' by 'to')

RULE 8

- adjectives - interior, exterior, ulterior, major, minor, empty, excellent, circular, extreme, chief, entire, complete, perfect, final, last, unique, universal, round, square, triangular, eternal, everlasting ideal, absolute, impossible** एवं **supreme** का प्रयोग **comparative** या **superlative degree** में नहीं होता।
- जैसे:
1. This is more inferior to that. (✗)
 2. This is inferior to that. (✓)
 3. Good deeds are more everlasting (more हटा दे)

RULE 9

कुछ **adjectives** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **positive** एवं **superlative degree** में होता **Comparative** में नहीं।

Positive	Superlative
top	topmost
northern	northernmost
southern	southernmost
eastern	easternmost
western	westernmost

RULE 10

- Adjective "preferable"** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **Comparative degree** में होता है।
- इसके साथ 'to' प्रयुक्त होता है न कि 'than' और 'more' का प्रयोग इसके साथ नहीं हो सकता। **Prefer(v)** के साथ भी 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: This is more preferable than that. (✗)
 This is preferable **to** that. (✓)
- 'prefer' के साथ 'to' के स्थान पर '**rather than**' का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।
- जैसे: I prefer tea to coffee.
 or
 I prefer tea rather than coffee. (नोट: 'prefer' के साथ 'to' के स्थान पर '**rather than**' भी स्वीकार्य है।)

RULE 11

अगर एक ही noun या pronoun के लिए दो adjectives का प्रयोग हो और दोनों को एक Conjunction से जोड़ा जाए तो दोनों adjectives एक ही degree में होने चाहिए।

- जैसे: Gandhiji was the noblest and wiser of all the leaders . (x)
Gandhiji was the **noblest** and **wisest** of all the leaders. (✓)

RULE 12

कुछ adjectives के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करने पर adjective plural common noun बन जाता है। इनके बाद Plural verb का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: **rich, poor, needy, aged, blind, dead, meek, wicked**, etc.
The rich (rich people) usually exploit **the poor** (poor people).

RULE 13

सामान्यतः verbs को adverbs modify करते हैं।

- जैसे: He works honestly.
V adv.

➤ Adjective में 'ly' लगा कर Adverb बनाया जाता है। (कुछ अपवादों को छोड़ कर)

जैसे: **Adjective Adverb**

Polity	Politely
Bad	Badly
Sincere	Sincerely

➤ लेकिन Verbs of sensation(seem, look, appear, feel , taste, sound और smell) के बाद adverb नहीं adjective का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: He feels badly. (x)
He feels **bad**. (✓)
The soup smells deliciously. (x)
The soup smells **delicious**. (✓)

➤ Verbs of sensation के अलावा be, become, turn, get, grow, keep, make एवं prove को भी adverbs नहीं बल्कि adjective modify करते हैं।

- जैसे: When he heard the news, he became sad.
adj

RULE 14

कई noun hyphenated या Compound adjectives के भाग होते हैं। ये कभी भी plural में नहीं हो सकते।

- जैसे: I delivered a two-hours lecture. (x)
I delivered a **two-hour** lecture. (✓)
He gave me two hundred-rupees notes. (x)
He gave me two **hundred-rupee** notes. (✓)

RULE 15

अगर कोई Noun Adjective का कार्य करें तो वह Plural form में नहीं हो सकता।

Adjective —————

जैसे: Lasers are indispensable tools for delicate eyes surgery. (eyes को 'eye' में परिवर्तित करें)

RULE 16

कुछ **adjectives** अर्थ में **confusing** होते हैं। अतः इनका प्रयोग सावधानीपूर्वक करना चाहिए।

(1) Farther एवं Further

Farther का अर्थ है 'दूरी में और अधिक'।

जैसे: She lives at the **farther** end of the lane.

Further का अर्थ है 'और'।

जैसे: I did not receive any **further** order.

(2) Last एवं Latest

Last का अर्थ है 'आखिरी'।

जैसे: The **last** ruler of Mughal Empire was Bahadur Shah Jafar.

Latest का अर्थ है 'नवीनतम्'।

जैसे: What is the **latest** score?

(3) Elder एवं Older

Elder/Eldest का अर्थ है 'खुन के रिश्ते में बड़ा'।

जैसे: He is my **elder** brother

Older/Oldest का अर्थ है 'उम्र में बड़ा'।

जैसे: He is **older** than his friend.

(4) Nearest एवं Next

Nearest का अर्थ है 'सबसे नजदीकी'

जैसे: **Which** is the **nearest** hospital?

Next का अर्थ है 'अगला'।

जैसे: The bank is in the **next** building.

(5) Later एवं Latter

Later का अर्थ है 'बाद में'।

जैसे: I will call you **later**.

Latter का अर्थ है 'बाद वाला'।

जैसे: The **latter** part of the movie was boring.

Latter का **opposite** 'former' होता है।

RULE 17

'All' एवं 'Both' के बाद ही possessive case का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

जैसे: My all friends have got selected. (✗)

All my friends have got selected. (✓)

RULE 18

अगर एक वाक्य में **adjective** के **positive** एवं **Comparative degree** दोनों का प्रयोग हो तो 'as... as' एवं 'than' दोनों का प्रयोग होगा। 'As as' एवं 'so as' के साथ **positive degree** का प्रयोग होता है एवं 'than' के साथ '**Comparative degree**' का।

जैसे: He is **as** intelligent **as** if not more **than** his brother.

RULE 19

अगर हम '**times**' शब्द को प्रयोग कर ले तो फिर Comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं कर सकते हैं।

जैसे: My house is four times bigger than yours. (✗)

My house is four times as big as yours. (✓)

RULE 20

अगर **adjective of size, colour, age** इत्यादि का प्रयोग एक साथ हो तो वे निम्नलिखित क्रम में होंगे।

Size → **shape** → **age** → **colour** → **emotion** → **nationality** → **material** → noun

जैसे: 1. The police arrested a **twenty two year - old black American Negro**.

2. The thief flashed a **big sharp knife** and asked the cashier to fill the

black leather bag with money.

RULE 21

दो **Comparative** एवं दो **Superlative degree** का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।

जैसे: 1. He is the most cleverest of all the officers. (✗)

He is the cleverest of all the officers. (✓)

2. This is more better than that. (✗)

This is better than that. (✓)

RULE 22

जब दो **Adjectives** के साथ अलग-अलग **prepositions** की आवश्यकता हो, तो उपयुक्त prepositions का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: He is senior and more experienced than you. (✗)

He is senior **to** and more experienced **than** you. (✓)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) Anurag is eclipsed by his wife, / (b) who is cleverer and / (c) amusing than he is. / (d) No error
2. (a) The two first to arrive / (b) were the lucky recipients / (c) of a surprise gift. / (d) No error

Adjective —————

3. (a) Of the billions of stars in the galaxy, (b) how much are / (c) suitable for life? / (d) No error
4. (a) A few word of / (b) gratitude are enough / (c) to express your / (d) feelings sincerely. / (e) No error.
5. (a) He feels his troubles / (b) as much or / (c) even more than they. / (d) No error
6. (a) I like reading / (b) more than / (c) to play games. / (d) No error
7. (a) There is not many traffic / (b) along the street / (c) where I live. / (d) No error
8. (a) The police arrived and discovered / (b) a large number of hoarded sugar/ (c) in his shop. / (d) No error
9. (a) As a dramatist / (b) Shaw is superior than / (c) any other twentieth century writer. / (d) No error
10. (a) Of the two great cities/ (b) the former is / (c) biggest. / (d) No error
11. (a) A non banking financial company is a / (b) financial institution similarly to a bank / (c) but it cannot issue cheque books to customers. / (d) No error
12. (a) Everyone agrees that / (b) the Ganga is the holiest / (c) of all other rivers of India. / (d) No error.
13. (a) Krishna ran to the / (b) nearing grocery store to / (c) buy biscuits as his parents were expecting guests. / (d) No error
14. (a) While giving a loan/ (b) you must check / (c) if the borrower has sufficiently collateral to repay it. / (d) No error
15. (a) Although his speech / (b) was not very clearly everyone understood / (c) the underlying meaning. / (d) No error
16. (a) He is the most / (b) intelligent and also / (c) the very talented student of the college. / (d) No error
17. (a) Having been found / (b) guilty of the theft / (c) Sunny was sentenced to five year's imprisonment. / (d) No error
18. (a) The Railways have made / (b) crossing the tracks / (c) a punished offence. / (d) No error
19. (a) Alms / (b) are given / (c) to the poors. / (d) No error
20. (a) Lasers are / (b) indispensable tools / (c) for the delicate eyes surgery. / (d) No error
21. (a) The number of applications has risen / (b) this year by / (c) as many as 50%. / (d) No error
22. (a) Two lakh of people / (b) attended the meeting / (c) held in parade ground. / (d) No error
23. (a) These sort of men / (b) attain success by hook or by crook / (c) so they do not deserve any applause. (d) No error
24. (a) Can you tell me how / (b) many eggs and / (c) milk he has brought / (d) No error
25. (a) Whole the chapter / (b) is full of printing errors which are the outcome / (c) of the proof reader's carelessness. (d) No error

Adjective

26. (a) Her black long / (b) hair adds / (c) glamour to her looks. (d) No error
27. (a) I trembled when I saw / (b) a sharp long knife / (c) in his hand. / (d) No error
28. (a) I saw / (b) an anxious pale girl / (c) who was fidgetting near the ICU / (d) No error
29. (a) Mumbai is / (b) further from / (c) Delhi than / (d) Patna. (e) No error
30. (a) This book is / (b) undoubtedly preferable than / (c) that and its printing / (d) is also comparatively good. (e) No error
31. (a) You can trust / (b) this channel/ (c) for the last news of this hour. (d) No error
32. (a) Everybody knows / (b) that Radha is the most unique / (c) singer of this college / (d) No error
33. (a) The faster he completes / (b) the work given to / (c) him, the largest will be his profit. / (d) No error.
34. (a) He does not have / (b) some money to buy a new machine so he is / (c) anxious / (d) No error
35. (a) This young lady is / (b) more beautiful but not so cultured / (c) as her sister. (d) No error
36. (a) Now-a-days, / (b) the weather / (c) is getting cold and colder. / (d) No error
37. (a) This photograph / (b) was comparatively better / (c) than that which he had kept in his purse. / (d) No error
38. (a) Ram is as good, / (b) if not better than / (c) they./ (d) No error
39. (a) Gopal felt happily / (b) to learn that I / (c) had got a job in the Bank./ (d) No error
40. (a) He is comparatively / (b) weaker / (c) in maths / (d) no error.
41. (a) Many a / (b) boys are / (c) absent today / (d) no error.
42. (a) Honest are / (b) rewarded / (c) sooner or later / (d) no error.
43. (a) My all / (b) friends will come / (c) tomorrow to meet me / (d) no error.
44. (a) He is wiser / (b) enough to / (c) understand your trick / (d) no error.
45. (a) Ramayana is more / (b) sacred than / (c) all the mythologies of Hindus / (d) no error.
46. (a) He offered / (b) me a / (c) steamed cup of tea / (d) no error.
47. (a) I will buy / (b) the book when / (c) the revise edition will come / (d) no error.
48. (a) He ran so fastly / (b) that he reached / (c) the destination in just two minutes. / (d) No error.
49. (a) I am sure that / (b) all my monthly expenses / (c) would exceed the income if I do not economise. / (d) No error.
50. (a) I am more lonelier/ (b) here than/ (c) I was in the USA./ (d) No error.
51. (a) To me it appears that/ (b) Anthropology is the more interesting/ (c) of all the subjects./ (d) No error.
52. (a) The circulation of The Statesman/ (b) is greater than/ (c) that of any newspaper/ (d) No error.

Adjective

53. (a) In the garden / (b) were the more beautiful flowers / (c) and silver bells. / (d) No error.
 54. (a) In his old age, / (b) a person is likely to get / (c) more weak day by day. / (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (c) amusing के पहले more लगायें। Cleverer के साथ more amusing प्रयुक्त होगा क्योंकि Conjunction से जुड़ने वाले दोनों adjectives एक ही degree में होने चाहिए।
2. (a) two first को first two में परिवर्तित करें।
3. (b) much को many में परिवर्तित करें। Stars countable noun है।
4. (a) Word की जगह words का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि a few का प्रयोग plural countable noun के साथ होगा।
5. (b) correct use ‘as much as’ है
6. (c) Reading के तरह playing भी ‘Gerund’ form में होगा।
7. (a) Traffic uncountable है। अतः many नहीं much का प्रयोग करें।
8. (a) Sugar uncountable है। अतः ‘large number’ के बदले ‘large quantity’ प्रयुक्त करें।
9. (b) Superior के साथ ‘to’ प्रयुक्त होता है न कि ‘than’.
10. (c) biggest को ‘the bigger’ में परिवर्तित करें। जब दो के बीच तुलना हो तो Comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
11. (b) similarly adverb है जो verb की विशेषता बताता है। यहाँ similar प्रयुक्त होगा।
12. (c) all other rivers की जगह all the rivers का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि superlative degree के sentence में other का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
13. (b) ‘Nearing’ verb near का ‘ing’ form है। ‘Nearby’ adjective है। ‘Nearing’ के बदले ‘nearby’ शब्द प्रयुक्त करें।
14. (c) Collateral की विशेषता sufficient (adjective) बताता है न कि sufficiently (adverb).
15. (b) Clearly adverb है जो किसी verb की विशेषता बताता है। Speech (noun) की विशेषता clear (adjective) बताता है। अतः Clear प्रयुक्त होगा।
16. (c) Very को most में परिवर्तित करें। अगर Conjunction से दो adj को जोड़ा जाए तो दोनों adjectives एक ही degree में होने चाहिए। अतः ‘the most intelligent’ के साथ the most talented प्रयुक्त होगा।
17. (c) five-year imprisonment प्रयुक्त होगा। Hyphenated adjective हमेशा singular form में होता है।
18. (c) Punish का adjective form punishable है।
19. (c) the poor का अर्थ है गरीब लोग। poors गलत शब्द है।
20. (c) eyes surgery में eyes noun है जो surgery से पहले प्रयुक्त हो कर adjective का कार्य कर रहा है। जब noun adjective का कार्य करें तो उसे singular form में होना चाहिए। अतः eyes नहीं eye प्रयुक्त होगा।

Adjective

21. (c) 50% के साथ much प्रयुक्त होगा।
 22. (a) Definite numeral adjective के साथ 'of' प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है। जैसे:- Two lakh people.
 Indefinite numeral adjective के साथ 'of' प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे:- Lakhs of people.
 23. (a) These के साथ plural noun का प्रयोग होता है। अतः sort को sorts में परिवर्तित करें।
 24. (c) 'Eggs' countable है अतः many का इस्तेमाल सही है पर 'milk' uncountable है। अतः 'milk' के साथ 'how much' प्रयुक्त होगा।
 25. (a) the का प्रयोग whole के पहले होता है न कि whole के बाद। 'The whole chapter' का प्रयोग करें।
 26. (a) 'black long' को 'long black' में परिवर्तित करें। जब भी किसी noun के लिए adj of size और adjective of colour का प्रयोग होता है तो पहले adjective of size आता है और उसके बाद adjective of colour.

Long black hair.
 Adj. of size Adj. of colour

27. (b) 'Sharp long knife' को 'long sharp knife' में परिवर्तित करें।
 28. (b) 'An anxious pale girl' के बदले 'a pale anxious girl' का प्रयोग करें। Adjective of human emotion/personality का प्रयोग adjective of colour के बाद होता है।

a pale anxious girl.
 Adj. of colour Adj. of emotion

29. (b) यहाँ दूरी की बात की जा रही है। अतः 'further' नहीं 'farther' का प्रयोग करें।
 30. (b) Preferable के साथ 'than' नहीं 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
 31. (c) Last के बदले Latest का प्रयोग करें। हम नवीनतम (Latest) news सुनना चाहते हैं।
 32. (b) Unique का प्रयोग superlative अथवा comparative degree में नहीं होता। Rule 8 देखें। unique के पहले a का प्रयोग करें।
 33. (c) largest की जगह larger का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि समानान्तर वृद्धि (increase) या ह्रास (decrease) को express करने के लिए double comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
 34. (b) Some के जगह पर any का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि negative वाक्य में सामान्यतः 'any' का प्रयोग होता है।
 35. (b) more beautiful के बाद than का प्रयोग करें।
 36. (c) Cold को colder में परिवर्तित करें। जब किसी gradual development को दर्शाया जाता है तो comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है।
 37. (b) Comparatively के साथ comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता। better के बदले good का प्रयोग करें।
 38. (a) 'as good' के बाद as का प्रयोग करें।
 39. (a) happily (adv) के बदले happy (adj) का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि verbs of sensation (look, sum, appear, feel, smell, taste और sound) के बाद adj का प्रयोग होता है न कि adverb का।
 40. (b) Comparatively के साथ comparative degree का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। weaker के बदले weak का प्रयोग करें।
 41. (b) Many a के साथ singular noun एवं singular verb का प्रयोग करें। 'Boys are' को 'boy is' में

Adjective ——————

परिवर्तित करें।

42. (a) Honest adjective है। इसका प्रयोग noun की तरह तभी हो सकता है जब ये article 'the' के साथ प्रयुक्त हो। यानि 'the honest' जिसका अर्थ होता है इमानदार लोग।
43. (a) 'All my' का प्रयोग होना चाहिए न कि 'My all' का।
44. (a) Wiser को wise में परिवर्तित करें। enough के पहले positive degree का प्रयोग होता है।
45. (c) All other mythologies का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि Ramayana को exclude करना है।
46. (c) Steamed cup of tea का अर्थ होगा भांप लगा हुआ cup of tea. 'Steamed momos' का प्रयोग सही है परन्तु यहाँ गर्म (भांप निकलता हुआ) cup of tea का उल्लेख है। अतः steaming cup of tea का प्रयोग करें।
47. (c) revise को revised में परिवर्तित करें। यहाँ edition already revise हो चुका है अतः revised edition का प्रयोग सही होगा।
48. (a) fastly की जगह fast का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि अंग्रेजी भाषा में fastly का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। fast का प्रयोग Adjective or Adverb के रूप में होता है।
49. (b) all का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि Monthly expenses में सभी प्रकार के खर्च शामिल हैं।
50. (a) 'more' हटा दे। दो comparative degrees का प्रयोग एक साथ नहीं होता है।
51. (b) Superlative degree 'most' का प्रयोग होगा।
52. (c) 'any newspaper' के स्थान पर 'any other newspaper' लगायें। 'Any newspaper' में 'The Statesman' भी आ जाता है।
53. (b) 'more' को 'most' में परिवर्तित करें।
54. (c) 'more weak' के स्थान पर 'weaker' का प्रयोग करें।

<https://digitallylearn.com/>

<https://digitallylearn.com/>

12

CONJUNCTION

CHAPTER

- **Conjunction** वह शब्द या शब्द समूह है जो दो या दो से अधिक शब्दों (**Words**), शब्द समूहों (**Phrases**), वाक्यांशों (**Clauses**) तथा वाक्यों (**Sentences**) को जोड़ता है;
- जैसे: 1. Ram and Shyam will come.
 ↑ Words ↑
 2. People's ignorance and population explosion are two inter-related problems.
 ↑ Phrases ↑
 3. She said that she would come.
 ↑ Clauses ↑
- यहाँ वाक्य (1) में ‘and’ दो शब्दों ‘Ram’ तथा ‘Shyam’ को जोड़ता है, वाक्य (2) में ‘and’ दो शब्द समूहों ‘people's ignorance’ तथा ‘population explosion’ को जोड़ता है, तथा वाक्य (3) में ‘that’ दो वाक्यों ‘she said’ तथा ‘she would come’ को जोड़ता है। अतः ‘and’ तथा ‘that’ Conjunctions हैं।

Some Common Conjunctions	Meaning in Hindi	Some Common Conjunctions	Meaning in Hindi
And	और	As well as	साथ ही साथ
Otherwise, or else	नहीं तो	So, hence	इसीलिए
Therefore,		Either.....or	या तो या
Consequently	अतः इसलिए	Both.... and	दोनों और
Neither... nor	न तो न	Too....to	इतना कि
So....that	इतना कि	As.....as	इतना जितना
So.....as	इतना जितना	As.....so	जैसा वैसा
Whether.....or	या या	But	पर, परन्तु , लेकिन,
As soon as	जैसे ही वैसे ही	No sooner.....than	जैसे ही वैसे ही
Or.....	या, अथवा, नहीं तो	Scarcely.....when	मुश्किल से कि
Not only.....but also	न ही सिर्फ बल्कि	Hardly.....when	मुश्किल से कि
 		Where	जहाँ
Wherever	जहाँ कहीं भी	When	जब
Whenever	जब कभी भी	Until/Unless....,	तब तक जब तक
While	के दौरान	Because	क्योंकि
As.... ,	क्योंकि इसलिए	Lest.....should	ऐसा न हो कि, वर्ना,

Conjunction

Such....that	इतना कि	If	यदि
Provided	बशर्ते	As if	मानो कि
Though	यद्यपि फिर भी/तथापि	Although	यद्यपि फिर भी/तथापि
Whereas	जबकि	Nevertheless	के बावजूद (in spite of)
As though	मानो	As far as	जहाँ तक

TYPES OF CONJUNCTION

Conjunctions निम्नलिखित दो प्रकार के होते हैं:

1. **Co-ordinating Conjunction.**
2. **Subordinating Conjunction.**

1. **CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTION:-** नीचे दिए गये वाक्यों को पढ़ें:

1. He read the notes **and** returned it to me.
2. He came to meet me, **but** I was not at home.
3. She worked hard **yet** she failed.

➤ इन वाक्यों में '**and**', '**but**', '**yet**' नामक Conjunctions द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को जोड़ा गया है, जो स्वयं अपना अलग-अलग अर्थ प्रकट कर सकते हैं। अब यदि इन वाक्यों को अलग-अलग clauses में बांटा जाए तो एक **Principal Clause** बनेगी और दूसरी **Co-ordinate Clause** बनेगी।

➤ जिस **Conjunction** से कोई **Co-ordinate Clause** बनी हो, उस Conjunction को **Co-ordinating Conjunction** कहते हैं।

Co-ordinating Conjunctions निम्नलिखित चार प्रकार के होते हैं:

(i) **Cumulative conjunctions** (संयोजक)

'**And**', '**also**', '**both and**', '**as well as**', '**now**', '**too**', '**no less than**'.

➤ इन Conjunctions के द्वारा एक sentence को दूसरे sentence से या दो noun, दो pronoun को या दो adjectives इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है।

जैसे: 1. He is rich **and** happy.

2. Ram **as well as** Shyam is coming.

Noun Noun

(ii) **Alternative Conjunctions** (विकल्पक)

'**Either or**', '**neither nor**', '**else**', '**or**', '**otherwise**'.

➤ इन Conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे sentences, nouns, pronouns इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है, जिनसे दो विकल्पों में से एक को चुनने का बोध होता है।

जैसे: 1. **Either** sit quietly **or** go away.

2. You must run fast **else** you will miss the train.

(iii) **Adversative Conjunctions** (विरोध दर्शक)

➤ '**But**', '**yet**', '**still**', '**only**', '**however**', '**nevertheless**', '**while**', '**whereas**'. जैसे Conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को अथवा Nouns, Pronouns इत्यादि को जोड़ा जाता है जो एक-दूसरे के विपरीत हों।

जैसे: 1. He is rich **but** he is not happy.

Conjunction

2. He is industrious **still** he does not get good marks.

(iv) Illative Conjunctions (परिणामसूचक)

- इन conjunctions के द्वारा दो ऐसे वाक्यों को जोड़ा जाता है, जिनमें से एक वाक्य दूसरे वाक्य का परिणाम हो।
जैसे: I was ill **so** I could not come.

2. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTION:- नीचे दिए गये वाक्यों को पढ़ें:

1. **If** you work hard, you will succeed.
 2. **Since** I was busy, I could not call you up.
- इन sentences में ‘**if**’, ‘**since**’ के जैसे Conjunctions के द्वारा एक Clause को दूसरी ऐसी Clause से जोड़ा गया है, जिसके बिना वह अपना अर्थ व्यक्त नहीं कर पाती अर्थात् वह उस पर पूरी तरह से आश्रित है। यदि इन sentences को Clause में बांटा जाए, तो एक **Principal Clause** बनेगी और दूसरी **Subordinate (आश्रित) Clause**.
 - जिस **Conjunction** के द्वारा **Subordinate Clause** बनी हो, उसे **Subordinating Conjunction** कहते हैं।
Subordinating conjunctions अपने अर्थ के अनुसार निम्नलिखित बात प्रकट करते हैं:
- (i) **Time:- When, whenever, till, until, before, since, while, as soon as, as long as, just as.**
 1. **When** I saw him, I stopped my car.
 2. **As soon** as it rains, the farmers will sow the seeds.
 - (ii) **Place (स्थान): Where, wherever,**
 1. You can go **wherever** you want.
 - (iii) **Cause (कारण): Since, because, as,**
 1. She came **because** I called him up.
 2. **As** he is a miser, no one likes him.
 - (iv) **Purpose (उद्देश्य): That, so that, in order that, lest**
 1. We eat **so** that we may live.
 2. Run fast **lest** you should miss the train.
 - (v) **Result (परिणाम): So , that, such . . . that**
 1. He is **so** weak **that** he cannot even stand.
 2. He is **such** a fool **that** he doesn't understand anything.
 - (vi) **Condition (शर्त): If, supposing, unless, provided.**
 1. He cannot succeed **unless** he works hard.
 2. I will help him **provided** he mends his ways.
 - (vii) **Manner (ढंग): As, as if, as though, as far as.**
 1. He scolded me **as if** he were my father.

नोट: अगर ‘**as**’ the अर्थ ‘चुकि’ हो तो उसके बाद ‘**so**’ का प्रयोग न करें।
As I was ill, so I could not come (Remove ‘so’)

 - ‘**Since**’ के साथ भी ‘**so**’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
Since he is a liar, so I do not trust him (Remove ‘so’)
 - (viii) **Comparison (तुलना): As, as as, so.....as, than**
 1. A wise enemy is better **than** a foolish friend.
 2. He is **as good as** she at English.

Conjunction

- नोट:** (1) **So . . . as/As. . . as** का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की तुलना के लिए किया जाता है। ध्यान रखें-
 (A) **So . . . as** का प्रयोग **Negative** वाक्य में होता है; जैसे:-
 (i) He is **not so good as** you. (Negative)
- किन्तु **As . . . as** का प्रयोग **Affirmative** तथा **Negative** दोनों ही प्रकार के वाक्यों में किया जाता है; जैसे:-
 (i) He is **as good as** you. (Affirmative)
 (ii) He is **not as good as** you. (Negative)
- (ix) Contrast (अंतर): Though, although, however**
1. **Though** he worked hard, he failed.
 2. I tried very hard **however** I could not win the race.
- 3. CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTION:-** जो Conjunctions जोड़े (pair) में प्रयुक्त होते हैं, उन्हें Correlatives (संकेतबोधक) कहते हैं। जैसे: 'Either or', 'neither nor', 'both and', 'not only but also', 'though yet', 'whether...or'
- जैसे:** **Neither** his friends **nor** his parents knew about his evil intention.
 I do not know **whether** he will come **or** not.
- 4. COMPOUND CONJUNCTION:-** Conjunctions जब शब्दों का समूह हो तो **Compound Conjunction** कहलाते हैं।
- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In order that. | The announcement was made in order that all might know the new date of exam. |
| On condition that | I will give you money on condition that you will not misuse it. |
| Even if | She will succeed in life even if she faces some initial failures. |
| So that | We eat so that we may live. |
| Provided that | You can take any dress provided that you return it after the party. |
| As though | He shows off as though he is very rich. |
| As well as | Ram as well as his friends has come to the party. |
| As soon as | The farmers will sow the seeds as soon as it rains. |
| As if | He scolded me as if he were my father. |

CONJUNCTIONS AND IMPORTANT RULES

RULE 1

1. **And**
 2. **as well as**
 2. **Both —— and**
 3. **Not only —— but also**
- इन चारों conjunctions का प्रयोग **Noun , Pronoun** इत्यादि को जोड़ने के लिये किया जाता है लेकिन जहाँ तक adjective का प्रयोग है ये सिर्फ दो **desirable adjectives** को या फिर दो **undesirable adjectives** को जोड़ते हैं।
- जैसे:** He is **both** intelligent **and** hard working.
 He is **not only** dishonest **but also** lazy.

RULE 2

- यदि दो Sub को 'as well as'/'with'/'alongwith'/'and not'/'In addition to'/'but'/'besides'/'except'/'rather than'/'accompanied by' से जोड़ा जाये तो **verb** का प्रयोग पहले **sub** के अनुसार होना चाहिये। (Subject - Verb Agreement देखें)

Conjunction

Ram as well as his friends is coming.

He and not his parents is guilty.

RULE 3

➤ कई बार Conjunction गलत स्थान पर प्रयोग कर लिए जाते हैं।

जैसे: Not only he cheated his friends but also his parents. (✗)

He cheated **not only** his friends **but also** his parents. (✓)
1stNoun 2ndNoun

➤ इस वाक्य में 'his friends' एवं 'his parents' दो विकल्प हैं। '**not only**' '**his friends**' के पहले प्रयोग करें और '**but also**' '**his parents**' के पहले।

अन्य उदाहरण:

(1) Sit either quietly or go away. (✗)

(2) Neither the poor villagers grow nor eat vegetables. (✗)

➤ दोनों वाक्य गलत हैं क्योंकि **Conjunctions** जब जोड़े में हो (**Co-Relatives**) तो उनका प्रयोग वाक्य में मौजूद विकल्प के ठीक पहले होना चाहिए।

जैसे: (1) **Either** sit quietly **or** go away. (✓)
1stVerb 2ndVerb

(2) The poor villagers **neither** grow **nor** eat vegetables. (✓)
1stVerb 2ndVerb

RULE 4

➤ Conjunctions जब जोड़े में हो तो जोड़ा सही होना चाहिये।

जैसे:	Though Yet/ ,
	Although Yet/ ,
	No sooner than
	Hardly/Scarcely when
	As as
	So as
	Lest should
	Too to
	So that
	Between and
	From to
	Else but
	Other/Rather than
	Such that
	Whether or
	The same that
	Both and
	Not only but also

Conjunction

- जैसे: (1) Though he worked hard but he failed. (x)
Though he worked hard **yet** he failed. (✓)
- (2) He is both intelligent as well as industrious. (x)
 He is **both** intelligent **and** industrious. (✓)
- (3) The party is **between** 7 p.m **and** 9 p.m. (✓)
- (4) The party is **from** 7 p.m **to** 9 p.m. (✓)
- (5) I have **no other** aim but to succeed in life. (x)
- (6) I have **no other** aim **than** to succeed in life (✓)
- (7) Nothing **else but** arrogance ruined him. (✓)
- (8) He asked me if I was coming or not. (x)
- (9) He asked me **whether** I was coming or not. (✓)

RULE 5

So that

too...to

इतना कि

- जैसे: (1) I am so happy. (x)
 I am **very** happy. (✓)
- (2) 1. He is **so** tired **that** he can't walk. ('so—that' के स्थान पर 'too to' का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है अगर वाक्य देखें)
 He is **too** tired **to** walk.
2. It is **too** hot **to** go out.
 It is **so** hot **that** we cannot go out.
3. She is **so** weak **that** she cannot walk.
 She is **too** weak **to** walk.
4. This problem is **so** complicated **that** no one can solve it.
 This problem is **too** complicated for anyone **to** solve it.

➤ अगर '**to solve**' के पहले for '**any one**' का उल्लेख नहीं किया जाये तो **solve** का sub '**problem**' हो जायेगा और वाक्य का अर्थ गलत निकलेगा। ध्यान रखें अगर '**that**' के बाद '**sub**' परिवर्तित हो जाएं तो '**to + v₁**' के पहले 2nd Sub का उल्लेख होना आवश्यक है।

5. It is **so** expensive **that** I cannot buy it.
 It is **too** expensive **for** me to buy it.

➤ **दूसरा तरीका:** वाक्य 3 एवं 4 में अगर हम वाक्य के दूसरे भाग को **Passive voice** में लिखें तो कर्ता का उल्लेख **by + Sub** के रूप में हो सकता है। तब 2nd sub जो 1st sub से भिन्न है '**by+sub**' के form में आ जाएगा और वाक्य का अर्थ सही निकलेगा।

to + V₁ (infinitive) active voice है।

to + be + V₃ - Passive voice है।

4. This problem is too complicated **to be solved** by anyone.
 5. It is too expensive **to be bought** by me.

RULE 6

neither.....nor (दो में से एक भी नहीं)

either.....or (दो में से एक)

Neither Ram **nor** Shyam has come.
S.S. S.V.

1

Neither Ram **nor** his friends have come.
P.S. P.V.

1

Has Ram **or** his friends come?
S.V. S.S.

1

हे हो sub-

- यदि दो sub को ‘**Neither.....nor**’, ‘**either.....or**’, ‘**nor**’ अथवा ‘**or**’ से जोड़ा जाये तो **verb** अपने से नजदीक वाले **subject** के अनुसार होगा। (Sub-Verb Agreement देखें)

RULE 7

- **Neither of** ... का अर्थ है दो में से एक भी नहीं। अगर दो से अधिक मौजूद हो तो '**None of**' का प्रयोग करें।
 - **Either of** ... का अर्थ है दो में से एक - अगर दो से अधिक मौजूद हो तो '**one of**' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे:

Neither of his four sons looked after him. (✗)

None of his four sons looked after him. (✓)

Either of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✗)

One of the students of your class has done this mischief. (✓)

RULE 8

as soon as

जैसे ही

वैसे ही

As soon as he will come, I will call you up.(x)

As soon as he comes, I will call you up. (✓)

- अगर दो कार्य, भविष्य में एक के बाद एक हो और दूसरे कार्य का होना पहले कार्य के होने पर निर्भर करे तो पहला कार्य Simple Present Tense में होगा और दूसरा Simple future tense में होगा। (Future Conditional Sentences देखें)

RULE 9

जोड़: If/when का जोड़ **then** नहीं होता है।

जैसे: When I come, then I will meet you.

- इसी प्रकार Since/as/because के साथ so/therefore का पर्याप्त उद्दीप्त होता है।

Since, as, because के से:

जैसे: Since I was ill, I could not come.
दोस्त: As you say, so shall you reappear मैं आप के पाठ से का प्रतीक होता है।

Conjunction ——————

RULE 10

No sooner than

Hardly when

Scarcely when

नोट: (1) इन तीनों **Co-relatives** में जोड़ा सही होना चाहिये।

जैसे: **No sooner** did he see me when he ran away (when हटा कर **than** का प्रयोग करें)

No Sooner had the thief seen the police then he ran away.(change ‘then’ to ‘**than**’)

(2) इन तीनों **co-relatives** का प्रयोग केवल **Past Tense** में करें।

(3) अगर वाक्य की शुरूआत **Hardly, Scarcely etc.** से हो तो उसके बाद वाक्य का **formation interrogative** के तरीके से होगा यानि **Helping verb + Sub + main verb (Had + S + V₃ or Did + S + V₁)** लेकिन इससे वाक्य प्रश्न नहीं बन जाता है।

Hardly I saw him when I stopped my car. (X)

Hardly did I see him **when** I stopped my car. (✓)

RULE 11

Lest..... Should

.....or.....

.....else.....

.....otherwise.....

सही जोड़े का प्रयोग करें।

Run fast lest you will miss the train. (X)

Run fast **lest** you **should** miss the train. (✓)

RULE 12

Unless , Until and Till

1. **Until** तथा **unless** में फर्क यह है कि **until** समय सूचक है तथा **unless** शर्त सूचक है।

जैसे: **Until** the light turns red, no one will stop.

Unless you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. हम **till** से वाक्य की शुरूआत नहीं करते।

जैसे: Till the train gets the signal, it will not proceed (X) (Till को **Until** में परिवर्तित करें)

RULE 13

➤ 'Until / Unless' के साथ **not** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Until the train will not get the signal, it will not run. (X)

Until the train gets the signal, it will not run. (✓)

नोट: **Until** एवं **Unless** के साथ **will/would/shall** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होता।

जैसे: Unless the Government will not take action , corruption will not stop. (X)

Unless the Government takes action , corruption will not stop. (✓)

नोट: कई बार शब्दों पर जोर देने के लिए दो **Conjunctions, Prepositions, Pronouns** या **Adjectives** का प्रयोग एक साथ किया जाता हैं हालांकि दोनों का अर्थ लगभग एक ही होता है।

जैसे: 1. **Unless and until** you work hard, you won't succeed.

2. The selling price of every commodity was **over and above** the M.R.P.

Conjunction

3. The **first and foremost** duty of every citizen is to respect his country.
 4. **Each and every** student must take the exam.

RULE 14

- **Doubt** के बाद **affirmative sentence** में **if/whether** का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **negative** व **Interrogative sentence** में **doubt** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है।
- **Doubtful** के बाद भी '**Affirmative sentence**' में '**if/whether**' का प्रयोग होता है, जबकि **Negative** व **Interrogative sentence** में **doubtful** के बाद **that** का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे:

AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE

NEGATIVE / INTERROGATIVE

Doubt ————— **if/whether**

Doubt ————— **that**

Doubtful ————— **if/whether**

Doubtful ————— **that**

- जैसे:
1. He doubts that she will help him. (x)
 He **doubts if/whether** she will help him. (*Affirmative Sentence*)
 2. I have no doubt if/whether he will cheat me.(x)
 I have **no doubt that** he will cheat me. *Negative*
 3. I am doubtful that my parents will allow me to go to the party. (x)
 I am **doubtful if/whether** my parents will allow me to go to the party. (*Affirmative Sentence*)
 4. He is not doubtful if/whether I will finish his work in time (x)
 He is **not doubtful that** I will finish his work in time. (*Negative Sentence*)

RULE 15

- '**The same**' के बाद Relative Pronouns '**that**' या '**as**' का प्रयोग होता है।
- '**The same**' के बाद '**that**' का प्रयोग होता है जब इसके बाद **Verb** स्पष्ट हो।

जैसे: (i) This is **the same book** **that** I wanted.
 Verbs

(ii) He is **the same boy** **that** met me in the market
 Verbs

- किन्तु '**the same**' के बाद '**as**' का प्रयोग तब होता है जब **Verb** स्पष्ट नहीं हो।

जैसे: (i) This is **the same book** **as** mine. (**as** के बाद verb का प्रयोग स्पष्ट रूप से नहीं है)
 'the same' के बाद who/which आदि का प्रयोग न करें।

RULE 16

- (i) **As as** एवं **so as** का प्रयोग तुलना करने के लिए किया जाता है। **As as** का प्रयोग **Positive** एवं **negative** वाक्यों में होता है और **so....as** का प्रयोग सिर्फ **negative** वाक्यों में होता है।

जैसे:

1. He is **as intelligent as** you. (+ve वाक्य)
2. He is not **as intelligent as** you. (-ve वाक्य)
3. He is not **so intelligent as** you. (-ve वाक्य)

- (ii) **As....as** एवं **so as** के साथ **adverb** एवं **adjective** के सिर्फ **Positive Degree** का प्रयोग होता है।

Conjunction —————

- जैसे:
1. He ran **as** faster **as** he could. (faster को **fast** में परिवर्तित करें)
 2. He is **as** better **as** you. (better को **good** में परिवर्तित करें)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) You are quite cynical/ (b) when you say that the reason why we have/ (c) such a large turnout is because we are serving refreshments./ (d) No error.
2. (a) That store/ (b) hadn't hardly/ (c) any of those goods./ (d) No error.
3. (a) I needed that money/ (b) so desperately, it was/ (c) like manna from heaven when it arrived./ (d) No error.
4. (a) The period/ (b) between 1980 to 1990/ (c) was very significant in my life./ (d) No error.
5. (a) No sooner had the hockey match started/ (b) when it began/ (c) to rain./ (d) No error.
6. (a) She is very/ (b) beautiful/ (c) but intelligent./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Your success in the IAS examinations depends not only on/ (b) what papers you have selected/ (c) but on how you have written them/ (d) No error.
8. (a) No sooner had/ (b) he arrived then/ (c) he was asked to leave again./ (d) No error.
9. (a) I haven't been/ (b) to New York before and/ (c) neither my sister./ (d) No error.
10. (a) Scarcely had/ (b) I arrived than/ (c) the train left./ (d) No error.
11. (a) The reason why/ (b) he was rejected/ (c) was because he was too young./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Unless you do not give/ (b) the keys of the safe/ (c) you will be shot./ (d) No error.
13. (a) None of the diplomats at the conference/ (b) was able either to/ (c) comprehend or solve the problem./ (d) No error.
14. (a) I have found that he is/ (b) neither willing/ (c) or capable./ (d) No error.
15. (a) We are extremely pleased/(b) for excited as well to invite you/(c) to attend the meeting./ (d) No error.
16. (a) When her son got a job/ (b) then she was/ (c) very happy./ (d) No error.
17. (a) Bread and butter/ (b) is/ (c) all we want./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The cost of the new/ (b) machines is likely to/ (c) be so high as ten/ (d) times the existing ones./ (e) No error.
19. (a) He walked as faster/ (b) as he could so that/ (c) he would not miss the train to work./ (d) No error.
20. (a) She was running/ (b) a very high fever/(c) and thus her mother takes her to the doctor./ (d) No error.
21. (a) No sooner the teacher/ (b) enter the class/ (c) than the students stood up./ (d) No error.
22. (a) Unless/ (b) you will work hard,/ (c) you cannot pass./ (d) No error.
23. (a) Keep him at an arm's lenght/ (b) lest you may not repent/(c) in the long run./

Conjunction

- (d) No error.
24. (a) The briefing / (b) will be held / (c) between 2 P.M. to 3 P.M. / (d) No error.
25. (a) Unless you do not meet / (b) all the requirements / (c) your application will be rejected. / (d) No error.
26. (a) How do you manage to speak / (b) to her with / (c) so great patience. / (d) No error.
27. (a) No sooner she had realized / (b) her blunder than she began / (c) to take corrective measures. / (d) No error.
28. (a) She was not / (b) so well versed in / (c) English that we had expected. / (d) No error.
29. (a) Mr. Sinha, my friend, philosopher and guide not only stopped coming / (b) here but also going to any place / (c) which is related to his wife's life. / (d) No error.
30. (a) Neither the doctor nor the nurses / (b) were asleep when / (c) the injured was brought to the hospital. / (d) No error.
31. (a) As soon as the peon rings the bell, then all / (b) the students come to the assembly room / (c) for prayer. / (d) No error.
32. (a) Hardly had he come out of the bus / (b) then the bomb exploded / (c) and shattered the bus into pieces. / (d) No error.
33. (a) Scarcely had I bought / (b) the ticket when the train / (c) left the platform with a hissing sound. / (d) No error.
34. (a) Many of the freedom fighters / (b) are so respectful as Gandhiji / (c) if not more. / (d) No error.
35. (a) This is perhaps the same place who / (b) was chosen by us / (c) for the picnic. / (d) No error.
36. (a) She asked me that why I was / (b) not preparing for the / (c) Civil Service Examinations. / (d) No error.
37. A) Run fast / (b) lest you will / (c) lose the race / (d) No error.
38. (a) As Amir Khan is a perfectionist, / (b) so he always insists / (c) on retakes till he is satisfied with the shot. / (d) No error.
39. (a) You must either / (b) work hard / (c) else be prepared to lead a miserable life. / (d) No error.
40. (a) I don't know if any of the students / (b) of our school is going / (c) to pay any heed to the principal's order or not. / (d) No error.
41. (a) This is not such a / (b) complicated problem who cannot be solved / (c) with determination. / (d) No error.
42. (a) Although these books / (b) are not useful but the students buy them / (C) because their seniors did so. / (d) No error.
43. (a) He did not / (b) succeed in the examination, / (c) yet he had worked hard and had adopted the right strategy. / (d) No error.
44. (a) He has lots / (b) of money and / (c) he will not help any one / (d) No error.
45. (a) Because he is intelligent, / (b) therefore he gets good / (c) marks in all the examinations. / (d) No error.
46. (a) Both the rich alongwith / (b) the poor are affected equally / (c) when prices of petrol and diesel increase. / (d) No error.

Conjunction

47. (a) I cannot say / (b) if he has paid / (c) the fee or not. / (d) No error.
48. (a) Ten years have passed / (b) that I returned from / (c) America and settled in India. / (d) No error.
49. (a) It was almost / (b) ten years ago since he wrote / (c) a letter to me enquiring about my well being / (d) No error.
50. (a) He would not / (b) have died when you had / (c) helped him in time. / (d) No error.
51. (a) Scarcely we had / (b) reached the office / (c) when it started raining cats and dogs. / (d) No error.
52. (a) The labourers / (b) relax / (c) between 4.00 p.m. to 5. 00 p.m. / (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (c) ‘the reason why’ के साथ ‘because’ का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता।
2. (b) ‘Hardly’ अर्थ से नकारात्मक है। इसके साथ ‘not’ का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता। Hadn’t को हटा कर ‘had’ का प्रयोग करें। Hardly had’ का प्रयोग करें।
3. (b) ‘So’ के साथ ‘that’ का प्रयोग होना आवश्यक है। ‘So desperately’ के बाद ‘that’ का प्रयोग करें।
4. (b) Between के साथ ‘and’ का प्रयोग करें न कि ‘to’ का।
5. (b) ‘No sooner’ के साथ ‘than’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘when’ का।
6. (c) ‘but’ को ‘and’ में परिवर्तित करें।
7. (c) ‘Not only’ के साथ ‘but also’ का प्रयोग होता है। ‘but’ के साथ ‘also’ लगायें।
8. (b) ‘No sooner’ के साथ ‘than’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘then’ का।
9. (c) ‘Neither’ के बाद पहले helping verb का प्रयोग होता है फिर sub का। ‘neither has my sister’ सही प्रयोग होगा।
10. (b) ‘Scarcely’ के साथ ‘when’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘than’ का।
11. (c) ‘The reason why’ के साथ ‘because’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
12. (a) Unless के साथ ‘not’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता। ‘unless you give’ होना चाहिए।
13. (b) वाक्य में ‘Comprehend’ और ‘solve’ दो verb का प्रयोग हो रहा है तो ‘comprehend’ के पहले ‘either’ का प्रयोग होगा। ‘Either’ ‘to’ के बाद आएगा।
14. (c) ‘neither’ के साथ ‘nor’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘or’ का।
15. (b) ‘for’ के बदले ‘and’ का प्रयोग करें।
16. (b) ‘when’ के साथ ‘then’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। ‘then’ हटा कर ‘,’ लगायें।
17. (c) यहाँ ‘all’ के बाद ‘that’ का प्रयोग होगा।
18. (c) So as का प्रयोग negative वाक्यों में होता है। यहाँ ‘as as’ का प्रयोग करें।
19. (a) as as के बीच adjective/adverb के positive degree ‘fast’ का प्रयोग होगा।

Conjunction

20. (c) 'Thus her mother takes' को 'So her mother took' में परिवर्तित करें।
21. (a) 'No sooner' के बाद 'helping verb' का प्रयोग होगा और फिर 'sub' का। 'No sooner did the teacher enter' सहीं होगा।
22. (b) Unless/ if/ until/ provided/ before/ after/ in case/ as soon as के साथ 'will/ shall/would' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता। 'you will study hard' के स्थान पर 'you study hard the प्रयोग करें।
23. (a) 'may not' के स्थान पर 'should' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (c) 'Between' के साथ 'and' का प्रयोग होगा। 'from' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
25. (a) 'Unless' के साथ 'not' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'Unless you meet' सही formation होगा।
26. (c) 'So' के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग होना जरूरी है।
27. (a) 'No sooner' के बाद 'had' का प्रयोग होगा और फिर sub 'she' का।
28. (c) 'So as' सही pair है। 'that' के स्थान पर 'as' लगायें।
29. (a) 'not only' का प्रयोग गलत स्थान पर हुआ है। 'Not only' का प्रयोग 'coming' के पहले होगा।
30. (d)
31. (a) 'As soon as' के साथ 'then' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
32. (b) 'Hardly' के साथ 'When' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'then' का।
33. (d)
34. (b) 'So as' का प्रयोग नकारात्मक वाक्यों में होता है। 'as as' का प्रयोग करें।
35. (a) 'The same' के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग करें न कि 'who' का।
36. (a) 'Wh family' के पहले 'that' का प्रयोग गलत है। यहाँ 'why' के पहले कोई Conjunction नहीं आएगा।
37. (b) Lest के साथ should का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'will' का।
38. (b) अगर 'As' का अर्थ क्योंकि/चुँकि हो तो 'as' के साथ कोई Conjunction का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। 'So' हटा दे। 'As. . . . so' का प्रयोग 'जैसा. . . . जैसा' का संदर्भ में होता है। Eg- 'As you sow, so shall you reap.'
39. (c) 'Either' का जोड़ा 'or' होता है न कि 'else'
40. (a) If के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें। 'Whether' के साथ 'or' का प्रयोग होता है 'if' के साथ नहीं।
41. (b) Such के साथ 'that' का प्रयोग होगा।
42. (b) 'Although' के साथ 'but' का नहीं 'yet' का प्रयोग होता है।
43. (c) 'Yet' के स्थान पर 'though' का प्रयोग होगा।
44. (b) 'and' के स्थान पर 'but' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (b) 'Because' के साथ 'therefore' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। Because / as/ since आदि Conjunctions of Reason हैं। इनके साथ so/therefore का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
46. (a) 'Both' का जोड़ा 'and' है न कि along with'
47. (b) 'Whether' के साथ 'or' प्रयुक्त होता है। 'if' के स्थान पर 'whether' का प्रयोग करें।
48. (b) 'that' के स्थान पर 'since' का प्रयोग होगा। Since का प्रयोग 'जब से' के अर्थ में होता है।

Conjunction —————

ऐसे वाक्यों में वाक्य के formation का भी ध्यान रखें।

Present Perfect + Since + Simple Past

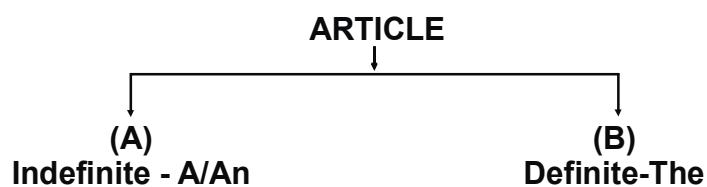
Ten years have passed since I returned

49. (b) ‘since’ के स्थान पर ‘when’ का प्रयोग होगा।
50. (b) ‘when’ के स्थान पर ‘if’ का प्रयोग होगा। वाक्य Conditional sentence है।
51. (a) ‘we had’ को ‘had we’ में परिवर्तित करें।
52. (c) ‘between’ के साथ ‘and’ का प्रयोग होता है। ‘from’ के साथ ‘to’ का।

13 ARTICLE

CHAPTER

'A', 'An' एवं 'The', 'Articles' कहलाते हैं। **A/An** को **Indefinite** तथा **'The'** को **Definite article** कहते हैं।



- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) यह कुर्सी है। | This is a chair. |
| (b) सीता ने गाना गाया। | Sita sang a song. |
| (c) यह छतरी है। | This is an umbrella. |
- इन हिन्दी वाक्यों में 'एक' नहीं होते हुए भी, इनका अंग्रेजी अनुवाद करते समय हमने '**A/An**' का प्रयोग किया है।
 - वाक्यों में **Singular Countable Noun** से पूर्व, (यदि वह अनिश्चित है) **Article 'A/An'** का प्रयोग अवश्य किया जाता है। इन वाक्यों का यह अनुवाद गलत है:
 - (a) This is chair. *(Incorrect)*
 - (b) Sita sang song. *(Incorrect)*
 - (c) This is umbrella. *(Incorrect)*

ARTICLE /kɔ:dʒɪkl̩; kɔ:dʒɪkəl̩; ɡɔ:dʒɪkəl̩/

- She is _____ excellent.
- कई लोग 'excellent' देख तुरंत 'an' का प्रयोग कर देते हैं परन्तु इस वाक्य में कोई article का प्रयोग नहीं होगा क्योंकि 'excellent' के बाद कोई noun नहीं है।
 - जैसे: She is an excellent student.
 - Article का प्रयोग **noun** के पहले होता है।
 - जैसे: She is a student.
 - अगर noun की विशेषता बताने वाला adjective वाक्य में मौजूद हो तो article का प्रयोग **adjective** के पहले होगा।
 - जैसे: She is an excellent student.

Article –

- अगर adjective की विशेषता बताने वाला adverb भी मौजूद हो तो article का प्रयोग **adverb** के पहले होगा।

जैसे: She is a very excellent student.
 adv adj noun

A, An का प्रयोग कहाँ किया जाता है?

1. A/An का प्रयोग अनिश्चित (Indefinite) Singular Noun से पूर्व किया जाता है। (निश्चित होने पर Noun के पूर्व 'The' का प्रयोग किया जाता है) इसलिए A/An को Indefinite articles कहा जाता है; जैसे:

(a) I have a car.	(b) He sang a song.
(c) This is an orange.	(d) Ram is a student.

2. जिस शब्द के पूर्व 'A/An' का प्रयोग करना है, यदि उस शब्द के उच्चारण की प्रथम ध्वनि (**First sound of pronunciation**) स्वर है तो 'An' का प्रयोग होगा। यदि यह ध्वनि व्यंजन है, तो 'a' का प्रयोग होगा।
(a) अंग्रेजी भाषा में **A, E, I, O, U**, को स्वर (**Vowels**) माना गया है। कई शब्द इन **Vowels** से शुरू तो हो सकते हैं, लेकिन मुख्य बात है, उस शब्द के उच्चारण की। हिन्दी वर्णमाला के अ, आ, इ, ई, उ, ऊ, ए, ऐ, ओ, औ स्वर माने जाते हैं।

An umbrella - अम्ब्रेला

A university - युनिवर्सिटी

A union - युनियन

A ewe - यू

A one rupee note - एक

An honest man - अँनेस्ट

- शब्द का प्रथम letter क्या है ,यह महत्वपूर्ण नहीं है। महत्पूर्ण है, उसके उच्चारण की प्रथम ध्वनि (**First Sound of pronunciation**)।

- (b) अंग्रेजी भाषा में एक अक्षर, कई प्रकार की ध्वनि हेतु प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जिन अक्षरों को स्वर (**A, E, I, O, U**) माना गया है, उनका उच्चारण बहुत बार व्यंजन (**Consonants**) की तरह होता है। बहुत से व्यंजन (Consonants) स्वर का उच्चारण देते हैं। हो सकता है शब्द का प्रथम अक्षर M, F, H इत्यादि हो, लेकिन उच्चारण की प्रथम ध्वनि स्वर हो तो ऐसे शब्दों के पूर्व **an** का प्रयोग होगा।

ABBREVIATION

- जैसे: (a) He is **an** MLA/ MP (एम.एल.ए./ एम.पी.)
(b) He lodged **an** FIR. (एफ.आई.आर.)
(c) He is **an** officer. (आई.ए.एस.)
(d) He is **an** . (एस.डी.ओ.)
(e) I have **an** x-ray machine. (एक्स-रे)
(f) She in **an** LLB. (एल.एल.बी.)
(g) I have been waiting for **an** hour. (आँवर)
(h) He is **an** heir to the throne. (एयर)
(i) Ram is **an** honest person. (आरेस्ट)

doNvU; mnkj.j.k

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. An hour. | 14. A unit. |
| 2. An honour. | 15. A union. |
| 3. An honourable person. | 16. An Umbrella |
| 4. An honest man | 17. A unique planet. |
| 5. An heir. | 18. A useful book. |
| 6. A house | 19. A year. |
| 7. An honorarium. | 20. A one-rupee note. |
| 8. A historical monument. | 21. A one-eyed man. |
| 9. A young man. | 22. An orange |
| 10. A ewe. | 23. An F.O. |
| 11. An eagle. | 24. A forest officer. |
| 12. A European. | 25. An M.P |
| 13. A university. | 26. A Member of Parliament. |

USE OF INDEFINITE ARTICLE A/AN

- Singular Countable noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। **Countable** का अर्थ है जिसकी गिनती की जा सकती है; अगर **Noun** का प्रयोग न हो तो **Article** का भी प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
जैसे: (a) I have a pen (b) She has a car. (b) Ram has an umbrella. (d) She is a house wife.
नोट: '**Noise' uncountable Noun**' है। फिर भी इसके साथ Article 'a' का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: Do not make a noise.
- Exclamatory** वाक्यों में 'What/How' के बाद व **Singular Countable nouns** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;
जैसे: (a) What a grand building!
(b) What a pretty girl!
- 'प्रति माह' या 'प्रति वर्ष' कीमत' के सन्दर्भ में प्रयोग करने पर **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
जैसे: (a) This car runs twenty kilometers a litre.
(b) I earn Rs. ten thousand a month.
(c) This train runs seventy kms. an hour.
- कुछ गिनती बताने वाले शब्द जैसे: **hundred, thousand, million, dozen, couple** से पूर्व 'a' लगता है।
जैसे: (a) A dozen pencils were bought by her.
(b) I have a hundred pens.
- Half** से पूर्व **a** का प्रयोग निम्न प्रकार से किया जाता है; जैसे:
जैसे: (a) $2\frac{1}{4}$ Metre -two and a quarter metre.
(b) $3\frac{1}{2}$ Kilo-three and a half kilo.
(c) She has to run half a mile every day.
- जब वाक्य में **Verb** (क्रिया) का प्रयोग **Noun** की तरह किया जाता है, उससे पहले **A/An** लगाया जाता है;

Article

- जैसे: (a) He goes for **a walk** daily.
 (b) He has gone for **a ride**.
 (c) I had **a long talk** with them.
 (d) I want to have **a drink**.

7. **Many/rather/quite/such** के बाद यदि **singular noun** आता है तो **noun** के पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (a) Many **a citizen** would welcome such a change.
 (b) It is rather **a pity**.
 (c) It was quite **an impossible task**.
 (d) It was such **a foolish decision**.

8. कुछ विशेष Phrases में **A/An** का प्रयोग होता है;

In a fix, in a hurry, in a nutshell, make a noise, make a foot, keep a secret, as a rule, at a stone's throw, a short while ago, at a loss, take a fancy to, take an interest in, take a liking, a pity, tell a lie.

- जैसे: (a) Never tell **a lie**.
 (b) Do not make **a noise**.
 (c) Twelve inches make **a foot**.

➤ कुछ phrases के साथ article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है;
to lose heart, to set foot, to give ear, at home, last but not least, to catch fire, in hand, set on fire, by car/bus etc, at last, by mistake, in danger, to take heart.

- जैसे: (a) I am at home.
 (b) The house was set on fire.
 (c) I go to college by bus.

A/AN d.iz;ksx fiEflfEkfresaughadjkpkfg,%

(1) किसी भी **Plural noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

- जैसे: A boys have come (✗)
 pl.n.

Boys have come (✓)
 The boys have come (✓)

(2) **Uncountable nouns** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं किया जाता है; जैसे: **Advice, Accommodation, Baggage, Luggage, News, Permission, Progress, Scenery, Weather, Traffic, Knowledge, Music, Wine, Equipment, Information, Poetry, Furniture, Hair, Business, Mischief, Bread, Stationery Crockery, Postage, Wastage, Money, Jewellery, Breakage, Work, Evidence.**

- जैसे: (a) He gave me an advice (remove 'an')
 (b) I will buy a furniture today (remove 'a')

➤ **Uncountable nouns** के पूर्व जब **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो इनके साथ कुछ शब्दों का प्रयोग करके उन्हें **Countable Noun** बनाया जाता है।

- जैसे: (a) I have a piece of information for you.
 (b) I ate a slice of bread.
 (c) He gave me a piece of work to do.

➤ Article का प्रयोग '**kind of**, '**sort of**', '**type of**', '**variety of**' के बाद प्रयुक्त **Nouns** के पहले नहीं

होता है।

- जैसे: What sort of a man is he ! (x)
 What sort of man is he ! (✓)

USE OF DEFINITE ARTICLE 'THE'

- ‘The’ का प्रयोग उस **noun** से पूर्व किया जाता है, जो निश्चित है या जिसकी चर्चा पहले की जा चुकी है। ‘The’ को इसी कारण **Definite article** कहा जाता है।
- ‘The’ का प्रयोग करने के नियम-
- जब किसी पूर्व निर्धारित वस्तु के बारे में कहा जाता है; जैसे:

जैसे: Once upon a time there lived a king. The king was very kind. One day he met an old man. The old man was very poor.

 - (a) प्रथम वाक्य में **king** से पूर्व सर्वप्रथम ‘**a**’ का प्रयोग किया गया है, क्योंकि **introduction** के समय से पहले हमें ये ज्ञात नहीं था कि कहानी किस की सुनाई जा रही है। बाद में ‘**the**’ का प्रयोग किया गया है, क्योंकि **introduction** के बाद **king** निश्चित हो गया है। इसी प्रकार **old man** से पहले सर्वप्रथम ‘**a**’ का प्रयोग किया गया लेकिन बाद में ‘**the**’ का, क्योंकि तीसरे वाक्य में **old man** का उल्लेख पहली बार हो रहा है लेकिन चौथे वाक्य में वह **already introduced** हो चुका है।
 - (b) **The man in white shirt is my brother.**
 - (c) **The boy standing near the gate is my brother .**

वाक्य (b) एवं (c) में ‘**the**’ का प्रयोग, एक निश्चित, निर्धारित **Noun** के तरफ इंगित करता है।

USE OF ARTICLE WITH DIFFERENT KINDS OF NOUN

PROPER NOUN:

1. किसी भी व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान के नाम के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: Ram was an ideal son.

Rome is an ancient city.

अपवादः

- निम्न स्थिति में **Proper Noun** से पूर्व **A/An** का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है-

जैसे: (a) **A Mr Sharma has come to meet you.**
 (b) **This book is written by a Suresh Mishra.**

'Mr. Sharma' proper noun हैं, जब ये वक्ता के लिए अनजान हैं तो इनसे पूर्व ‘**a**’ के प्रयोग का अर्थ किसी (कोई) Mr. Sharma हो जाता है।

- अगर किसी व्यक्ति अथवा स्थान को उसके गुण या दोष की वजह से उदाहरण स्वरूप प्रयोग किया जाये तो उस नाम के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग होगा।

जैसे: He is **the** Ram of modern India.
 Jaipur is **the** Rome of India.
 He is **a** Hitler.

- कुछ स्थान के नाम के साथ Article ‘**The**’ का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Article

- जैसे: **The Ukraine**
The Great Britain
The Netherlands
The Hague.
2. राज्यों के नाम के साथ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता। अपवाद -**The Punjab.**
3. किसी भी देश के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
- जैसे: America, Russia.
- लेकिन यदि देश के नाम में **Union, United, Republic** या **Kingdom** शब्द का प्रयोग हो तो Article '**The**' का प्रयोग करें।
- जैसे: **The Soviet Union, the United States, the Irish Republic**
4. पर्वत शृंखला के साथ '**The**' का प्रयोग होता है।
- जैसे: **The Himalayas, the Alps,**
- लेकिन पर्वत की चोटी के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
- जैसे: Mt. Everest, Mt. Abu.
5. **Nationality** (राष्ट्रीयता) व्यक्त करने वाले शब्दों से पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग करें लेकिन भाषा के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग न करें।
The English speak English.
The English defeated the French.
6. बिंमारियों के नाम के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
- अपवाद:
7. नीचे दिए गये **Proper Noun** के साथ Article 'The' का प्रयोग करें। साथ में कुछ उदाहरण प्रत्येक बिन्दु को स्पष्ट करने के लिए दिए गए हैं
- (a) नदियों के नाम: जैसे- **The Yamuna, the Ganga, the Godawari, the Sutlej.**
 - (b) समुद्र के नाम: जैसे- **The Arabian sea, the Caribbean sea.**
 - (c) महासागर के नाम: जैसे- **The Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.**
 - (d) द्वीप के समूह: जैसे- **The Lakshadweep, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.**
 - (e) भौगोलिक पिण्ड के नाम- जैसे: **The Sun, the Venus, etc.**
- नोट: जो वस्तु **Unique** है, उससे पूर्व '**the**' का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:
- **The world, the universe, etc.** लेकिन **Heaven, Hell, God, Parliament** के पूर्व '**article**' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है;
- जैसे: (a) The world is in danger due to green house effect.
(b) Go to hell.
(c) God resides in heaven.
(d) The Bill was passed in Parliament.
- **Environment** एवं **Atmosphere** से पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

Article

- जैसे: (a) The atmosphere consists of three layers.
 (b) We must protect the environment.
- जब **Space** का अर्थ 'अंतरिक्ष' होता है, तो **Space** से पूर्व **article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, लेकिन यदि **Space** 'जगह' के अर्थ में प्रयुक्त हुआ है तो '**The**' का प्रयोग होगा;
- जैसे: (a) Many astronauts dream of going to space.
 (b) He tried to park his car but **the** space was not sufficient.
8. दिशाओं के नाम: जैसे- **The** East, **the** West, etc.
 लेकिन यदि इनके साथ किसी **Place** का नाम जोड़ा गया हो तो '**The**' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे: **West Bengal**.
- इसी तरह **Northern, Southern, Eastern, Western** से पूर्व **article** नहीं आता है; जैसे: **Western India**.
- कुछ अन्य उदाहरण-
- जैसे: 1. **The** sun rises in **the** east.
 2. He is going to **North America**.
 3. Rajasthan is in **Western India**.
 4. Sweden is in **Northern Europe**.
9. खाड़ी के नाम: जैसे- **The** Bay of Bengal
10. रेगिस्तान के नाम: जैसे- **The** Sahara desert
11. नहरों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Suez Canal
12. समाचार पत्र के नाम: जैसे- **The** Hindu, **The** Times of India
13. पवित्र ग्रंथ के नाम: जैसे- **The** Gita, **the** Bible
- लेकिन **Valmiki's Ramayan, Banabhatty's Kadambiri**, जैसी स्थिति में, इनके पूर्व '**The**' नहीं लगता है क्योंकि यहाँ धार्मिक ग्रंथ के नाम के पहले उसके लेखक का भी नाम जुड़ा हुआ है।
14. ऐतिहासिक इमारतों के नाम: जैसे- **The** Taj Mahal, **the** Red Fort.
- बहुत-सी महत्वपूर्ण **Buildings** एवं **Monuments** के नाम दो शब्दों से मिलकर बने होते हैं। जिनमें से एक शब्द किसी व्यक्ति या स्थान का नाम होता है, ऐसे नाम के साथ '**The**' का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता; जैसे:
Delhi Airport, Victoria Palace, London Zoo, Jai Singh Palace, Indira Gandhi Airport
15. आंदोलन के नाम: जैसे- **The** Quit India movement
16. संगठन के नाम: जैसे- **The** United Nations,
17. रेल/हवाई मार्ग के नाम: जैसे- **The** Jet Airways, **the** Intercity, **the** Rajdhani Express.
18. राजनैतिक पार्टियों के नाम: जैसे- **The** B.J.P, **the** Congress, **the** Communist Party.
19. अधिनियम/संवैधानिक इकाई के नाम: जैसे- **The** Indian Penal Code, **the** Legislature
20. वाद यंत्र के नाम: जैसे- **The** Flute, **the** Violin

Article

21. धार्मिक समुदायों के नाम: जैसे- **The Hindus, the Muslims, the Sikhs.**
 22. व्यक्ति के पद के पूर्व: जैसे- **The Chairman, the Director** (अगर 'एक' के संदर्भ में पद का उल्लेख हो तो **a director, an author** इत्यादि भी हो सकता है। यानि **a/an** का भी प्रयोग हो सकता है।)
 23. किसी आविष्कार (**Invention**) के नाम के पूर्व: जैसे- **The telescope.**
 24. समिति, क्लब तथा ट्रस्ट के नाम के पूर्व: जैसे- **The Lions' Club, The Rotary Club.**
 25. वंशजों के नाम: जैसे- **The Marathas, the Peshwas.**
 26. शरीर के अंगों (**Parts of the body**) के पूर्व '**the**' का प्रयोग तभी होता है जब **possessive adjective (my, his, etc.)** के स्थान पर **Article** का प्रयोग हो; जैसे- He was wounded in **his/the** eye.
 27. तारीख के साथ: जैसे- **The 10th of May.**
 28. सशस्त्र बल के साथ: जैसे- **The Army, the Police.**
 29. ग्रहों (**Planets**) के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The Venus, the Mars.**
 30. होटल के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The Taj Hotel.**
 31. खेल की टॉफी एवं कप के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The World Cup.**
 32. युद्ध, क्रांति एवं सदी के नाम के साथ: जैसे- **The French revolution, the Middle Ages.**
- नीचे दिये गये **Proper Noun** के साथ **Article** का प्रयोग न करें।
1. महीने के नाम: June, July, September etc.
 2. दिन के नाम: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday etc.
 3. विषयों के नाम: Mathematics, Physics etc.
 4. मार्ग के नाम: M.G. Road, Mall Road etc.
 5. **Meals** के नाम: Lunch, Dinner, etc.
 6. भाषा के नाम: English, Hindi, etc.
 7. **Hobbies** के साथ: Gardening, singing.
 8. खेल के नाम के साथ: Hockey, Cricket.
 9. **Noun Complement** के पहले; **appoint, make, elect, select** के साथ।
- जैसे: They elected him **the** president.

COMMON NOUN:

1. जब कोई वस्तु **Understood** होती है तो उससे पूर्व '**The**' का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:
 - (a) Kindly return **the** book. *(That I gave you)*
 - (b) Can you turn off **the** light? *(The light in the room.)*
2. आगे **Singular Common Noun** के पहले **Article** का प्रयोग किया जाये तो वह पूरी प्रजाति का उल्लेख कर सकता है पर इनके साथ **Singular verb** का प्रयोग होगा।
जैसे: **A dog is** a faithful animal.
नोट:- सिर्फ **man** के उल्लेख मात्र से अर्थ मानव जाति निकलता है।
जैसे: Man is mortal.
3. जब कोई **Noun** किसी व्यक्ति के अंदर मौजूद गुण, भाव या अभिव्यक्ति को व्यक्त करे, तो उससे पूर्व **article** का प्रयोग होता है;

Article

- जैसे: (a) **The** judge (moral of judge) in him, prevailed upon **the** father (Love of father for his son) and he sentenced his son to death.
 (b) **A** mother (feelings of motherhood) was born in her when she saw the baby.
4. जब स्कूल, कॉलेज, मन्दिर इत्यादि का उल्लेख उनके प्राथमिक उद्देश्य के संदर्भ में हो तब **article** का प्रयोग न करें।
 जैसे: Children should go to school.
 I go to temple every morning.
 ➤ लेकिन जब स्कूल, कॉलेज इत्यादि का उल्लेख किसी बिल्डिंग या स्थान के संदर्भ में हो तब Article का प्रयोग करें।
 जैसे: My house is behind a school.
 The college is next to the temple.

ABSTRACT/MATERIAL NOUN:

- **Abstract/Material noun** के साथ सामान्यतः **Article** का प्रयोग नहीं होता। वैसे भी ये **Uncountable Nouns** हैं। **A/An** का प्रयोग तो हो भी नहीं सकता है।
 Gold is precious.
 Honesty is the best policy.
- लेकिन अगर हम इन Noun का प्रयोग नीचे दिये गये **Sentence formation** में करें तो तब Article '**The**' का प्रयोग होगा।

Article + Noun + of + ...

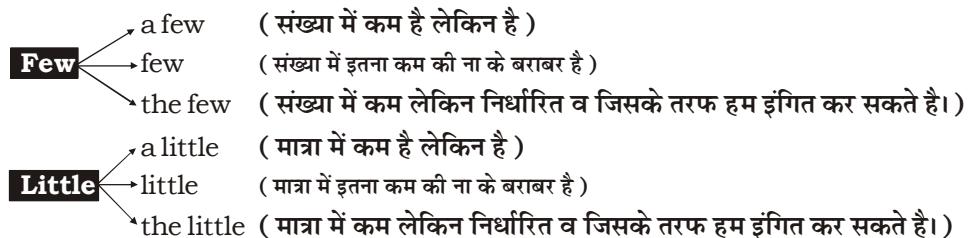
The cotton of Egypt is known for its superior quality.
 The honesty of this boy is liked by all.

USE OF ARTICLE WITH ADJECTIVE

1. **Superlative degree** से पूर्व 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
 जैसे: (a) He is **the best** student of our class.
 (b) She is **the most** beautiful girl of the town.
2. **Comparative Degree** से पूर्व **article 'the'** का प्रयोग किया जाता है जब दो **comparative degree** को एक दूसरे से **directly** या **inversely proportional** दिखाया जाए;
 जैसे: (a) **The more** electricity you use, **the higher** your bill will be.
 (b) **The higher** you rise, **the greater** is the fall.
3. अगर दो में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **Comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है जिसके पहले '**the**' और जिसके बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होगा;
 जैसे: (a) He is **the stronger of** the two wrestlers.
 (b) She is **the better of** the two players.
- अगर सभी में से एक का चुनाव किया जाए तो **superlative degree** का प्रयोग होगा। **Superlative Degree** के पहले भी **article 'the'** और उसके बाद '**of**' का प्रयोग होगा।

Article

- जैसे: She is **the best** of all the players.
4. जब **Adjectives** जैसे **honest, rich, poor, meek** इत्यादि के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाता है तो वह पूरे वर्ग को सम्बोधित करता है। इनके साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- जैसे: (a) The honest are always rewarded.
 (b) The rich exploit the poor.
 (c) The young and the old, the poor and the rich, all demand corruption free India.
5. किसी **Proper noun** के बाद या साथ जब कोई **Adjective/Noun** उसी **Noun** को **qualify** करते हुए लगाया जाता है तो **Proper Noun** के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग होता है;
- जैसे: Ashoka, **the great**, **the great Akbar**.
 Napolean, **the warrior**.
6. **Ordinals** से पूर्व 'The' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। **first, second, third...ordinals** तथा **one, two, three...cardinals** कहलाते हैं;
- जैसे: (a) Chapter **two** of this book is very difficult.
 (b) **The second** chapter of this book is very difficult.
 (c) Volume **one** is on verbs.
 (d) **The first** volume is on verbs.
7. **Adjective 'same'** एवं '**whole**' के पहले और '**all**' एवं '**both**' के बाद **article 'the'** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।
- जैसे: (a) He is **the same** boy that met me in the market.
 (b) **The whole** period was wasted.
8. **Few** एवं **little** के साथ '**a**' एवं '**the**' लगाने पर उनके अर्थ परिवर्तित हो जाते हैं।



9. यदि **Adjective** से पहले **so, as, too, how, quite** का प्रयोग होता है तो उसके बाद **A/An (Indefinite Article)** का प्रयोग किया जाता है;
- जैसे: (a) It is too heavy **a** box for me to carry.
 (b) Rohit is not so big **a** businessman as you think.

USE OF ARTICLE ACCORDING TO SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT

1. यदि दो या दो से अधिक **Noun** एक ही व्यक्ति के लिए प्रयुक्त हुए हों तो 'The' का प्रयोग प्रथम **Noun** के पूर्व किया जाता है;
- जैसे: (a) The secretary and treasurer was present there.
 (b) The director and Producer has come for the shooting.

Article

- यहाँ Secretary and treasurer तथा director and producer एक ही व्यक्ति है।
लेकिन अगर अलग-अलग व्यक्ति को सम्बोधित करना हो तो article 'the' का प्रयोग सभी पद के पहले करें।
जैसे: (a) The secretary and the treasurer were present there.
➤ यहाँ secretary एवं treasurer अलग-अलग व्यक्ति है।

A/AN ,oaONE ds chp dk varj

1. **A/An Article** हैं, जबकि **One** एक **Adjective** है।
2. प्रतिदिन, प्रति सप्ताह, प्रति किलो, कीमत या दर के लिए 'a' का प्रयोग ही किया जायेगा 'one' का नहीं।
Ten rupees a kilo, four times a day, Sixty kilometers an hour, Twelve rupees a dozen.
3. 'a' एवं 'one' का **noun** के साथ प्रयोग करने पर भिन्न-भिन्न अर्थ निकलता है। **A/An** का अर्थ **any** या **every** से भी होता है;
जैसे: One cow is not enough for the family's requirement. (*We need two or more cows.*)
A cow is a useful animal. (*Cows are useful.*)
4. '**One**' का प्रयोग **another/other** के साथ किया जा सकता है, 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं;
जैसे: (a) One student wants to study, another wants to play.
(b) One day he comes, the other day he does not.
5. '**One**' का प्रयोग **day/week/month/year/summer/winter etc.** के नाम के पूर्व किया जा सकता है जो उस दिन/समय होने वाली किसी घटना के सन्दर्भ में प्रयुक्त होता है;
जैसे: (a) One night there was a terrible storm.
(b) One day Ravana came to Sita's cottage.
6. **One day** का प्रयोग 'किसी दिन' के अर्थ में किया जाता है;
जैसे: (a) **One day** you'll realise your mistake.
(b) **One day** you will feel sorry for what you have done.
7. '**One**' का प्रयोग '**a/an**' के **pronoun** के समरूप भी किया जाता है;
जैसे: (a) Did you get any berth? Yes, I managed to get **one**.
- 'One' का बहुवचन (plural) उक्त प्रयोग में 'some' होगा;
जैसे: Did you get berths? Yes I managed to get **some**.
8. 'Noun' के 'repetition' से बचने के लिए pronoun 'one' the का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: (a) This car is better than that one.

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) The loss of jobs/ (b) is regarded by some as an necessary evil/ (c) in the fight against inflation./ (d) No error.
2. (a) It is a/ (b) quarter to ten/ (c) by my watch./ (d) No error.
3. (a) Gita doesn't usually/ (b) wear jewellery but yesterday/ (c) she wore ring./ (d) No error.

Article

4. (a) The police asked us/ (b) about our movements/ (c) on a night of crime./ (d) No error.
5. (a) In science the credit goes to a man/ (b) who convinces the world,/ (c) not to the man to whom the idea first occurs./ (d) No error.
6. (a) It is only after/ (b) the match is over/ (c) that people realize/ how exciting it is./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Of the two/ (b) sisters, she/ (c) is better./ (d) No error.
8. (a) It is unfortunate enough/ (b) to lose few friends we make/ (c) during our school days./ (d) No error.
9. (a) There were a number of intelligent gentlemen at the party/ (b) but it was Mr. Subramaniam, an eminent scientist,/ (c) who remained a centre of attraction./ (d) No error.
10. (a) I have been/ (b) informed that/ (c) Mr. Sharma, the director and the chairman will visit Patna the following month./ (d) No error.
11. (a) He is/ (b) the best worker/ (c) of the factory but unfortunately least paid./ (d) No error.
12. (a) He has come out/ (b) with an unique proposal/ (c) for his friends (d) No error.
13. (a) When the house was/ (b) set on the fire, all the people/ (c) started shouting at the top of their voices./ (d) No error.
14. (a) Little knowledge/ (b) of medicine that he possessed/ (c) proved to be a blessing for him when he was in great pain./ (d) No error.
15. (a) It was/ (b) by a mistake/ (c) that he injured her hand./ (d) No error.
16. (a) These orders of/ (b) the Manager/ (c) may put the lives of two thousand workers in a danger./ (d) No error.
17. (a) I inspired him/ (b) to take the heart/ (c) in all adverse situations and deserve to be called a real hero./ (d) No error.
18. (a) The most happy/ (b) marriage would be/ (c) a union of a deaf man and a blind woman./ (d) No error.
19. (a) John suggested to/ (b) the children of his village that they should/ (c) go to the school regularly and do their home work sincerely./ (d) No error.
20. (a) Some people say that/ (b) her husband is in the jail/ (c) and so she lives alone./ (d) No error.
21. (a) The Greek peoples/ (b) are considered/ (c) very brave/ (d) No error.
22. (a) His father/ (b) asked him to go/ (c) to the temple every morning/ (d) No error.
23. (a) There was little/ (b) milk in the refrigerator and she gave it/ (c) to her crying son./ (d) No error.
24. (a) He leads/ (b) a very luxurious life / (c) so he goes to every part of India by a car./ (d) No error.
25. (a) Thanks to an effort/ (b) and persistence of the doctors, the victims of the blast/ (c) have been able to start a normal life again./ (d) No error.
26. (a) In a hour's time/ (b) I will be back/ (c) but now I have to go./ (d) No error.
27. (a) Terrorist organizations/ (b) kill innocent people/ (c) to spread a violence./ (d) No error.
28. (a) Whole world is/ (b) today facing the threat of extinction/ (c) due to the inventions of Science./ (d) No error.
29. (a) The answer/ (b) to all the sufferings of / (c) human beings lies in the Science./ (d) No error.
30. (a) The police should exercise/ (b) their authority with little/ (c) bit of sensitivity

Article

- and humanity./ (d) No error.
31. (a) This is/ (b) most important/ (c) lesson which we will have to study very carefully./ No error.
32. (a)The Ganges/ (b) is for North India/ (c) what Krishna is for South India./ (d) No error.
33. (a) I like to travel/ (b) by the air as/ (c) I am a very busy person./ (d) No error.
34. (a) The Chairman and the Trustee/ (b) was removed from his/ (c) post because he had misappropriated the fund./ (d) No error.
35. (a) She found/ (b) herself in a trouble/ (c) when she saw the stalker following her persistently./ (d) No error.
36. (a) All the people/ (b) of India know that/ (c) Gandhi ji was a very wise and a noble soul./ (d) No error.
37. (a) The man/ (b) is the only creature/ (c) that is endowed with the art of humour./ (d) No error.
38. (a) It is very difficult/ (b) to find out the number of/ (c) the creatures living on the earth./ (d) No error.
39. (a) While climbing/ (b)the hill, to his amazement , the/ (c) poor man found the box of pearls./ (d) No error.
40. (a) The blast derailed the lives / (b)of many people but in an year/ (c) time leaving apart the victims,no one remembered anything/ (d) No error.
41. (a)Cowards die/ (b) several times,/ (c) the braves die but once/ (d) No error.
42. (a) Akbar became a heir/ (b)to the throne at/ (c) a young age of thirteen/ (d) No error.
43. (a) The both brothers/ (b) are safe now/ (c) and are recuperating./ (d) No error.
44. (a) When the principal entered the classroom/ (b) all boys shook/ (c) in their shoes/ (d) No error.
45. (a) Father in him/ (b) could not bear the condition of/ (c) his ailing daughter/ (d) No error.
46. (a) Let judge in you/ (b) decide what/ (c) punishment should be given to him/ (d) No error.
47. (a) My teacher said that/ (b) Sun is a/ (c) star/ (d) No error.
48. (a) Due to its beauty/ (b) Kashmir is known as/ (c) Switzerland of India/ (d) No error.
49. (a) Most of the people of Southern India/ (b) do not know/ (c) the Hindi/ (d) No error.
50. (a) He went for the lunch/ (b) at 1 p.m. and then/ (c) returned/ (d) No error.
51. (a) The honesty/ (b) is/ (c) a virtue./ (d) No error.
52. (a) Every morning the Sun/ (b) rises/ (c) in east/ (d) No error.
53. (a) He is/ (b) best player/ (c) in India./ (d) No error.
54. (a) When I met him/ (b) the couple of days back/ (c) he was writing a new book,/ (d) No error.

Answers with explanation

1. (b) ‘necessary evil’ के पहले ‘an’ नहीं ‘a’ का प्रयोग करें। ‘necessary’ vowel नहीं consonant sound से शुरू होता है।
2. (a) ‘Quarter to ten’ के पहले ‘a’ का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

Article —

3. (c) 'ring' singular countable noun है जिसका पहली बार जिक्र हो रहा है। अतः 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
4. (c) 'night of crime' वह निश्चित रात है जिस रात crime हुआ। अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
5. (a) जिस व्यक्ति ने world को convince किया वह निश्चित व्यक्ति है। अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
6. (b) यहाँ किसी निश्चित match की बात नहीं की जा रही है अतः 'the' का प्रयोग गलत है। वाक्य का अर्थ है कि जब कोई match खत्म हो जाता है तब लोग समझ पाते हैं कि वह match कितना exciting था। अतः match के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
7. (c) better के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। अगर दो में से एक का चुनाव किया जाता है तो comparative degree का प्रयोग होता है जिसके पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
8. (b) यहाँ 'few' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ उन कुछ दोस्तों की बात हो रही है जिन्हें हम school days में दोस्त बना लेते हैं। वे दोस्त निश्चित noun हैं अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
9. (c) 'centre of attraction' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। क्योंकि 'Mr. Subramaniam' निश्चित noun है अतः definite article 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
10. (c) यहाँ एक ही व्यक्ति Mr. Sharma को दो पद उपलब्ध है। अतः सिर्फ director के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें, Chairman के पहले नहीं। (sub-verb agreement देखें)
11. (c) 'Least' superlative degree of adjective है। अतः least के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि adjective के superlative degree के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
12. (b) Unique 'यू' sound से शुरू होता है। अतः 'an' नहीं 'a' का प्रयोग करें।
13. (b) 'Set on fire' उपयुक्त Phrase है।
14. (a) यहाँ 'little' का प्रयोग 'थोड़ा सा' के संदर्भ में प्रयुक्त हो रहा है 'न' के बराबर के संदर्भ में नहीं। फिर 'medicine' शब्द से ये definite भी हो जा रहा है अतः 'the little' का प्रयोग करें। वैसे यहाँ 'a little' का भी प्रयोग करना ठीक रहेगा।
15. (b) 'By mistake' सही प्रयोग है।
16. (c) 'in danger' सही प्रयोग होता है।
17. (b) 'to take heart' सही phrase है। इसका अर्थ है आशावादी होना।
18. (c) 'Union' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ किसी एक 'union' की बात नहीं हो रही है।
19. (c) अगर 'school' से हमारा तात्पर्य 'पढ़ाई करना' है तो 'school' के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
20. (b) यहाँ 'jail' से हमारा तात्पर्य jail के प्राथमिक उद्देश्य सजा से है अतः jail के पहले article का प्रयोग न करें।
21. (a) 'Peoples' का अर्थ है विभिन्न नस्ल के लोग। The Greeks/The Greek people' से हम पूरे Greek नस्ल को सम्बोधित करते हैं। अतः 'peoples' शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
22. (c) यहाँ 'temple' से हमारा तात्पर्य पूजा है। अतः temple के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
23. (a) यहाँ हमारा तात्पर्य थोड़ा सा दूध है जिसे बच्चे को दिया गया अतः 'a little' का प्रयोग करें।
24. (c) 'By car' सही प्रयोग होगा।
25. (a) 'effort' के पहले 'the' लगाये। यहाँ एक effort की बात नहीं हो रही है।
26. (a) 'hour' का उच्चारण 'अ' से शुरू होता है। अतः hour के पहले 'a' नहीं 'an' का प्रयोग करें।
27. (c) 'Violence' Countable नहीं है। अतः 'violence' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

Article

28. (a) Whole के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
29. (c) किसी भी विषय के नाम के साथ article का प्रयोग नहीं होता। 'Science' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
30. (b) little के पहले a का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि 'a little' का अर्थ होता है 'थोड़ा-सा' और 'little' का अर्थ होता है 'न के बराबर'।
31. (b) 'most' superlative degree है। अतः most के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (c) Krishna के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें क्योंकि नदियों के नाम के साथ 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
33. (b) 'by air' सही प्रयोग है।
34. (a) वाक्य से ज्ञात होता है कि दोनों पद एक ही व्यक्ति को हासिल है। अतः 'the' का प्रयोग सिर्फ पहले पद (chairman) के लिए करें। 'Trustee' के पहले का 'the' हटा दें।
35. (b) 'trouble' uncountable noun है। अतः उसके पहले 'a' का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता।
36. (c) Gandhiji (एक व्यक्ति) के दो विशेषताओं का उल्लेख हो रहा है। अतः 2nd adjective 'noble' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग गलत है।
37. (a) 'Man' का अर्थ होता है मानव जाति। अतः 'man' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
38. (c) 'Creatures' के पहले का 'the' हटा दो। 'number of' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग हो चुका है।
39. (c) 'a box of pearls' सही प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि उस 'poor' man' का इसकी जानकारी नहीं थी अतः box of pearls उसके लिए definite नहीं था।
40. (b) 'year' के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग होता है। year का उच्चारण 'इ' से नहीं 'य' से शुरू होता है।
41. (c) 'The brave' का अर्थ है सभी वीर। 'brave' adjective है। Adjective का बहुवचन नहीं बनाया जा सकता 'Cowards' noun है।
42. (a) 'heir' का उच्चारण 'ए' से शुरू होता है। अतः 'heir' के पहले 'an' का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ 'the' का प्रयोग भी उपयुक्त रहता।
43. (a) Both के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग होता है।
44. (b) 'All' के बाद 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
45. (a) 'father' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें। जब किसी व्यक्ति के अंदर मौजूद किसी व्यक्तित्व का उल्लेख करना हो तो उसके पहले article का प्रयोग होता है।
46. (a) प्रश्न 45 की व्याख्या देखें।
47. (b) 'sun' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
48. (c) 'Switzerland' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
49. (c) 'Hindi' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
50. (a) 'lunch' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग न करें।
51. (a) 'The' हटा दे। Abstract noun के साथ 'article' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
52. (c) 'east' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग करें।
53. (b) 'best' के पहले 'the' का प्रयोग होगा।
54. (b) 'The' को 'a' में परिवर्तित करें।

14

PREPOSITION

CHAPTER

Preposition वह शब्द या शब्द समूह है जो किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उस **Noun** या **Pronoun** का अन्य शब्दों के साथ संबंध बताता है; जैसे-

- (i) There is a cat sitting **under** the table.
- (ii) We need a roof **over** us.
- (iii) I go to school **by** bus

नोट: **Preposition** का प्रयोग **Noun** या **Pronoun** के पहले नहीं भी हो सकता है;

जैसे: (i) Who was he talking **to**?

- (ii) He does not have a pen to write **with**.

CONFUSING PAIR OF PREPOSITION

Between	- Among	Beside	- Besides	For	-	Since
Across	- Through	on	- upon	on	-	over
in	- into	in	- within	by	-	with
before	- in front of	at	- in	in spite of	-	despite

(1) Among

Between

➤ **Among** का प्रयोग हमेशा दो से अधिक के संदर्भ में होता है।

जैसे: 1. A lot of co-operation is needed **among** the different States to combat naxalism.
between

- 2. Alms were distributed **among** the beggars.
- 3. The teacher distributed sweets **among** them.

➤ **Between** का अर्थ है 'दो के बीच में'

among

जैसे: The match will be played **between** India and Australia.

➤ **Between** का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के लिए भी होता है बशर्ते उनमें पारस्परिक संबंध (**Mutual relationship**) हो;

जैसे: (i) There is a tournament to be played **between** India, Australia and New Zealand.
(ii) There is an alliance **between** the three European nations.

➤ **Between** के बाद हमेशा **objective case** का प्रयोग होता है;

- Preposition

- जैसे: (i) There is no enmity **between him** and **me** (न कि he and I)
 ➤ **Between** के बाद 'and' Conjunction का प्रयोग किया जाता है;

जैसे: (i) The meeting will be held **between** 10 a.m. **and** 4 p.m.
 ➤ **Between** के बाद **Noun** या **Pronoun** हमेशा **Plural form** में होता हैं;

जैसे: (i) Between **the countries**.
 (ii) Between **the students**.
 (iii) Between **them**.
 (iv) Between **us**.

➤ **Between** के बाद कभी भी **each**, **every** आदि का प्रयोग नहीं होता हैं;

जैसे: (i) Between **each boy**. (✗)
 (ii) Between **every girl**. (✗)

➤ **Amongst** का प्रयोग among के अर्थ में होता है। दोनों के प्रयोग के बीच का अंतर देखें:-
 (a) 'The' से पहले '**amongst**' एवं '**among**' दोनों का प्रयोग हो सकता है;
 जैसे: (i) **Among the** boys.
 या,
 (ii) **Amongst the** boys.

➤ '**Among**' का प्रयोग **Consonant Sound** से शुरू होने वाले शब्दों के पहले तथा **amongst** का प्रयोग
Vowel Sound से शुरू होने वाले शब्दों के पहले होता है;

जैसे: (i) **among** them
 (ii) **amongst** us

➤ **Amid** तथा **Amidst** का प्रयोग भी दो से अधिक के लिए होता है। इनके प्रयोग में वही अन्तर है जो among तथा amongst के प्रयोग में है। **Amid** एवं **amidst** का प्रयोग **uncountable noun** के साथ भी होता है।
 जैसे: (i) The Bill was passed **amid** pandemonium.
 (ii) You are sitting **amidst** us and talking against us.

(2) Beside Besides
 के बगल में के अलावा या के अतिरिक्त

जैसे: (i) He sat **beside** me.
 (ii) **Besides** his children, his nephews and nieces were also present at the ceremony.

(3) For Since
 ➤ जब अवधि का उल्लेख हो तो **Perfect** एवं **Perfect Continuous Tense** में 'for' का प्रयोग करें।
 जैसे: 1. I have eaten nothing **for** a long time.
 2. She has been living here **for** ten years.
 ➤ जब शुरूआती समय का उल्लेख हो तो **Perfect** एवं **Perfect Continuous Tense** में 'since' का प्रयोग करें।
 जैसे: I haven't seen him **since** 2009.

Preposition ——————

➤ **Since** का प्रयोग 'चुकिं/ क्योंकि' के अर्थ में भी होता है।

जैसे: **Since** he drove recklessly, he met with an accident.

➤ **Since, because** एवं **as** का Pair **so** नहीं होता है।

since....., (✓), since so /therefore(x)

as , (✓), as..... so /therefore (x)

because , (✓), because..... so/therefore (x)

जैसे: **Since** I was ill so I could not come. (x)

Since I was ill , I could not come. (✓)

नोट: **As** you sow, **so** shall you reap

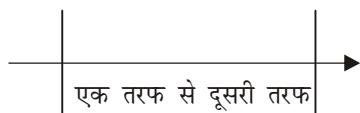
उपरोक्त Phrase में **as** के साथ **so** का प्रयोग होता है। यहाँ **as.....so** का अर्थ 'जैसा वैसा' निकलता है।

➤ **'For'** का अर्थ 'के लिए' भी होता है।

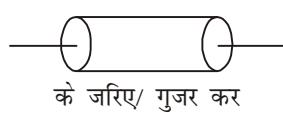
जैसे: The police is **for** our safety.

(4)

Across



Through



जैसे: 1. I swam **across** the river.

1.The message was conveyed to me by him **through** her.

2.The train passed **through** the tunnel.

Across का प्रयोग भी कई अर्थों में होता है—

➤ **उस पार (on the opposite side of)**

(i) He is waiting for me **across** the road.

➤ **दोनों तरफ (both sides)**

(i) A tree fell **across** the railway line that caused the accident.

➤ **come across (अचानक मुलाकात होना)**

(i) When I was going to college, I **suddenly came across** my childhood friend.(x)

नोट: (1) ध्यान रखें कि '**come across**' का अर्थ है 'अचानक मुलाकात होना'। अतः '**come across**' के साथ '**suddenly**' का प्रयोग न करें।

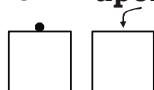
When I was going to college, I **came across** my childhood friend. (✓)

(2) **come across** के साथ **with** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

जैसे: (i) I came across with him. (x)

(ii) I came across him. (✓)

(5) **on upon**



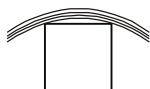
Preposition

- जैसे: 1. The book is **on** the table. (यहाँ **on** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर - एक दूसरे के स्पर्श में हैं)
 2. The cat jumped **upon** the rat. (यहाँ **upon** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर - **motion** में।)

(6) over



- जैसे: We need a roof **over** our head. (यहाँ **over** का अर्थ है- के ऊपर पर स्पर्श में नहीं!)
 ➤ अगर किसी वस्तु पर किसी चीज का आवरण हो तो 'over' का प्रयोग करे चाहे वो touch में हो या नहीं।



- जैसे: 1. The bridge was built **over** the river.
 2. Put a blanket **over** the baby.

(7) Over तथा Under का प्रयोग vertical position बताने के लिए होता है;

Over Under

- जैसे: (i) There is a fan **over** your head.
 (ii) A cat is sitting **under** the table.

(8) In Into



- जैसे: 1. We are sitting **in** the classroom. (यहाँ **in** का अर्थ है- में/ के अंदर)
 2. The boy jumped **into** the river. (यहाँ **into** का अर्थ है- के अंदर आता हुआ- **motion** में)

नोट: Enter के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग नहीं होता। यहाँ 'Throw' के साथ भी 'into' नहीं 'in' का प्रयोग करें।

- जैसे: He entered **into** the room. (into हटा दें)

He threw the ball **into** the well. (into के स्थान पर **in** का प्रयोग करें)

नोट: **Enter into agreement/alliance** एवं **enter on/upon** (अर्थ: **to undertake**) का प्रयोग करना सही है।

(9) On time In time
समय पर समय से

- जैसे: 1. We reach the examination centre **in** time.
 2. The examination starts **on** time.
 3. We thought that the train would be late but it arrived exactly **in** **on** time.

(10) By With
के द्वारा से (औजार या हथियार)

- जैसे: 1. The paper was signed **by** him **with** a parker pen **in** black ink.
 2. The snake was killed **by** the man **with** a stick.
 3. You cannot catch a big fish **with** a small rod.

(11) Before In front of
के पहले/ के समक्ष के सामने

Preposition ——————

के पहले:

जैसे: I came **before** you.

के समक्ष:

जैसे: India raised the issue of cross-border terrorism **before** the U.N.

In front of:

के सामने

जैसे: Don't park your car **in front of** my gate.

(12) At - In

➤ सापेक्ष रूप से छोटे स्थान के साथ 'at' का प्रयोग करे और बड़े स्थान के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: I live **at** Mukherji Nagar **in** Delhi.

(13) In spite of Despite

के बावजूद

के बावजूद

जैसे: **In spite of** working hard, he failed.

नोट: 'Despite' के साथ 'of' लगा कर error दिए जाते हैं। 'Despite' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग न करें।

जैसे: **Despite** being rich, he is not happy.

(14) By - In

जैसे: 1. I am sitting **in** the car. (✓)

2. I am going **in** car. (✗)

3. I am going **by** car. (✓)

➤ किसी भी वाहन से यात्रा करते हुए दर्शाया जाये तो '**By + vehicle**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है लेकिन अगर पैदल यात्रा करने की बात की जाये तब '**on foot**' का प्रयोग करते हैं।

जैसे: I go to Paramount **on** foot.

(15) exact time (hour) month year Day Date

at **in** **in** **on** **on**

जैसे: I reached Delhi **at** 7 O' clock

in May

in 2005

on Monday

on 7th September

➤ '**At**' का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित समय के साथ करें।

at dawn, **at** dusk, **at** day break, **at** sunrise, **at** noon, **at** sunset, **at** night, **at** midnight etc.

नोट: **Morning/evening** के साथ **in** का प्रयोग होता है। **Morning/evening** के साथ यदि **date/day** का प्रयोग हो, तो इनके पहले भी '**on**' का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (i) **in** the morning.

(ii) **in** the evening.

(iii) **on** sunday morning.

(iv) **on** the evening of May, the 2nd.

➤ **today, tomorrow, yesterday, the following day, the next day, yesterday evening, yesterday afternoon, last night, this morning, this afternoon, tonight, tomorrow**

Preposition

morning, tomorrow evening आदि कि पहले **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) He will go there on **tomorrow**. ('on' हटा दें)
(ii) They arrived here on last night. ('on' हटा दें)

(16) **After** (के बाद) तथा **Before** (के पहले):

- जैसे: (i) He returned India **after** a long time.
(ii) I left America **before** Christmas.

(17) **Till/until** का प्रयोग **Point of Time** के साथ होता है;

- जैसे: (i) The Government will not pass any Bill **until/till** next session.

(18) **By** का प्रयोग **Preposition of Time** के रूप में **Point of Time** के साथ होता है;

- जैसे: (i) We shall have finished the syllabus **by** the end of next month.

(19) **During** का प्रयोग **अवधि (duration)** बताने के लिए किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) **During** the strike, many people died.

(20) Up Down Upto



- जैसे: 1. He climbed **up** the tree.
2. He ran **down** the stairs.
3. Children can get free education **upto** the age of 14.

dqN vU; PREPOSITION-

(1) **TO** का प्रयोग लक्ष्य (**destination**) के लिए किया जाता है;

- जैसे: (i) Ram is going **to** college
(ii) Send him **to** school.

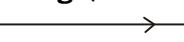
(2) **Towards** का अर्थ है 'की ओर' (**in the direction of**); यह दिशा बताता है, न कि लक्ष्य;

- जैसे: (i) He is going **towards** the college.

(3) **For** का प्रयोग भी **Preposition of direction** के रूप में लक्ष्य (**destination**) के लिए होता है;

- जैसे: (i) He is leaving **for** America tonight.

(4) **Along** (समानान्तर)



जब किसी एक को किसी दूसरी वस्तु के समानान्तर दर्शाना हो तब **along** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

- जैसे: 1. I walked **along** the railway line.

2. He walks **along** the road. (न कि on the road)

जब दो साथ-साथ समानान्तर हो तब **alongwith** का प्रयोग होता है।

- जैसे: come **alongwith** me.

(5) **Against** का प्रयोग कई अर्थों में है-

Preposition —

- (a) प्रतिकूल (**opposite**)

जैसे: It is difficult to sail **against** current.

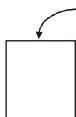
- (b) के विरुद्ध

जैसे: I am **against** terrorism.

- (c) सहारा लेकर या टेक लगाकर

जैसे: Do not stand **against** the railing. You may fall down.

(6) Onto



He jumped **onto** his horse and rode away.

(7) With

के साथ

जैसे: I am **with** you through all thick and thin.

(8) Beyond

के बाहर/ के परे

जैसे: The case is **beyond** the jurisdiction of the court.

(9) About का प्रयोग कई अर्थों में है-

- (a) के बारे में

जैसे: I know **about** him.

- (b) लगभग

जैसे: It is **about** 100 kms. away from Delhi.

- (c) '**about + Infinitive**' (कार्य तुरंत होने का भाव)

जैसे: I am **about to** start a new lesson.

- '**about + to+V₁**' के स्थान पर '**going + to+V₁**' या ' $\underbrace{\text{be}}_{\text{any form}} + \text{to} + V_1$ ' का भी प्रयोग करने से वाक्य के भावार्थ में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।

जैसे: 1. I am **going to** start a new lesson now.

2. The minister **is to** deliver a speech.

(10) Above तथा **Below** का प्रयोग **level** बताने के लिए होता है; किसी मानक (**standard**), स्तर (**level**) या चिन्ह (**mark**) से ऊपर **Above** का प्रयोग और उनसे नीचे **Below** का प्रयोग करें।

जैसे: (i) The river is flowing **above** the danger level.

(ii) His English is **below** average.

(iii) The selling price of every commodity in the Multiplex is **above** MRP.

(vi) The score was **below** hundred when the last batsman was declared out.

- Preposition

(11) Of

- 'Of' का प्रयोग निर्जीव का अधिकार दर्शने के लिये किया जाता है।

जैसे: 1. Table's wood (✗) 2. Chair's leg (✗)
Wood **of** table (✓) Leg **of** chair (✓)

- **Of** का प्रयोग विभिन्न अर्थों में होता है-

- #### ➤ (a) स्रोत (origin)

जैसे: (i) He comes **of** a royal family.

- (b) बिमारी से मरना - 'die **of**' कारण से मरना - 'die **from**'

जैसे: (i) He died **of** cancer

- (ii) He died **of** cancer.

८ (c) संबंध (relation)

जैसे: (i) The problems of Delhi

(12) Off से अलगाव (separation) का बोध होता है।

जैसे: (i) Keep the d

(13) **Behind** (पीछे)

- (i) The police are running **behind**

(ii) She hid **behind** the curtain.

PREPOSITION as d^zs esa d^zN vko 'd rE';

(1) Preposition के बाद **Objective Case**

(ii) She relies on me.

लगत ह ता इन शब्दों क साथ प्रयुक्त हान वाल Prepositions हैं।

- (i) She is **conscious of** and **engaged in** her work.

(ii) I am **conscious of** the small **details** of the job.

- (ii) I was **surprised at** as well as **pleased with** her performance.

- (iii) He is senior and older than I. (Use 'to' after 'senior')

- (iv) His watch is different and cheaper than mine. (Use 'from' after 'different')

- (v) She is younger and taller **than** her brother. (✓)

(3) अगर Prepositions के बाद 'verb' का प्रयोग होता है तो verb 'v₁+ing' form में होना चाहें।

Preposition ——————

जैसे: He is afraid **of** going out after sunset.
 V_i+ing

- (4) **Home** शब्द के पहले किसी **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होता यदि इसके पहले निम्नलिखित में से किसी भी verb का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: **Bring, go, get, arrive, reach.**

(i) I went home by car.

नोट: किन्तु, यदि 'home' के पहले कोई '**Possessive Case**' के Adjective (जैसे: **my, your, his, her, our, their**) या **noun** के साथ 's (जैसे: Ram's, Rohit's) आदि का प्रयोग हो तो **home** के पहले 'to' का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे: (i) I went **to his home**.

(ii) I decided to go **to Ram's home**.

- (5) **Stress, emphasise, investigate, comprise, accompany, consider, violate, pervade, precede, succeed, invade, resist, enter, eschew, direct, join, sign, affect, ensure, board, discuss, describe, reach, order, tell, demand, attack, control, resemble,** और **ridicule.**

जब ये verbs '**Active Voice**' में प्रयोग किये जा रहे हों तो इनके बाद किसी **Preposition** का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

जैसे: 1. The teacher emphasised on the need of discipline in life. (Drop 'on').

2. I have ordered for a cup of tea. (Drop 'for')

3. I shall discuss about the problem with you. (Drop 'about')

4. (a) He described/ (b) about the incident/ (c) in his story./ (d) No error
[(b) में 'about' का प्रयोग गलत है।]

- (6) संवाद (Communication) में प्रयोग किए जाने वाले verb (जो किसी कर्म (object) के पहले आता हो) के साथ to का प्रयोग न करें। ये verb हैं: **advise, tell, ask, beg, command, encourage, request, inform, order** etc.

जैसे: (i) I advised **to** him to go. (Drop 'to')

(ii) I informed **to** the police of the accident. (Drop 'to')

- (7) **Say / suggest / propose** के बाद हमेशा 'to' Preposition का प्रयोग होता है यदि इसके बाद **Object** के रूप में कोई व्यक्ति का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: (i) You **suggested to him** that he should leave the place.

(ii) She **said to me** that she would help me.

- (8) **Speak, reply, explain, complain, talk, listen, write** आदि के बाद भी हमेशा 'to' Preposition का प्रयोग होता है यदि इसके बाद **Object** के रूप में कोई व्यक्ति का प्रयोग हो;

जैसे: (i) He did not **reply to** me.

Preposition

(9) Preposition के दृष्टिकोण से verb के साथ प्रयुक्त objects (Direct/Indirect) पर ध्यान दें-

(i) '**Furnish, Intrust, Present, Provide, Supply**' इत्यादि के प्रयोग।

- जैसे:
- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| I provided him money. | (Incorrect) |
| I provided him with money. | (Correct) |
| or I provided money to him. | |

(ii) Object के अनुसार निम्न verbs के सही प्रयोग को ध्यान से देखें:-

Compensate, Explain, Fine, Propose, Recommend, Rob, Suggest, इत्यादि।

- (i) Rob a person **of** something.
(ii) We informed the police **of** an accident.
(iii) I explained the matter **to** him.
(iv) He robbed her **of** her jewellery.

SOME PHRASE PREPOSITION:

(1) **According to-** के अनुसार

जैसे: **According to** the terms and conditions, he will have to finish it in two days.

(2) **By dint of-** के बल पर

जैसे: I passed the exam **by dint of** hard work.

(3) **In case of-** अगर

जैसे: **In case of** emergency, call 100.

(4) **by virtue of-** के बल पर

जैसे: The judge can pass the order **by virtue of** his powers.

(5) **Owing to -** के कारण

Owing to एवं **Due to** अर्थ में एक ही है। दोनों के बीच मुख्यतः दो अंतर हैं-

(1) वाक्य की शुरूआत 'owing to' से करें 'due to' से नहीं।

जैसे: Due to heavy rains, I could not come. (✗)

Owing to heavy rains, I could not come. (✓)

(2) 'Be' के किसी भी form के बाद 'due to' का प्रयोग होता है।

जैसे: The accident was owing to heavy rains. (✗)

The accident was ^{form of 'be'} due to heavy rains. (✓)

^{form of 'be'}

(6) **With reference to-** के सन्दर्भ में

जैसे: **With reference to** your letter, dated 27th July 2011, I hereby submit my reply.

(7) **In order to-** ताकि

जैसे: We vacated the premises **in order to** avoid litigation.

(8) **In course of-** के दौरान

जैसे: **In course of** time, I faced many problems.

(9) **On behalf of-** के स्थान पर

जैसे: He came to receive the award **on behalf of** his brother.

(10) **Agreeably to-** के अनुसरण में

जैसे: **Agreeably to** the terms of the agreement, we will pay you ` 1 lakh.

Preposition —————

(11) **By means of-** के सहायता से

जैसे: He amassed a lot of money **by means of** sharp practices.

(12) **For the sake of-** के लाले

जैसे: Save plants atleast **for the sake of** your children.

(13) **In favour of-** के पक्ष में

जैसे: He voted **in favour of** his friend.

(14) **In lieu of-** के बदले में

जैसे: He got fifty thousand rupees **in lieu of** his claim.

(15) **On account of-** के कारण

जैसे: **On account of** his negligence, the company suffered heavy loss.

(16) **In relation to-** के संबंध में

जैसे: There are some rules **in relation to** the organization of the match.

Usage:-

1. I acted **according to** your order.
I acted **in accordance with** your order.
2. Mother Teresa had **affection for** all.
Mother Teresa was **affectionate to** all.
3. He has **ambition for** fame.
He is **ambitious of** fame.
4. I am **capable of** doing hard work.
I have **capacity for** doing hard work.
5. I have **confidence in** myself.
I am **confident about** myself.
6. He has **desire for** money and fame.
He is **desirous of** money and fame.

USE OF APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

*****A*****

Abhorrence **of** से नफरत

Abhorrent **to** से नफरत होना

Absorbed **in** में व्यस्त

Abstemious **in** में पहरेज

Abstinence **from** से पहरेज

Acceptable **to** को स्वीकार्य

Access **to** तक पहुँच होना

Accessible **to** तक पहुँच

Accession **to** किसी पद तक पहुँचना

Accomplished **in** में निपुण

Accurate **in** में सटीक

Preposition

Accused of	में आरोपी होना
Accustomed to	का आदी होना
Acquaintance with	से वाकिफ
Acquainted with	से वाकिफ होना
Acquit of	से बरी होना
adapted to	के अनुकूल होना
Addicted to	का लत होना
Adjacent to	के बगल में
Affable to	प्रिय/मित्र होना
Affection for	से लगाव
Affectionate to	से लगाव होना
Afflicted with	से त्रस्त होना
Afraid of	से डरना
Agreeable to	के अनुकूल
agree with someone	किसी व्यक्ति से सहमत होना
Agree to something	किसी चीज/योजना से सहमत होना
Akin to	के जैसा होना
alarmed at	से/पर स्तब्ध होना
Alien to	से अंजान/अभिज्ञ होना
Allegiance to	वफादार/पक्ष में होना
Alliance with	से सम्बंध/सम्झौता
Alternative to	का विकल्प होना
Ambition for	का लक्ष्य होना
Amenable to	इच्छुक होना
Analogous to	के जैसा होना
angry with (someone)	किसी व्यक्ति से गुस्सा होना
Angry at (something)	किसी बात/चीज पर गुस्सा होना
annoyed at (something)	किसी चीज से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
annoyed with (someone)	किसी व्यक्ति से परेशान हो/चिढ़ जाना
Antidote to	किसी जहर का काट होना
Antipathy to	से नफरत होना
Anxiety for	की चिन्ता होना
anxious about something	किसी कारण चिन्तीत होना
Apologise for a fault	गलती के लिए माफी माँगना
Apologise to a person	किसी से माफी माँगना
Apology for	का खेद होना
Appetite for	का भुख होना
Applicable to	पर लागू होना

Preposition

Apply for a post etc.	पद के लिए आवेदन करना
Apply to a person, office etc.	किसी को आवेदन करना
Appoint to a post	किसी पद पर नियुक्ति होना
Apprehensive of	की आशंका होना
Apprise of	के बारे में सूचित करना
Approach to	को संपर्क करना
Appropriate to	के अनुकूल होना
Approve of	की स्वीकृति देना
Argue before someone	बहस करना (के सामने)
Argue with a person	किसी से बहस करना
Arrive at (a place)	पहुँचना (जगह पर)
Arrive in (a country)	पहुँचना (देश में)
Ashamed of	के लिए लज्जित होना
Ask for (a thing)	माँग करना (किसी चीज़ का/किसी से)
Ask of or from somebody for something	माँग करना (किसी से) किसी चीज़ के लिए
Assent to	की स्वीकृति देना
Assiduous in	में मेहनती होना
Associated with	के साथ/सहयोगी हो जाना
Assurance of	का भरोसा
Assure of	का भरोसा दिलाना
Astonished at	पर अर्चभित होना
Attachment to	से लगाव होना
Attend to (duty etc.)	निभाना (कर्तव्य इत्यादि)
Attention to	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Attract to or towards (a person or thing)	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail of (opportunity etc.)	का लाभ उठाना
Averse to	नापसंद होना
Aware of	से वाकिफ होना
Abound in (mineral etc.)	में सम्पन्न होना
Abound with (things)	से भरा
Absolve from (guilt, promise, duty etc.)	से मुक्त/बरी होना
Absorb in (work)	में व्यस्त
Abstain from (bad habits)	से परहेज
Accede to (a request or proposal)	मान जाना (किसी निवेदन को)
Adhere to (rules)	का अनुपालन करना
Approve of (proposal)	की स्वीकृति देना
Acquaint with	से अवगत
Attain to (a position/post)	पर पहुँचना

Preposition

Attraction for (a thing or person)	के प्रति आकर्षण
Aloof from (bad company)	से अलग
Abide by (rules)	का पालन करना
Admit to (school etc.)	में भर्ती करना
Admit of	की गुंजाइश
Alight on (the ground)	पर उतरना
Alight from (a bus, car, train)	से उतरना
Amuse at	का मजाक उड़ाना
Amuse with	के साथ लुट्फ उठाना
Answer to (a person)	को जवाब देना
Answer for (etc.)	का जवाबदेह होना
Antipathy to (a thing)	किसी चीज से विरक्ति
Antipathy against (a person)	किसी व्यक्ति से विरक्ति
Affiliated to (a University or Board)	से सम्बद्ध
Affiliated with (a party)	से साथ होना
Attend to	के तरफ ध्यान देना
Antidote to (poison)	का नाशक
Antidote against	का इलाज
Agree with (a person)	किसी से सहमत होना
Agree on (a point)	किसी मुद्दे पर सहमत होना
Agree to (views)	किसी विचार से सहमत होना
Atone for (a fault, sin)	का प्रायशिचत करना
Acquiesce in	में सहमति देना
Act upon (advice etc.)	का अनुपालन करना
Adept in (art etc)	में निपुण
Adept at (thing)	(किसी कार्य में) निपुण
Adapt to (environment)	के अनुकूल बनना
Aspire after (fame)	(प्रसिद्धि) की लालसा करना
Aspire at (the post)	(पद) की लालसा करना
Attracted to	के तरफ आकर्षित होना
Avail of	का लाभ उठाना
Abide by	नियमों का अनुपालन करना
Admit to	में दाखिल/ भर्ती होना
Alight at	उतरना
Account for	विवरण देना, व्याख्या करना
Allowance for	गुंजाइश करना, स्वीकार करना
Aptitude for	में प्रतीभा दर्शाना

*****B*****

Preposition

Backward in	में पिछड़ा होना
Bargain with	से मोल-भाव करना
Bathe in	में नहाना
Beg for (a thing)	किसी चीज़ का भीख माँगना
Beg of (a person)	किसी से भीख माँगना
Begin with	से शुरू करना
Belong to (a person, place, etc)	कहीं से/का होना
Beneficial to	के लिए लाभकारी होना
Bent on (doing something)	तुल जाना
Bereft of	से वंचित होना
Beset with	से ग्रस्त होना
Bestow (something) upon (a person)	नवाज़ना/देना
Beware of (something)	से सावधान होना
Bigoted in	में अंधा हो जाना (धर्म/विचार में)
Blame for	का आरोप लगाना
Blind in (love etc)	में अंधा होना
Blind in an eye.	आँख से अंधा होना
Blind to (something)	किसी चीज़ के प्रति अंधा होना
Born of parents/Born in family	पैदा होना (Parents के साथ 'of' और family के साथ 'in' लगेगा)
Born to them (past participle when used passively)Passive voice में 'born to' का प्रयोग होता है।	
Borrow of or from a person.....	से उधार लेना
Break into (a building etc.)	जबरन/बिना अनुमति दाखिल देना
Break with (a person)	से संबंध खत्म करना
Burdened with (work etc.)	काम का भार पड़ना
Busy with	में व्यस्त होना
Blush at (praise)	से झँप जाना
Blush for (a fault)	के कारण लज्जित होना
Benefit by	से लाभावित होना
Believe in	में विश्वास/ श्रद्धा रखना
Benefit from	से फायदा/ लाभ उठाना
C	
Callous to	के प्रति क्रूर होना
Candidate for	का प्रत्याशी होना
Capacity for	की क्षमता होना
Care for or about (something)	किसी चीज़ का परवाह होना
(take) Care of child etc.	ध्यान रखना
Careful about	को लेकर सावधान रहना
Cautious of	से सावधान होना

Preposition

Certain of	सुनिश्चित होना
Characteristic of	की विशेषताएँ
Charge of	नेतृत्व में होना
Charge with (responsibility, blame etc.)	की जिम्मेदारी/ इल्जाम डालना
Cheat a person of money etc.	व्यक्ति के साथ cheat में कोई Preposition नहीं लगता है। चीज़ के साथ cheat के बाद of लगायें।
Cling to (a seat, job or place)	से चिपकना
Command on (language)	पर पकड़ होना
Common to	आम होना
Comparable to	की तुलना में
Comparison with	से तुलना
Compassion for	के प्रति हमदर्दी
Compatible with	के अनुकूल होना
Compensation for	के लिए मुआवजा
Compete with (a person/etc.)	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Competent for a job.	में सक्षम होना
Complain against (someone)	(व्यक्ति) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain of (something)	(चीज़) के विरुद्ध शिकायत करना
Complain to (a person)	को शिकायत करना (Complain (verb) के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।)
Complaint with	(Complaint (Noun) के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग
Comply with (rules, wishes etc.)	के अनुसार चलना/ का अनुसरण करना
Composed of	से बना होना
Concede to (a request)	निवेदन मान लेना
Concession to	को रियायत
Condemned to	अवाञ्छित स्थिति में डाल देना
Conducive to (health)	लाभकारी होना
Confer honour on (a person)	को सम्मान से नवाज़ना
Confidence in a person.	में विश्वाश होना
Confident of	सुनिश्चित होना
Confined to	में सीमित होना
Conformity with/to	अनुरूपता होना
Congenial to	के अनुकूल होना
Conscious of	से अवगत/वाकिफ़ होना
Consent to (a proposal)	की स्वीकृति देना
Consistent with	अटल/एक सा
Contempt for	के प्रति असम्मान होना
Content with	से संतुष्ट होना
Contrary to	के विपरीत

Preposition ——————

Conversant with	से वाकिफ
Convicted of	का दोषी
Convinced of	से संतुष्ट/ निश्चित
Convulsed with	से ऐंठ जाना
Copy from a book.	से उतारना/नकल करना
Copy of something.	का प्रतिलिपि होना
Count on something.	पर निर्भर रहना
Covetous of	का अभिलाषी
Craving for	का लालायित होना
Cure for	का इलाज होना
Cured of (disease)	(बिमारी से) ठीक होना
Compensate for (loss etc.)	की क्षतिपूर्ति करना
Cure of (a disease)	से रोगमुक्त होना
Cure for (treatment)	का इलाज
Compete with (person)	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Cling to (something/someone)	से चिपक कर रहना
Cordone off	हर तरफ से घेर कर सुरक्षित किया जाना
Commit to (a promise, pledge, sentence)	के प्रति वचनबद्ध होना
Confide in (a person)	को राज बताना
Consist in	में होना
Consist of	से बना होना
Commence with	से शुरू होना
Clamour for	के लिए जोरदार तरीके से माँग करना
Clamour against	का विरोध करना
Cause for	का कारण होना
Cause of	का नतीजा होना
Condole with (a person)	के साथ सहानुभूति रखना
Count on	पर निर्भर
Charge of (noun)	(किसी कुकृत्य) का इल्जाम
Charge with (verb)	(किसी कुकृत्य को करने) का इल्जाम लगाना
Cope with	का मुकाबला करना/ सामना करना
Cash in on	का लाभ उठाना
Contribute to	सहभागी बनना/ भाग लेना
Commence (On a day, at time, in a month)	शुरू होना
Concern for	को ले कर चिन्तित होना/गम्भीर होना
Concerned with	से सम्बन्ध या मतलब होना
Congratulate on	पर बधाई देना
D	
Deaf to	के प्रति बहरा होना

Preposition

Deal in (a commodity)	में व्यापर करना
Deal with (a subject or person)	से निपटना
Defective in	में श्रुटिपूर्ण होना
Defend from or against danger.	से बचाना
Deficient in	की कमी होना
Delight in	में खुशी पाना
Delighted with	से खुश होना
Deliverance from	से छुटकारा पाना
Deluged with	से सराबोर होना
Depend on or upon something.	पर निर्भर करना
Deprive of (advantage, right etc.)	से वंचित होना
Derogatory to	के प्रति अपमानजनक होना
Descent from	का वंशज होना
Desire for	का इच्छा होना
Desirous of	का अभिलाषी होना
Destitute of	से वंचित होना
Detrimental to	हानिकारक होना
Devoid of (certain quality)	से वंचित
Devoted to	को समर्पित होना
Die for (a cause)	के लिए मरना
Die from (reason like thirst/ hunger etc.)	(कारण) से मरना
Die of (some disease.)	(बिमारी) से मरना
Differ from a thing.	से अलग होना
Differ on a point.	पर (मुद्दा) अलग मत रखना
Differ with a person.	से (व्यक्ति) अलग मत होना
Different from	से अलग
Diffident of	में हिचकिचाहट
Diligent in	में मेहनती होना
Disastrous to	के लिए दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण
Disgrace to	के लिए लज्जाजनक
Disgusted with	से चिढ़ा होना
Displeased with	से नाखुश होना
Distinguish between two things.	के बीच अंतर करना
Distinguish one thing from another.	एक का दूसरे से अंतर बताना
Divide into shares, parts.	में बाँटना
Doubt of	में शंका होना
Drenched with	से सराबोर होना
Due to	के कारण
Duty to (parents etc.)	के प्रति कर्तव्य होना

Preposition ——————

Dwell in (a house etc.)	में निवास करना
Disappoint of (hopes)	से निराश होना
Despair of (hopes)	से निराश होना
Dabble in/at (art, politics etc.)	में हल्का दिलचस्पी लेना
Destined for (some future).....	के लिए नियत होना
Disgrace on (family etc.)	के लिए कलंक
Dispense with	से छुटकारा पाना
Dispense	बाँटना (कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं)
Dispose of	बेच देना/दे देना
Disposed to	के प्रति झूकाव होना
Decamp with (cash etc.)	चम्पत हो जाना/भाग जाना
Disgust with (a person, life)	से परेशान
Disgust at (an act)	(किसी काम/ घटना) से परेशान
Discriminate against	से दुर्व्यवहार करना
Discriminate between	के बीच भेदभाव करना
Disappoint of	निराश होना
Dabble in (art/politics etc)	हल्का दिलचस्पी लेना
Dwell on/upon	पर विस्तृत रूप से लिखना/ बोलना

*****E*****

Eligible for (appointment/ election etc.)	के योग्य होना
Enamoured of	से मोहित होना
Endowed with	से लैस/सम्पन्न होना
Enmity to	से दुश्मनी होना
Enquire into (a matter)	किसी मामले में छान बीन करना
Enquire of (a person)	से (व्यक्ति) पूछताछ करना
Entitled to	का अधिकार प्राप्त होना/के लायक होना
Entrust a person with a responsibility, work etc. ..	काम सौंपना
Enveloped in	से ढका होना
Envious of	से इष्या रखना
Equal to	के बराबर होना
Escape from	से बच निकलना
Essential to (health, etc.)	जरूरी होना
Exception to	अपवाद होना
Exemption from	से छूट प्राप्त होना
Experience of	का अनुभव रखना
Experienced in	में अनुभव रखना
Embark on (venture)	किसी काम में लग जाना
Enter (place)	किसी Prep का प्रयोग नहीं
Enter into (alliance, agreement)	शामिल होना (समझौता इत्यादि में)

Preposition

Enrage **at** (a thing, an act) (किसी चीज़/ घटना) से गुस्सा होना

Enrage **with** (a person) (किसी व्यक्ति) से गुस्सा होना

Enlarge **upon/on** ज्यादा कहना या लिखना

Enamoured **with** (a person) मोहित होना/आसतिन

*****F*****

Failed **in** में असफल होना

Failure **of** की असफलता

Faithful **to** के प्रति वफादार होना

False **to** (promise) (वादे का) झूठा

Familiar **to** से अवगत होना

Familiar **with** (a subject) (किसी विषय) से अवगत होना

Famous **for** (something) (किसी कारण) प्रसिद्ध होना

Fatal **to** (life/ future prospects etc.) घातक होना

Fatigued **with** से थकावट होना

Favourable **to** के अनुकूल होना

Fearful **of** से डरना

Fertile **in** में उपजाऊ होना

Fond **of** पसंद होना

Fondness **for** पसंद

Foreign **to** से अनजान होना

Fought **against** से लड़ना

Free **from** (worries) (चिन्ता) से मुक्त होना

Free **of** cost बिना कीमत के

Full **of** से भरा होना

False **of** (heart) से झूठा

Fascinated **by** (a thing) किसी चीज से मोहित

Fascinated **with** (a person) किसी व्यक्ति से मोहित

Fly **into** (anger) अचानक गुस्से में आना

Feed **on** (live on) पर जिंदा रहना

For lack **of** कुछ (कमी) के कारण

For short **of** कुछ (कमी) के कारण

For want **of** कुछ (कमी) के कारण

*****G*****

Get **at** (the truth) (सच) तक पहुँचना

Get **on** (with a person) से अच्छा तालमेल होना

Get out **of** (gate etc.) से बाहर जाना

Get **over** (the difficulty) (कठिनाई) से उबरना

Gifted **with** से समृद्ध/धनी होना

Preposition

Good at (English/singing etc).	में अच्छा
Grateful to a person.	के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना
Greedy of (wealth etc.)	का लालची होना
Guilty of (an offence)	का दोषी होना
Grieve for (a person)	किसी (व्यक्ति) का मातम मनाना
Grieve over (a thing)	किसी (चीज) का मातम मनाना
Grieve at (an event)	किसी (घटना) का मातम मनाना
Guard against (mistakes, temptations)	गलती/लुभावन से सचेत करना
Guard from (a danger, a thing etc.)	किसी खतरे/चीज से बचाना
Glance at (someone etc.)	पर एक नजर डालना
Glance through (letter etc.)	पढ़ना
Good for (nothing)	किसी काम का नहीं

*****H*****

Hatred of or for something	के प्रति नफरत होना
Heedless of	से असावधान
Heir to (the throne)	का उत्तराधिकारी होना
Honest in	में ईमानदार
Hope for (good or success etc)	की आशा रखना
Hopeful of (some result)	के प्रति आशावान होना
Hostile to	से प्रति शत्रुतापूर्ण
Hurtful to	के प्रति हानिकर/चोट पहुँचाने वाला
Hear from (a person)	से कोई खबर मिलना
Hear of (something)	के बारे में सुनना
Hear by (post, communication)	ज्ञात होना (किसी श्रोत से)
Hard by	नजदीक
Hard up	तंगी होना
Hanker after	के पीछे पड़ना
Healed of (a disease)	ठीक होना (बिमारी से)

*****I*****

Ignorant of	से अनभिज्ञ होना
Ill with	से बिमार
Immaterial to	के लिए महत्वहीन
Impertinent to	के प्रति गुस्ताख
Impervious to	के लिए अभेद
Implicated in	में फंसना/आरोपित होना
Inclined to	के प्रति झुकाव
Indebted to	के प्रति कृतज्ञ
Indifference / indifferent to	के प्रति उदासीन/ उदासीन होना
Indigenous to	का मूल निवासी होना

Preposition

Indispensable to	के लिए अपरिहार्य होना
Indulge in	में लिप्त होना
Infatuated with	से आकर्षित होना
Infected with	से ग्रस्त होना
Inference from	से निष्कर्ष
Inferior to (something or somebody)	से खराब (quality में)होना
Infested with	से ग्रस्त (काफी अधिक संख्या में)
Informed of	सूचित
Inimical to	का विरोधी
Injurious to	के लिए हानिकारक होना
Innocent of	से दोषमुक्त
Inquired of	का पुछताछ करना
Insensible to	के प्रति संवेदनशील
Insist on	पर जोर देना
Inspired with	से प्रेरित
Interested in	में दिलचस्पी
Interfere in a matter	में दखल देना
Intimacy with	से घनिष्ठता
Intimate with	से घनिष्ठ होना
Introduce to	किसी से परिचय करवाना
Inured to	प्रतिरोधी होना
Invitation to	का आमंत्रण
Invite to	पर आमंत्रित करना
Involved in	में शामिल
Irrelevant to	के लिए अप्रासंगिक
Irrespective of	का ध्यान/विचार किए बिना
Impress with (a thing)	से प्रभावित होना
Impress upon (a person)	पर छाप/प्रभाव छोड़ना
Inquire for/about (a thing)	किसी चीज के बारे में पुछताछ करना
Inquire after (welfare)	का हालचाल पुछना
Inquire of (ask a person)	किसी व्यक्ति से पुछताछ करना
Inquired into (investigate)	जाँच पड़ताल करना
Interfere in (a thing)	टाँग अड़ाना
Interfere with (course of justice etc.)	अड़चन डालना
Influenced with (a person)	से प्रभावित होना
Influence over (the people)	पर प्रभाव (किसी व्यक्ति का)
Influence of something on someone	किसी चीज का प्रभाव किसी पर
Intrude into (room)	बिना इजाजत अंदर आना
Intrude on (privacy)	Privacy में दखल देना
Incensed at (thing)	गुस्सा होना

Preposition

Indignant at (thing)	से रुष्ट होना
Insight into (reality, situation)	में अंतर्दृष्टि
Impress (with a thing)	प्रभावित करना
Invest with (authority)	के साथ।
Influence on (a thing)	प्रभाव/असर
Irritated at (thing)	चिढ़ जाना/खीज जाना
Irritated against (person)	चिढ़ जाना/खीज जाना

*****J*****

Jealous of (a person)	से ईद्या होना
Junior to (a person)	से कनिष्ठ होना
Judge of (things)	राय देना
Judge by	आँका जाना
Jump to (conclusion)	तुरंत निष्कर्ष पर पहुँचना
Jump at (an offer)	उछल पड़ना
Jeer at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Jest at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना

*****K*****

Key to	की कुंजी
Kind to (a person)	के प्रति दयालु होना
Knock at (the gate)	खटखटाना
Known to	Passive voice में known के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
Known by	के कारण जाना जाता हो
Known for (a quality)	के लिए जाना जाता हो
Knock at (the door)	खटखटाना (अगर 'knock' verb हो तो)
Knock on	खटखटाहट (अगर 'knock' noun हो तो)

*****L*****

Lame of (a leg)	से लंगड़ा
Laugh at (a person or thing)	पर हँसना
Lax in	में शिथिल होना
Lean against	पर (टेक लगा कर) झुकना
Leniency to	के प्रति नर्म
Liable to	के प्रति उत्तरदायी
Liable to (punishment)	(सजा कर) हकदार होना
Liking for	की चाहत
Limited to	में सीमित
Listen to	को ध्यान से सुनना
Live by (hard labour).	मेहनत कर जीना

Preposition

Live on (a meagre income/ food)	पर (संसाधन) जीना / पर निर्वाह करना
Live within (means etc)	(संसाधन इत्यादि) के अंदर जीना
Look after	ख्याल रखना
Look at something	किसी चीज़ के तरफ देखना
Look for	खोजना
Look into	जाँच-पड़ताल करना
Lost to (one's opponent)	हार जाना
Loyal to	के प्रति वफादार
Laugh with (others)	के साथ हँसना
Laugh at	पर हँसना
Lean on (someone)	पर निर्भर करना
Lean to	के तरफ झुकाव होना
Live in (region, area, country)	रहना (जब बड़े स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live at (indicate the place)	रहना (जब छोटे स्थान का उल्लेख हो)
Live by (livelihood, manner)	(आजीविका व रीति-रिवाज) के अनुसार जीना
Live off (source)	(श्रोत) पर जीना
Liable for	का जिम्मेदार होना
Liable to (punishment)	का हकदार होना
Lacking in	कुछ (कमी)
Likeness to	समानता
Limit to	सीमित होना/मर्यादा में होना

*****M*****

Mad after/about/for/on (a thing or subject)	के लिए पागल होना
Mad with anger	गुस्से से पागल होना
Malice against a person	किसी व्यक्ति के प्रति दुर्भावना होना
Match for	की बराबरी
Material to /Immaterial to	के लिए महत्व रखना/महत्वहीन होना
Menace to	के लिए समस्या/हानिकारक
Motive for	का मंशा
Muse upon a subject	पर विचार करना
Move to (tears)	रो पड़ना
Move with (pity)	(दया से) पिघल जाना
Married to (a woman)	से विवाह (जब पुरुष स्त्री से करें)
Married with (a man)	से विवाह (जब स्त्री पुरुष से करें)
Mix with (a thing)	मिलना
Mock at (a thing)	का मजाक उड़ाना
Meditate on (past act)	भूतकाल की घटना पर विचार करना
Meditate (future act)	भविष्य काल की घटना पर विचार करना

Preposition

Menace **to** के लिए खतरा/ समस्या होना।

*****N*****

Natural **to** के लिए स्वभाविक

Necessary **to** के लिए जरूरी

Need **for** की ज़रूरत

Negligent /neglectful **of** one's duty. के प्रति लापरवाह होना

Neglectful **of** (a person, work, a thing) से लापरवाह

Negligent **in** (duty) में लापरवाह होना

Neglectful **of** (a person, working a thing) उदासीन होना

Need **of** इच्छा/ज़रूरत होना

*****O*****

Obedience **to** के प्रति फर्मबरदारी

Obedient **to** a person. का आज्ञाकारी होना

Objected **to** के खिलाफ आपत्ति करना

Objection **to** का विरोध/एतराज

Obliged **by** or **to** a person. से/के प्रति कृतज्ञ होना

Obstruction **to** के लिए रुकावट

Offensive **to** के लिए अपमानजनक

Opportunity **for** के लिए अवसर

Opposite **to** के विरुद्ध

Originate **in** में उत्पन्न होना

Overwhelmed **with** (joy) से अभिभूत होना

Originate **in** (place as a source) में उत्पन्न होना

Originate **with** (a person) को पहली बार सुझाना

Occupied **in** (doing a thing) (काम) करने में व्यस्त

Occupied **with** (a thing) (कोई काम) में व्यस्त

Operate **on/upon** (leg etc.) का ऑपरेशन करना

Oblivious **of** से बेखबर

Offend **at** (thing) (कारण) से अप्रसन्न

Offend **with** (person) (व्यक्ति) से अप्रसन्न

Overwhelm **with** (feelings) (भावनाओं) से भर जाना

Overwhelm **by** (a book etc.) (किताब) से प्रभावित होना

*****P*****

Painful **to** के लिए कष्टदायक

Part **from** (a person) से (व्यक्ति) जुदा होना

Parted **with** (something) से (चीज़) अलग होना

Preposition

Partial to	के प्रति पक्षपातपूर्ण
Passion for	के लिए अत्यन्त लगाव
Peculiar to	निज का
Penetrate into something	में समाना
Pertinent to	प्रासंगिक
Pity for	के लिए तरस/दया
Pledged to	का शपथ लेना
Popular with	के बीच प्रसिद्ध
Postscript to	का उपलेख
Pray to God for something	भगवान को प्राथना करना (किसी चीज़ के लिए)
Precaution against (disease)	(बिमारी) से बचाव करना
Predilection for	के प्रति झुकाव
Preface to	का प्रस्तावना
Prefer to	के तुलना ज्यादा पसंद करना
Preferable to	से श्रेयस्कर
Prejudicial to	के प्रति पूर्वाग्रही
Prepared for	की तैयारी करना
Preside over	की अध्यक्षता करना
Pretext for	के बहाने
Prevent from (doing an act.)	से बचना / रोकना
Prior to	से पहले
Productive of	का फलप्रद
Proficient in	में कुशल
Profit by	से लाभावित होना
Profitable to	के लिए लाभदायक
Prone to	के प्रति रुक्षान/झुकाव
Proof of	का सबूत
Proud of	के लिए गौरवान्वित/पर गर्व
Provide with	उपलब्ध करना
Partiality for (a thing)	पसंद होना
Partiality to (a person)	के पक्ष में होना
Perish by (famine, sword)	नष्ट होना/मारा जाना
Perish with (hunger)	से (भुख) से नष्ट होना/ मर जाना
Point at	आरोप लगाना
Point to	उल्लेख करना
Preside at (a party)	का मुख्य अतिथि होना
Preside over (meeting, president)	का अध्यक्षता करना
Provided against (adversity)	उपलब्ध कराना (प्रतिकूल समय के लिए)
Provided for (family etc.)	के लिए उपलब्ध करना
Pine for	का लालसा करना

Preposition

Pine away	शोक से मर जाना
Play at (cards)	(ताश) खेलना
Play upon (a musical instrument)	(वाद यन्त्र)बजाना
Partake of (food)	में अपना हिस्सा लेना
Prey on	शोषण करना
Passion for	तीव्र लालसा होना
Feel(Pity) for (noun)	दया करना
Take(Pity) on (noun)	दया करना
Pity (verb)	Pity अगर verb है तो कोई Prep का प्रयोग नहीं होता
Pride on (verb)	पर गर्व करना
Pride in (noun)	पर गर्व होना
Prompt in	पर तुरंत/फूर्तीला
Prevail against (a thing, face)	सामना करना व जीतना
Prevail on/upon (a person, to compel)	बहकाना/मजबूर करना/जोर देना
Popular for (a good quality)	प्रसिद्ध व लोकप्रिय होना
Popular with (the people)	के बीच लोकप्रिय

*****Q*****

Quarrel over (some affair)	किसी मुद्दे पर लड़ना
Quarrel with (some person)	से लड़ना
Quest for (knowledge)	(ज्ञान) की लालसा होना
Quick at (a thing)	में फूर्तीला
Quick in (doing a thing)	(काम) करने में फूर्तीला

*****R*****

Rebel against (government , customs etc.)	का विरोध करना
Recovered from	से उबरना
Reduced to	घट कर होना
Reference to	के संदर्भ में
Refrain from (an act)	से बचना/परहेज करना
Regard for	के प्रति सम्मान होना
Regardless of	के तरफ बिना ध्यान दिए
Rejoice at (success).	खुशी मनाना
Related to	से संबंधित
Relations with	से संबंध
Relevant to	के लिए प्रासंगिक
Remorse for	का पश्चाताप होना
Remarkable for	के लिए विशिष्ट
Remiss in	में सुस्त
Replete with	से भरना/पूरा करना
Reply to	का जवाब

Preposition

Repugnance to	के लिए अरुचिकर
Repugnant to	के प्रति अरुचिकर होना
Reputation for	के लिए नाम होना/जाना जाना
Resemblance to	का प्रतिरूप
Respite from	से मुक्ति
Responsible to	के प्रति जिम्मेदार
Restricted to	में सीमित
Result of	का परिणाम
Revenge on (a person or anything)	का बदला लेना
Revolt against (king, dictatorship, etc.)	के विरुद्ध बगावत करना
Revenge oneself (a person)	से बदला लेना
Revenge for (noun) (an injury)	का बदला लेना
Reconcile oneself to (a thing)	(हालात इत्यादी) को स्वीकार कर
Reconcile with (a person)	से
Reckon on/upon	पर निर्भर करना
Remonstrate with (a person)	विरोध प्रकट करना
Remiss in (duty)	में लापरवाह होना
Reason with (a person)	तर्क करना/बहस करना/सोंच-विचार करना
Replace by	नई से बदलना/बदलना
Repent of	पश्चाताप/प्रायशिच्त करना
Recourse to	उपाय/सहारा/सहायता

*****S*****

Sacred to	के लिए पावन
Sanguine of	के प्रति आशावित
Satiated with	से तृप्त
Satisfied with	से संतुष्ट होना
Save from	से बचाना
Search for (something)	की खोज करना
Search into (a matter)	(मामले में) पड़ताल करना
See into (a case)	जाँच-पड़ताल करना
Sensible of	से वाकिफ
Sensitive to	के प्रति संवेदनशील
Sentenced to (imprisonment/death/etc.)	सजा प्राप्त करना
Sequel to (a film etc.)	का अगला भाग
Short of (funds)	की कमी होना
Sick of	से ग्रस्त/परेशान/बिमार
Smiled on	पर खुश होना
Sorry for	के लिए अफसोस करना
Stick to (promise, etc.)	पर अडिग रहना

Preposition ——————

Subject to (conditions etc.)	संशर्त
Submission to	के समक्ष अधीनता
Subsist on	पर निर्वाह
Succession to	के अनुक्रम
Suffering from	से ग्रस्त होना
Sufficient for (a purpose)	के लिए प्रचुर होना
Suit to (a purpose)	के लिए उपयुक्त होना
Suitable to	के लिए उपयुक्त
Superior to	से बेहतर होना
Supplement to	का अनुपूरक
Sure of	के प्रति आश्वस्त
Surprised at	पर आश्चर्य चकित होना
Surrender to (a person)	समर्पण करना
Susceptible to	का ग्रहणशील
Suspicious of	का संदेही होना
Sympathise with	से संवेदना व्यक्त करना
Show off	दिखावा करना
Speak for (someone)	के पक्ष में बोलना
Speak of (praise)	का तारीफ करना
Start on (journey)	(यात्रा) शुरू करना
Strive for	की कोशीश करना
Strive with	से प्रतिस्पर्धा करना
Side with (someone)	का पक्ष लेना
Search for (a thing)	खोजना
Seek (shelter)	की कोशीश करना
Seek after	माँग होना
Suffer (loss)	सहना (घाट)
Suffer from (disease)	ग्रस्त होना (बिमारी से)
Smile at	का मजाक उड़ाना
Smile on	पर मेहरबान होना
Substitute for (for old object)	कि विकल्प
Shoot at , Strike at , Hit at , Catch at (unsuccessful in attempt)	जब प्रयास असफल हो
Shoot, strike, hit, catch (successful in attempt)	जब प्रयास सफल हो
Spark off	शुरू करना
Seek for	जीतने का प्रयत्न करना
Seething with (anger etc.)	(गुस्से से) बोखलाना/उबलना
Slow at	धीमा
Scare of	भयभीत करना/डराना

Preposition

Sentence **to** (death, etc.) दण्डत करना/दण्ड देना

*****T*****

Talk **over** (a matter) किसी मामले पर बात करना

Talk **to** someone से बात करना

Tantamount **to** के समान होना

Taste **for** का परख होना

Teeming **with** से भरा होना

Temperate **in** (one's behaviour) में शान्त

Temptation **to** के लिए प्रलोभव

Think **of** के बारे में सोचना

Think **over** (a matter) किसी मामले पर सोचना

Threaten **with** (revolver/bad consequences, etc.) से डराना

Tired **of** (bad person/continued sickness, etc.) से त्रस्त हो जाना/थक जाना

Tired **with** (hard labour). (मेहनत) से थक जाना

Tolerant **of** के प्रति सहनशील

Touched **with** से द्रवित होना

Trade **in** commodity का व्यापार करना

Trade **with** someone से व्यापार करना

Traitor **to** के प्रति गदार

Triumph **over** (enemy etc.) पर विजय प्राप्त करना

True **to** (one's word/one's soil) का सच्चा

Trust **in** में विश्वास करना

Turn **to** a direction के तरफ मुड़ना

Trifle **with** मजाक उठाना

Trespass **on** land अनाधिकृत प्रवेश करना

Tresspass **against** (law) का उल्लंघन करना

Treat **of** (a subject) उपाय/संसाधित करना/समाधान निकालना

*****U*****

Useful **for** में लाभदायक होना

Useful **to** (a person) किसी व्यक्ति के लिए लाभदायक होना

Usher **in** परिचय करवाना/संचालन करना

*****V*****

Versed **in** में दक्ष

Victory **over** (enemies etc.) पर विजय प्राप्त करना

Void **of** से रहित

Preposition ——————

Vote for (a person)	को वोट देना
Vote on (resolution)	पर वोट देना
Vote to (power)	जीतना
Vain of	का घमङ्ग होना
Vexed with (person)	(व्यक्ति) से परेशान होना
Vexed at (a thing)	(वस्तु) से परेशान होना
Venture upon	जोखिम उठाना

*****W*****

Wait for a person, etc.	का इन्तजार करना
Want of	की कमी
Warn of (danger/bad consequences etc.)	की चेतावनी देना
Weary of	से थका
Wonder at	पर अर्चिभित होना
Worthy of (trust, etc.)	के लायक
Wait for (person, thing)	का इंतजार करना
Weary of (a thing)	से थक जाना
Warn against (fault, danger)	से सावधान करना
Warn of (danger)	से सावधान करना
Wish for (a thing)	की कामना करना
Ward off (evils etc.)	को दूर रखना
Warn of	खतरे से सतर्क करना
Wanting in	की कमी होना

*****Y*****

Yield to (force/ threat, etc.)	हार मान जाना
Yearn for	की लालसा करना

*****Z*****

Zeal for (social reform etc.)	उत्साह होना
--------------------------------------------	-------------

Preposition

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) He took/ (b) leave of/ (c) four days/ (d) No error.
2. (a) Children/ should always/ (b) listen the advice of their elders/ (c) and well wishers./ (d) No error.
3. (a) He will not/ (b) listen/ (c) what you say./ (d) No error.
4. (a) Nobody denies/ (b) that my ideas/ (c) are different than yours./ (d) No error.
5. (a) It was I who was responsible of/ (b) making all the arrangements for the/ (c)successful completion of his studies./ (d) No error.
6. (a) She was in the courtyard/ (b) when the burglars/ (c) entered into her house./ (d) No error.
7. (a) Our teacher/ (b) emphasised on/ (c) the use of correct grammar./ (d) No error.
8. (a) On the time/ (b) of the opening ceremony of the theatre/ (c) a large crowd had assembled/ (d) No error.
9. (a) While they were returning/ (b) from school,/ (c) a stalker attacked on them with a knife./ (d) No error.
10. (a) The decline of his moral values/ (b) has caused a lot/ (c) of pain to his parents/ / (d) No error.
11. (a) Without thinking/ (b) for a moment he/ (c) entrusted me in all the responsibilities ./ (d) No error.
12. (a) Sudha fell in/ (b) the well and nobody / (c) tried to save him./ (d) No error.
13. (a) I / (b) prefer coffee/ (c) than tea/ (d) No error.
14. (a) Suresh is busy / (b) in his work/ (c) for his presentation/ (d) No error.
15. (a) While crossing the road/ (b) an old man was/ (c) run out by a bus/ (d) No error.
16. (a) Amphibians / (b) can live / (c) in water as well as land./ (d) No error.
17. (a) My mother is fond off/ (b) cooking different / (c) types of dishes/ (d) No error.
18. (a) Our teacher/ (b) cannot/ (c) control on the students./ (d) No error.
19. (a) The lawyer has been waiting/ (b) for the prisoner / (c) since two hours / (d) No error.
20. (a) Mr. Bacon has / (b) great affection to/ (c) his family./ (d) No error.
21. (a) Rekha has a great/ (b) enmity for her/ (c) brother's friend./ (d) No error.
22. (a) He threw the bucket/ (b) into the river/ (c) and returned home without any water./ (d) No error.
23. (a) There appears/ (b) to be very little/ (c) understanding among the two brothers / (d) No error.
24. (a) She was/ (b) angry on me because I/ (c) had not invited her to party./ (d) No error.
25. (a) He got a prestigious job though/ (b) he was not worthy/ (c) for it./ (d) No error.
26. (a) He described about/ (b) the incident/ (c) in a very interesting way./ (d) No error.
27. (a) My father/ (b) deals/ (c)with garments/ (d) No error.
28. (a) I cannot / (b) deal from/ (c) those unruly students/ (d) No error.
29. (a) Despite of / (b)working hard/ (c) he failed/ (d) No error.
30. (a) Ashok/ (b) married with/ (c) Rekha last month./ (d) No error.
31. (a) The earth's atmosphere/ (b)comprises of/ (c) three layers/ (d) No error.
32. (a) The court held/ (b) the local MLA responsible/ (c) for the loss or damage to any public property./ (d) No error.

Preposition —————

33. (a)He was debarred to attend/ (b) the monsoon session/ (c)of the Parliament./ (d) No error.
34. (a) We will have to await for/ (b) the result / (c) as the managent is on strike./ (d) No error.
35. (a) He should refrain/ (b) to associate himself with any party/ (c) because people have faith in his integrity./ (d) No error.
36. (a) The songs of / (b) the old movies are/ (c) worthlistening to./ (d) No error.
37. (a) It should be obvious to you/ (b)that if you persist bothering him,/ (c) he will get angry with you/ (d) No error.
38. (a) I certainly/ (b) differ with you/ (c) in this matter (d) No error.
39. (a)He had a suspected fracture, / (b) so he was/ (c)admitted into the hospital/ (d) No error.
40. (a) If you put your / (b) heart to it,/ (c) you will be a winner/ (d) No error.
41. (a) He walked/ (b) ten miles/ (c) by foot/ (d) No error.
42. (a) He is good / (b) in mathematics/ (c)but his friend isn't./ (d) No error.
43. (a) Those who are in power/ (b) have to be sensitive of/ (c)the sufferings of the poor/ (d) No error.
44. (a) Which newspaper/ (b) do you/ (c) subscribe for?/ (d) No error.
45. (a) We thought that the train/ (b) would be late but/ (c) it arrived exactly in time./ (d)No error.
46. (a) Despite of repeated warnings, / (b) he touched a live electric wire,/ (c) and was electrocuted./ (d) No error.
47. (a)It is my pleasure / (b) to congratulate you for your success/ (c) in the Civil Services Examination/ (d) No error.
48. (a) I will avail/ (b) myself with/ (c) this golden opportunity/ (d) No error.
49. (a) It is half/ (b) past two/ (c) in my watch/ (d) No error.
50. (a) She can / (b) cope up with any difficult situation/ (c) as she is a braveheart./ (d) No error.
51. (a) Ravi/ (b) told to his friend/ (c) to buy a car./ (d) No error.
52. (a) He is/ (b) accused with/ (c) committing the murder./ (d) No error.
53. (a) The poet/ (b) described about/ (c) the spring season./ (d) No error.
54. (a) The atmosphere/ (b) comprises of/ (c) many inert gases also./ (d) No error.
55. (a)We disposed off / (b) our old furniture/ (c) before moving to Mumbai./ (d) No error.
56. (a)He was/ (b) bereft from / (c) all his possession./ (d) No error.
57. (a) He assented of/ (b) my proposal/ (c) as it was very attractive./ (d) No error.
58. (a) A large sign near/ (b) the entrance warns the visitors/ (c) to beware about bears./ (d) No error.
59. (a) The teacher was tense/ (b) when he entered/ (c) the class which comprised of/ (d) a hundred students.
60. (a) There is no rule/ (b) regarding the length of a precis/ (c) with relation to/ (d) that of the original passage.
61. (a) He/ (b) is suffering/ (c) with flu./ (d) No error.
62. (a) He wanted to go/ (b) to home/ (c) as he was sick./ (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (b); 'leave for four days' का प्रयोग करें।
 2. (b); 'listen' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग करें।
 3. (b);
 4. (c); 'different' के साथ 'from' का प्रयोग करें।
 5. (a); 'responsible' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग होगा।
 6. (c); 'entered' के साथ 'into' का प्रयोग न करें।
 7. (b); 'emphasised' के साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
 8. (a); 'On' के स्थान पर 'at' का प्रयोग करें।
 9. (c); 'attack' के साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
 10. (a); 'decline' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होता है।
 11. (c); 'entrusted' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा।
 12. (a); 'fell into' का प्रयोग करें।
 13. (c); 'than' के स्थान पर 'to' का प्रयोग करें। 'Prefer' के साथ 'to' का प्रयोग होता है।
 14. (b); busy के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'in' का।
 15. (c); 'run out' के स्थान पर 'run over' का प्रयोग करें। 'Run over' का अर्थ है 'कुचला जाना'।
 16. (c); Land के पहले 'on' का प्रयोग करें।
 17. (a); Fond के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होता है न कि 'off' का।
 18. (c); अगर 'Control' verb हो तो उसके साथ 'on' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
 19. (c); 'Since' के स्थान पर 'for' का प्रयोग करें। 'two hours' अवधि है।
 20. (b); 'affection' के साथ 'for' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
 21. (b); 'enmity' के साथ 'towards' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'for' का।
 22. (b); 'threw' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'into' का।
 23. (c); 'among' के स्थान पर 'between' का प्रयोग होगा।
 24. (b); 'angry' के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होता है जब किसी व्यक्ति का उल्लेख हो।
- नोट:-**
angry with someone.
angry at something.
25. (c); 'worthy' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'for' का।
 26. (a); 'describe' के साथ किसी 'preposition' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
 27. (c); अगर 'deal' का अर्थ है 'व्यापार करना' तो 'deal' के साथ 'in' का प्रयोग होगा।
 28. (b); अगर 'deal' का अर्थ है 'fuiVuk' तो deal के साथ 'with' का प्रयोग होगा।
 29. (a); 'Despite' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
 30. (c); 'with' हटा दें।
 31. (b); 'Active Voice' में 'Comprise' के साथ 'of' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
 32. (c); 'Loss' के बाद 'of' का प्रयोग करें।
 33. (a); 'debarred from attending' का प्रयोग करें।
 34. (a); 'await for' के स्थान पर 'wait for' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
 35. (b); 'Refrain' के बाद 'preposition' 'from' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'to' का।
 36. (c); 'listen' के बाद 'to' का प्रयोग होता है 'worthlistening' के बाद नहीं।

Preposition

37. (b); ‘persist’ के बाद ‘in’ का प्रयोग करें।

38. (b); ‘differ’ के साथ ‘from’ का प्रयोग करें न कि ‘with’ का।

39. (c); ‘admitted to’ का प्रयोग करें।

40. (b); ‘put your heart into it’ (मन लगाना) सही चीतेम है।
‘to’ को ‘into’ में परिवर्तित करें।

41. (c); ‘on foot’ का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है पैदल।

42. (b); ‘Good’ के साथ ‘at’ का प्रयोग होता है।

43. (b); ‘Sensitive’ के साथ ‘to’ का प्रयोग करें।

44. (c); ‘subscribe’ के साथ ‘to’ का प्रयोग करें।

45. (c); ‘On time’ का अर्थ है ठीक समय पर और ‘in time’ का अर्थ है समय से। Exactly का प्रयोग ‘On time’ को ज्यादा उपयुक्त विकल्प बना रहा है।

46. (a); ‘Despite’ के साथ ‘of’ का प्रयोग न करें।

47. (b); ‘Congratulate’ के साथ ‘on’ का प्रयोग करें।

48. (b); ‘avail’ के साथ ‘of’ का प्रयोग होता है। ‘Avail myself of this’ का प्रयोग करें।

49. (c); ‘in’ के स्थान पर ‘by’ का प्रयोग करें।

50. (b); ‘Cope with’ (अर्थ- to handle) का प्रयोग करें।

51. (b); ‘told’ एवं ‘tell’ के साथ ‘to’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

52. (b); ‘accused’ के साथ ‘of’ का प्रयोग करें न कि ‘with’ का।

53. (b); ‘described’ के साथ ‘about’ का प्रयोग न करें।

54. (b); अगर वाक्य active voice में हो तो ‘comprise’ के बाद ‘of’ का प्रयोग न करें।

55. (a); ‘disposed’ के साथ ‘of’ का प्रयोग होता है न कि ‘off’ का।

56. (b); ‘bereft’ के बाद ‘of’ का प्रयोग होता है।

57. (a); ‘assented’ के साथ ‘to’ का प्रयोग करें न कि ‘of’ का।

58. (c); ‘beware’ के साथ ‘of’ का प्रयोग करें न किया ‘about’ का।

59. (c); अगर वाक्य active voice में हो तो ‘comprised’ के बाद ‘of’ का प्रयोग न करें।

60. (c); ‘with relation to’ को ‘in relation to’ में परिवर्तित करें।

61. (c); ‘with’ को ‘from’ में परिवर्तित करें। ‘suffer’ के साथ ‘from’ का प्रयोग होता है।

62. (b); ‘to’ हटा दे। ‘Get, arrive, reach, go, come’ के साथ अगर ‘home’ का प्रयोग होता है तो बीच में कोई ‘preposition’ नहीं आता है।

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH APPROPRIATE PREPOSITION

- Preposition

4. you are welcome to partake _____ their light refreshment.
(a) in (b) for (c) at (d) of

5. We met a lot of people _____ our holidays.
(a) on (b) in (c) during (d) at

6. The firm has been dealing _____ luxury goods for more than two decades.
(a) in (b) with (c) out (d) on

7. Today students should be reconciled _____ the way things are changing.
(a) with (b) to (c) for (d) at

8. That week the dollar dropped _____ its lowest levels.
(a) to (b) at (c) into (d) by

9. He went _____ sea alone.
(a) in (b) to (c) into (d) on

10. Everyone in this world is accountable to God _____ his actions.
(a) actions (b) for (c) to (d) over

11. Speed is _____ essence in a project of this type.
(a) in (b) for (c) about (d) of

12. A wise man profits _____ the mistakes of others.
(a) through (b) from (c) with (d) by

13. Ram agreed _____ my proposal .
(a) with (b) for (c) on (d) to

14. He is addicted _____ smoking.
(a) to (b) with (c) on (d) for

15. He sat _____ the shade of a tree.
(a) under (b) into (c) in (d) on

16. There is something wonderful _____ him
(a) of (b) about (c) for (d) in side

17. When will you hand _____ your assignment?
(a) in (b) back (c) down (d) into

18. A new minister has taken _____ after the election.
(a) to (b) over (c) off (d) down

19. There is a bridge _____ the river.
(a) over (b) on (c) down (d) across

20. Please make yourself _____ home.
(a) with (b) at (c) in (d) on

21. The brave youth immediately jumped _____ the river to save the drowning child.
(a) in (b) into (c) inside (d) to

22. We can make no progress if we continue working _____ these conditions.
(a) into (b) with (c) under (d) for

Preposition—

- Preposition

Preposition—

Answer Key

1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (b)
11. (d) 12. (b) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (c) 16. (b) 17. (a) 18. (b) 19. (a) 20. (b)
21. (b) 22. (c) 23. (d) 24. (b) 25. (d) 26. (a) 27. (a) 28. (b) 29. (c) 30. (b)
31. (a) 32. (b) 33. (a) 34. (c) 35. (b) 36. (c) 37. (d) 38. (a) 39. (a) 40. (a)
41. (a) 42. (b) 43. (d) 44. (a) 45. (d) 46. (a) 47. (b) 48. (a) 49. (d) 50. (c)
51. (a) 52. (c) 53. (d) 54. (a) 55. (a) 56. (d) 57. (b) 58. (b) 59. (a) 60. (b)
61. (b) 62. (c)

15 ADVERB

CHAPTER

ADVERB *əd'verb*

(i) किसी **क्रिया (Verb)** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: He works hard
verb Adv.



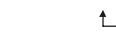
(ii) किसी **विशेषण (Adjective)** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: He is very good.
Adv. Adj.



(iii) किसी **क्रिया-विशेषण (Adverb)** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: She works very hard.
Adv. Adv.



(iv) किसी **Preposition** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: The helicopter hovered exactly over his house.
Adv. Prep.



(v) किसी **Conjunction** की विशेषता बताता है

जैसे: He likes her simply because she has a clear conscience.
Adv. Conj.



(vi) किसी **वाक्य (Sentence)** की विशेषता बताता है।

जैसे: Fortunately, no one was hurt.
Adv. Sentence



(vii) सामान्यतः **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता बताने का काम **Adjectives** करते हैं, किन्तु कुछ ऐसे **Adverbs** हैं जो किसी **Noun** या **Pronoun** की विशेषता भी बताते हैं। ये adverbs हैं- **Only, even, at last, almost;**

Adverb

जैसे: 1. Only I know the truth.
Adv. Pronoun



2. Only Rohit can help you.
Adv. Noun



ADVERB शब्दकोश सांकेतिक अर्थ

1. Simple Adverb
2. Relative Adverb
3. Interrogative Adverb

1. SIMPLE ADVERB

➤ Simple Adverb के द्वारा समय (time), स्थान (place), संख्या (number or frequency), ढंग (manner), कारण (reason), परिमाण (degree), स्वीकृति अथवा निषेध (affirmation or negation) का बोध होता है।

ये सात प्रकार के हैं:-

(a) Adverb of Manner

➤ Adverb of manner shows **how** (ढंग)- ये कार्य होने का तरीका बताता है।

जैसे: He works **honestly**.

He walks **slowly**.

Remember: Adjectives से बनने वाले Adverbs जिनके अंत में **-ly** होता है, प्रायः **Adverbs of Manner** कहलाते हैं।

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
Slow	Slowly
glad	gladly
Honest	Honestly.

नोट: **Miser, Niggard** एवं **Coward** ऐसे nouns हैं जिनके **adjective forms** को हम **adverb forms** मानने की गलती कर बैठते हैं। इन nouns के adjective एवं adverb forms इस प्रकार हैं।

Noun	Adjective Form	Adverb Form
Coward	Cowardly	In a cowardly manner
Niggard	Niggardly	In a niggardly manner
Miser	Miserly	In a miserly manner
Scholar	Scholarly	In a scholarly manner

नीचे दिए गये उदाहरण देखें:-

- (1) He is miser. (✗) (miser noun है। अतः miser के पहले 'a' का प्रयोग करें।)
He is a miser. (✓)
- (2) He is a miser man. (✗) (man की विशेषता बताने के लिए adjective 'miserly' का प्रयोग करें।)
He is a miserly man.(✓)
- (3) He behaved miserly. (✗) ('behaved' verb है। क्रिया की विशेषता बताने के लिए adjective 'miserly' नहीं बल्कि adverb 'in a miserly manner' का प्रयोग करें।)
He behaved in a miserly manner. (✓)

Remember:

1. कुछ शब्द एक ही रूप (**Form**) में **Adverb** और **Adjective** की तरह प्रयोग हो जाते हैं; 'Fast, straight, outright, direct, hard, late', 'high', 'safe', quiet इत्यादि **adjective** एवं **adverb** दोनों हैं।

जैसे: **Adverb**

Adjective

He works **hard**. This is a **hard** task.

He wakes up **early**. He came by an **early** flight.

Do not talk **loud**. We should not speak in a **loud** tone.

Run **fast**. He is a **fast** runner.

He waited **long** for me. He went on a **long** journey.

Come **near**. He is of my **near** relation.

2. किन्तु कुछ **Adverbs** के दो रूपों का अर्थ भिन्न होता है;

(a) **Late Lately**

देर से हाल-फिलहाल

जैसे: 1. I haven't seen Akila **lately**.

2. He came **late** for the meeting.

(b) **Hard Hardly**

मेहनत से मुश्किल से

जैसे: 1. She works hardly to make both ends meet. (✗)

She works **hard** to make both ends meet. (✓)

2. He **hardly** does any work. (✓)

(c) **Free Freely**

मुफ्त में स्वतंत्रता से

जैसे: 1. We can move about **freely** in India.

2. Rides are provided **free** in this water park.

➤ 'Loudly' and 'Aloud' adverbs हैं लेकिन अर्थ में भिन्न। **Aloud** का अर्थ है इतनी तेज आवाज ताकि वक्ता **audible** हो परन्तु **Loudly** का अर्थ है 'with a lot of noise'.

Adverb

(b) Adverb of Time

- Adverb of Time shows **when** (समय)- ये कार्य होने का समय बताता है।
- जैसे: I came **late**.
- समय दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:
- after, ago, early, late, now, then, soon, today, tomorrow** आदि।

(c) Adverb of Place

- Adverb of place shows **where** (स्थान)- ये कार्य होने का स्थान बताता है।
- जैसे: I could not find him **anywhere**.
- स्थान दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverb निम्नलिखित हैं:
- here, there, in, out, up, down, within above, below** आदि।

(d) Adverbs of Frequency or Number

- Adverb of Frequency or Number shows **how often** (कितनी बार)- ये कार्य होने की **frequency** (आवृत्ति) बताता है।
- जैसे: I can **never** do so.
- She **seldom** goes there.
- She **often** comes to meet me.
- ‘**Frequency**’ को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:
- once, twice, thrice, always, never, seldom, often, frequently** आदि।

(e) Adverbs of Degree

- Adverb of degree shows **how much** (परिमाण)- ये बताता है कार्य कितना अधिक हुआ या कितना कम हुआ।
- जैसे: The work is **almost** complete.
- I am **quite** well.
- ‘**Degree**’ को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:
- very, much, more, too, quite, little, almost** आदि।

(f) Adverb of Reason

- Adverb of Reason shows **why** (कारण)- ये कारण बताता है।
- जैसे: I could not come **because** I was not well.
- I don't like him **since** he has cheated many people.
- ‘**Reason**’ को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:
- So, hence, therefore, on account of, consequently** आदि।

(g) 1. Adverbs of Affirmative (स्वीकारात्मक)

- जैसे: She will **truly** help you.
- I will **surely** repay the loan.

- ‘Affirmation’ को दर्शाने वाले Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

surely, certainly, truly आदि।

2. Adverbs of Negation (निषेधात्मक)

जैसे: She did **not** reply to my letter.

I have **never** cheated anybody.

- ‘Negation’ को दर्शाने वाले मुख्य Adverbs निम्नलिखित हैं:

No, not, never आदि।

2. RELATIVE ADVERBS

- Relative Adverb वाक्यों को जोड़ता है। अपने **antecedent** (पूर्व प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun) की ओर संकेत करते हुए **time, place, reason** और **manner** बताता है। Relative Adverbs हैं- **When, Where, Why** और **How**.

जैसे: I don't know **where** he has gone.

He will come **when** I call him.

3. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

- Interrogative Adverbs हैं- **Why, when, where, how**.

जैसे: **Why** are you surprised?

Where has she seen me?

Adverb: Comparison

- Adjectives की भाँति कुछ Adverbs की भी **Degree of Comparison** होती हैं।

जैसे:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
(a) Hard	harder	hardest
Fast	faster	fastest
Soon	sooner	soonest
near	nearer	nearest
early	earlier	earliest
(b) Beautifully	more Beautifully	most beautifully
Carefully	more carefully	most carefully
Swiftly	more swiftly	most swiftly
Slowly	more slowly	most slowly
Wisely	more wisely	most wisely
(c) Ill, Badly	worse	worst
Forth	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest
Late	later	latest, last
Little	less	least
Much	more	most
Well	better	best

Adverb

POSITION OF ADVERBS

- Adverb सदैव उस शब्द के निकट रखा जाता है, जिसको यह **modify** करता है। यदि Adverb के Position को बदल दिया जाए तो वाक्य का अर्थ ही बदल जाता है।

जैसे:	Only she saw my dress.	केवल उसने किसी और नहीं।
	She only saw my dress.	केवल देखा, और कुछ नहीं किया।
	She saw only my dress.	केवल मेरी dress, किसी और की नहीं।
	She saw my only dress.	एकमात्र dress जो मेरे पास थी।
	She saw my dress only .	केवल dress, पुस्तक या कुछ और नहीं।

1. वाक्य के आरंभ में (At the beginning)

- (i) **Interrogative Adverb** का प्रयोग सदैव **sentences** के आरंभ में होता है।

जैसे: **When** are you returning home?

(ii) सारे वाक्य को **modify** करने के लिए Adverb आरंभ में प्रयुक्त होता है।

जैसे: **Surely**, I will take care of you.

(iii) **Emphasis** के लिए भी **Adverb** आरंभ में प्रयुक्त होता है।

जैसे: **Off** she goes.

Here comes the prince.

2. दो वाक्यों के मध्य में (In the Middle)

- (i) कुछ **Adverbs of Time** (**always**, **never**, **ever**, **often**, **seldom**, **sometimes** आदि) उन **Verbs** से पहले प्रयुक्त होते हैं, जिनको ये **modify** करते हैं।

जैसे: She **never** comes here.

I **seldom** go there.

- (ii) जब sentences में Auxiliary Verb दे रखा हो, तो **Adverb** का प्रयोग **Auxiliary Verb** और **Main Verb** के बीच में होता है।

जैसे: He will **never** come here.
H.V. M.V.

I have **seldom** gone there.
H.V. M.V.

- (iii) Verb '**to be**' का प्रयोग **Main Verb** की तरह हो या **Helping Verb** की तरह, Adverb का प्रयोग **Verb** के बाद ही किया जाता है।

जैसे: She is **always** happy.
M.V.

I am **never** sad.
M.V.

He is **always** praised for his sweet voice.
H.V. M.V.

SEE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES

- I. He comes often every Sunday. (Place 'often' before 'comes')
- II. He goes usually to shop every Sunday. (Place 'usually' before 'goes')
- III. He is always happy. (✓)

USE OF SOME ADVERBS

1. **Very** तथा **Much** के प्रयोग में अन्तर एवं समानता:-

(A) **Very** का प्रयोग **Positive degree** के साथ होता है; जैसे - very good, very wise, very lucky, very honest लेकिन **much** का **Comparative Degree** के साथ; जैसे: much better, much wiser, much luckier, much more honest etc.

नोट: **very much + comparative degree** का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे - Very much better, very much wiser, very much luckier etc.

(B) **Very** या **much** का प्रयोग **Superlative Degree** के साथ भी होता है।

(a) The very best boy.
The+ very+ Sup.

(C) **Very** का प्रयोग **Present Participle** के पहले होता है; जैसे: very interesting, very daring, very confusing, very boring, very entertaining. किन्तु **much** का **Past Participle** के साथ; जैसे: much surprised, much grieved, much admired etc.

नोट: Very का प्रयोग Past Participle के पहले नहीं होता है किन्तु निम्नलिखित **Past Participles** के पहले **Very** का प्रयोग होता है

very tired, very dejected, very contented, very discontented, very pleased, very drunk, very limited, very delighted.

2. **Quite** का अर्थ है 'perfectly या completely' (पूर्णतया, पूर्णरूपेण) और इसका प्रयोग 'very' की जगह नहीं होता है। अतः

- (i) She is quite lovely. (✗)
- (ii) You are quite handsome. (✗)

इन वाक्यों का शुद्ध रूप है-

- (i) She is **very lovely**.
- (ii) You are **very handsome**.

3. **Fairly** तथा **Rather**

(A) **Fairly** का प्रयोग **Positive Degree** के साथ होता है। जैसे: fairly wise, fairly good, etc.

➤ किन्तु, **Rather** का प्रयोग **Positive** तथा **Comparative Degree** के साथ होता है; जैसे: rather bad, rather difficult, rather worse, rather hotter, etc.

(B) **Fairly** के बाद **too** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है जबकि **Rather** के बाद **too** का प्रयोग भी होता है; जैसे:

(i) fairly too good कहना गलत है। लेकिन, rather too good कहना बिल्कुल सही है।

(C) **Fairly** के बाद **Pleasant Adjectives** का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे:
fairly wise, fairly beautiful, etc.

Adverb

- **Rather** के बाद **unpleasant adjectives** का; जैसे: rather wicked, rather difficult, rather troublesome, rather dull etc. किन्तु, rather amusing, rather good, rather clever, rather pretty, rather beautiful का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

4. Too

- (a) Too = का अर्थ है **also**

जैसे: I **too** was invited to tea.

- (b) Too – का अर्थ है **more than required** (आवश्यकता से अधिक)

- इसका प्रयोग **Unpleasant Adjectives** के साथ होता है। जैसे: **too bad, too naughty, too wicked, too fat, too dull, etc.**

अतः too glad, to happy, to pleased, too healthy आदि कहना गलत है।

- I am too glad to meet you का अर्थ है 'मैं आपसे मिलकर इतना खुश हूँ जितना नहीं होना चाहिए'। इस वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा।

जैसे: I am **very glad** to meet you.

- (c) **Too to** पर आधारित वाक्यों में too के बाद अर्थ के अनुसार **Pleasant Adjective** का प्रयोग भी हो सकता है।

जैसे: (i) He is **too** intelligent **to** be cheated. (=He is so intelligent that he cannot be cheated.)

Too + Adjective

1. He is **too** tall. (वह इतना ज्यादा लंबा है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए)
2. She is **too** slim. (वह इतनी ज्यादा दुबली-पतली है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए)
3. It is **too** cold. (इतनी अधिक ठंड है जितना नहीं होना चाहिए)

Verb + Adjective

1. He is **very** tall. (वह बहुत लंबा है)
2. She is **very** slim. (वह बहुत दुबली-पतली है)
3. It is **very** cold. (बहुत ठंड है)

5. So

- '**So**' का प्रयोग '**very**' के स्थान पर नहीं हो सकता। '**So**' के बाद '**that**' का एवं '**Too**' के बाद '**to**' का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

जैसे:

1. I am **so** happy (Incorrect)
2. I am **very** happy (Correct)
3. I am **so** happy **that** I am unable to control my feelings (Correct)

6. Enough

- (A) '**Enough**' **adjective** एवं **adverb** दोनों ही रूप में कार्य कर सकता है। जब '**enough**' adverb का कार्य करता है तो इसका प्रयोग उस **adjective** के बाद होता है जिसके लिए ये प्रयुक्त हुआ हो। **Adjective** के रूप में इसका प्रयोग उस **Noun** के पहले होता है जिसके लिये ये प्रयुक्त हुआ है।

- इसका प्रयोग **Noun** से पहले परंतु **Adjective** या **Adverb** के तुरंत बाद लगाया जाता है।

जैसे:

1. She is wise **enough** to understand your intention.
2. He has enough **money** to buy this car. (Correct)

Adverb

- **Enough** के पहले हमेशा **Adjective** या **Adverb** के **Positive Degree** का प्रयोग होता है।
जैसे: 1. (A) He is / (B) faster enough / (C) to defeat / (D) you. / (E) No Error.
2. (A) He is bravest / (B) enough to be / (C) selected for / (D) the post of soldier. / (E) No Error.
 - वाक्य (i) के Part (B) में faster के बदले fast तथा वाक्य (ii) के Part (A) में bravest के बदले brave का प्रयोग होगा क्योंकि **Positive Degree + enough** का प्रयोग होता है।
- 7. Yet**
- **Yet** का प्रयोग ‘अब तक’ अर्थात् ‘बोलने के समय तक’ (**up to the moment/time of speaking**) के अर्थ में **Interrogative** तथा **Negative Sentence** में verb के बाद या verb + object के बाद होता है।
नोट: Yet का प्रयोग present perfect के -ve वाक्य में होता है न कि Past Tense में।
जैसे: 1. The postman did not come yet. (✗)
2. The postman has not come yet. (✓)
3. Didn't the postman come yet? (✗)
4. Hasn't the postman come yet? (✓)

SOME RULES

RULE 1

‘Else’ के बाद ‘but’ का प्रयोग करें

- ‘Rather’, ‘Other’ एवं ‘otherwise’ के बाद ‘than’ का प्रयोग करें।
जैसे: 1. I would rather die than beg.
2. It is nothing else than sheer foolishness. (Use ‘but’ in place of ‘than’)
3. Rahul had no other alternative but to work hard. (Use ‘than’ in place of ‘but’)
4. Rohit has no one else to talk to except his wife. (Use ‘but’ in place of ‘except’)

RULE 2

- Adverbs ‘**Seldom, nowhere, never, nothing, hardly, scarcely, neither, barely, rarely**’ के अर्थ नकारात्मक होते हैं। अतः इनका प्रयोग किसी दूसरे नकारात्मक शब्द के साथ न करें।
जैसे: 1. I rarely went to meet nobody. (Use ‘anybody’ in place of ‘nobody’)
2. She hardly knows nothing about me. (Use ‘anything’ in place of ‘nothing’)
3. I hardly know somebody in the city. (Say ‘anybody’ in place of ‘somebody’)

RULE 3

- Negative, शब्द जैसे ‘not’ व ‘never’ का प्रयोग ‘**deny, forbid, Unless, Until, lest, too to**’ और ‘**both**’ के साथ न करें।
1. She denied that she had not done anything wrong. (Delete ‘not’)
2. Both of us are not going there. (✗)
Neither of us is going there. (✓)
3. Unless he will not come, I will not go. (✗)
Unless he comes, I will not go. (✓)

Adverb

RULE 4

- (A) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ किया जा सकता है।
'regard, describe, define, treat, view, know'.
- (B) Adverb 'as' का प्रयोग नीचे दिए गये verbs के साथ न करें।
'name, elect, think, consider, call, appoint, make, choose.' e.g.,
1. I **regard** him my brother. (Add 'as' after 'him')
 2. Biology has been **defined** the study of organism. (Add 'as' after 'defined')
 3. She is **considered** as the best student of my class. (Drop 'as' after 'considered')
 4. The teacher **called** him as stupid. (Drop 'as')
 5. The principal **appointed** him as lecturer. (Remove 'as')
 6. He **thinks** her as a fool. (Remove 'as')

RULE 5

- वाक्य में 'adverb' के बाद 'Helping verb' का प्रयोग करें और फिर 'subject' का।
1. Seldom he comes to Delhi. (✗)
 2. **Seldom does** he come to Delhi. (✓)
 3. Never I'll go there. (✗)
 4. **Never shall** I go there. (✓)
 5. No sooner she reached the station than the train left. (✗)
 6. **No sooner did** she reach the station than the train left. (✓)
 7. Hardly she had reached the station when the train arrived. (✗)
 8. **Hardly had** she reached the station when the train arrived. (✓)
 9. So quickly she ran that she overtook her friends. (✗)
 10. **So** quickly did she run that she overtook her friends. (✓)
 11. His wife comes here and **so** does he.
 12. He doesn't know any one here and **neither** do I.

RULE 6

- (A) 'Too' and 'as well' का प्रयोग 'Besides', in 'addition to', 'also' के रूप में **affirmative sentences** में किया जाता है। 'Also' का प्रयोग वाक्य के अंत में नहीं करना चाहिए।
जैसे: She found her bag and money **too/as well**.

RULE 7

- 'Seldom or never', 'seldom, if ever', 'little or nothing', 'little, if anything' का प्रयोग वाक्य में किया जाता है परन्तु 'seldom or ever' या 'little or anything' कहना गलत होगा।
जैसे: He **seldom or never** goes to see movies.

RULE 8

- **Verbs of sensation (Taste, Smell, Feel, Appear, Seem, Sound, एवं Look)** हमारे पाँचों इंद्रियों से संबंधित होते हैं। इनके बाद **adverb** नहीं **adjective** का प्रयोग करें।

Adverb

जैसे: I look honest,
Verb of Adjective
sensation

I work honestly.
ordinary verb adverb

I felt bad.
verb of adj
sensation

I sing badly.
Ordinary Adv
verb

- कुछ अन्य Verbs जिनके साथ adverb नहीं adjective का प्रयोग होता है वे हैं - **be, become, turn, get, grow, keep, make** और **prove**.

जैसे: He got angry.
adj

RULE 9

- **Manly, masterly, slovenly, friendly, orderly, gentlemanly, sickly, weekly, monthly** Adjectives हैं। 'ly' में अंत होने के बजाए से हम इन्हें adverb मानने की भूल कर बैठते हैं।

जैसे: He behaved friendly. (✗)
He behaved in a friendly manner. (✓)

SPOTTING THE ERROR

1. (a) A soldier is/ (b) taught never to/(c) fight cowardly/(d) No error.
2. (a) A man of fifty/ (b) cannot be called/ (c) as young./ (d) No error.
3. (a) He is being/(b) very politely/ (c) for the reason best known to him. /(d) No error.
4. (a) He is enough tall/(b) to be selected as Sub Inspector/ (c) in Delhi Police/(d) No error.
5. (a) He is niggard/ (b) and saves each/(c) and every paise/(d) No error.
6. (a) I am full of energy/(b) today because I / (c) soundly slept last night/(d) No error.
7. (a) I did not know hardly/(b) anyone in the college/ (c) and so I felt lonely all the time/(d) No error.
8. (a) I have never seen/ (b) a coward man / (c) like Sohan/(d) No error.
9. (a) I never remember/(b) to have met a more intelligent/(c) man in my life/(d) No error.
10. (a) I refused to accompany him/(b) because he was/(c) so boring/(d) No error.
11. (a) I refused to consider/(b) him as an honest boy / (c) as he had cheated many

Adverb

- people/(d) No error.
12. (a) I see him often/(b) at the/(c) bus terminal/(d) No error.
13. (a) Mangoes taste / (b) more sweetly than / (c) any other fruit of this world/(d) No error.
14. (a) My father / (b) is very quicker than/(c) I at Chess/(d) No error.
15. (a) Never in the history/(b) there has been/ (c) as shrewd a mentor as Chanakya/ (d) No error.
16. (a) Outright rejection/(b) of my plea /(c) disappointed me/(d) No error.
17. (a) She did her job/ (b) as better as she/(c) could do/(d) No error.
18. (a) She does her/(b) work good as she/(c) is a trained nurse/(d) No error.
19. (a) She had barely/(b) nothing to wear/(c) when she came to me for help/(d) No error.
20. (a) She is either/(b) dumb or deaf,/ (c) if not both/(d) No error.
21. (a) She knows/(b) riding/ (c) a horse/(d) No error.
22. (a) Great leaders tried / (b) to eradicate social evil practices/(c) with tooth and nail/ (d) No error.
23. (a) It rained/ (b)like cats and dogs/ (c)throughout the night./ (d) No error
24. (a) The State Government/(b) appointed him as / (c) officer-in-charge/(d) No error.
25. (a) The teacher asked/ (b) the students to/(c) talk loudly/(d) No error.
26. (a) Though he was brave,/ (b) he could not face the ups and downs/(c) of life manly/ (d) No error.
27. (a) We must try / (b) to save our hardly / (c) earned money/(d) No error.
28. (a) We seldom or ever/(b) go out these days /(c) because it is too hot now-a-days/ (d) No error.
29. (a) We should / (b) keep our belongings/(c) orderly/(d) No error.
30. (a) Vijay could not scarcely conceal/ (b) his happiness /(c) at my resignation./ (d) No error.
31. (a) When I read his biography,/ (b) I hardly found something/(c)in his character that I could admire/(d) No error.
32. (a) When she received the good news,/ (b) she ran straightly / (c) to call up her parents/ (d) No error.
33. (a) You always / (b) come lately/ (c) to class/(d) No error.
34. (a) You have / (b) acted nobler than/(c) all of us/(d) No error.
35. (a) You should have/(b) sufficiently collateral/(c) to pay back the loan d) No error.
36. (a) Veena worked / (b)very hardly / (c)as she wanted to be a surgeon/(d) No error.
37. (a) She sounded / (b)very sadly after / (c)the death of her pet/(d) No error.
38. (a) Her speech was not clearly / (b)but we understood / (c)the underlying meaning/ (d) No error

Adverb

39. (a) All the pupils/ (b) stood up respectively/ (c) as the Guru entered the room./ (d) No error.

Answers with Explanation

1. (c); fight क्रिया है जिसकी विशेषता adverb बताता है। ‘Cowardly’ adjective है। अतः adverb form ‘in a cowardly manner’ का प्रयोग करें।
2. (c); ‘as’ हटा दें। ‘call’ के साथ ‘as’ का प्रयोग गलत है।
3. (c); ‘politely’ के स्थान पर ‘polite’ का प्रयोग करें।
4. (a); enough का प्रयोग ‘adjective’ के बाद होता है। अतः tall के बाद ‘enough’ का प्रयोग करें।
5. (a); ‘Niggard’ noun है। अतः niggard के पहले article ‘a’ का प्रयोग करें।
6. (c); Slept (verb) के बाद soundly (adverb) का प्रयोग करें।
7. (a); Hardly एवं not का प्रयोग एक साथ न करें क्योंकि दोनों ही अर्थ में नकारात्मक हैं। ‘I hardly knew anyone’ का प्रयोग करना सही होगा।
8. (b); ‘Man’ noun है जिसकी विशेषता adjective बताता है। ‘Cowardly’ का प्रयोग सही होगा।
9. (a); Never का प्रयोग ‘remember’ के बाद होगा।
10. (c); ‘So’ के प्रयोग के बाद ‘that’ का प्रयोग होना जरूरी होता है। अतः ‘So’ के स्थान पर ‘very’ का प्रयोग करें।
11. (b); Consider के साथ ‘as’ का प्रयोग गलत है।
12. (a); Often the प्रयोग main verb ‘see’ के पहले होगा।
13. (b); ‘taste’ verb of sensation है। इसके बाद ‘adverb’ नहीं ‘adjective’ का प्रयोग करें। Sweetly को ‘Sweet’ में परिवर्तित करें।
14. (b); Comparative degree (quicker) के साथ ‘very’ नहीं ‘much’ का प्रयोग होगा।
15. (b); Never (adv) से शुरू होने वाले वाक्य के बाद पहले helping verb (यहाँ-has) का प्रयोग करें फिर Sub (यहाँ-there)का।
16. (d);
17. (b); As.....as के बीच हमेशा adjective/adverb का positive degree का प्रयोग करें। ‘as well as’ सही प्रयोग है।
18. (b); ‘Good’ adjective है। यहाँ adverb ‘well’ का प्रयोग करें।
19. (b); ‘Barely’ negative शब्द है। इसके साथ दूसरा negative शब्द ‘nothing’ का प्रयोग न करें।
20. (c); If not both के जगह पर ‘if neither’।
21. (b); Know एवं wonder दो ऐसे verbs हैं जिनके बाद ‘wh’ family का प्रयोग होना जरूरी है। ‘knows how to ride’ का प्रयोग सही होगा।
22. (c); ‘with’ हटा दे।
23. (b); ‘like’ हटा दे।
24. (b); appoint के साथ ‘as’ का प्रयोग नहीं होता।
25. (c); loudly के स्थान पर aloud शब्द का प्रयोग करें। ‘Aloud’ शब्द उपयुक्त है क्योंकि इसका अर्थ है- audible voice में (सुनने लायक आवाज में) जबकि loudly का अर्थ है शोर से भरा हुआ। (with a lot of noise)
26. (c); Manly के स्थान manfully शब्द का प्रयोग करें। Manly adjective है जिसका अर्थ है brave/strong.

Adverb

27. (b); Hardly के स्थान पर hard earned money का प्रयोग करें। Hardly का अर्थ है मुश्किल से। Hard का अर्थ है महनत से।
28. (a); Seldom के साथ never का प्रयोग करें।
29. (c); Orderly adjective है। 'In an orderly manner' का प्रयोग करें।
30. (a); 'Scarcely' negative शब्द है। इसके साथ दूसरा negative शब्द 'not' का प्रयोग न करें।
31. (b); 'hardly' के साथ 'anything' का प्रयोग करें।
32. (b); 'Straight' adjective एवं adverb दोनों हैं। 'Straightly' कोई शब्द नहीं है।
33. (b); 'Lately' का अर्थ है हाल-फिलहाल। 'late' का प्रयोग करें जिसका अर्थ है देर से।
34. (b); 'more nobly' का प्रयोग होगा न कि 'nobler' का।
35. (b); 'Collateral' noun है। इसकी विशेषता 'sufficient' (adj) बताता है न कि 'sufficiently' (adv).
36. (b); 'Hard' का प्रयोग करें।
37. (b); Sound (verb of sensation) के साथ 'sad' (adj) का प्रयोग होगा।
38. (a); 'Clearly' के स्थान पर 'clear' का प्रयोग करें। 'Speech' noun है। इसकी विशेषता 'clear' (adj) बताता है न कि 'clearly' (adv).
39. (b); 'respectively' को 'respectfully' में परिवर्तित करें।

16

WORD OFTEN CONFUSED & MISUSED

CHAPTER

S.N.	WORD	हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Accept	स्वीकार करना	To receive a thing.
	Except	के अलावा	Leaving apart or excluding.
2.	Expect	उम्मीद करना	To hope
	Suspect	आशंका करना	To apprehend
3.	Adopt	अपनाना/गोद लेना	To accept/to take another person's child legally.
	Adept	निपुण	Proficient
	Adapt	ढालना	To change accordingly.
4.	Allude	उल्लेख करना	Refer to
	Elude	बचना	To escape
5.	Alternate	एक छोड़ कर एक	One after another.
	Alternative	विकल्प	Available instead /substitute
6.	Aural	कान से संबंधित	Of ear
	Oral	मौखिक	Verbal
7.	Access	पहुँच	Approach
	Excess	प्रचुरता में	More than due.
8.	Averse	नापसंद करना	To dislike
	Adverse	विपरीत	Unfavourable
9.	Advice (N)	सलाह	An opinion
	Advise (V)	सलाह देना	To offer an opinion.
10.	Affect (V)	असर करना	To influence
	Effect (N)	परिणाम	Result
11.	Aposite	उपयुक्त	Proper
	Opposite	के सामने/विपरीत	In front of/ contrary
12.	Amend	संशोधन करना	To improve
	Emend	अशुद्धियाँ निकाल देना	To remove the mistakes
13.	Amoral	निनैतिक	Having no moral sense.
	Immoral	अनैतिक	Not conforming to moral standards.

Word Often Confused & Misused —————

14. Antics	हँसाने के लिए की गई हरकत	Tricks
Antiques	प्राचीन कला की वस्तुएं	Ancient pieces of art.
15. Appraise	मूल्यांकन करना	Assess the quality/ value of.
Apprise	सूचित करना	Inform
16. Allusion	संदर्भ में (अप्रत्यक्ष रूप से)	Indirect reference
Illusion	भ्रम	Deception
17. Beside	के बगल में	By the side of
Besides	के अलावा	Apart from
18. Bridle	लगाम	Headgear of horse
Bridal	दुल्हा/दुल्हन से संबंधित	Related to bride/ bridegroom
19. Beneficial	लाभदायक	Useful
Beneficiary	लाभान्वित व्यक्ति	One who receives benefit.
20. Boar	सुअर	A pig
Bore	बर्दाश्त करना/ पैदा करना	To tolerate or to produce (V ₂ of bear)
21. Bought	खरीदना	V ₂ and V ₃ of buy.
Brought	लाना	V ₂ and V ₃ of bring.
22. Catch	गतिशील को पकड़ना	To take hold of something when it is moving.
Hold	थामना	To take hold of something when it is static.
23. Childish	बेवकूफी भरा	Foolish
Childlike	मासूम	Innocent
24. Continual	नियमित रूप से	Happening repeatedly
Continuous	लगातार	Without break
25. Credible	विश्वसनीय	Believable
Creditable	सम्मानीय	Praiseworthy, honourable
26. Censure	निन्दा करना	To criticise
Censor	प्रतिबन्धित करना	Official licensing of films etc.
27. Canon	नियम	Rule
Cannon	तोप	A powerful gun fixed to wheels.
28. Canvas	मोटा कपड़ा	Coarse cloth
Canvass	घूम-घूम के बोट माँगना	Visit houses to get political support.
29. Cemetery	कब्रिगाह	A burial place
Symmetry	एक सा	Harmony
30. Casual	उदासीन, अनौपचारिक	Not formal, not taking much interest.
Causal	कारक संबंधी	Relating to cause
31. Climactic	उत्कर्ष से संबंधित	Relating to climax

Word Often Confused & Misused

Climatic	जलवायु संबंधित	Relating to climate
32. Coarse	भद्दा/ मोटा/ समतल नहीं	Rough
Course	किसी कार्य का सिलसिलेवार रास्ता	A line of action.
33. Confidant	राजदार	A person who is entrusted with secrets.
Confident	आत्मविश्वास के साथ	Sure and certain.
34. Contagious	बिमारी जो छूने से फैले	A disease that spreads by contact.
Contiguous	सिमांत	Near
Infectious	बिमारी जो हवा एवं पानी से फैले	A disease that spreads by air or water.
35. Corps	सेना की टुकड़ी	A division of army.
Corpse	मृत शरीर (इंसान का)	A dead body.
Carcass	किसी बड़े जानवर का मृत शरीर	The dead body of a large animal.
36. Conscious	अवगत	To know
Conscientious	ज़मीरवाला	With a sense of duty.
37. Complain (V)	शिकायत करना	To say that something is wrong or not satisfactory.
Complaint (N)	शिकायत	A report of a problem.
38. Complacent	आत्म संतुष्ट	Self-satisfied.
Complaisant	आज्ञाकारी	Obedient and compliant.
39. Complement	पूरक	N-a thing that completes or improves. V-add to something in a way that it improves.
Compliment	तारीफ	A remark of admiration.
40. Custom	सामाजिक नियम	Social usage.
Habit	आदत	Personal usage.
41. Compose	बनाना	Make up the whole.
Comprise	से बना होना	Consist of.
42. Career	पेशा	Course through life.
Carrier	सामान ढोने की गाड़ी	That which carries.
43. Credible	विश्वसनीय	Believable
Credulous	जो आसानी से विश्वास कर ले	Too ready to believe.
44. Discreet	(सचेत ताकि किसी को व्यवहार या भाषा से चोट न पहुँचे)	Careful not to cause offence by speech or behaviour.
Discrete	(पृथक)	Separate, distinct.
45. Disease	बिमारी	Ailment or illness.
Decease	मृत्यु	Death.
46. Decent	सभ्य	Nice, respectable.
Descent	ढ़लान	Downward motion.
Dissent	मतभेद	Difference of opinion.

Word Often Confused & Misused —————

47. Dual	दोहरा	With two parts.
Duel	द्वंद्व युद्ध	A fight between two persons using guns or swords.
48. Deface	विकृत करना	Disfigure.
Efface	मिटा देना	Wipe out.
49. Deny	खंडन करना	To declare untrue.
Decline	अस्वीकार करना	Refuse to accept an offer.
Refuse	इन्कार करना	Show unwillingness towards.
Refute	खंडन करना (सबूत के साथ)	Prove wrong.
50. Defy	उल्लंघन करना	To break the law.
Deify	ईश्वर बना देना	To make someone or something a god.
51. Defuse	तनाव कम करना	Remove the tension.
Diffuse	फैलाना/अस्पष्ट	Spread out; not clear or concise.
52. Desert	N- रेगिस्तान, V- त्याग देना	N- An area where there is little rain. V- To leave someone.
Dessert	भोजन के बाद का मीठा व्यंजन	Sweet dish eaten at the end of a meal.
53. Depression	गड़डा/अवसाद	Hollow/ A mental state of despair.
Depreciation	मूल्य कम होना	Undervalue.
54. Disinterested	निष्पक्ष	Impartial.
Uninterested	दिलचस्पी ना होना	Not interested.
55. Delightful	प्रसन्नतादायक	Very pleasant.
Delicious	स्वादिष्ट	Pleasing to taste.
56. Deprecate	नापसंद करना	To hate.
Depreciate	मुल्य कम करना	To reduce in value.
57. Defective	त्रुटिपूर्ण	Having a certain imperfection.
Deficient	कमी होना	Lacking something.
58. Decided	निर्णय किया हुआ (निश्चित)	Clear and definite.
Decisive	निर्णायक	Deciding.
59. Effective	असरदार	Producing effect.
Efficacious	जो निश्चित ही उत्तम परिणाम दे	Able to produce the desired result.
Efficient	कार्यकुशल	Competent.
60. Elicit	उत्पन्न कर पाना	To get or produce something.
Illicit	अवैध	Illegal or disapproved by society.
61. Economical	कम खर्च वाला	Involving less expenditure.
Economic	अर्थव्यवस्था सम्बन्धित	Relating to economy.
62. Enduring	लम्बे समय तक कायम	Existing for a long time.
Endurable	सहन करने लायक	Bearable.

Word Often Confused & Misused

63. Emigrant	प्रवासी	A person who leaves his country to settle in another.
Immigrant	अप्रवासी	One who comes to another country.
64. Enormity	अति, घोर	Extreme seriousness.
Enormousness	ज्यादा होना	Great in size or scale.
65. Ensure	सुनिश्चित करना	To make sure.
Insure	बीमा करना	To protect against risk.
Assure	दिलासा देना	To make certain of.
66. Envelop	(ढ़क देना)	To cover or surround something completely.
Envelope	(लिफाफा)	A flat usually square paper container for a letter.
67. Especially	विशेष कर	In particular, above all.
Specially	किसी विशेष अवसर के लिए	For a special purpose.
68. Excite	उत्तेजित करना	To arouse feelings of happiness or enthusiasm.
Incite	उकसाना / भड़काना	To arouse unpleasant or violent feelings.
69. Expedient	सही/ लाभदायक	Helpful or useful in a particular situation.
Expeditious	शीघ्र/ फुर्ती से	Prompt.
70. Extinct	विलुप्त	No longer existing.
Instinct	मूल प्रवृत्ति	Inborn impulse.
71. Flair	जन्मजात प्रवृत्ति	Natural ability.
Flare	धधकना, फैलना	A burst of flame or light/ to become angry.
72. Flaunt	दिखावा करना	Display ostentatiously/to show off.
Flout	उल्लंघन करना	Disregard a rule or custom.
73. Fortuitous	आकस्मिक	Happening by chance.
Fortunate	भाग्यशाली	Lucky.
74. Felicity	प्रसन्नता	A blessing, happiness.
Facility	सुविधा	Ease or comfort
Faculty	कार्यशक्ति/ कॉलेज का विभाग /कॉलेज के अध्यापकगण	Ability/departments of college/ the people who teach
75. Fatal	घातक	Deadly
Fateful	महत्वपूर्ण/परन्तु नकारात्मक परिणामयुक्त	Important but with usually negative effect.
76. Fain	खुशी से	Gladly
Feign	दिखावा करना (जो सच नहीं है)/बहाना बनाना	To pretend to feel something.

Word Often Confused & Misused

77. Floor	फर्श	The flat surface of room on which we walk.
Ground	जमीन	The surface of earth outside the room.
78. Graceful	भव्य	Handsome or attractive
Gracious	दयालु	Merciful
79. Gate	द्वार	An entrance
Gait	चलने का तरीका	A particular way of walking.
80. Gourmand	पेटू	A glutton
Gourmet	पाक कला का पारखी	A food connoisseur.
81. Hear	सुनना	To receive sound.
Listen	ध्यान से सुनना	To hear carefully.
82. Hoard	छिपाकर संग्रह करना	To store in a secret place.
Horde	एक बड़ा समूह	A large group of people.
83. Humility	विनम्रता	The quality of being humble.
Humiliation	अपमान	Disrespect
84. Historic	महत्वपूर्ण	Important
Historical	ऐतिहासिक	Relating to history
Histrionic	नाटकीय एवं बढ़ा चढ़ाकर	Dramatic and exaggerated
85. Human	मानव	Relating to man
Humane	दयालु	Kind
86. Illegal	गैरकानूनी	Against the law
Illicit	अवैध	Disapproved of by society.
87. Incredible	अविश्वसनीय	Unbelievable
Incredulous	जो विश्वास न करें	Not ready to believe something/ someone.
88. Ingenious	बढ़िया एवं नई युक्ति भरा	Clever and involving new ideas.
Ingenuous	निष्कपट, सरल	Honest and sincere.
89. Intense	तीव्र	Extreme and forceful.
Intensive	गहन	Involving a lot of effort.
90. Invent	आविष्कार करना	To create something which never existed before.
Discover	खोज करना	To find something for the first time which nobody was aware of.
91. Industrial	उद्योग संबंधी	Relating to industry
Industrious	मेहनती	Hard-working
92. Imperious	दबंग	Haughty
Imperial	राजसी	Majestic, relating to empire.
93. Incumbent	जरूरी	To be necessary
Recumbent	लेटा हुआ	Lying down
94. Jealous	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी हो)	When we are afraid of losing the person/ thing we love, we feel jealous.

Word Often Confused & Misused

Envious	ईर्ष्यालु (जब वस्तु हमारी नहीं हो)	When we wish we had what someone else have, we feel envious. Envy and jealousy are slightly different in meaning.
95. Judicial	न्याय संबंधी	Relating to a judge or justice.
Judicious	समझदार	Wise, Prudent
96. Light	V- जलाना-प्रकाशित करने के लिए N- रोशनी, Adj- हल्का	Verb-to start flames in order to spread light/ Noun-radiance/Adj-not heavy.
Burn	V- जलाना-नाश करने के लिए, N- फफोला	V-to start flames to destroy something/N- the part of body damaged due to heat.
97. Lightening	उजाला करना, हल्का करना, गोरा करना	To make bright/ less heavy/ pale/ less serious.
Lightning	बिजली-जो आसमान में दिखती है	A flash of bright light seen in the sky.
Lighting	बिजली की व्यवस्था	The arrangement of lights.
98. Loath	अनिच्छुक	Reluctant, unwilling
Loathe	घृणा करना	To hate
99. Loose	ढीला	Not tight.
Lose	खोना/हारना	Be defeated.
Loss	घाटा/हानि	The state of not in posession of something or having it less than before.
100. Luxuriant	प्रचुरता में उगना	Strong in growth
Luxurious	विलासितापूर्ण	Very comfortable and expensive.
101. Lovely	प्यारा, सुंदर	Beautiful
Lovable	प्यार करने योग्य	Worthy of love
102. Metal	धातु	A chemical element. Eg-gold, iron etc.
Mettle	क्षमता	Ability.
103. Metre	लम्बाई की इकाई	A unit of length.
Meter	एक यंत्र	A device used to measure the amount of something that is used.
104. Negligent	लापरवाह	Careless
Negligible	नगण्य	Very little
105. Momentary	क्षणिक	Short-lived
Momentous	महत्वपूर्ण	Very important
106. Minor	नाबालिग	Underage
Miner	खदान कर्मी	One who works in mines.
107. Militate	प्रतिकूल होना	To hinder
Mitigate	तीव्रता कम करना/शान्त करना	Make less severe.
108. Naval	नेवी संबंधित	Relating to a navy.

Word Often Confused & Misused

Navel	नाभी	Small round part in the middle of the stomach.
109. Notable	ध्यान देने लायक	Important and deserving attention.
Notorious	कुख्यात	Known for bad qualities.
Famous	प्रसिद्ध	Well known
Eminent	प्रसिद्ध एवं सम्माननीय	Well known and respected
110. Official	आधिकारिक	Relating to an office.
Officious	सलाह देने के लिए तत्पर	Too eager to tell others what to do.
111. Ordinance	अध्यादेश	A law made by the government.
Ordnance	सेना का साजो-सामान	Military material such as weapons, ammunition etc.
112. Pane	खिड़की/दरवाजे का काँच	A flat piece of glass used in a window/door.
Pain	दर्द	Feeling of physical suffering.
Pains	अथक प्रयास	A lot of efforts.
113. Palate	तालू	The roof of the mouth/ the sense of taste.
Palette	रंग मिलाने का बर्टन	An artist's mixing board.
Pellet	किसी चीज़ का छोटा गोला	A small ball of any substance.
114. Pedal	पैर से चलाने वाला	A foot-operated lever.
Peddle	घूम-घूम कर सामान बेचना	To sell goods by going from one place to another.
115. Perpetrate	करना (गुनाह)	To commit (a crime).
Perpetuate	किसी कार्य/हालात के जारी रहने का कारण बनना	To cause something to continue.
116. Personal	निजी	Private
Personnel	कर्मी	Staff
117. Pore	छेद	Small hole.
Pour	बहाना, उड़ेलना	Flow, cause to flow.
118. Practice (N)	अभ्यास	Regular activity.
Practise (V)	अभ्यास करना	To do something regularly.
119. Practicable	व्यवहारिक	Able to be done.
Practical/	वास्तव में/प्रयोगात्मक	Effective or realistic.
120. Prescribe	सलाह देना (के रूप में)	To recommend
Proscribe	गैर कानूनी करार देना	Forbid or condemn.
121. Proceed	आगे बढ़ना	To continue
Precede	पहले आना	To come before/happen before.
122. Popular	प्रसिद्ध	Liked by all.

Word Often Confused & Misused

Populous	घनी आवादी वाला	Thickly populated.
123. Pray	प्रार्थना करना	To offer prayer to God.
Prey	(V) शिकार करना/(N) शिकार	Hunt and kill / victim
124. Principal	प्रधानाचार्य/ मुख्य	One who is in charge of a school/ first in order of importance.
Principle	सिद्धान्त	Most important basic idea / moral rule.
125. Quite	पूर्ण/थोड़ा	Completely/a little / Note: both meanings are different from each other
Quiet	चुप	To be silent
Quit	छोड़ देना	to give up
126. Respectable	सम्माननीय	Worthy of respect.
Respectful	सम्मानजनक	Showing respect
Respective	विशिष्ट, अलग-अलग	Particular
127. Resource	संसाधन	Means
Recourse	रास्ता	Resort
128. Refute	खण्डन करना	Prove to be wrong.
Repudiate	सही या सच मानने से इंकार करना	Refuse to accept as true or correct.
129. Regrettable	खेदजनक	Causing regret, undesirable.
Regretful	दुखी	Feeling sorry
130. Rise	उठना/जागना/तरक्की करना	To get up, to progress.
Raise	उठाना	To lift
Raze	ध्वस्त करना	To demolish
Rage	गुस्सा	Anger
131. Ride	दोपहिया या जानवर की सवारी करना	To sit on an animal or two-wheeler and travel.
Drive	चार-पहिया की सवारी करना	To travel by a four-wheeler.
132. Rout	धराशाही करना	To defeat completely and easily.
Route	रास्ता	Path
Root	जड़	The underground part of a plant.
133. Septic	एक चिकित्सा संबंधी समस्या	A medical term involving sepsis.
Sceptic	संदेही	Doubtful of an idea or belief.
134. See	देखना	Perceive with eyes.
Look	ताकना/नजर डालना	To direct the eyes in order to see.
Watch	देखना (कुछ अंतराल तक)/ नजर रखना	To look at something for a period of time/ to keep an eye on.
Stare	घूरना	To look continuously for a long time.
Peep	झाँकना	To see secretly or through a hole.
Glance	नजर डालना	To give a quick short look.
Glare	गुस्से में घूरना	To stare angrily.
Glimpse	एक झलक देखना	To see someone very briefly.
Glower	गुस्से से देखना	To see angrily.

Word Often Confused & Misused —————

135. Sever	अलग करना	To break/ to separate.
Amputate	शरीर के किसी बाहरी अंग (हाथ या पैर)को काट कर अलग करना, क्योंकि वह स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त हो चुका है	Cut off a body part that is permanently damaged.
Maim	शरीर के किसी अंग को स्थायी रूप से क्षतिग्रस्त करना	To damage any body part permanently.
Severe	तीव्र	Extreme
Sewer	नाला	Drain
136. Story	कहानी	Account of any event.
Storey	तल	Floor
137. Suit	बाद/अभियोग	Action in a law court.
Soot	कालिख	Black substance in smoke.
Suite	सेट	A set of rooms / furniture.
138. Statue	मूर्ति	Image
Statute	लिखित कानून	Written law
139. Straight	सीधा	Extending without a curve.
Strait	जलसधि	Narrow passage of water.
140. Stationary	स्थिर	Not moving.
Stationery	पैन, कॉपी इत्यादि	Things needed for writing.
141. Sight	दृष्टि/ नजारा	Ability to see/view.
Site	कार्यस्थल	A place of construction.
Cite	उल्लेख करना	To mention.
142. Shear	काटना (बाल, इत्यादि)	To cut off-hair, wool etc.
Sheer	पूर्ण रूप से	Utter, complete
143. Toe	पैर की ऊँगली	Any of the five separate parts at the end of the foot.
Tow	खींच कर गाड़ी ले जाना	To pull a vehicle using a rope or chain tied to another vehicle.
144. Temper	गुस्सा	Anger, rage
Tamper	छड़-छाड़ करना (किसी चीज से)	To interfere with.
145. Temporary	क्षणिक, तत्कालिक	Short lived
Temporal	सांसारिक	Earthly or worldly
146. Titillate	उत्तेजित करना	Stimulate or excite especially in a sexual way.
Titivate	सुन्दरता बढ़ाना	To make smarter or more pretty.
147. Topical	प्रासारिक/आधुनिक विषय से	Related to present time.
Tropical	उष्ण	With hot climate
148. Vain	बेकार में/घमंडी	Not successful/arrogant.
Vein	नाड़ी	Tube that carries blood to the heart in our body.

Word Often Confused & Misused

149. Verbal Verbose Oral Verbiage	शब्दिक शब्दों से भरा मौखिक जरूरत से ज्यादा शब्दों भरा जिससे अर्थ समझना कठिन हो जाए	Relating to words Containing more words than necessary Spoken Use of too many words due to which it becomes difficult for one to understand the speech or article.
150. Virtuous Virtual	नैतिक रूप से अच्छा आभासीय	Having good moral qualities In effect, though not in fact
151. Vile Wile	नीच युक्ति	Immoral Tricks
152. Vale Veil Wail	घाटी नकाब, घूँघट रोना	Valley Cover of face Weep
153. Vocation Vacation	व्यवसाय अवकाश	Profession Holidays
154. Violence Violation	हिंसा, प्रहर नियम की अवहेलना	Force Infringement of law
155. Wither Whither Weather Whether	मुरझा जाना कहाँ मौसम या.....या	To fade Where Atmospheric condition (of a short period) 'Whether or' is a co-relative
156. Wave Waive	लहर (N)/ लहराना (V) त्याग देना	Raised mass of water in sea/ to move. To give up

17

VOCABULARIES

CHAPTER

S.N.	WORD	हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Abase	नीचा दिखाना	Degrade.
2.	Abash	लज्जित करना	To embarrass.
3.	Abattoir	बूचड़ खाना	Place where animals are killed.
4.	Abdicate	त्याग देना	Give up.
5.	Aberrant	असामान्य	Abnormal.
6.	Abetment	दूषप्रेरण	The act of helping someone in wrongdoing.
7.	Abeyance	निर्लंबित अवस्था	Suspended action.
8.	Abhor	घृणा करना	Detest, dislike, hate.
9.	Abject	बुरी हालत में	Extremely poor or unhappy.
10.	Abjure	सौगन्ध खा कर त्याग करना	Renounce upon oath.
11.	Ablution	शुद्धि हेतु स्नान	The act of washing oneself.
12.	Abnegation	त्याग देना-अधिकार या दावा	To give up a right or a claim.
13.	Abode	निवास	The place where someone lives.
14.	Abolish	उन्मूलन करना	To put an end to.
15.	Abominable	घृणित	Very bad or unpleasant.
16.	Aboriginal	आदिवासी	Native.
17.	Abortive	निष्फल	Fruitless, futile.
18.	Abrasive	घिसने का सामान	Substance used for rubbing.
19.	Abridge	संक्षिप्त करना	Shorten.
20.	Abrogate	खत्म करना (किसी परम्परा/ कानून को)	Abolish some custom etc.
21.	Abscission	चीरा	Cutting off.
22.	Abscond	भाग जाना	Depart secretly.
23.	Absolute	पूर्ण रूप से	Complete.
24.	Absolve	दोष से मुक्त करना	Pardon.
25.	Abstain	रोकना, परहेज करना	Refrain from.
26.	Abstract	संक्षेप वस्तावेज/सिर्फ भावना के रूप में ही	A shortened form of speech/existing as an idea or feeling only.

Vocabularies

27. **Abstruse** मुश्किल, कठिन Difficult to understand.
28. **Abysmal** बहुत बुरा Not measurable, very bad.
29. **Accede** मान जाना Agree to do.
30. **Acclaim** प्रशंसा करना Applaud.
31. **Accolade** पुरस्कार Award of merit.
32. **Accomplice** गुनाह का साथी Partner in crime.
33. **Accord** सामंजस्य से Do something in complete agreement.
34. **Accused** आरोपी One who is under trial in a court.
35. **Acme** शिखर Peak.
36. **Acquit** बरी करना Declared to be not guilty.
37. **Adapt** अनुकूल बनाना To change to suit different environment.
38. **Adept** निपुण Proficient.
39. **Adolescent** किशोर One who is growing into an adult.
40. **Adulteration** मिलावट Mixing some undesired commodity.
41. **Adultery** विवाहेतर संबंध, व्याभिचार To have sex outside marriage.
42. **Adverse** प्रतिकूल Unfavourable.
43. **Aftermath** किसी अप्रिय घटना के बाद का समय The period which follows an undesired event.
44. **Aghast** हत्प्रभ रह जाना Sudden feeling of shock and worry.
45. **Agile** लचीला Able to move your body quickly.
46. **Agony** दर्द Extreme sufferings.
47. **Aisle** सीट के श्रृँखला के बीच जाने-आने का .. Narrow, long space between the two rows of seats.
48. **Alchemist** पारस One who tries to turn other base metal into gold.
49. **Alimony** तलाक पश्चात दी जाने वाली रकम Money paid usually to a wife after break-down of marriage.
50. **Altar** बेदी Table/place where offerings are put in a religious place.
51. **Altercation** वाक युद्ध, कहा-सुनी A loud argument.
52. **Ambiguous** अस्पष्ट, द्विअर्थी Having more than one possible meaning.
53. **Amenable** सुझाव स्वीकार करने को तैयार Willing to accept a suggestion.
54. **Amiable** दोस्ताना Pleasant and friendly behaviour.
55. **Angst** चिन्ता Great anxiety.
56. **Anguish** वेदना, व्यथा Extreme unhappiness.

Vocabularies

57. **Annotate** टिप्पणी To add a brief explanation.
58. **Anonymous** गुपनाम Made/done by someone unknown.
59. **Antecedent** पूर्वगामी Something/someone existing before.
60. **Apathy** उदासीनता Lack of interest/enthusiasm/emotion.
61. **Appalling** बहुत भयावह Very bad and shocking.
62. **Appeasement** .. तुष्टीकरण The act of giving advantage to one party.
63. **Archives** ऐतिहासिक/ सरकारी दस्तावेज जहाँ रखा . Place where historical records are kept.
64. **Argumentative** बहस करने वाला Often arguing or ready to argue.
65. **Articulate** अच्छा वक्ता A good orator.
66. **Asceticism** सन्यास/ वैराग्य Religious beliefs and avoidance of life of pleasure.
67. **Assault** मारपीट करना A violent attack.
68. **Asset** सम्पत्ति Valuables.
69. **Atrocities** जुल्म Violent and cruel act.
70. **Attenuate** शान्त करना To calm or soothe.
71. **Attrition** सनिघर्षण The gradual weakening of something.
72. **Augment**..... बढ़ाना Add to/increase.
73. **August** महत्वपूर्ण/राजसी Important/Majestic.
74. **Aura** आभा A feeling or character a person/place seems to have.
75. **Averse** नापसंद Strong disliking.
76. **Awful** अत्यंत बुरा Hateful.
77. **Babble** बड़बड़ाना Talk in a way which is difficult to understand.
78. **Bacchanalian** .. शराबी Drunken.
79. **Backbite** चुगली करना To speak something at the back of someone.
80. **Badger** परेशान करना..... Annoy.
81. **Badinage** मजाक में चिढ़ाना playful teasing/banter.
82. **Baffle** चकरा देना..... Confuse.
83. **Bait** चारा Snare, Trap, Decoy.
84. **Baleful**..... घातक, हानिकारक Deadly.
85. **Balk** अनिच्छुक होना To be unwilling to do something.
86. **Balmy** गर्म Pleasantly warm.

Vocabularies

87. **Bane** अभिशाप Curse.
88. **Banter** पजाक में चिढ़ाना Conversation which is funny and not serious.
89. **Barb** काँटा Sharp projection from fish hook.
90. **Barbaric** बर्बर Savagely cruel.
91. **Bard** कवि Poet.
92. **Barefaced** बेशर्म Shameless.
93. **Baroque** सजा हुआ Highly ornate.
94. **Barrage** बाँध Structure built across a river.
95. **Beeline** सीधी रेखा/रास्ता Direct or quick route.
96. **Beget** पैदा करना To father or produce.
97. **Begrudge** बेमन से देना To give unwillingly.
98. **Beguile** दिशा भ्रमित करना Cheat or mislead.
99. **Behemoth** बहुत बड़ा जीव Huge creature.
100. **Behest** के निवेदन/ आदेश पर At the request or order of.
101. **Benevolence** ... दया Kindness.
102. **Betray** धोखा देना To be disloyal/ to deceive.
103. **Blackguard** आवारा, अनैतिक व्यक्ति A man who has no moral principles.
104. **Blatant** बेशर्मी के साथ खुलेआम Open and unashamed.
105. **Blister** फफोला Swellings on skin.
106. **Blizzard** बर्फीला तूफान Stormy weather.
107. **Blunder** बहुत बड़ी गलती A big mistake.
108. **Blush** शर्म से लाल होना To become pink in the face due to shyness.
109. **Boisterous** शोर-गुल मचाने वाला, जोश से भरा Noisy and full of energy.
110. **Bombast** बढ़ी-चढ़ी बात Pompous language with little meaning.
111. **Boost** बढ़ाना To improve/increase.
112. **Booze** शराब पीना To take alcoholic drink.
113. **Brickbat** बक-झक An insult, spoken attack.
114. **Brutal** बर्बर Savagely violent
115. **Buckle** दबाव में टूट जाना Crumble under pressure.
116. **Bully** परेशान करना/ डराना To hurt/frighten someone.
117. **Bunk** बिना अनुमति के चले जाना To leave without permission.
118. **Butcher** हत्या करना To kill/murder someone.
119. **Cabal** षड्यन्त्र करने वाला समूह Group of people who plan secretly.

Vocabularies —————

- 120. Cache** छिपाने का स्थान Hiding place.
- 121. Cacophony** शोरगुल Harsh mixture of sound.
- 122. Cadaver** शव A dead human body.
- 123. Cadence** स्वर का उतार चढ़ाव Regular rise and fall of voice.
- 124. Cahoots** षड़यन्त्र Acting together generally for a dishonest purpose.
- 125. Calamity** संकट Disaster.
- 126. Caldron** कढ़ाई Large kettle.
- 127. Calibre** क्षमता Ability.
- 128. Calligraphy** सुंदर लेखन कला Art of writing beautifully.
- 129. Callous** निर्दयी Cruel.
- 130. Callow** अनुभवहीन One with little experience or knowledge.
- 131. Canvass** घूम-घूम कर बोट माँगना Seek votes.
- 132. Capitalize** पूँजी उपलब्ध कराना To supply money to a business.
- 133. Capitulate** आत्मसर्मषण करना Surrender.
- 134. Capricious** सनकी Fickle-minded.
- 135. Carcass** मृत शरीर (जानवर का) A dead body of a large animal.
- 136. Cardinal** प्रमुख most important.
- 137. Careen** तेजी से आगे बढ़ते हुए बाएं-दाएं हिलना Sway from side to side while moving forward quickly.
- 138. Carnage** जनसंहार Slaughter/massacre.
- 139. Casanova** दिलफेंक One who has lots of sexual relationship.
- 140. Catastrophe** विपत्ति, संकट A sudden destructive event/unpleasant and disastrous.
- 141. Cave (V)** द्वाब में टूट जाना Collapse/give in to demands.
- Cave (N)** गुफा A large hole on the side of a hill.
- 142. Censor** प्रतिबंधित करना To ban unacceptable parts.
- 143. Censure** निन्दा करना Strongly criticise.
- 144. Chaos** अव्यवस्था Complete disorder.
- 145. Charismatic** आकर्षक Attractive.
- 146. Chaste** पवित्र Pure.
- 147. Chauvinism** बड़प्पन की भावना (अपनी नस्ल/ मर्द होने पर) Feeling of superiority due to race or gender.

Vocabularies

- 148. Cheat** धोखेबाज/ धोखा देना One who cheats or deceives/the act of deceiving.
- 149. Chide** डँटना To reprimand and to speak severely to someone.
- 150. Clamour** शोर मचा कर माँग या शिकायत करना .. To make a loud complaint or demand.
- 151. Clandestine** गुप्त Planned/done in secret.
- 152. Clasp** जोर से थामना To hold something firmly.
- 153. Cloak** लम्बा चोगा/ छिपाना Long gown/ to hide.
- 154. Coalition** साझा A temporary alliance.
- 155. Coddle** कुछ ज्यादा ही देखभाल करना To protect something/ someone too much.
- 156. Collate** क्रम में रखना, गलती ढूढ़ने हेतु मिलान करना To put in proper order.
- 157. Collision** टक्कर The act of hitting something with other thing.
- 158. Combat** लड़ाई A fight especially during a war.
- 159. commendable** प्रशংসনীয় Praiseworthy.
- 160. Commute** यात्रा करना जो नियमित हो/ बदल देना ... To make the same journey regularly/ to change.
- 161. Complement** ... पूरक A thing that improves.
- 162. Conceal** छिपाना To hide.
- 163. Concede** स्वीकार कर लेना Admit to be true.
- 164. Concurring** सहमत होना To agree with someone.
- 165. Condolence** संवेदना व्यक्त करना Sympathy for the family of a person who has recently died.
- 166. Confrontation** टकराव Fight/argument.
- 167. Consecrate** पवित्र बनाना/पवित्र घोषित करना Make or declare sacred.
- 168. Conspicuity** प्रत्यक्ष होना Clarity.
- 169. Conspirator** घट्यांत्रकारी One who plans something illegal.
- 170. Contemplate** ... विचार करना Think of a particular thing for a long time.
- 171. Convalesce** स्वास्थ्य लाभ करना Regain health after illness.
- 172. Conversant** ज्ञान होना Having knowledge of.
- 173. Convict** दोषी सिद्ध करना/दोषसिद्ध व्यक्ति One proved guilty/to be proved guilty.
- 174. Conviviality** दोस्ताना Friendly.
- 175. Corporal** शारीरिक Bodily.
- 176. Corpse** मुर्दा शरीर A dead body of a person.
- 177. Corroborate** पुष्टि करना Confirm or support.

Vocabularies

- 178. Countenance** चेहरे का भाव The expression of the face.
- 179. Couplet** एक सुर की दो पक्षितयाँ Two successive rhyming lines of verse.
- 180. Cramp** बाधा डालना/मरोड़ Hamper or restraint/painful involuntary tightening of a muscle.
- 181. Credentials** योग्यता एवं अनुभव Qualities/documents proving ability and experience.
- 182. Crooked** बेर्इमान/ सीधा नहीं Dishonest/not forming a straight line.
- 183. Culminate** तक पहुँचना तब खत्म होना To reach a point and then finish.
- 184. Culprit** दोषी Someone who has done something wrong.
- 185. Curb** अंकुश लगाना To check/restrain.
- 186. Dab hand** किसी काम में निपुण An expert in something.
- 187. Dabble** सिर्फ ऐसे ही कोई कार्य करना Work in non-serious way.
- 188. Daft** मूर्ख Silly or stupid.
- 189. Dainty** छोटा एवं सुन्दर Small and graceful.
- 190. Dally** कोई कार्य धीरे-धीरे करना Procrastinate/to waste time or do something slowly.
- 191. Damsel** अविवाहित युवती A young unmarried girl.
- 192. Dank** धींगा हुआ Damp/wet.
- 193. Dapper** साफ-सुथरा Neat and tidy.
- 194. Dappled** चितकबरा Spotted.
- 195. Daub** लेपना Smear.
- 196. Daunt** डराना Intimidate, frighten.
- 197. Dauntless** निडर Bold.
- 198. Dearth** कमी Lack of.
- 199. Debauched** पथभ्रष्ट (शराब, सेक्स इत्यादि में लिप्त) One who is given to sex, alcohol etc.
- 200. Debilitate** कमजोर बनाना Weaken.
- 201. Debonair** दोस्ताना Friendly.
- 202. Debunk** कम महत्वपूर्ण ठहरना To show that some thing is less important.
- 203. Debut** पहला अवसर Something performed for the first time.
- 204. Decency** सभ्य तरीका good and moral behavior.
- 205. Decimate** हत्या करना Kill/destroy.
- 206. Decipher** किसी लिखित दस्तावेज को पढ़ कर अर्थ स्पष्ट करना Decode.

Vocabularies

- 207. Declivity** ढाल Downward slope.
- 208. Deface** बद्धकला बनाना Disfigure.
- 209. Defacto** वास्तविक Existing in fact.
- 210. Defeatist** निराशावादी One who accepts defeat easily.
- 211. Deference** सम्मान Respect.
- 212. Defiant** अवज्ञाकारी Disobedient.
- 213. Deforestation** .. जंगल साफ करना..... Cutting down of trees in a large area.
- 214. Defuse** तनाव कम करना Reduce tension.
- 215. Deluge** बाढ़ A large amount of rain/water.
- 216. Demographer** .. जन्म का विवरण रखने वाला A person who studies changes in number of births.
- 217. Denounce** निन्दा करना To criticize strongly.
- 218. Deplorable** घृणित Very bad.
- 219. Deposition** बयान..... A testimony.
- 220. Derail** पटरी से उतरना To come off the railway track.
- 221. Desecration**.... पवित्रता भंग करना Treatment of something sacred with disrespect.
- 222. Desperate** किसी कार्य या चीज के लिए तीव्र इच्छा . Feeling involving great willingness.
- 223. Despicable** घृणित Unpleasant, causing strong feeling of dislike.
- 224. Detente** तनाव की कमी The easing of hostility between countries.
- 225. Deterrent** हत्तोसाहित करने वाला Discouragement from action.
- 226. Detrimental** नुकसानदायक Harmful.
- 227. Diffuse**..... फैल जाना Spread over a wide area.
- 228. Dine** रात्रि भोज करना Eat dinner.
- 229. Discord** सामंजस्य की कमी Lack of agreement.
- 230. Disembarked**... उतरना जहाज से To leave a ship/plane after the journey.
- 231. Disillusion** निराशा/मोह भंग Disappointment.
- 232. Disinterested** .. निष्पक्ष Impartial.
- 233. Disparagement** उपेक्षा Insult/abuse.
- 234. Dispassionate** . तटस्थ Not influenced by emotion.
- 235. Dispense with** . छुटकारा पाना Get rid of or manage without.
- 236. Disseminate** फैलना Spread widely.
- 237. Docile** आज्ञाकारी Obedient.

Vocabularies

- 238. Dolorous** दुखी Sad.
- 239. Draconian** अत्यंत कठोर Extremely severe.
- 240. Drain** बहा देना, नाला (V) removing things; (N) pipes and sewage.
- 241. Drizzle** बूँदा-बाँदी होना Rain in very small light drops.
- 242. Drowsy** झपकी Sleepy.
- 243. Ebb** घट जाना/ पीछे हटना Recede.
- 244. Ebullient** उत्साहित Very energetic and positive.
- 245. Eccentric** सनकी Of strange behaviour.
- 246. Eclectic** विभिन्न श्रोतों से चुने हुए Selected from various sources.
- 247. Ecstasy** अत्यन्त खुशी A state of extreme happiness.
- 248. Edict** राज्य घोषणा Official command, order.
- 249. Edify** शिक्षित करना खास कर नैतिक व To educate morally or spiritually.
आध्यात्मिक विकास के लिए
- 250. Eerie** डरावना Weird/strange in a frightening way.
- 251. Efface** मिटा देना Wipe out.
- 252. Effect** परिणाम Result.
- 253. Effeminate** औरताना गुण Having womanly traits.
- 254. Effete** कमज़ोर Weak and without power.
- 255. Effigy** पुतला A model representing someone,
Dummy.
- 256. Effluvium** बदबू Noxious smell.
- 257. Effrontery** अत्यन्त असम्मान Extreme rudeness.
- 258. Egalitarian** समतावादी Believing all people are equal.
- 259. Egregious** कुख्यात/बहुत बुरा Notorious/extremely bad.
- 260. Egress** निकासी Exit.
- 261. Elated** खुश Overjoyed.
- 262. Elicit** स्पष्ट करना Draw out by discussion.
- 263. Elite** कुलीन A superior group.
- 264. Elope** भाग जाना (शादी हेतु) To leave home secretly to get married.
- 265. Elucidate** स्पष्ट करना To make clear and easy to understand.
- 266. Elusive** पकड़ में न आनेवाला/अवर्णनीय Difficult to find/describe.
- 267. Emaciated** दुर्बल Thin and weak.
- 268. Emanate** निकालना Emitting/ejecting.
- 269. Emancipate** मुक्त करना Set free.

Vocabularies

- 270. Embark** शुरू करना To begin .
- 271. Embarrass** शर्मिन्दा करना..... To cause someone feel uncomfortable.
- 272. Embellish** सुशोभित करना To ornate or decorate.
- 273. Embolden** साहसी बनाना To make someone brave.
- 274. Eminent** प्रतिष्ठित Known and respected .
- 275. Emulate** बराबरी करना Try to be equal.
- 276. Endangered** संकटग्रस्त To put at risk.
- 277. Endear** प्रिय बनाना To cause someone to be liked.
- 278. Enmity** दुश्मनी Animosity, a feeling of hatred.
- 279. Enormity** विशालता Of very great size or importance.
- 280. Entrall** मोहित करना Attract.
- 281. Enthusiastic** ... उत्साहित Causing excitement.
- 282. Envisage** पर विचार करना To expect as a possibility.
- 283. Eradicate** उन्मूलन करना..... Remove/destroy completely.
- 284. Errand** दूतकार्य (ऐसा काम जिसमें आना-जाना .. A short journey to deliver/collect something.
- 285. Errant** पथभ्रष्ट, गुमराह One who does something wrong.
- 286. Escalate** बढ़ाना To increase/to expand step by step.
- 287. Espouse** समर्थन करना Support/adopt a cause or way of life.
- 288. Estrange** त्याग देना No longer friendly.
- 289. Etch** साफ झलकना Make clearly defined.
- 290. Ethical** नैतिक Beliefs which control behaviour.
- 291. Eunuch** हिजड़ा A person who is neither a man nor a woman.
- 292. Exasperate** क्रोध/ रोष पैदा करना..... To irritate
- 293. Exceptionable** . आपत्तिजनक Objectionable.
- 294. Exceptional** अपवाद Unusual.
- 295. Excruciating** ... अत्यंत तकलीफदेह Extremely painful.
- 296. Executioner** जल्लाद One who carries the job of executing someone.
- 297. Exhaust** खर्च कर देना/थका देना To spend/to make tired.
- 298. Exhilarate** आनन्दित करना Cause to feel very happy.
- 299. Expostulate** विरोध प्रकट करना Disagree strongly.
- 300. Extravaganza** ..फिजूलखर्ची Exciting and expensive event.
- 301. Fad** फैशन में होना A craze.
- 302. Falter** हिचकिचाना Hesitate.

Vocabularies —————

- 303. Fanatic** कट्टर Extremely enthusiastic of one's religion, belief etc.
- 304. Fancier** जो जानवरों का प्रजनन करवाता हों Breeder or dealer of animals.
- 305. Farce** तमाशा के जैसी घटना An absurd event.
- 306. Fatal** घातक Having serious and deadly effect.
- 307. Fate** भाग्य Destiny.
- 308. Fateful** महत्वपूर्ण पर दुर्भाग्यपूर्ण Having important but negative effect.
- 309. Fatuous** मूर्खतापूर्ण Foolish.
- 310. Fauna** किसी क्षेत्र के जानवर Animals of a particular area.
- 311. Faux pas** सामाजिक गलती Word/behavior that is social mistake.
- 312. Feasible** व्यवहारिक Practical.
- 313. Feeble** कमजोर Weak and without energy.
- 314. Feign** नखरे करना To pretend.
- 315. Felicity** खुशी Happiness/ bliss.
- 316. Felony** जघन्य अपराध A major criminal act.
- 317. Feral** जंगली Wild.
- 318. Ferry** नदी को पार करना, नाव To transport people or goods/a boat for transportation.
- 319. Fetter** बड़ी अथवा सीमा में रखना To keep someone within limits.
- 320. Fiends** पिशाच, पिशाच तुल्य An evil person.
- 321. Finesse** कुशलता Great skill or style.
- 322. Flabbergast** विस्मित करना Dumbfound/astonished.
- 323. Flare** भड़कना To start suddenly such as violence, pain or anger.
- 324. Flaunt** दिखावा करना Display ostentatiously.
- 325. Flex** भुजा का माँस कठोर कर दिखाना Tighten a muscle.
- 326. Flog** चाबुक या डण्डे से मारना To beat with a whip or stick.
- 327. Flout** उल्लंघन करना To disobey rule/law.
- 328. Folly** गलती/बेवकूफी Foolishness.
- 329. Foresee** पहले से जान जाना Predicting something.
- 330. fragile** आसानी से टूट जाने वाला Which can be easily broken.
- 331. Fraught** अप्रिय चीजों से पूर्ण/ ओतप्रोत Full of unpleasant things.
- 332. Frown** भोहे चढ़ा कर देखना/ गुस्सा करना Facial expression showing anger/ annoyance.
- 333. Furore** गुस्सा An outbreak of public anger.
- 334. Gag** मुँह में कुछ ढूँस देना To put cloth etc in the mouth.

Vocabularies

- 335. Gallantry** साहस Bravery.
- 336. Garish** बहुत अधिक रंगीन Overbright in colour/gaudy.
- 337. Garner** इकट्ठा करना Store up, gather.
- 338. Gawk** बेवकूफ की तरह देखना Stare foolishly.
- 339. Genesis** शुरूआत The origin of something.
- 340. Gigantic** विशाल Extremely large.
- 341. Glare** घूरकर देखना A long angry look.
- 342. Glee** खुशी Great delight.
- 343. Glimmer** मंद रोशनी/आशा की किरण A faint light/a slight sign of something good.
- 344. Glum** दुखी/निराश एवं चुप Disappointed or unhappy and quiet.
- 345. Glutton** पेटू One who eats too much.
- 346. Gourmet** पाक कला का पारखी A person who knows a lot about food and cooking.
- 347. Grandeur** भव्य The quality of being very beautiful and attractive.
- 348. Grapple** संघर्ष करना Wrestle.
- 349. Grievous** तकलीफदेह/ गंभीर Having very serious effect or causing pain.
- 350. Grotesque** विकृत, भद्दा Unpleasant /distorted.
- 351. Grumble** बड़बड़ाना (गुस्से में) To complain about something in an annoyed way.
- 352. Guffaw** उहाका Noisy laughter.
- 353. Haggard** थका/बिमार सा Looking ill or tired.
- 354. Hailstorm** ओले के साथ तूफान A sudden heavy fall of hail.
- 355. Hallucination** .. अप्र To see or feel something or someone that does not exist.
- 356. Hapless** बेचारा Unlucky/ helpless.
- 357. Hard hearted** ... पत्थर दिल A person who is not kind.
- 358. Harrowing** परेशान करने वाला Extremely upsetting.
- 359. Harry** परेशान करना To annoy.
- 360. Hasten** जल्दी करना Hurry and do things quickly.
- 361. Hatch** करना (षड्यंत्र) To make (a secret plan).
- 362. Haughty** घमंडी Arrogant.
- 363. Hazardous** खतरनाक Dangerous.
- 364. Head Strong** जिद्दी Stubborn.

Vocabularies —————

- 365. Heckle** सवाल अथवा वक्तव्य से परेशान करना . To interrupt with loud unfriendly questions or statements.
- 366. Heinous** जघन्य Atrocious.
- 367. Heir** उत्तराधिकारी One who legally receives money or title.
- 368. Hermetic** वायुरुद्ध Air-tight.
- 369. Hermitage** मठ Home of a hermit.
- 370. Hideous** भद्दा Extremely ugly/bad.
- 371. Hobble** लँगड़ा कर चलना To walk in a way as if the leg is injured.
- 372. Homage** श्रद्धांजलि Deep respect shown.
- 373. Honorary** अवैतनिक To work without salary.
- 374. Honourable** आदरणीय Respectable.
- 375. Horde** समूह A large group of people.
- 376. Horrendous** भयावह Horrifying.
- 377. Hulk** बेडौल Large and heavy.
- 378. Hurdle** रुकावट Obstacle.
- 379. Hush up** रफा-दफा करना Trying to prevent the discovery of particular facts.
- 380. Ideal** आदर्श Without fault/to be perfect.
- 381. Idle** बेकार, बिना काम का Not working.
- 382. Illegal gratification** नाजायज रूप से प्राप्त संतुष्टि Unlawful satisfaction.
- 383. Illegible** अपठनीय Which cannot be read.
- 384. Illicit** अवैध Disapproved by the society.
- 385. Imbecility** मूर्खता Stupidity.
- 386. Imbibe** सोख लेना To absorb/receive.
- 387. Immerse** डुबाना To become completely absorbed.
- 388. Imminent** तुरंत Likely to happen very soon.
- 389. Immolate** जला कर बलि देना Offer as a sacrifice by burning.
- 390. Immune** प्रतिरक्षित होना Resistant to.
- 391. Immure** बन्दी बनाना Imprison.
- 392. Immutable** अपरिवर्तनीय Unchangeable.
- 393. Impairment** अक्षम Handicap and disabled.
- 394. Impalpable** जो आसानी से समझ में न आए Difficult to feel or understand.
- 395. Impasse** अंधा मोड़ A deadlock.
- 396. Imperialism** साम्राज्यवाद..... System in which a country rules other countries.

Vocabularies

- 397. Implicate** किसी अपराध में फँसाना To show that someone is involved in a crime.
- 398. Impound** जब्त कर लेना Seize and take legal possession of something.
- 399. Impromptu** बिना तैयारी के Done/said without preparation.
- 400. Impulse** कुछ करने का आवेग Sudden urge to do something.
- 401. Impunity** दण्ड से रहित Freedom from punishment.
- 402. Incarnate** मानव रूप में In human form.
- 403. Incessant** लगातार Never stopping.
- 404. Incision** चोरा An opening made by a sharp tool.
- 405. Incongruous** बेमेल Unusual/different from others.
- 406. Inconspicuous** जो आसानी से दिखाई न दे Not easily noticed or seen.
- 407. Incumbent** आवश्यक Necessary as a duty.
- 408. Incur** कुछ अप्रिय अनुभव करना जैसे-घाटा To experience something usually unpleasant.
- 409. Indelible** स्थायी Unable to be removed.
- 410. Indigence** गरीबी Poverty.
- 411. Inducement** प्रलोभन Act done to persuade someone or something.
- 412. Indulge** आसक्त होना Allow oneself something enjoyable.
- 413. Inhibition** हिचक A feeling preventing one from acting naturally.
- 414. Insane** पागल Mentally ill.
- 415. Instigate** उकसाना To urge to do some action.
- 416. Interlocutor** वार्तालाप करने वाला Someone involved in a conversation.
- 417. Intermittent** रुक-रुक के Not happening regularly or continuously.
- 418. Intertwined** गूँथा हुआ To be twisted together.
- 419. Intimidate** डराना Frighten.
- 420. Intruder** घुसपैठिया One who enters a place without permission.
- 421. Irony** विडम्बना Meaning opposite but in a sarcastic manner.
- 422. Irrevocable** जो बदला ना जा सके Impossible to change.
- 423. Isolate** अलग-थलग करना To place apart or alone.
- 424. Jack** उठाना To raise something/increase the price.

Vocabularies

- 425. Jamboree** जमावडा (खुशी मनाने के लिए) A large gathering to have fun.
- 426. Jeopardy** खतरे में In danger.
- 427. Jittery** परेशान, घबराया हुआ Nervous.
- 428. Jovial** हँसमुख Good natured.
- 429. Jubilation** जश्न Rejoicing.
- 430. Juncture** जोड़ Joining point.
- 431. kneed** गूँथना To prepare dough.
- 432. Knotty** जटिल Difficult to solve.
- 433. Languor** शार्तिपूर्ण Quiet/peaceful.
- 434. Lanky** लम्बा-पतला Long and thin (not attractive).
- 435. Latent** गुप्त Dormant.
- 436. Laud** तारीफ करना To praise.
- 437. Laurels** सम्मान/ तारीफ Honour/praise.
- 438. Lax** लापरवाह Careless.
- 439. Lechery** विलासिता Lustfulness.
- 440. Leery** शंकित Suspicious.
- 441. Legend** पुरानी और प्रसिद्ध कथा Very old and popular story.
- 442. Legitimate** जायज Allowed by law.
- 443. Lenient** उदारात्मक Not strict.
- 444. Lessen** कम करना To make less strong.
- 445. Lethargic** आलसी Lacking energy/lazy.
- 446. Liability** दायित्व Legally responsible.
- 447. Lopsided** तिरछा With one side lower than the other.
- 448. Loquacious** बातूनी Talkative/Garrulous.
- 449. Lunacy** पागलपन Insanity.
- 450. Macho** मर्दाना Masculine.
- 451. Magnitude** तीव्रता The large size or importance of something.
- 452. Majestic** शक्तिशाली/ राजसी Powerful/dignified and impressive.
- 453. Malady** बिमारी An illness.
- 454. Malcontent** असंतुष्ट Person dissatisfied with existing state of affairs.
- 455. Malign** हानिकारक Baleful, harmful, Deadly.
- 456. Mammoth** विशाल Huge.
- 457. Maniac** सनकी A person who behaves in an uncontrolled manner.

Vocabularies

- 458. Manifestation** अभिव्यक्ति Clear to become noticeable.
- 459. Marine** समुद्रीय Related to sea.
- 460. Massacre** नरसंहार An act of killing many people.
- 461. Maze** जाल A complicated set of path or passages.
- 462. Melancholy** दुखी Sad.
- 463. Menace** समस्या A dangerous or troublesome person/situation.
- 464. Milestone** मौल का पत्थर An important event in the history of someone/something.
- 465. Minuscule** काफी छोटा Very small.
- 466. Mirth** खुशी Laughter, happiness.
- 467. Miscreant** बदमाश One who behaves badly/doesn't obey rules.
- 468. Mitigate** कम करना To make/become less severe.
- 469. Momentum** संवेग, बल The force that keeps motion on.
- 470. Monstrous** विशाल/ भयावह Like a monster (cruel and/or very big).
- 471. Morbidity** विकृत/ अस्वस्थ Unpleasant and strange.
- 472. Moron** बेवकूफ A stupid person.
- 473. Mounting** बढ़ता हुआ Gradually increasing.
- 474. Mow** कुचल देना Kill by knocking down with vehicle.
- 475. Mull** विचार करना To think carefully about something.
- 476. Muster** एकत्र करना Gather together/sum up a feeling.
- 477. Mutilate** नाश करना To damage severely.
- 479. Mythology** प्राचीन कथा Myths in general.
- 480. Myth** मिथक Ancient story.
- 481. Nadir** निचला स्तर The worst moment/the lowest point.
- 482. Nape** गर्दन The back of the neck.
- 483. Nemesis** प्रतिद्वन्द्वी जिसे हराना मुश्किल हो Rival that is difficult to defeat.
- 484. Neologism** किसी शब्द का नया अर्थ New meaning.
- 485. Neophyte** नैसिखिया Beginner, novice.
- 486. Nexus** साठ-गांठ Connection.
- 487. Nightmare** दुर्घट Frightening dream/an unpleasant experience.
- 488. Nocturnal** निशाचर Occurring/ active at night.
- 489. Nomad** अस्थायी आवास वाले जनजाति के सदस्यMember of a tribe who travels from place to place.

Vocabularies

- 490. Nonchalant** उदासीन/भाव हीन Careless/ lacking interest.
- 491. Oblivion** विस्मृति The state of being unaware/ forgotten.
- 492. Obnoxious** घृणित Unpleasant.
- 493. Obscene** अश्लील Rude or shocking.
- 494. Obsessive** तीव्र इच्छा रखना Related to thinking about something constantly.
- 495. Obsolete** पुराना Not in use any more.
- 496. Obstinate** हठी Stubborn.
- 497. Occlude** बंद करना close up or block.
- 498. Occult** गुप्त (जादू-टोना से सम्बन्धित) Secret, mysterious, relating to magical power.
- 499. Ogre** शैतान A frightening character of children's stories who eats children.
- 500. Ombudsman** लोकपाल Officer who deals with complaints.
- 501. Ominous** कुछ बुरा होने का आभास Suggesting that something unpleasant is likely to happen.
- 502. Opportunist** अवसरवादी One who grabs every opportunity.
- 503. Optimistic** आशावादी One who is hopeful.
- 504. Orator** वक्ता A skilled speaker.
- 505. Ordain** आदेश देना Order officially.
- 506. Ostensible** दिखावटी Showy.
- 507. Oust** निकाल देना Force out from the position of power.
- 508. Outrage** बेइज्जती करना Insult/offence.
- 509. Overestimate** .. ज्यादा आकलन करना To think that one is greater than he really is.
- 510. Palate** तालु/ स्वाद परखने की शक्ति The top part of the inside of your mouth/Appreciation for food or drink.
- 511. Palatial** महलनुमा A huge and splendid house.
- 512. Paltry** मूल्यहीन Worthless.
- 513. Pan** आलोचना करना Criticise harshly.
- 514. Panacea** रामबाण A remedy for all diseases.
- 515. Panache** निपुणता Confidence/elegance/style.
- 516. Pandemic** व्यापक Widespread.
- 517. Pandemonium** शोर शराबा Great confusion/noisy disorder.
- 518. Panic** डर Sudden uncontrolled fear.
- 519. Paramount** सर्वोच्च Supreme, zenith.

Vocabularies

- 520. Parched** सूखा Dried out due to heat.
- 521. Pariah** सामाजिक बहिष्कार Social outcast.
- 522. Parley** सम्मेलन Conference.
- 523. Parochial** संकीर्ण नजरिया वाला Narrow in outlook.
- 524. Patronage** संरक्षण The support given to an organization.
- 525. Pawn** प्यादा People of little importance.
- 526. Peck** हल्का चुम्बन Kiss lightly.
- 527. Peddler** रेहड़ी वाला One who travels door to door to sell something.
- 528. Pellet** छोटा गोला A small ball of something.
- 529. Pelt** फेंकना Throw.
- 530. Perfidious** विश्वासघाती Unable to be trusted.
- 531. Persevere** मेहनत करना (मुश्किलों के बावजूद) Continue inspite of difficulty.
- 532. Persist** जारी रहना Continue and last.
- 533. Personify** मानवीकरण करना Represent in human form.
- 534. Perspire** पर्सीना बहाना To sweat.
- 535. Perturb** तंग करना Disturb.
- 536. Perverse** विकृत/भ्रष्ट Contrary to what is accepted or expected.
- 537. Pessimist** निराशावादी One who is not hopeful by nature.
- 538. Pious** धार्मिक Religious.
- 539. Pivotal** मुख्य Central and important.
- 540. Plaintiff** याचिका A legal complaint.
- 541. Plight** परेशानी/दुख Unpleasant condition.
- 542. Polygamy** बहु-विवाह To have more than one wife/husband.
- 543. Pomp** धूमधाम Splendid and colourful ceremony.
- 544. Populace** आम जनता Ordinary people.
- 545. Posthumously** मृत्यु-उपरान्त Awarded/published after death.
- 546. Pragmatic** व्यवहारिक Practical.
- 547. Precedent** पूर्वगामी An action already taken place/decision already taken.
- 548. Precincts** जहाँ कार इत्यादि ले जाना वर्जित है/..... Part of a city where vehicles are not allowed/limits.
- 549. Predicament** ... अप्रिय हालात जिससे निकालना मुश्किल है An unpleasant situation, which is difficult to get out of.

Vocabularies —————

- 550. Prejudice** पूर्वाग्रह Unfair opinion.
- 551. Preposterous** बेवकूफी भरा Very foolish/ridiculous.
- 552. Prey** शिकार Victim/an animal hunted by another for food.
- 553. Proclivity** ज्ञुकाव Tendency or inclination.
- 554. Proliferation** प्रचुर मात्रा में उत्पन्न होना Increasing greatly and suddenly in number.
- 555. Promising** आशाजनक Showing signs of being successful in future.
- 556. Propensity** बुरे बर्ताव के तरफ ज्ञुकाव Tendency towards behaving badly.
- 557. Provocative** उकसाने वाला Causing an angry reaction/ inciting.
- 558. Prudence** समझदारी Wisdom.
- 559. Pugnacious** युद्धप्रिय Quarrelsome.
- 560. Punitive** दण्डात्मक Intended as a punishment.
- 561. Purge** छुटकारा पाना/ शुद्ध करना To get rid of people you don't like/to make free for harmful things.
- 562. Pyre** चिता A large pile of wood on which a dead body is burnt.
- 563. Quantum** किसी चीज की इकाई Unit of something.
- 564. Quell** रोकना To stop something especially by using force.
- 565. Quench** बुझाना (प्यास) satisfy (thirst).
- 566. Query** शंका/सवाल A question/doubt.
- 567. Quiescent** सुप्त Dormant, at rest.
- 568. Quietude** शांति Tranquility.
- 569. Quotidian** साधारण Common/ordinary.
- 570. Racial** नस्लवाद से संबंधित Connected with a particular race or country.
- 571. Rancor** नफरत Bitterness, hatred.
- 572. Rankle** परेशान करना Irritate.
- 573. Rapport** तालमेल Harmony.
- 574. Ratify** अंगीकार करना Confirm formally by signing it or voting for it.
- 575. Ravenous** बहुत भुखा Extremely hungry.
- 576. Raze** नष्ट करना To destroy.
- 577. Rebellious** विरोधी One who opposes the system.

Vocabularies

- 578. Rebuff** सहायता स्वीकार करने से मना करना..... To refuse a helpful suggestion.
- 579. Rebuke** बुरी तरह से डॉटना Scold harshly.
- 580. Recalcitrant** उद्दण्ड One who is unwilling to obey orders.
- 581. Reckless** असावधान Without caring for the result of an action.
- 582. Recluse** अकेला One who lives alone.
- 583. Recuperate** ठीक होना बिमारी के बाद To recover from illness.
- 584. Redundant** गैर जरूरी Unnecessary.
- 585. Refute** खण्डन करना To say/prove that a person opinion is wrong.
- 586. Regime** शासन Rule of.
- 587. Reign** शासन The monarch's period of rule.
- 588. Rein** लगाम/ लगाम लगाना Piece of leather which helps you to control the headgear of a horse/to bridle/to restrain.
- 589. Relegate** अवनति करना Place in a lower position.
- 590. Reluctant** अनिच्छुक Unwilling.
- 591. Remorse** अफसोस Feeling of guilt or regret.
- 592. Renewable** नवीनीकरणीय Which can be used again and again.
- 593. Repent** पछताना To be sorry for something.
- 594. Repercussions** परिणाम Consequence.
- 595. Replica** हु-ब-हु An exact copy of an object.
- 596. Reprehensible** निन्दनीय Deserving condemnation.
- 597. Reprieve** बचाव An escape from a bad situation.
- 598. Repugnant** प्रतिकूल/ निराशाजनक Unpleasant behavior or belief.
- 599. Resentment** नापसंद Feeling of dislike.
- 600. Respite** बचाव Relief from something.
- 601. Resurgence** किसी विचारधारा का फिर से सर उठाना. A new increase of idea which had been forgotten for some time.
- 602. Resurrect** फिर से जीवित करना To bring someone back to life.
- 603. Retrieve** फिर से प्राप्त करना To find and bring back something.
- 604. Reverence** सम्मान Respect.
- 605. Rhetoric** प्रभावशाली भाषण (परन्तु जरूरी नहीं कि Effective speech but not essentially sincere.
ईमानदार भी)
- 606. Rumour** अफवाह Piece of news that may or may not be true.

Vocabularies

- 607. Ruthless** क्रूर Cruel.
- 608. Sacrament** धार्मिक कार्य An important religious ceremony.
- 609. Sadist** परपीड़क One who obtains pleasure by hurting others.
- 610. Salubrious** स्वास्थ्य के लिए लाभदायक Good for health.
- 611. Salvation** मोक्ष The act of saving someone from danger, loss sin etc.
- 612. Sanctity** पवित्रता The quality of being holy.
- 613. Sanguine** आशावित Hopeful.
- 614. Sarcasm** व्यंग्यकारी Scornful remarks.
- 615. Scant** अपर्याप्त/ कम Barely enough.
- 616. Scrap** टुकड़ा/बकझक Small pieces /Argument.
- 617. Scum** गंदगी (तरल पदार्थ के सतह पर) Dirt (on the surface of liquid).
- 618. Seasoned** परिपक्व Having a lot of experience.
- 619. Sensuous** इन्द्रिय सम्बन्धी (शारीरिक रूप से) Relating to physical senses./
आकर्षक) Physically attractive.
- 620. Severity** तीव्रता Extremity.
- 621. Shambles** बुरी हालत में A state of confusion/untidiness.
- 622. Shirk** जी चुराना To avoid work/ duty.
- 623. Shrewd** धूर्त Based on clear understanding and Judgement.
- 624. Shroud** छिपाना Hide.
- 625. Shrug** कन्धे उचका कर अनभिज्ञता/उदासीनता जाहिर. To raise and then lower the shoulder
करना to show lack of knowledge/interest.
- 626. Site** भवन-निर्माण आदि का स्थल Place where something is built.
- 627. Sizzle** काफी गर्म होना (of food) make a hissing sound when
being fried.
- 628. Skeptical** सन्देही Doubtful.
- 629. Slay** हत्या करना Murder.
- 630. Solace** दिलासा Comfort in time of distress.
- 631. Solidarity** समर्थन Support.
- 632. Solitary** अकेला The only person/thing in given place.
- 633. Spectre** संदेह The idea of something unpleasant
that may happen in future.
- 634. Spinster** कुँवारी महिला A woman who is not married.
- 635. Sporadic** अनियमित रूप से Occurring at irregular intervals.
- 636. Spouse** जीवन साथी Life partner.

Vocabularies

- 637. Spurious** संदेहास्पद False and not what it appears to be.
- 638. Squirm** छटपटाना To move from side to side in an awkward way because of nervousness, pain etc.
- 639. Stack** एक के ऊपर एक रखना Pile on one another.
- 640. Stagger** लड़खड़ाना To walk showing imbalance.
- 641. Strangle** गला घोंट कर मारना To kill by pressing the throat.
- 642. Stringent** कठोर Strict and demanding.
- 643. Stroke** थपकी/घड़ी की घंटे की घटी An act of hitting/a sound of a striking clock.
- 644. Subdue** तीव्रता कम करना To reduce the force of something.
- 645. Substantiate** ... वक्तव्य को प्रमाणित करना To support a claim.
- 646. Subterfuge** कुछ हासिल करने का गलत तरीका A trick or a dishonest way of achieving something.
- 647. Subtle** सूक्ष्म/बारीक लेकिन महत्वपूर्ण Small but important.
- 648. Succour** समय पर सहायता Help given to someone in need.
- 649. Sully** दाग लगाना Stain/to spoil someone's perfect reputation.
- 650. Sultry** उमस भरा Warm and moist.
- 651. Sumptuous** भरपूर Luxurious/showing wealth.
- 652. Suo-moto** खुद ही On its own.
- 653. Surge** तीव्रता से बढ़ना A sudden or great increase.
- 654. Swathe** कपड़े/जमीन का चौड़ा टुकड़ा Broad strip of cloth/land.
- 655. Sycophancy** चापलूसी Attempt to win favour by flattery.
- 656. Symposium** विचार-गोष्ठी Official meeting.
- 657. Synchronize** एक ही समय पर होना To (Cause to) happen at the same time.
- 658. Tangible** जिसे छू कर महसूस किया जा सके Real, which can be touched or experienced.
- 659. Tawdry** सस्ता एवं भड़कीला Cheap and gaudy.
- 660. Temerity** हिम्मत Boldness.
- 661. Temperate** संयम रखने वाला Self controlled.
- 662. Tempestuous** .. प्रबल भावना से ओत-प्रोत Full of strong emotion.
- 663. Tendentious** किसी मत का पक्षधर होना Supporting a particular opinion.
- 664. Tenements** निवास स्थान A large building divided into apartments.

Vocabularies —————

- 665. Terse** संक्षिप्त Concise/using few words.
- 666. Thumping** महत्वपूर्ण Extremely great or important.
- 667. Thunder** गर्जन Sudden large noise from the sky.
- 668. Thunderbolt** बिजली का कड़कना एवं बादल का गर्जन A flash of lightening and sound of thunder.
- 669. Timid** डरपोक Lacking courage/ cowardly.
- 670. Tiptoe** पैरों के ऊँगलियों पर चलना To walk on toes with heels not touching the ground.
- 671. Tormentor** शोषक One who causes sufferings.
- 672. Tout** दलाल The act/the person encouraging sale of anything.
- 673. Toxic** जहरीला Poisonous.
- 674. Traffic** गैर कानूनी चीज का व्यापार Illegal trade.
- 675. Trail** रस्ता / धीरे चलना Path/ to follow the path of someone/ to move slowly.
- 676. Traitor** गदार A person who is not loyal.
- 677. Trauma** मानसिक आघात Severe emotional shock.
- 678. Treason** गदारी The act of being not loyal.
- 679. Triumph** बड़ी जीत A great success.
- 680. Twitch** फड़कना Any part of body making sudden, small movement.
- 681. Unanimous** सर्वसम्मत To agree/support together.
- 682. Uncanny** विचित्र Strange/impossible to explain.
- 683. Under-privileged** गरीब Poor.
- 684. Underestimate** कम करके आँकना To estimate that one is inferior to what he really is.
- 685. Uninterested** ... दिलचस्पी ना होना Not interested.
- 686. Unison** एक साथ Two/more things happening at same time.
- 687. Unruly** अनियंत्रित Not easy to control.
- 688. Upbeat** आशावादी Cheerful, optimistic.
- 689. Uproar** शोर-शराबा A loud noise or disturbance.
- 690. Uproot** जड़ से उखाड़ देना To remove from their home place/ root.
- 691. Vague** अस्पष्ट Not clearly expressed.
- 692. Valediction** विदाई भाषण Speech in which one says goodbye.
- 693. Validate** प्रमाणित करना Confirm, Ratify.
- 694. Vandalism** संपत्ति नष्ट करने की क्रिया Crime of damaging property.

Vocabularies

- 695. Veil** नकाब/घृंघट Thing that hides or disguises.
- 696. Vengeance** बदले की भावना Revenge.
- 697. Vengeful** बदले की भावना वाला To have strong desire to punish someone who has hurt one or one's dear ones.
- 698. Venom** जहर Poison.
- 699. Verbose** बातों से भरा Using more words than necessary.
- 700. Verily** सत्यतः/वस्तुतः In a completely truthful way.
- 701. Vestige** अवशेष A still existing small part of something.
- 702. Veteran** अनुभवी A person who has a lot of experience.
- 703. Vicarious** प्रतिनिधिक/सीधे तौर पर नहीं Experienced in one's imagination rather than directly.
- 704. Vicious** बुरा/दुष्ट Violent and aggressive.
- 705. Victimize** सताना To treat someone in a cruel and unfair manner.
- 706. Vigorous** ऊर्जावान Energetic.
- 707. Virtuous** नैतिक गुण वाला Having good moral qualities.
- 708. Volatile** क्षणिक Likely to change suddenly.
- 709. Voluminous** भारी-भरकम Loose and full.
- 710. Vow** कसम Solemn promise.
- 711. Vulnerable** जिसे आसानी से चोट पहुँचाया जा सकता है। Prone to physical/ emotional hurt.
- 712. Vie** प्रतिस्पर्धा करना To compete with other people to obtain something.
- 713. Wan** कमजोर Weak/pale/tired-looking.
- 714. Wanderlust** घूमने की इच्छा रखना Strong desire to travel.
- 715. Wholeheartedly** पूरे दिल से With complete interest and enthusiasm.
- 716. Witty** वाकपटु Using words in a clever manner.
- 717. Wizard** जादुगर Magician.
- 718. Woes** दुख Sorrow/distress.
- 719. Wretch** अभागा An unhappy person.
- 720. Yawn** उबासी लेना To breathe taking in a lot of air with mouth open.
- 721. Yearn** लालसा करना Crave.
- 722. Zealous** उत्साहित Enthusiastic, causing excitement.

18

SYNONYMS

CHAPTER

Directions: in questions no. 1 to 274, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Irrevocable
(a) Change
(b) Done
(c) Unalterable
(d) Reversible | 8. Docile
(a) Submissive
(b) Stubborn
(c) Strong
(d) Changeable | 15. Restrict
(a) Curtail
(b) Prohibit
(c) Retain
(d) Retail |
| 2. Adorn
(a) Trust
(b) Writer
(c) Suspect
(d) Beautify | 9. Considerate
(a) Agreeable
(b) Kind
(c) Like-minded
(d) Thoughtful | 16. Anticipate
(a) Antagonise
(b) Expect
(c) Accept
(d) Hope |
| 3. Repose
(a) Place
(b) Keep
(c) Rest
(d) Replace | 10. Irresolute
(a) Undecided
(b) Angry
(c) Ignorant
(d) Firm | 17. Tremendous
(a) Awesome
(b) Remarkable
(c) Considerable
(d) Excessive |
| 4. Commotion
(a) Cheer
(b) Imbalance
(c) Disturbance
(d) Movement | 11. Frugal
(a) Economical
(b) Miserly
(c) Splendid
(d) Hungry | 18. Meticulous
(a) Correct
(b) Clean
(c) Methodical
(d) Painstaking |
| 5. Nurture
(a) To encourage
(b) To grow
(c) To see
(d) To maintain | 12. Motive
(a) Reason
(b) Occasion
(c) Intention
(d) Preparation | 19. Abundant
(a) Sufficient
(b) Plentiful
(c) Significant
(d) Vibrant |
| 6. Deny
(a) Regain
(b) Refuse
(c) Repair
(d) Reduce | 13. Pity
(a) Offence
(b) Mercy
(c) Kindness
(d) Joy | 20. Acquaint
(a) Arouse
(b) Introduce
(c) Appoint
(d) Acquire |
| 7. Abuse
(a) Use
(b) Praise
(c) Scorn
(d) Raise | 14. Quash
(a) Question
(b) Pledge
(c) Reject
(d) Slash | 21. Change
(a) Alter
(b) Renew
(c) Review
(d) Repeat |

Synonyms

22. Surreptitiously	(a) Calmly (b) Secretly (c) Suggestively (d) Quietly	32. Poach	(a) Catch (b) Hunt (c) Preach (d) Plunder	42. Prospective	(a) Preceded (b) Prosperous (c) Perplexed (d) Possible
23. Forebode	(a) Alarm (b) Foretell (c) Failure (d) Forefront	33. Repartee	(a) Refuse (b) Celebrate (c) Quick witty reply (d) Question	43. Lousy	(a) Unbearable (b) Awful (c) Loose (d) Stinking
24. Genuine	(a) Good (b) Real (c) Attractive (d) Lovable	34. Exhort	(a) Recommend (b) Coax (c) Urge (d) Push	44. Accentuated	(a) Accent (b) Devalued (c) Mitigated (d) Sharpened
25. Adverse	(a) Negative (b) Facilitating (c) Decorative (d) Derogative	35. Lurid	(a) Happy (b) Abundant (c) Bright (d) Shocking	45. Predominantly	(a) Emphatically (b) Forcefully (c) Mostly (d) Profoundly
26. Elastic	(a) Rubbery (b) Flexible (c) Expensive (d) Exciting	36. Familiar	(a) Well-known (b) Familial (c) Relative (d) Common	46. Paucity	(a) Sincerity (b) Shortfall (c) Publicity (d) Downfall
27. Vacillate	(a) Waver (b) Never (c) Quiver (d) Queer	37. Dessert	(a) Wasteland (b) Abandon (c) Sweet-dish (d) Broth	47. Avert	(a) Hide (b) Obey (c) Excuse (d) Avoid
28. Impeccable	(a) Perfect (b) Fair (c) Faultless (d) Criminal	38. Affiliate	(a) Control (b) Associate (c) Copy (d) Discriminate	48. Pensive	(a) Careless (b) Thoughtful (c) Penitent (d) Unattached
29. Impediment	(a) Clear (b) Ailment (c) Incapable (d) Obstruction	39. Explicit	(a) Clear (b) Obvious (c) Cautious (d) Exorbitant	49. Cordial	(a) Smooth (b) Friendly (c) Sophisticated (d) Reserved
30. Advance	(a) Reduce (b) Halt (c) Progress (d) Extend	40. Diligent	(a) Intelligent (b) Energetic (c) Modest (d) Industrious	50. Provisional	(a) Casual (b) Lucky (c) Visible (d) Temporary
31. Prognosis	(a) Diagnosis (b) Forecast (c) Preface (d) Identity	41. Infuriate	(a) Burn (b) Disgrace (c) Threaten (d) Enrage	51. Horrendous	(a) Very huge (b) Greatly unpleasant (c) Mildly sincere (d) Most pleasant

Synonyms

52. Authentic	(a) Admirable (b) Genuine (c) Adjustable (d) None of the above	62. Frontier	(a) Edge (b) Landmark (c) Boundary (d) Corner	72. Emulate	(a) Praise (b) Find out (c) Follow (d) Assess
53. Rectify	(a) Correct (b) Alter (c) Erase (d) Continue	63. Rout	(a) Death (b) Defeat (c) Loss (d) Crash	73. Boast	(a) Cry (b) Abuse (c) Hate (d) Brag
54. Miraculous	(a) Mysterious (b) Sudden (c) Amazing (d) Unexpected	64. Irreproachable	(a) Remarkable (b) Extraordinary (c) Faultless (d) Immense	74. Mass murder	(a) Patricide (b) Fratricide (c) Regicide (d) Genocide
55. Warranty	(a) Threat (b) Guarantee (c) Order for arrest (d) Issue	65. Felicity	(a) Prosperity (b) Honesty (c) Bliss (d) Sorrow	75. Executioner	(a) Executive engineer (b) Explorer (c) Experimenter (d) One who inflict capital punishment
56. Knave	(a) Emperor (b) Enchanter (c) Soldier (d) Scoundrel	66. Judicious	(a) Biased (b) Sensible (c) Exact (d) Honest	76. Maiden speech	(a) Farewell speech (b) Short speech (c) First speech (d) Speech about women
57. Prodigal	(a) Huge (b) Prodigious (c) Enormous (d) Wasteful	67. Transpired	(a) Was communicated (b) Was discussed (c) Happened (d) Conspired	77. Interfere	(a) Meddle (b) Help (c) Object (d) Copy
58. Impost	(a) Fertilizer (b) Dispatch (c) Tax (d) Postage	68. Obstinate	(a) Foolish (b) Unyielding (c) Unreasonable (d) Mischievous	78. Tedious	(a) Tiresome (b) Dull (c) Interesting (d) Exciting
59. Coarse	(a) Academic (b) Grain (c) Rough (d) Training	69. Sundry	(a) Countless (b) Various (c) Certain (d) Several	79. Magnificent	(a) Magnanimous (b) Modest (c) Generous (d) Splendid
60. Forego	(a) Renounce (b) Disown (c) Leave (d) Accumulate	70. Menial	(a) Lowly (b) Tough (c) Dangerous (d) Low-paid	80. Spirited	(a) Heated (b) Drunk (c) Enthusiastic (d) Possessed
61. Recipients	(a) Creators (b) Donors (c) Receivers (d) Instigators	71. Impetus	(a) Financial support (b) Accelerated growth (c) Retarded growth (d) Driving force		

Synonyms

81. Gloomy	(a) Misty (b) Morose (c) Murky (d) Shadowy	91. Fortitude	(a) Composure (b) Confidence (c) Courage (d) Produce	101. Homage	(a) Humility (b) Tribute (c) Obedience (d) Allegiance
82. Grumble	(a) To scold (b) To complain (c) To sheer (d) To fight	92. Sanitise	(a) Pleasant (b) Disinfect (c) Pious (d) Crazy	102. Clue	(a) Hint (b) Inkling (c) Intimation (d) Signal
83. Crude	(a) Unrefined (b) Cruel (c) Rude (d) Savage	93. Favourite	(a) Preferred (b) Focused (c) Pleasurable (d) Disliked	103. Amazement	(a) Shock (b) Wander (c) Surprise (d) Suspicion
84. Hostile	(a) Poor (b) Antagonistic (c) Delinquent (d) Reticent	94. Novice	(a) Beginner (b) Virtuous (c) Trainer (d) Learner	104. Consistency	(a) Constancy (b) Competence (c) Permanence (d) Uniformity
85. Friendly	(a) Gentle (b) Amiable (c) Considerate (d) Industrious	95. Adversary	(a) Poverty (b) Contestant (c) Opponent (d) Intruder	105. Electrifying	(a) Attractive (b) Fearsome (c) Exciting (d) Disturbing
86. Veil	(a) Seclude (b) Moan (c) Conceal (d) Repent	96. Dishonour	(a) Infamy (b) Glory (c) Uncouth (d) Wicked	106. Refrain	(a) Dissuade (b) Desist (c) Prevent (d) Curb
87. Recurrent	(a) Flowing backward (b) Healing quickly (c) Happening repeatedly (d) Timely	97. Erudite	(a) Scholarly (b) Friendly (c) Miserly (d) Lovely	107. Merited	(a) Deserved (b) Encouraged (c) Prompted (d) Supported
88. Peculiar	(a) Same (b) Strange (c) Surprising (d) Tiring	98. Idea	(a) Comprehension (b) Notion (c) Emotion (d) Gist	108. Candid	(a) Overconfident (b) Frank (c) Arrogant (d) Careless
89. Prosper	(a) Cherish (b) Promote (c) Thrive (d) Rich	99. Takes after	(a) Follows (b) Comes after (c) Resembles (d) Imitates	109. Zealous	(a) Ardent (b) Jealous (c) Furious (d) Impatient
90. Eminent	(a) Confident (b) Authentic (c) Ingenious (d) Illustrious	100. Ill-favoured	(a) Unlucky (b) Weak in health (c) Short-tempered (d) Ugly	110. Industrious	(a) Indolent (b) Industrial (c) Hard-working (d) Economic

Synonyms

111. Feasible	121. Ancestors	131. Aversion
(a) Practical (b) Rejoice (c) Accentuate (d) Accurate	(a) Extinct tribes (b) Relatives (c) Forefathers (d) Old people	(a) Aggression (b) Assertion (c) Dislike (d) Impudence
112. Atrocity	122. Embrace	132. Desperation
(a) Envy (b) Violence (c) Jealousy (d) Absurdity	(a) Impress (b) Except (c) Embarrass (d) Accept	(a) Depression (b) Jubilation (c) Fascination (d) Hopelessness
113. Fortify	123. Meek	133. Jubilant
(a) Create (b) Generate (c) Prohibit (d) Strengthen	(a) Light-hearted (b) Serious (c) Submissive (d) Benign	(a) Brilliant (b) Proud (c) Ecstatic (d) Gloomy
114. Pacify	124. Cajole	134. Liberty
(a) Calm down (b) Satisfy (c) Rouse (d) Rejoice	(a) Insist (b) Persuade (c) Direct (d) Recommend	(a) Freedom (b) Equality (c) Charity (d) Democracy
115. Barren	125. Fragrance	135. Blister
(a) Good (b) Wholesome (c) Unproductive (d) Profitable	(a) Taste (b) Aroma (c) Sight (d) Touch	(a) Chatter (b) Travel (c) Attack (d) Wound
116. Infamy	126. Fictitious	136. Trauma
(a) Notoriety (b) Glory (c) Integrity (d) Familiarity	(a) False (b) Frail (c) Foul (d) Flattering	(a) Accident (b) Art form (c) Type of medicine (d) Emotional shock
117. Intrepid	127. Obscene	137. Fabulous
(a) Hesitant (b) Fearless (c) Extrovert (d) Familiarity	(a) Dirty (b) Unhealthy (c) Indecent (d) Unwanted	(a) Beautiful (b) Marvellous (c) Interesting (d) Charming
118. Perspicuous	128. Imitate	138. Laudable
(a) Relevant (b) Precise (c) Brief (d) Clear	(a) Follow (b) Copy (c) Think (d) Allude	(a) Sincere (b) Praiseworthy (c) Benevolent (d) Welcome
119. Sufficient	129. Enigmatic	139. Surpass
(a) Full (b) Complete (c) Enough (d) Less	(a) Magnetic (b) Automatic (c) Speeding (d) Puzzling	(a) Outdo (b) Pass over (c) Overdo (d) Pass by
120. Benevolent	130. Despondent	140. Defer
(a) Beneficial (b) Kind (c) Helpful (d) Supportive	(a) Deserted (b) Dejected (c) Rejected (d) Repentant	(a) Indifferent (b) Deft (c) Differ (d) Postpone

Synonyms

141. Cease	(a) Begin (b) Stop (c) Create (d) Dull	151. Crass	(a) Casual (b) Formal (c) Unrefined (d) Sterile	161. Ostracise	(a) Censure (b) Sentence (c) Banish (d) Berate
142. Pious	(a) Religious (b) Sympathetic (c) Afraid (d) Faithful	152. Accomplish	(a) Amass (b) Acquire (c) Adhere (d) Achieve	162. Appalled	(a) Shocked (b) Saddened (c) Scared (d) Alarmed
143. Abandon	(a) Forsake (b) Keep (c) Cherish (d) Enlarge	153. Cursory	(a) Little (b) Quick (c) Eager (d) Tender	163. Imbecility	(a) Stupidity (b) Rusticity (c) Verbosity (d) Incoherence
144. Intimidate	(a) Calm down (b) View (c) Leave (d) Frighten	154. Envisaged	(a) Ensured (b) Idealized (c) Contemplated (d) Imagined	164. Collusion	(a) Conflict (b) Secret agreement (c) Consultation (d) Misunderstanding
145. Regard	(a) Respect (b) Liking (c) Love (d) Suspicion	155. Clandestine	(a) Awkward (b) Inconsistent (c) Secret (d) Ugly	165. Hesitant	(a) Antagonistic (b) Grumbling (c) Contradict (d) Undecided
146. Swap	(a) Snap (b) Exchange (c) Break (d) Exclude	156. Resentment	(a) Annoyance (b) Dispatch (c) Disagreement (d) Dismissal	166. Deceptive	(a) Disagreeable (b) Misleading (c) Mistake (d) Debatable
147. Prudent	(a) Wise (b) Cunning (c) Frank (d) Severe	157. Obdurate	(a) Angry (b) Calm (c) Obsessed (d) Adamant	167. Palpable	(a) Obvious (b) Immense (c) Sufficient (d) Hidden
148. Genius	(a) A generous person (b) A foreigner (c) An intellect (d) An athlete	158. Obscure	(a) Unknown (b) Neglectful (c) Occasional (d) Old	168. Laid-back	(a) Lie in wait (b) Sorry state (c) Lame (d) Easy-going
149. Culmination	(a) Conclusion (b) Climax (c) Abyss (d) Cultivation	159. Reluctant	(a) Unwilling (b) Forego (c) Redundant (d) Amendable	169. Sauntering	(a) Jogging (b) Brisk walking (c) Travelling (d) Strolling
150. Sporadic	(a) Surviving (b) Sweeping (c) Irregular (d) Persistent	160. Revelation	(a) Anticipation (b) Imagination (c) Revel in (d) Disclosure	170. Pompous	(a) Grandiose (b) Polished (c) Modest (d) Skilled

Synonyms

171. Poignant	(a) Showy (b) Sad (c) Silly (d) Snobbish	181. Hostility	(a) Illness (b) Enmity (c) Disturbance (d) Derogatory	191. Reticent	(a) Sensitive (b) Secretive (c) Not feeling well (d) Not saying much
172. Querulous	(a) Critical (b) Curious (c) Quarrelsome (d) Ambiguous	182. Indifferent	(a) Dissimilar (b) Various (c) Interference (d) Unconcerned	192. Reciprocal	(a) Formal (b) Favorable (c) Mutual (d) Sustainable
173. Audacious	(a) Brilliant (b) Powerful (c) Bold (d) Frightening	183. Condemn	(a) Censure (b) Despair (c) Kill (d) Hit	193. Apprise	(a) Inform (b) Estimate (c) Admire (d) Require
174. Perilous	(a) Hazardous (b) Rigorous (c) Resilient (d) Requisite	184. Defect	(a) Loss (b) Harm (c) Shortcoming (d) Delicate	194. Consensus	(a) Awareness (b) General agreement (c) Careful observation (d) Praiseworthy
175. Reverie	(a) Determination (b) Day-dream (c) Reality (d) Realization	185. Jealous	(a) Envious (b) Unhappy (c) Regretful (d) Remorse	195. Unceremonious	(a) Impolite (b) Informal (c) Incomplete (d) Irregular
176. Genial	(a) Cordial (b) Unselfish (c) Careful (d) Specific	186. Weary	(a) Careless (b) Shivering (c) Troubled (d) Weak	196. Treason	(a) Absurdity (b) Disloyalty (c) Dishonesty (d) Deception
177. Accrue	(a) Accumulate (b) Accommodate (c) Grow (d) Suffice	187. Plausible	(a) Pleasing taste (b) Seemingly true (c) Manageable (d) Cannot be proved	197. Amiable	(a) Popular (b) Generous (c) Friendly (d) Reasonable
178. Loquacious	(a) Talkative (b) Slow (c) Content (d) Unclear	188. Creditable	(a) Able to lend money (b) Bringing praise (c) Able to repay a loan (d) Fit to be believed	198. Lucid	(a) Fluent (b) Clear (c) Musical (d) Familiar
179. Vindictive	(a) Imaginative (b) Accusative (c) Spiteful (d) Aggressive	189. Salient	(a) Most important (b) Salt-like taste (c) Pleasing (d) Satisfactory	199. Ravaged	(a) Destroyed (b) Spoiled (c) Conquered (d) Robbed
180. Inclement	(a) Selfish (b) Active (c) Unfavourable (d) Inactive	190. Fragile	(a) Soft (b) Smooth (c) Flexible (d) Easily broken	200. Perplexed	(a) Annoyed (b) Disappointed (c) Puzzled (d) Ruined

Synonyms

201. Anonymity	(a) Reputation (b) Publicity (c) Being unknown (d) Wrong address	211. Solicit	(a) Command (b) Request (c) Sympathize (d) Agree	221. Squander	(a) Expensive (b) Waste (c) Litter (d) Economical
202. Ephemeral	(a) Disturbing (b) Filthy (c) Short-lived (d) Poverty-stricken	212. Surmount	(a) Discount (b) Surround (c) Overcome (d) Capture	222. Abated	(a) Reduced (b) Vanished (c) Increased (d) Stabilized
203. Caption	(a) Joke (b) Definition (c) Meaning (d) Title	213. Pertinent	(a) Indirect (b) Relevant (c) Direct (d) Important	223. Abrogate	(a) Repeal (b) Destroy (c) Delay (d) Dismiss
204. Battered	(a) Destroyed (b) Dashed on (c) Struck hard (d) Struck off	214. Nebulous	(a) Revolutionary (b) Vague (c) Starting (d) Idiotic	224. Abstemious	(a) Resistant (b) Temperate (c) Superstitions (d) Careful
205. Extravagant	(a) Hardworking (b) Good (c) Extraordinary (d) Spendthrift	215. Ubiquitous	(a) Omnipresent (b) Omnipotent (c) Omniscient (d) Affluent	225. Allegiance	(a) Servility (b) Obedience (c) Loyalty (d) Passivity
206. Redundant	(a) Superfluous (b) Uninterested (c) Introspective (d) Knowledgeable	216. Corroborate	(a) Collaborate (b) Substantiate (c) Co-operate (d) Correlate	226. Amicable	(a) Poisonous (b) Co-operative (c) Satisfying (d) Heartening
207. Hindered	(a) Damaged (b) Disturbed (c) Obstructed (d) Protested	217. Adequate	(a) Necessary (b) Sufficient (c) Procured (d) Additional	227. Ample	(a) Meagre (b) Quantitative (c) Sufficient (d) Tasty
208. Concealed	(a) Covered (b) Closed (c) Sealed (d) Hidden	218. Solecism	(a) Abuse (b) Witty quip (c) Clever argument (d) Grammatical error	228. Baleful	(a) Harmful (b) Doubtful (c) Useful (d) Helpful
209. Relish	(a) Realize (b) Taste (c) Enjoy (d) Reveal	219. Delirious	(a) Delicious (b) Pleasing (c) Desperate (d) Excited	229. Benevolence	(a) Ill will (b) Morbidity (c) Kindness (d) Vision
210. Acute	(a) Dull (b) Drowsy (c) Unpleasant (d) Sharp	220. Licentious	(a) Immoral (b) Intellectual (c) Moral (d) Without license	230. Camouflage	(a) Hide (b) Reveal (c) Disguise (d) Pretend

Synonyms

231. Chivalrous	241. Evoked	251. Irreverence
(a) Crude (b) Gallant (c) Handsome (d) Tinkering	(a) Escaped (b) Called forth (c) Produced (d) Summoned	(a) Disrespect (b) Cruelty (c) Unkindness (d) Invalidity
232. Covenant	242. Flabbergasted	252. Latent
(a) Case (b) Coupon (c) Contract (d) Settlement	(a) Scared (b) Embarrassed (c) Dumbfounded (d) Humiliated	(a) Primitive (b) Hidden (c) Potent (d) Talented
233. Dainty	243. Flimsy	253. Massive
(a) Carefree (b) Feminine and happy (c) Delicacy (d) Small and graceful	(a) Weak (b) Strong (c) Justified (d) Impulsive	(a) Tall (b) Large in size (c) Total (d) Little
234. Deference	244. Garish	254. Obnoxious
(a) Indifference (b) Sympathy (c) Respect (d) Flattery	(a) Unusual (b) Exciting (c) Confused (d) Gaudy	(a) Depressing (b) Disgusting (c) Arrogant (d) Filthy
235. Dormant	245. Implacable	255. Panacea
(a) Sleeping (b) Humble (c) Quick (d) Active	(a) Relentless (b) Unappeasable (c) Dangerous (d) Courageous	(a) Flatter (b) Praise (c) Inactivity (d) Cure-all
236. Dramatic	246. Indict	256. Pragmatic
(a) Unprecedented (b) Thrilling (c) Spectacular (d) Effective	(a) To accuse (b) Entrapment (c) Indoctrination (d) Inducement	(a) Practical (b) Playful (c) Causal (d) Clever
237. Dubious	247. Indigent	257. Reparation
(a) Doubtful (b) Disputable (c) Duplicate (d) Dangerous	(a) Indian men (b) Poor (c) Guilty (d) Untried	(a) Compensation (b) Co-relation (c) Aspersion (d) Delegation
238. Duplicity	248. Innocuous	258. Salutary
(a) Repetition (b) Artlessness (c) Deception (d) Cleverness	(a) Abominable (b) Harmless (c) Harmful (d) Useful	(a) Premature (b) Terrible (c) Disastrous (d) Beneficial
239. Eternal	249. Innuendoes	259. Shrink
(a) Innumerable (b) Immeasurable (c) Prolonged (d) Perpetual	(a) Indications (b) Inspiring quotes (c) Witty remarks (d) Insinuations	(a) Contract (b) Physician (c) Reduce (d) Shrivel
240. Evince	250. Insolent	260. Soporific
(a) Look (b) Try (c) Apply (d) Show	(a) Violent (b) Polite (c) Insulting (d) Frivolous	(a) Soothing (b) Terrific (c) Supreme (d) Sleep-inducing

Synonyms

261. Vagary

- (a) Lapse of memory
- (b) Companionship
- (c) gang
- (d) impulse

262. Coax

- (a) Pacify
- (b) Punish
- (c) Persuade
- (d) Please

263. Renowned

- (a) Notorious
- (b) Great

(c) Brave

- (d) Famous

264. Blaze

- (a) Rage
- (b) Rush
- (c) Fire
- (d) Mark

265. Tangential

- (a) partly
- (b) forcefully
- (c) superficial relevance
- (d) fitfully

266. Transparent

- (a) Translucent
- (b) Opaque
- (c) Clear
- (d) Sharp

267. Fruitless

- (a) Successful
- (b) barren
- (c) Useless
- (d) Insufficient

ANSWER KEY

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (c) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (d) 10. (a)
11. (b) 12. (c) 13. (b) 14. (c) 15. (b) 16. (b) 17. (d) 18. (d) 19. (b) 20. (b)
21. (a) 22. (b) 23. (b) 24. (b) 25. (a) 26. (b) 27. (a) 28. (c) 29. (d) 30. (c)
31. (b) 32. (b) 33. (c) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (a) 37. (c) 38. (b) 39. (a) 40. (d)
41. (d) 42. (d) 43. (b) 44. (a) 45. (c) 46. (b) 47. (d) 48. (b) 49. (b) 50. (d)
51. (b) 52. (b) 53. (a) 54. (c) 55. (b) 56. (d) 57. (d) 58. (c) 59. (c) 60. (a)
61. (c) 62. (c) 63. (b) 64. (c) 65. (c) 66. (b) 67. (c) 68. (b) 69. (b) 70. (a)
71. (b) 72. (c) 73. (d) 74. (d) 75. (d) 76. (c) 77. (a) 78. (b) 79. (d) 80. (c)
81. (b) 82. (b) 83. (a) 84. (b) 85. (b) 86. (c) 87. (c) 88. (b) 89. (c) 90. (d)
91. (c) 92. (b) 93. (a) 94. (a) 95. (c) 96. (a) 97. (a) 98. (b) 99. (c) 100. (a)
101. (b) 102. (a) 103. (c) 104. (d) 105. (c) 106. (b) 107. (a) 108. (b) 109. (a) 110. (c)
111. (a) 112. (b) 113. (d) 114. (a) 115. (c) 116. (a) 117. (b) 118. (d) 119. (c) 120. (b)
121. (c) 122. (d) 123. (c) 124. (b) 125. (b) 126. (a) 127. (c) 128. (b) 129. (d) 130. (b)
131. (c) 132. (d) 133. (c) 134. (a) 135. (d) 136. (d) 137. (b) 138. (b) 139. (a) 140. (d)
141. (b) 142. (a) 143. (a) 144. (d) 145. (a) 146. (b) 147. (a) 148. (c) 149. (b) 150. (c)
151. (c) 152. (d) 153. (b) 154. (d) 155. (c) 156. (a) 157. (d) 158. (a) 159. (a) 160. (d)
161. (c) 162. (a) 163. (a) 164. (b) 165. (d) 166. (b) 167. (a) 168. (d) 169. (d) 170. (a)
171. (b) 172. (c) 173. (c) 174. (a) 175. (b) 176. (b) 177. (a) 178. (a) 179. (c) 180. (c)
181. (b) 182. (d) 183. (a) 184. (c) 185. (a) 186. (c) 187. (b) 188. (b) 189. (a) 190. (d)
191. (d) 192. (c) 193. (a) 194. (b) 195. (a) 196. (b) 197. (c) 198. (b) 199. (a) 200. (c)
201. (c) 202. (c) 203. (d) 204. (a) 205. (d) 206. (a) 207. (c) 208. (d) 209. (c) 210. (d)
211. (b) 212. (c) 213. (b) 214. (b) 215. (a) 216. (b) 217. (b) 218. (d) 219. (d) 220. (a)
221. (b) 222. (a) 223. (a) 224. (d) 225. (c) 226. (b) 227. (c) 228. (a) 229. (c) 230. (a)
231. (b) 232. (c) 233. (d) 234. (c) 235. (a) 236. (c) 237. (a) 238. (c) 239. (d) 240. (d)
241. (b) 242. (c) 243. (a) 244. (d) 245. (b) 246. (a) 247. (b) 248. (b) 249. (d) 250. (c)
251. (a) 252. (b) 253. (b) 254. (b) 255. (d) 256. (a) 257. (a) 258. (d) 259. (d) 260. (d)
261. (d) 262. (c) 263. (d) 264. (c) 265. (c) 266. (c) 267. (c)

19

ANTONYMS

CHAPTER

Directions: in questions no. 1 to 298 choose the word opposite in meaning to the given word and mark it in the answer sheet.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Fastidious
(a) Fussy
(b) Cooperative
(c) Promising
(d) Adjustable | 8. Urban
(a) Rustic
(b) Rural
(c) Civil
(d) Foreign | 15. Rapidly
(a) Lazily
(b) Secretly
(c) Slowly
(d) Firmly |
| 2. Shallow
(a) High
(b) Long
(c) Wide
(d) Deep | 9. Incredible
(a) Possible
(b) Believable
(c) Enjoyable
(d) Imaginary | 16. Extol
(a) Heckle
(b) Censure
(c) Hate
(d) Scold |
| 3. Explicit
(a) Elusive
(b) Allusive
(c) Ambidextrous
(d) Ambiguous | 10. Concur
(a) Disagree
(b) Disappear
(c) Disarrange
(d) Discourage | 17. Make
(a) Liberate
(b) Break
(c) Emancipate
(d) Bind |
| 4. Immune
(a) Free
(b) Vulnerable
(c) Powerful
(d) Weak | 11. Quiet
(a) Strong
(b) Pandemonium
(c) Incomplete
(d) Violent | 18. Terminate
(a) Hasten
(b) Depart
(c) Begin
(d) Change |
| 5. Bleak
(a) Dull
(b) Dark
(c) Bright
(d) Exposure | 12. Vague
(a) Clear
(b) Dull
(c) Unknown
(d) Shady | 19. Successor
(a) Failure
(b) Loser
(c) Predecessor
(d) Predator |
| 6. Veneration
(a) Fear
(b) Reverence
(c) Remorse
(d) Disrespect | 13. Inevitable
(a) Avoidable
(b) Unnecessary
(c) Inseparable
(d) Uncertain | 20. Demolish
(a) Shift
(b) Build
(c) Repeat
(d) Hide |
| 7. Insolent
(a) Ignorant
(b) Proud
(c) Laudable
(d) Humble | 14. Humility
(a) Dignity
(b) Cruelty
(c) Anger
(d) Pride | 21. Genial
(a) Stupid
(b) Stingy
(c) Boorish
(d) Unkind |

Antonyms

22. Prevent	(a) Protect (b) Black (c) Hinder (d) Induce	32. Innovate	(a) Sell (b) Buy (c) Close (d) Copy	42. Brave	(a) Sorry (b) Bold (c) Timid (d) Boisterous
23. Plausible	(a) Implausible (b) Unplausible (c) Implausible/ Unbelievable (d) Displausible	33. Asceticism	(a) Comfort (b) Luxury (c) Anti-semitism (d) Humility	43. Duplicity	(a) Complexity (b) Honesty (c) Serenity (d) Originality
24. Frailty	(a) Energy (b) Intensity (c) Vehemence (d) Strength	34. Enduring	(a) Fleeting (b) Painful (c) Permanent (d) Long lasting	44. Opaque	(a) Brilliant (b) Bright (c) Transparent (d) Lustrous
25. Flair	(a) Spreading outward (b) Inability (c) Spotlight (d) Taste	35. Dissolution	(a) Retribution (b) Establishment (c) Persuasion (d) Compliance	45. Jocular	(a) Merry (b) Morose (c) Jugular (d) Juggler
26. Collapse	(a) Rise (b) Handicap (c) Crush (d) Crumble	36. Progressive	(a) Repressive (b) Retrogressive (c) Repulsive (d) Aggressive	46. Hinder	(a) Encourage (b) Acknowledge (c) Prohibit (d) Instruct
27. Dormant	(a) Acute (b) Active (c) Able (d) Ablaze	37. Unnerved	(a) Confident (b) Nervous (c) Hopeful (d) Anxious	47. Uncompromising	(a) Courteous (b) Flexible (c) Awesome (d) Soft
28. Anxious	(a) Crafty (b) Light (c) Carefree (d) Careless	38. Vague	(a) Unclear (b) Sharp (c) Precise (d) Actual	48. Zeal	(a) Disinterest (b) Apathy (c) Carelessness (d) Hatred
29. Hazy	(a) Plain (b) Light (c) Clear (d) Dull	39. Harmony	(a) Disagreement (b) Melody (c) Confusion (d) Concord	49. Desecration	(a) Consecration (b) Discouragement (c) Despondency (d) Expectation
30. Thrifty	(a) Clean (b) Loyal (c) Wasteful (d) Reverent	40. Purposely	(a) Half-heartedly (b) Timidly (c) Unintentionally (d) Hesitatingly	50. Shimmering	(a) Gloomy (b) Glimmering (c) Refreshing (d) Repining
31. Fantastic	(a) Old (b) Ordinary (c) Classic (d) Rational	41. Guilty	(a) Innocent (b) Ignorant (c) Irreverent (d) Immature	51. Far-fetched	(a) Wise (b) Prudent (c) Located for (d) Realistic

Antonyms —

52. Takes off	(a) Travels (b) Falls (c) Explodes (d) Lands	62. Reckless	(a) Careful (b) Frank (c) Diffident (d) Smart	72. Frugal	(a) Economical (b) Extravagant (c) Miserly (d) Greedy
53. Niggardly	(a) Hastily (b) Lavishly (c) Likely (d) Gorgeously	63. Scorn	(a) Contempt (b) Joy (c) Admiration (d) Pity	73. Eminent	(a) Illustrious (b) Notorious (c) Intelligent (d) Known
54. Melodious	(a) Harmonious (b) Tuneless (c) Odious (d) Mellifluous	64. Grandiose	(a) Simple (b) False (c) Ideal (d) Proud	74. Barbarous	(a) Civilized (b) Modern (c) Polite (d) Praiseworthy
55. Advanced	(a) Progressed (b) Outpaced (c) Receded (d) Run back	65. Trivial	(a) Serious (b) Violent (c) Wild (d) Unimportant	75. Embark upon	(a) Launch (b) Analyse (c) Break off (d) Conclude
56. Enlightened	(a) Slander (b) Bemoan (c) Ignorant (d) Before	66. Lurid	(a) Dismal (b) Mild (c) Murky (d) Mysterious	76. Falling off	(a) Shrinkage (b) Erosion (c) Improvement (d) Descent
57. Exceptional	(a) Great (b) Occasional (c) Common (d) Absorbing	67. Loquacious	(a) Reserved (b) Miserly (c) Eloquent (d) Healthy	77. Depressed	(a) Satisfied (b) Elated (c) Impressed (d) Affected
58. Permanent	(a) Long (b) Short (c) Durable (d) Temporary	68. Unscrupulous	(a) Conscientious (b) Dedicated (c) Single-minded (d) Superfluous	78. Yield to	(a) Submit to (b) Persuade (c) Resist (d) Seek terms with
59. Moderate	(a) Abnormal (b) Weak (c) Extreme (d) Separate	69. Confiscate	(a) Produce (b) Release (c) Destroy (d) Exhibit	79. Paucity	(a) Overflow (b) Inflow (c) Plenty (d) Grim
60. Diffidence	(a) Boldness (b) Outspokenness (c) Fluency (d) Obstinacy	70. Contaminate	(a) Sanctify (b) Invigorate (c) Taint (d) Purify	80. Conclusive	(a) Powerful (b) Indecisive (c) Exclusive (d) Partial
61. Superficial	(a) Careful (b) Of surface (c) Thorough (d) Casual	71. Often	(a) Usually (b) Rarely (c) Sometimes (d) Occasionally	81. Triggered	(a) Choked (b) Tapered off (c) Diluted (d) Ignited

Antonyms

82. Parallel	(a) Divergent (b) Difficult (c) Similar (d) Crooked	92. Expand	(a) Contract (b) Contrast (c) Consist (d) Controvert	102. Genuine	(a) Genius (b) Honest (c) Affected (d) Fictitious
83. Manifested	(a) Displayed (b) Concealed (c) Suppressed (d) Marked	93. Prosperity	(a) Propriety (b) Property (c) Adversity (d) Perspicacity	103. Ham-fisted	(a) Simple (b) Adroit (c) Difficult (d) Vague
84. Blocked	(a) Facilitated (b) Started (c) Checked (d) Promoted	94. Stimulate	(a) Encourage (b) Discourage (c) Tempt (d) Instigate	104. Implicit	(a) Explicit (b) Implied (c) Explained (d) Exquisite
85. Vindictive	(a) careless (b) forgiving (c) heedless (d) refined	95. Deliberate	(a) Unconditional (b) Unintentional (c) Unilateral (d) Emotional	105. Capture	(a) Catch (b) Detain (c) Liberate (d) Stop
86. Turn coat	(a) Loyal (b) Disappointing (c) Thrilling (d) Nail-biting	96. Perilous	(a) Pitiable (b) Difficult (c) Safe (d) Comfortable	106. Repulsive	(a) Attractive (b) Offensive (c) Defensive (d) Pensive
87. Inaugurate	(a) Terminate (b) Inculcate (c) Facilitate (d) Ameliorate	97. Disputable	(a) Undisputable (b) Indisputable (c) Nondisputable (d) Adisputable	107. Misery	(a) Sorry (b) Careless (c) Joy (d) Content
88. Embellish	(a) Dishonour (b) Demolish (c) Spoil (d) Suffice	98. Audacious	(a) Cautious (b) Timid (c) Rude (d) Proud	108. Escalate	(a) Decrease (b) Descend (c) Deliver (d) Derive
89. Detest	(a) Test (b) Dislike (c) Like (d) Interest	99. Meticulous	(a) Unmerited (b) Unimaginative (c) Carefree (d) Careless	109. Anarchy	(a) Curfew (b) Permanence (c) Wholesome (d) Order
90. Intentional	(a) Accidental (b) Undecided (c) Concentrated (d) Broken	100. Repel	(a) Attract (b) Interest (c) Tempt (d) Like	110. Commotion	(a) Transmission (b) Tranquillity (c) Transparency (d) Transition
91. Commence	(a) Start (b) Schedule (c) Conclude (d) Dissolve	101. Dim	(a) Transparent (b) Luminous (c) Opaque (d) Dazzling	111. Monotony	(a) Enthusiasm (b) Repetitiveness (c) Variety (d) Singularity

Antonyms

112. Latter	122. Disorderly	132. Antique
(a) Earlier (b) Before (c) Later (d) Former	(a) Chaotic (b) Organized (c) Adjusted (d) Arranged	(a) Common (b) Recent (c) Innovative (d) Youthful
113. Dynamic	123. Elevation	133. Contented
(a) Stable (b) Still (c) Lazy (d) Static	(a) Reduction (b) Humiliation (c) Increment (d) Debasement	(a) Dissatisfied (b) Emptied (c) Happy (d) Unfriendly
114. Diligent	124. Glossy	134. Rapid
(a) Intelligent (b) Lazy (c) Boastful (d) Notorious	(a) Dull (b) Shining (c) Weary (d) Tired	(a) Happy (b) Fall (c) Slow (d) Abnormal
115. Hereditary	125. Boon	135. Severe
(a) Carried (b) Acquired (c) Possessed (d) Regained	(a) Dull (b) Bane (c) Hurt (d) Harsh	(a) Sharp (b) Mild (c) Important (d) Cut
116. Philistine	126. Accomplish	136. Initiated
(a) Cultured (b) Libertine (c) Sober (d) Educated	(a) Fail (b) Improper (c) Disagreeable (d) Scatter	(a) Complicated (b) Simplified (c) Concluded (d) Commenced
117. Heretical	127. Famous	137. Consensus
(a) Contradictory (b) Doubtful (c) Impious (d) Orthodox	(a) Obscure (b) Eminent (c) Lenient (d) Fabulous	(a) Accept (b) Opinion (c) Disagreement (d) Permission
118. Ingest	128. Orderly	138. Fatigued
(a) Disrupt (b) Disgorge (c) Dismiss (d) Display	(a) Unclear (b) Valueless (c) Chaotic (d) Incomplete	(a) Weakened (b) Energised (c) Tired (d) Activated
119. Implicate	129. Gloomy	139. Autonomy
(a) Exonerate (b) Impersonate (c) Complicate (d) Impose	(a) Radiant (b) Fragrant (c) Melodious (d) Illusory	(a) Slavery (b) Subordination (c) Dependence (d) Submissiveness
120. Laceration	130. Strife	140. Flexible
(a) Convalescence (b) Recouperation (c) Healing (d) Palpitation	(a) War (b) Peace (c) Anger (d) Woe	(a) Rigid (b) Cruel (c) Humble (d) Easy
121. Liberty	131. Isolation	141. Artificial
(a) Serenity (b) Slavery (c) Serfdom (d) Subordinate	(a) Segregation (b) Association (c) Seclusion (d) Deportation	(a) Artful (b) Machine-made (c) Artistic (d) Natural

Antonyms

142. Delete	152. Callous	162. Chivalry
(a) Regress (b) Interpolate (c) Infer (d) Include	(a) Persuasive (b) Caring (c) Gentle (d) Sensitive	(a) Cowardish (b) Discourtesy (c) Disobedience (d) Disaffection
143. Benefactor	153. Cessation	163. Dismal
(a) Helper (b) Victor (c) Disciple (d) Enemy	(a) Commencement (b) Renewal (c) Ongoing (d) Interruption	(a) Bright (b) Indifferent (c) Fast (d) Energetic
144. Evanescence	154. Procrastinate	164. Sanguine temper
(a) Clean (b) Tight (c) Eternal (d) Cheap	(a) Experiment (b) Expedite (c) Exclude (d) Propagate	(a) Despairing nature (b) Peaceful temperament (c) Rude behaviour (d) Selfish nature
145. Barren	155. Potent	165. Meagre
(a) Fertile (b) Rich (c) Prosperous (d) Positive	(a) Inefficient (b) Soft (c) Fragile (d) Weak	(a) Extravagant (b) Abandon (c) Prosperous (d) Surplus
146. Virtue	156. Probit	166. Imperil
(a) Vice (b) Failure (c) Fault (d) Offence	(a) Dishonesty (b) Timidity (c) Treachery (d) Insincerity	(a) Safeguard (b) Construct (c) Create (d) Brighten
147. Nervous	157. Gregarious	167. Flamboyant
(a) Flawless (b) Immature (c) Smooth (d) Composed	(a) Recluse (b) Social (c) Laudatory (d) Rustic	(a) Elaborately (b) Really (c) Not showy (d) Sensibly
148. Confident	158. Sporadic	168. Consolidated
(a) Worried (b) Pessimistic (c) Diffident (d) Depressed	(a) Surviving (b) Sweeping (c) Restrained (d) Continual	(a) Disjoined (b) Broken (c) Weakened (d) Lost
149. Evident	159. Implication	169. Chronic
(a) Suspected (b) Disagreed (c) hidden (d) Unimportant	(a) Consideration (b) Exoneration (c) Conclusion (d) Interpretation	(a) Pathetic (b) Characteristic (c) Temporary (d) Mild
150. Adamant	160. Apposite	170. Vituperative
(a) Yielding (b) Permissive (c) Liberal (d) Tolerant	(a) Intemperate (b) Inappropriate (c) Indecent (d) Incriminatory	(a) Joyous (b) Laudatory (c) Critical (d) Virtuous
151. Professional	161. Gregarious	171. Awkward
(a) Novice (b) Amateur (c) Dabbler (d) Apprentice	(a) Indecent (b) Unsociable (c) Above reproach (d) Unlovable	(a) Awful (b) Satisfactory (c) Graceful (d) Easy

Antonyms

172. Smug

- (a) Satisfied
- (b) Dissatisfied
- (c) Serious
- (d) Delighted

173. Oppressive

- (a) Gentle
- (b) Harsh
- (c) Smooth
- (d) Orderly

174. Obscure

- (a) Inconspicuous
- (b) Veiled
- (c) Clear
- (d) Distinct

175. Clinch

- (a) Lose
- (b) Clasp
- (c) Deal
- (d) Seal

176. Enervate

- (a) Decelerate
- (b) Strengthen
- (c) Push forward
- (d) Aggravate

177. To put up with

- (a) To stay together
- (b) To talk politely
- (c) To dislike
- (d) To move along with

178. Autonomous

- (a) Self-government
- (b) Dependent
- (c) Defensive
- (d) Neutral

179. Deceitful

- (a) Sincere
- (b) Useful
- (c) Plain
- (d) Honest

180. Exonerate

- (a) Admit
- (b) Release
- (c) Convict
- (d) Reject

181. Exaggerate

- (a) Underwrite
- (b) Understate
- (c) Ignore
- (d) Condemn

182. Controversial

- (a) Indisputable
- (b) Restrained
- (c) Controlled
- (d) Appeasing

183. Synthetic

- (a) Natural
- (b) Plastic
- (c) Cosmetic
- (d) Apathetic

184. Accord

- (a) Disagreement
- (b) Welcome
- (c) Disrespect
- (d) Conformity

185. Infirmity

- (a) Employment
- (b) Indisposition
- (c) Strength
- (d) Weakness

186. Feasible

- (a) Useful
- (b) Impractical
- (c) Uneven
- (d) Important

187. Deny

- (a) Accept
- (b) Proceed
- (c) Hold
- (d) Promote

188. Acquit

- (a) Inform
- (b) Release
- (c) Abuse
- (d) Condemn

189. Benediction

- (a) Best wishes
- (b) Use
- (c) Curse
- (d) Blessing

190. Affluence

- (a) Not being fluent
- (b) Poverty
- (c) Difficult
- (d) Unhealthy

191. Forbid

- (a) Defy
- (b) Dislike
- (c) Permit
- (d) Understand

192. Harmonious

- (a) Selfish
- (b) Aggressive
- (c) Mechanical
- (d) Discordant

193. Inconspicuous

- (a) Open-hearted
- (b) Open-minded
- (c) Prominent
- (d) Smooth

194. Factual

- (a) Actual
- (b) Idealistic
- (c) Unrealistic
- (d) Verbal

195. Abandon

- (a) Assert
- (b) Retain
- (c) Produce
- (d) Twist

196. Assent

- (a) Breakdown
- (b) Misunderstand
- (c) Dispatch
- (d) Disagreement

197. Fickle

- (a) Constant
- (b) Convenient
- (c) Questionable
- (d) Faithful

198. Discreet

- (a) Worthy
- (b) Wishful thinking
- (c) Honest
- (d) Careless in behaviour

199. Articulate

- (a) Unable to understand
- (b) Unable to express oneself
- (c) Unable to agree
- (d) Unable to live

200. Unjust

- (a) Serious
- (b) Self-centred
- (c) Fair-minded
- (d) Considerable

Antonyms

201. Humble	211. Deterrent	221. Candid
(a) Rich (b) Powerful (c) Haughty (d) Strong	(a) Determinant (b) Detriment (c) Encouragement (d) Enrichment	(a) Frank (b) Diplomatic (c) Reserved (d) Impertinent
202. Exemptions	212. Spurious	222. Comaraderies
(a) Generalisation (b) Liberalisation (c) Exclusions (d) Inclusions	(a) Truthful (b) Authentic (c) Credible (d) Original	(a) Curiosity (b) Ferocity (c) Impetuosity (d) Animosity
203. Prominent	213. Slander	223. Convicted
(a) Unknown (b) Treason (c) Loyalty (d) Distrust	(a) Gain (b) Profit (c) Praise (d) Loss	(a) Charged (b) Relieved (c) Dismissed (d) Acquitted
204. Alleviate	214. Reveal	224. Convoluted
(a) Intensity (b) Magnify (c) Mitigate (d) Aggravate	(a) Appeal (b) Relax (c) Recover (d) Conceal	(a) Simple (b) Complicated (c) Difficult (d) Majestic
205. Disperse	215. Admonish	225. Curtail
(a) Converge (b) Smile (c) Dispense (d) Sing	(a) Condemn (b) Bless (c) Praise (d) Congratulate	(a) Lengthen (b) Shorten (c) Entail (d) Close
206. Ambiguous	216. Adulation	226. Dense
(a) Truthful (b) Lucid (c) Logical (d) Systematic	(a) Flattery (b) Encomium (c) Confession (d) Condemnation	(a) Scarce (b) Slim (c) Sparse (d) Lean
207. Hilarious	217. Affirmation	227. Diminished
(a) Unworthy (b) Unpleasant (c) Ill-fated (d) Serious	(a) Denial (b) Refusal (c) Opposition (d) Obstruction	(a) Created (b) Rose (c) Increased (d) Lessen
208. Tolerance	218. Affluent	228. Ephemeral
(a) Loathing (b) Brawl (c) Plea (d) Forbid	(a) Poor (b) Ordinary (c) Infamous (d) Backward	(a) Eternal (b) Transitory (c) Mortal (d) Temporal
209. Steadfast	219. Agony	229. Escalating
(a) Staunch (b) Feeble (c) Faint (d) Wavering	(a) Ecstasy (b) Laughter (c) Humdrum (d) Ecstasy	(a) Fixed (b) Fluctuating (c) Falling (d) Reasonable
210. Conceited	220. Appalling	230. Esteem
(a) Proud (b) Honest (c) Modest (d) Modern	(a) Shocking (b) Consoling (c) Scaring (d) Horrifying	(a) Power (b) Guess (c) Contempt (d) Estimate

Antonyms

231. Exotic	241. Intimidating	251. Parsimonious
(a) Wonderful (b) Cosmopolitan (c) Irrelevant (d) Common	(a) Authoritative (b) Casual (c) Non-serious (d) Friendly	(a) Prodigious (b) Selfless (c) Extravagant (d) Ostentatious
232. Fetter	242. Jest	252. Predilection
(a) Restore (b) Liberate (c) Exonerate (d) Distract	(a) Gravity (b) Grim (c) Genial (d) Sport	(a) Acceptance (b) Attraction (c) Dislike (d) Choice
233. Flourish	243. Latent	253. Profound
(a) Perish (b) Degenerate (c) Decay (d) Dismiss	(a) Unspoken (b) Later (c) Implicit (d) Obvious	(a) Deep (b) Superficial (c) Hollow (d) Fallow
234. Futile	244. Maladroit	254. Protean
(a) Waste (b) Expensive (c) Useful (d) Cheap	(a) Authoritative (b) Skilful (c) Maladjusted (d) Malevolent	(a) Amateur (b) Catholic (c) Unchanging (d) Rapid
235. Garrulous	245. Malevolence	255. Quiescent
(a) Vociferous (b) Eloquent (c) Taciturn (d) Vocal	(a) Tenderness (b) Kindness (c) Benefiting (d) Indulgence	(a) Restless (b) Exempt (c) Malignant (d) Mendicant
236. Gratuitous	246. Malice	256. Perilous
(a) Uncharitable (b) Grand appearance (c) Warranted (d) Being grateful	(a) Sympathy (b) Goodwill (c) Friendship (d) Attraction	(a) Safe (b) Developed (c) Sophisticated (d) Communicative
237. In toto	247. Monotonous	257. Revelation
(a) Bluntly (b) Partially (c) Entirely (d) Strongly	(a) Disastrous (b) Terrifying (c) Terrible (d) Interesting	(a) Rejection (b) Elimination (c) Concealment (d) Introduction
238. Fleeting	248. Obscene	258. Repulsion
(a) Glossy (b) Perpetual (c) Aspiring (d) Sufficient	(a) Disobedient (b) Decent (c) Dislocate (d) Cautious	(a) Attraction (b) Disapproval (c) Disparagement (d) Denigration
239. Inert	249. Opposed	259. Segregate
(a) Active (b) Lazy (c) Strong (d) Resolute	(a) Resistant (b) Against (c) Favouring (d) Similar	(a) Sever (b) Unite (c) Separate (d) Aggregate
240. Initial	250. Ostracise	260. Significant
(a) Terminal (b) Commencing (c) Delayed (d) Disastrous	(a) Amuse (b) Welcome (c) Entertain (d) Host	(a) Substantial (b) Minuscule (c) Incoherent (d) Unimportant

261. Despair

- (a) Sneer
- (b) Compliment
- (c) Irony
- (d) Hope

262. Validate

- (a) Disprove
- (b) Authenticate
- (c) Ingenuine
- (d) Legalise

263. Vicious

- (a) Godly
- (b) Virtuous
- (c) Sublime
- (d) Friendly

ANSWER KEY

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. (d) | 29. (c) | 55. (c) | 81. (a) | 107. (c) | 133. (a) | 159. (b) | 185. (c) | 211. (c) | 237. (b) |
| 2. (d) | 30. (c) | 56. (c) | 82. (d) | 108. (a) | 134. (c) | 160. (b) | 186. (b) | 212. (b) | 238. (b) |
| 3. (d) | 31. (b) | 57. (c) | 83. (b) | 109. (d) | 135. (b) | 161. (b) | 187. (a) | 213. (c) | 239. (a) |
| 4. (b) | 32. (d) | 58. (d) | 84. (a) | 110. (b) | 136. (c) | 162. (a) | 188. (d) | 214. (d) | 240. (a) |
| 5. (c) | 33. (b) | 59. (c) | 85. (b) | 111. (c) | 137. (c) | 163. (a) | 189. (c) | 215. (c) | 241. (d) |
| 6. (d) | 34. (a) | 60. (a) | 86. (a) | 112. (d) | 138. (b) | 164. (a) | 190. (b) | 216. (d) | 242. (b) |
| 7. (d) | 35. (b) | 61. (c) | 87. (a) | 113. (d) | 139. (c) | 165. (d) | 191. (c) | 217. (a) | 243. (d) |
| 8. (b) | 36. (b) | 62. (a) | 88. (c) | 114. (b) | 140. (a) | 166. (a) | 192. (d) | 218. (a) | 244. (b) |
| 9. (b) | 37. (a) | 63. (c) | 89. (c) | 115. (b) | 141. (d) | 167. (c) | 193. (c) | 219. (a) | 245. (b) |
| 10. (a) | 38. (c) | 64. (a) | 90. (a) | 116. (a) | 142. (d) | 168. (a) | 194. (c) | 220. (b) | 247. (d) |
| 11. (b) | 39. (a) | 65. (a) | 91. (c) | 117. (d) | 143. (d) | 169. (c) | 195. (b) | 221. (c) | 248. (b) |
| 12. (a) | 40. (c) | 66. (b) | 92. (a) | 118. (b) | 144. (c) | 170. (b) | 196. (d) | 222. (d) | 249. (c) |
| 13. (a) | 41. (a) | 67. (a) | 93. (c) | 119. (a) | 145. (a) | 171. (c) | 197. (a) | 223. (d) | 250. (b) |
| 14. (d) | 42. (c) | 68. (a) | 94. (b) | 120. (c) | 146. (a) | 172. (b) | 198. (d) | 224. (a) | 251. (c) |
| 15. (c) | 43. (b) | 69. (b) | 95. (b) | 121. (b) | 147. (d) | 173. (a) | 199. (b) | 225. (a) | 252. (c) |
| 16. (b) | 44. (c) | 70. (d) | 96. (c) | 122. (b) | 148. (c) | 174. (c) | 200. (c) | 226. (a) | 253. (b) |
| 17. (b) | 45. (b) | 71. (b) | 97. (b) | 123. (a) | 149. (c) | 175. (a) | 201. (c) | 227. (c) | 254. (c) |
| 18. (c) | 46. (a) | 72. (b) | 98. (b) | 124. (a) | 150. (a) | 176. (b) | 202. (d) | 228. (a) | 255. (a) |
| 19. (b) | 47. (b) | 73. (b) | 99. (d) | 125. (b) | 151. (b) | 177. (c) | 203. (a) | 229. (c) | 256. (a) |
| 20. (d) | 48. (b) | 74. (a) | 100. (a) | 126. (a) | 152. (d) | 178. (b) | 204. (d) | 230. (c) | 257. (c) |
| 21. (d) | 49. (a) | 75. (d) | 101. (b) | 127. (a) | 153. (a) | 179. (d) | 205. (a) | 231. (d) | 258. (a) |
| 22. (c) | 50. (a) | 76. (c) | 102. (d) | 128. (c) | 154. (b) | 180. (c) | 206. (b) | 232. (b) | 259. (b) |
| 23. (d) | 51. (d) | 77. (b) | 103. (b) | 129. (a) | 155. (d) | 181. (b) | 207. (d) | 233. (a) | 260. (d) |
| 24. (b) | 52. (d) | 78. (c) | 104. (a) | 130. (b) | 156. (a) | 182. (a) | 208. (b) | 234. (c) | 261. (d) |
| 25. (a) | 53. (b) | 79. (c) | 105. (c) | 131. (b) | 157. (a) | 183. (a) | 209. (d) | 235. (c) | 262. (a) |
| 26. (b) | 54. (b) | 80. (b) | 106. (a) | 132. (b) | 158. (d) | 184. (a) | 210. (c) | 236. (a) | 263. (b) |

20

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

CHAPTER

S.N.	WORD	हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Abattoir	कसाइखाना	Place where animals are killed for food.
2.	Abbot	मठाधिकारी/ मठाधीश	A man who is the head of a monastery or an abbey.
3.	Abbreviation	संक्षेप/ लघुरूप	A shortened form of a word or phrase.
4.	Abdication	औपचारिक रूप से त्याग देना	To formally give up.
5.	Ablution	धार्मिक स्नान	Ritual washing of the body.
6.	Abstruse	समझने में मुश्किल	Hard to understand.
7.	Abundance	आधिक्य/ प्रचुरता	A quantity that is more than enough.
8.	Accentuate	जोर देना	Give more force or importance to.
9.	Accomplice	सह-अपराधी	Helper in a wrong deed or crime.
10.	Acronym	प्रथमाक्षरी नाम	Word formed from initial letters of a name.
11.	Addendum	परिशिष्ट	Thing to be added at the end of a book, etc.
12.	Advertisement	विज्ञापन	A public notice offering or asking for goods, services, etc.
13.	Afforestation	वनारोपन	The act of forestation by planting many trees.
14.	Agenda	घोषणा पत्र	Items of business for consideration at a meeting.
15.	Aggressor	आक्रमणकर्ता	Someone who attacks first.
16.	Agnosticism	जो ईश्वर के अस्तित्व पर शंका करे।	Doubtful about the existence of God.
17.	Alien	गैर नागरिक	One who belongs to different country, race of group.
18.	Alimony	तलाक पश्चात् की जीवन वृति	Allowance fixed after divorce to a wife.
19.	Allegory	प्रतीक कथा	Story in which ideas are symbolized as people.
20.	Alliteration	अनुप्रास	Commencement of adjacent words with the same letter.

One Word Substitution

21.	Altruist	परोपकारी	One who lives and works for the welfare of others.
22.	Amateur	गैर पेशेवर	Lacking professional skill or expertise.
23.	Ambassador	राजदूत	A diplomatic representative of one country in another.
24.	Ambidextrous	दोनों हाथों से निपुण	Equally skillful with each hand.
25.	Ambiguous	अस्पष्ट/ दो अर्थों वाला	Having more than one possible meaning
26.	Amnesia	विस्मरण	Partial or total loss of memory.
27.	Amnesty	अपराधक्षमा	A general pardon of political offenders.
28.	Amphibian	उभयचर	Animals which live both on land and in water.
29.	Amphitheatre	अखाड़ा/ रंगभूमि	A designated section of seats in any part of a theater.
30.	Analgesia	दर्द की अनुभूति न होना	The loss of ability to feel pain while still conscious.
31.	Anarchist	आराजक	One who wishes to destroy all established government's law and order.
32.	Anarchy	आराजकता	The absence of government in a country.
33.	Anecdote	किस्सा	Short amusing story about some real person or event.
34.	Anniversary	साल गिरह	Yearly return of the date of an event.
35.	Annual	सालाना	That which happens once in a year.
36.	Anomaly	असाधारण	Deviation or departure from common rule or standard or what is normal.
37.	Anonymous	गुमनाम	A book or a work of art whose author is not known.
38.	Antagonist	विरोधी	One that opposes other.
39.	Antidote	जहर-नाशक	A medicine to cure the effect of poison.
40.	Aphasia	वाचाघात	Loss of ability to understand speech.
41.	Apostate	धर्म त्यागी	One who abandons his religious faith.
42.	Aquatic	जलीय	Animals which live in water.
43.	Arbitrator/ Arbiter ..	मध्यस्थ	Someone chosen to judge and decide a disputed issue.
44.	Aristocracy	कुलीन तंत्र	A government by the nobles.
45.	Armistice	युद्ध विराम	The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed.
46.	Ascetic	सन्यासी	One who practices self denial as a spiritual discipline.

One Word Substitution

47. **Assassination** राजनैतिक कारण से हत्या Killing or murder for political reasons.
48. **Astrology** ज्योतिष शास्त्र Science of the influence of the stars on human affairs.
49. **Astronomy** खगोल विज्ञान Science of universe with sun, moon, stars and planets.
50. **Atheist** नास्तिक A person who does not believe in the existence of God.
51. **Audience** श्रोता गण An assembly of listeners.
52. **Autobiography** आत्म जीवनी The life-history of a man written by himself.
53. **Autocracy** एकतंत्र A government by one person.
54. **Avaricious** लालची One who is greedy.
55. **Bachelorhood** कुवांरापन The state of being unmarried (of a man).
56. **Bankrupt/Insolvent** दिवालिया A person unable to pay his debts.
57. **Bay** खाड़ी A part of the sea/ lake enclosed by a wide curve of the shore.
58. **Beach** समुद्र तट A stretch of sand/ stones along the edge of the sea/ lake.
59. **Bellicose** लड़ाकू A person who is fond of fighting.
60. **Belligerent** युद्धरत Engaged in war/fight.
61. **Benefactor** धर्मोपकारी One who gives financial help to a school, hospital, etc.
62. **Bibliophile** पुस्तक प्रेमी One who loves and collects books.
63. **Biennial** द्विवर्षीय That which happens once in two years.
64. **Bigamy** दो विवाह प्रथा The custom of having two wives or two husbands.
65. **Bigot** कट्टर One who is filled with narrow and prejudiced opinion.
66. **Bilingual** द्विभाषिय One who can speak two languages.
67. **Biography** जीवनी The life-history of a man written by someone else.
68. **Biped** दोपाया Animal with two-feet.
69. **Blaspheme** ईश्वर के खिलाफ बोलना Speaking irreverently about God or sacred things.
70. **Bliss** चरमसुख Perfect happiness.
71. **Bohemian** स्वेच्छाचारी One who does not follow the usual norms of social life.
72. **Bookworm/Bibliophilic** किताबी कीड़ी One who is interested in reading books and nothing else.

One Word Substitution

73. **Boorish** गंवार Person who is rough and ill mannered.
74. **Botany** वनस्पति विज्ञान The science of vegetable life.
75. **Brittle** भंगुर A thing which can be easily broken.
76. **Bureaucracy** नौकरशाही A government by the officials.
77. **Cabaret** कैबरे नृत्य A series of cabre dance/ acts at a night club.
78. **Cabby, Cabdriver** ट्रैक्सी चालक The driver of a taxi cab.
79. **Cacophony** श्रुति कटुत्वा Harsh sound.
80. **Cajole** खुशामद करना Persuade by flattery.
81. **Calligraphy** सुलेखन Art of beautiful hand writing.
82. **Cannibal** नरभक्षी The man who can eat human flesh.
83. **Cannibal** नरभक्षक/ राक्षस One who eats human flesh.
84. **Capsize** पलटना Overturn in water.
85. **Carnage** हत्याकांड Killing of large numbers of people.
86. **Carnival** मनोरंजन मेला Public merry making and feasting.
87. **Cartographer** मानचित्रकार A person who draws maps and charts.
88. **Cartography** मानचित्र कला Art of map making.
89. **Catalogue** पुस्तक सूची List of books and other articles.
90. **Celibate** ब्रह्मचारी One who has taken a vow not to have sex.
91. **Cemetery** कब्रिस्तान The place for corpses to be buried.
92. **Centenary** शताब्दी Hundredth anniversary.
93. **Chronological** समय के क्रमानुसार According to sequence of time.
94. **Circumlocution** घुमा-फिरा के बात करना A roundabout way of expression.
95. **Cloakroom** माल गोदाम The place for luggage at a railway station.
96. **Coerce** मजबूर करना Compel to a course of action.
97. **Cognate** एक ही उत्पत्ति के Having the same source or origin.
98. **Colleagues** सहकर्मी Persons working in the same department.
99. **Collusion** कपट सन्धि Secret agreement for a fraudulent purpose.
100. **Conflagration** भीषण अग्निकांड Huge destructive fire.
101. **Congregation** धर्म-संगति Gathering of worshippers.
102. **Congruent** सर्वांगसम Identical in all respect.
103. **Connoisseur** कला का पारखी One who is well-versed in any subject/ art.
104. **Conscription** अनिवार्य सैनिक सेवा Compulsory enlistment for military or other services.

One Word Substitution

- 105. Contagious** संक्रामक Which spreads by physical touch or contact.
- 106. Contemporary** समकालीन Of the same time.
- 107. Contiguous** समीपस्थ Two countries or States touching a common boundary.
- 108. Contrite** पश्चात्तापी Showing deep sorrow for wrong doing.
- 109. Convalescence** पुनःस्वास्थ्य प्राप्ति के बाद The period of gradual recovery of health after illness.
- 110. Conventicle** गुप्त व गैरकानूनी धर्मसभा.... Secret and illegal religious meeting.
- 111. Coquette** दिलफेंक महिला A seductive woman who uses her sex appeal to exploit men.
- 112. Coronation** राज्याभिषेक Ceremony of crowning a king.
- 113. Cosmopolitan** पूरी दुनिया का निवासी A person who regards the whole world as his country.
- 114. Credulous** आशुविश्वासी One who is simple and easily believes whatever is told.
- 115. Crematory** शमशान घाट The place for corpses to be burnt.
- 116. Cripple** अपांग/अपांग बनाना Someone who is unable to walk normally because of an injury or disability to the legs or back.
- 117. Curfew** कर्फ्यू An order that certain activities/movement are prohibited.
- 118. Cynosure** आकर्षण-बिन्दु Centre of attraction.
- 119. Dead** मृत/ बेकार/ बेजान A language that is no longer spoken.
- 120. Demagogue** जनोत्तेजक Political leader who delivers sentimental speeches.
- 121. Democracy** लोकतंत्र A government by the people, of the people, and for the people.
- 122. Denizen** निवासी A person, an animal or a plant that lives, grows or is often found in a particular place.
- 123. Depraved** चरित्र भ्रष्ट Morally bad or evil.
- 124. Deprecate** विरोध करना Express earnest disapproval of.
- 125. Dermatology** त्वचा विज्ञान The medical study of the skin and its diseases.
- 126. Despondency** निराशा Loss of complete hope.
- 127. Destitution** अभावग्रस्तता Lacking basic necessities of life.
- 128. Detimental** हानिकर Causing harm or damage.
- 129. Dexterous** कुशल Skilful at handling things.
- 130. Diatribe** कटु-निन्दा Bitter and violent attack in words or writing.

One Word Substitution

131. Dictatorship	तानाशाही/ निरंकुशता	Government carried on by an absolute ruler.
132. Diplomacy	कूटनीति	The skill and policy of a country's statesmen and politicians/ skill in dealing with people.
133. Discrepancy	विसंगति	Difference between two things that should be the same.
134. Dissimulate	छिपाना	To hide or disguise.
135. Diurnal	दैनिक	Of the daytime.
136. Draper	जुलाहा	A shopkeeper selling cloth and clothing.
137. Draw	अनिर्णित	The result of the match where neither party wins.
138. Dwarf	बौना	A person, plant or animal who/which is below the usual size.
139. Dynasty	वंश	Succession of rulers belonging to one family.
140. Eavesdropper	चुपके से निजी वार्तालाप	One who witnesses secretly to private
141. Economical	किफायती	One who is careful in the use of money/ fuel etc.
142. Edible	खाने योग्य	That which is fit to be eaten.
143. Effeminate	औरताना गुण होना	A man who is womanish in his habits.
144. Egalitarianism	समतावाद	Belief that all people are equal and have the same rights and opportunities.
145. Egoist	स्वार्थी/ अहंकारी	A lover of one's ownself/supercilious.
146. Eligible	योग्य	Fit to be chosen; qualified.
147. Emergency	आपातकाल	A sudden serious situation requiring immediate action.
148. Emeritus	ससम्मान सेवामुक्त व्यक्ति....	One who is honourably discharged from service.
149. Emigrant	प्रवासी	A person who goes to another country to live.
150. Emissary	गुप्तचर/ जासूस	A person sent on a mission (usually official).
151. Epicure	अच्छा खाने का शौकीन	Person fond of delicious food.
152. Epidemic	संक्रामक रोग	Disease affecting many people at the same place and time.
153. Epilogue	नाटक के बाद का भाषण.....	A speech or a poem recited at the end of a play.
154. Episode	कड़ी/ कथांश	Part of story (especially T.V. or Radio show story)

One Word Substitution

- 155. Episodic** कभी-कभी होने वाली घटना . Happening only some times and irregularly.
- 156. Epistle** धर्मपत्र/ काव्यपत्र A letter.
- 157. Epitaph** कब्र पर इंगित शब्द Words which are inscribed on the grave.
- 158. Epithet** उपाधि विशेषक Adjective added to a person's name usually to criticise or praise him.
- 159. Epitome** सटीक उदाहरण A perfect example.
- 160. Epitomize** सटीक उदाहरण होना To be a perfect example.
- 161. Equanimity** धैर्य Calmness of mind and temper.
- 162. Erotica** अश्लील ग्रन्थ Books, pictures, etc. intended to arouse sexual desire.
- 163. Erudite** विद्वान पुरुष A learned or scholarly person.
- 164. Espionage** जासूसी Practice of spying.
- 165. Eternal** अनंत Existing for ever — without any beginning or end.
- 166. Etymology** शब्द निर्माण विज्ञान The science which deals with derivation of words.
- 167. Euphemism** आडंबर शैली Bombastic style of writing.
- 168. Euphonious** सुरीला Sounding pleasant.
- 169. Euphoria** अत्यन्त खुशी A strong feeling of happiness.
- 170. Evanescent** अस्थायी Of a very short duration or period.
/ Ephemeral/Transient
- 171. Explicable** विवेचनात्मक That which can be explained.
- 172. Extempore** बिना तैयारी का भाषण A speech delivered without any preparation.
- 173. Extravaganza** अतिशयी नाटक Public activity which takes place in a very elaborate, colourful and expensive way.
- 174. Fallacy** भ्रम False or mistaken belief.
- 175. Fanatic** कट्टर One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm.
- 176. Fastidious** नखरेबाज One who is hard to please.
- 177. Fatal or mortal** जानलेवा Resulting in death.
- 178. Fatalist** भाग्यवादी One who believes in destiny.
- 179. Fauna** प्राणिजात Animals of a certain region.
- 180. Feminist** नारीवादी One who works for the welfare of women.
- 181. Fiasco** पूर्ण असफलता Complete failure.
- 182. Flagstaff** ध्वजदण्ड A long pole on which a flag is flown.
- 183. Flora** वनस्पति All the plants of a particular area or period of time.

One Word Substitution

- 184. Fluke** आकस्मिक सफलता Stroke of good luck.
- 185. Forgery** जालसाजी Counterfeiting of document.
- 186. Fratricide** भ्रातृहत्या Killing/killer of one's brother.
- 187. Frenzy** उन्माद A state of extreme excitement.
- 188. Frostbite** शीतरुदंश Injury to the nose, fingers or toes, caused by extreme cold.
- 189. Gallery** प्रदर्शनी स्थल A room or building for showing works of art.
- 190. Gamble** जुआ To play games of chance, etc. for money.
- 191. Gastronomy** उत्तम आहार विज्ञान Science and art of preparing and appreciating good food.
- 192. Genocide** जन संहार Extermination of a race or community.
- 193. Geology** भूगर्भ विज्ञान The science of earth's history and rocks.
- 194. Germicide** जीवाणु नाशक A substance that kills germs.
- 195. Glutton** पेटू One who eats too much.
- 196. Gobble** लालची की तरह खाना Eat fast, noisily and greedily.
- 197. Gratis/Gratuitous** ... निःशुल्क Done or obtained without payment.
- 198. Gregarious** समूह में रहने वाले Animals that live in flocks.
- 199. Hallucinogen** भ्रमित करने की दवा A drug that causes one to hallucinate.
- 200. Hedonism** सुखबाद Belief that the most important thing in the world is pleasure.
- 201. Henchman** सेवक Faithful supporter.
- 202. Herbivorous** शाकाहारी Animals which feed on vegetation.
- 203. Herculean** अति प्राक्रमी Having enormous strength or size.
- 204. Heterogeneous** विषम Things which contain elements of different nature.
- 205. Hexagon** षट्कोणीय A plane figure with six sides and angles.
- 206. Holocaust** पूर्णाहृति Large scale destruction by fire.
- 207. Homicide** मानव हत्या Murder or murderer of a man.
- 208. Homogeneous** समांग Things which contain elements of the same nature.
- 209. Honorary** अवैतनिक A post for which no salary is paid.
- 210. Horticulture** बागबानी Art of growing vegetables, fruit, etc.
- 211. Hospitable** मेहमाननवाज Fond of entertaining guests.
- 212. Hypochondria** काल्पनिक बीमारी Imaginary ailments.
- 213. Iconoclast** गैर-परम्परावादी One who opposes established institutions or beliefs.

One Word Substitution

- 214. Idolatry** मूर्ति पूजन The worship of idols or images.
- 215. Illegal** अवैध Contrary to law.
- 216. Illegible** अपठनीय Incapable of being read.
- 217. Illicit** अवैध A trade or act prohibited by law.
- 218. Illiterate** अनपढ़ One who does not know reading and writing.
- 219. Imaginary** काल्पनिक Existing only in the mind.
- 220. Immigrant** अप्रवासी A person who comes to one country from another in order to settle there.
- 221. Immune** प्रतिरक्षित Free from infection.
- 222. Impalpable** स्पर्शनीय Incapable of being perceived by touch.
- 223. Impenetrable** अप्रवेश्य That which cannot be penetrated.
- 224. Imperceptible** अदृश्य That which cannot be perceived by sense.
- 225. Imperialism** साम्राज्यवाद Policy of extending a country's empire and influence.
- 226. Impertinent** गुस्ताख Not showing proper respect.
- 227. Impiety** सम्मान की कमी Lack of respect or religious reverence.
- 228. Imponderable** असोचनीय That which cannot be guessed or calculated.
- 229. Imposter** बहुरूपिया One who assumes a character or title not his own to deceive others.
- 230. Impracticable** अव्यवहारिक Incapable of being practised.
- 231. Impregnable** अजेय Too strong to be overcome or defeated.
- 232. Impregnable** अजेय/ अभेद That which cannot be taken by force of arms.
- 233. Impresario** संयोजक A manager or director of a ballet, a concert, a theatre or an opera company.
- 234. Impromptu** बिना तैयारी का Something said or done without preparation.
- 235. Impudent** रुखे व्यवहार वाला Rude and not respectful.
- 236. Impunity** दंड मुक्ति Freedom from punishment.
- 237. Inaccessible** जहाँ पहुँचा ना जा सके Incapable of being reached.
- 238. Inadmissible** अस्वीकार्य That which cannot be admitted or allowed.
- 239. Inaudible** जो सुनाई ना दे A sound that cannot be heard.
- 240. Incendiary** जो आग/ गुस्सा भड़काएं Designed to cause fire/likely to cause violence.
- 241. Incombustible** जो जले नहीं That which cannot be burnt.
- 242. Incomparable** अतुलनीय/ अतुल्य That which cannot be compared.

One Word Substitution

- 243. Incorrigible** जो सुधारा नहीं जा सकते Incapable of being corrected.
- 244. Incredible** अविश्वसनीय Which can't be believed.
- 245. Incurable** असाध्य Which cannot be cured.
- 246. Indefatigable** जो थके नहीं Incapable of being tired.
- 247. Indefensible** असुरक्षित Which cannot be defended.
- 248. Indelible** अमिट Which cannot be erased or forgotten.
- 249. Indemnity** मुआवजा Compensation for loss.
- 250. Indestructible** अनश्वर That which cannot be destroyed.
- 251. Indignant** अन्याय के कारण क्रुद्ध Angry at injustice.
- 252. Indispensable** अपरिहार्य That without which one can't do.
- 253. Indivisible** अविभाज्य That which cannot be divided.
- 254. Ineligible** अयोग्य Not suitable to be elected or selected under the rules.
- 255. Inevitable** अटल Incapable of being avoided.
- 256. Inexcusable** अक्षम्य That which cannot be excused.
- 257. Inexplicable** अवर्णनीय Which cannot be explained.
- 258. Inexplicit** अप्रकट Not definitely or clearly expressed.
- 259. Inexpressible** अवर्णनीय That which cannot be expressed in words.
- 260. Infallible** जो गलती न करें Never wrong.
- 261. Infanticide** शिशुहत्या Killing of an infant.
- 262. Infectious** संक्रामक A disease which spreads through air and water.
- 263. Inflammable** ज्वलनशील Which catches fire easily.
- 264. Inimitable** जो अनुकरणीय न हो Incapable of being imitated.
- 265. Insecticide** कीटनाशक A substance that kills insects.
- 266. Insolvent** दिवालिया A person who is unable to pay his debt.
- 267. Insurrection** बगावत Rising in arms against an established government.
- 268. Intercede** सिफारिश करना Plead to obtain a favour to save someone else.
- 269. Intercept** रोकना To check or stop on way.
- 270. Intrigue/conspire** ... साजिश करना Make or carry out secret planning.
- 271. Introspection** आत्म निरिक्षण Examination of self thought or feeling.
- 272. Invincible** अजय That which cannot be defeated.
- 273. Invisible** अदृश्य That which cannot be seen.
- 274. Invulnerable** सुरक्षित Incapable of being harmed.
- 275. Irreconcilable** असंगत Impossible to find agreement between.
- 276. Irrecoverable** वापस न मिल सकने योग्य ... That which cannot be recovered.

One Word Substitution

- 277. Irreparable** अपूरणीय Incapable of being repaired.
- 278. Irrevocable** अपरिवर्तनीय That which cannot be altered.
- 279. Itinerant** घुमक्कड़ One who travels from place to place.
- 280. Journal** अखबार A newspaper or magazine that deals with a particular subject or professional activity.
- 281. Juxtapose** सन्निधान करना Placing a thing beside another.
- 282. Lagoon** समुद्रताल Salt water lake separated from the sea by sand banks.
- 283. Lexicographer** शब्द कोष बनाने वाला A person who compiles a dictionary.
- 284. Linguist** बहुभाषाविद् (विदेशी भाषा) .. One who speaks many foreign languages.
- 285. Logic** तक्फ़ The science of reasoning.
- 286. Maidenhood** कुवाँरापन (लड़की का) The state of being unmarried (of a girl).
- 287. Mammals** स्तनपायी Animals which give birth to babies and feed them with their milk.
- 288. Manuscript** हस्तलिपि Matter written by hand.
- 289. Mariticide** पति हत्या Killing of one's husband.
- 290. Martyr** शहीद One who dies for a noble cause.
- 291. Masque** डांस-इमाम A play or a dramatic performance in verse, with music, dance and fine costumes.
- 292. Massacre** भीषण नरसंहार Killing of large numbers of people.
- 293. Materialist** भौतिकवादी A person for whom money is the most important consideration.
- 294. Matins** सुबह की प्रार्थना Morning prayer.
- 295. Matricide** मातृहत्या Killing of one's own mother.
- 296. Matrimony** विवाह Marriage.
- 297. Maxim** कहावत A short statement of a general truth.
- 298. Memento** निशानी Something kept to remember place or event.
- 299. Mercenary** किराए का टट्टू One who acts only for money.
- 300. Metamorphosis** रूपांतरण Complete change in appearance.
- 301. Meticulous** निपुण Very particular about small details.
- 302. Migration** प्रवास Movement from one country to another.
- 303. Misandrist** पुरुषद्रोही One who hates males.
- 304. Misanthrope** मानवता द्रोही A hater of mankind.
- 305. Misogamist** विवाह से घृणा करने वाला ... Hater of marriage.
- 306. Misogynist** महिला से घृणा करने वाला .. A hater of womankind.
- 307. Misologist** ज्ञान से घृणा करने वाला Hater of learning.

One Word Substitution

- 308. Misoneist** पुरातनवादी Hater of new things.
- 309. Missionary** धर्म प्रचारक A person sent to teach Christian religion
- 310. Monastery** मठ Place where monks live.
- 311. Monogamy** एक पत्नी प्रथा The practice of keeping only one wife.
- 312. Mortal** नश्वर/ प्राणघातक Subject to death.
- 313. Mortuary** शवगृह A place where dead bodies are kept before post-mortem.
- 314. Mutilation** शरीर के अंग को काटना Cutting off body parts.
- 315. Naïve** सीधा-सादा Having natural simplicity of nature.
- 316. Narcotics** नशीली दवाईयाँ A medicine that induces sleep.
- 317. Naturalism** प्रकृतिवाद Adherence or attachment to what is natural.
- 318. Neogamist** नवविवाहित One who is recently married.
- 319. Nepotism** भाई-भतीजा वाद Undue favour shown to one's own relatives.
- 320. Neurotic** अत्यंत संवेदनशील या चिंतित Excessive sensitive, anxious or obsessive.
- 321. Newfangled** नई अनजानी चीज़ Newly developed and unfamiliar.
- 322. Nonentity** अस्तित्वहीन Person of no importance.
- 323. Nonpareil** अद्वितीय Person or thing which has no equal.
- 324. Notorious** कुख्यात/ बदनाम Having an evil reputation.
- 325. Nuance** सूक्ष्म घेद Subtle difference in colour, meaning etc.
- 326. Numismatics** सिक्कों की पढ़ाई The study of coins.
- 327. Nursery** पौधशाला The place where young plants are grown.
- 328. Obscurantist** ज्ञानोन्नति विरोधी Person who is opposed to enlightenment.
- 329. Obsequies** अंतिम संस्कार Funeral rites.
- 330. Obsolete** पुराना, अब प्रयोग में नहीं That which is no longer in use.
- 331. Octagon** अष्टकोण A plane figure with eight sides and angles.
- 332. Oligarchy** अल्पजनाधिपत्य A government by a small group of powerful persons.
- 333. Omniform** सर्वाकृतिक Having every form or shape.
- 334. Omnipresent** सब प्रकार का Comprising all kinds.
- 335. Omnipotent** सर्वशक्तिमान All-powerful (God).
- 336. Omnipresent** सर्वविद्यायमान Present everywhere (God).
- 337. Omniscient** सर्वज्ञानी Knowing everything (God).

One Word Substitution

- 338. Opaque** अपारदर्शी That which cannot be seen through.
- 339. Optimist** आशावादी A person who looks to the bright side of things.
- 340. Orator** वक्ता One who makes an eloquent public speech.
- 341. Orchard** फलों का बगीचा A garden of fruits.
- 342. Orphan** अनाथ A child whose parents are dead.
- 343. Ostracize** समाज से निकालना To turn out of society.
- 344. Oviparous** अंड प्रजक Bearing eggs and not young ones.
- 345. Pacifist** शान्ति दूत A person who believes in the total abolition of war.
- 346. Pageant** तमाशा/ लीला/ नुमाइश Elaborate public spectacle.
- 347. Palatable** स्वादिष्ट Food or drink that has a pleasant taste.
- 348. Panacea** रामबाण A remedy for all kinds of diseases.
- 349. Pandemonium** शोरगुल A wild and noisy disorder.
- 350. Panegyric** प्रशंसा पत्र Piece of writing full of praise.
- 351. Pantomime** मूक अभिनय Dramatic performance with dumb show.
- 352. Paramour** जिस से शारीरिक संबंध हो ... Sexual partner or lover.
- 353. Parasite** परजीवी One who entirely depends on another.
- 354. Parasol** रंगीन छाता A lady's umbrella.
- 355. Parricide** माँ व पिता का हत्यारा Killing of both the parents.
- 356. Patricide** पितृहत्या Killing of one's own father.
- 357. Patrimony** पैतृक Inherited from father or male ancestor.
- 358. Patriot** देशभक्त One who loves one's country.
- 359. Patronymic** पितृ नाम Name derived from that of father or ancestor.
- 360. Pauper** कंगाल One who has no means of livelihood.
- 361. Peculation** गबन Use of public money for one's own benefit.
- 362. Pedantic** ज्ञान दर्शाने वाला लेख A style in which a writer makes a display of his knowledge and learning.
- 363. Pedestrian** पैदल यात्री One who walks on foot.
- 364. Peninsula** प्रायद्वीप Area of land almost surrounded by sea.
- 365. Pentagon** पंचभुज A plane figure with five sides and angles.
- 366. Perceptible** इन्द्रियगोचर That can be perceived by the senses.
- 367. Peroration** उपसंहार/ नतीजा Concluding part of a speech.
- 368. Perseverance** लगन Constant efforts to achieve something.

One Word Substitution

- 369. Perspicacious** तिक्ष्ण बुद्धिवाला Quick in judging and understanding.
- 370. Perversion** विकृति Change to something abnormal or unnatural.
- 371. Pessimist** निराशावादी A person who looks at the dark side of things.
- 372. Philanderer** दिलफेंक A man who amuses himself by love-making.
- 373. Philanthropist** मानवता प्रेमी A lover of mankind.
- 374. Philatelist** डाक टिकट संग्राहक Collector of stamps.
- 375. Philistine** कला के प्रति उदासीन Person who is indifferent to art and literature.
- 376. Philogynist** औरतों से प्रेम करने वाला A lover of womankind.
- 377. Philology** भाषा का अध्ययन Science of study of language.
- 378. Pilgrim** तीर्थयात्री One who travels to a sacred place.
- 379. Pioneer** अग्रसर One who leads others in any field.
- 380. Piquant** मसालेदार/दिलचस्प Pleasant or sharp to the taste/interesting.
- 381. Placard/Poster** विज्ञापन Written or printed notice pasted in public places.
- 382. Plagiarism** साहित्यिक चोरी The practice of borrowing words and ideas from other authors and using them as one's own; literary theft.
- 383. Platitude** घिसी-पिटी बात Statement that is obviously true and hence dull or not stimulating.
- 384. Plutocracy** कुलीनतंत्र A government by a rich and powerful class.
- 385. Polyandry** बहुपति प्रथा The custom of having more than two husbands at the same time.
- 386. Polygamy** बहु-विवाह प्रथा The custom of having more than two spouses at the same time.
- 387. Polyglot** बहुभाषाविद् Person having command over many languages.
- 388. Polygon** बहुभुज A figure with many angles or sides.
- 389. Posthumous** मरणोपरांत Received after death.
- 390. Postscript** पश्चलेख Anything written in a letter after it is signed.
- 391. Predicament** दुर्दशा Difficult or dangerous situation.
- 392. Prejudiced** पूर्वाग्रही Be biased against.
- 393. Premonition** पूर्वाभास Forewarning of an impending danger.
- 394. Prerogative** विशेषाधिकार Absolute right.
- 395. Prodigy** प्रतिभा संपन्न बालक A child with unusual or remarkable talent.
- 396. Prognostication** भविष्यवाणी Act of forecasting by examining present conditions.

One Word Substitution

397. Prologue	मंगलाचरण	A speech or a poem recited at the beginning of a play.
398. Promiscuous	अति कामुक	Having a lot of different sexual partners.
399. Proponent	प्रस्तावक	Person who proposes something.
400. Propriety	मर्यादा	State of being correct in behavior or moral.
401. Protagonist	समर्थक/मुख्य पात्र	An important supporter of an idea or political system/Chief actor or character in a story or drama.
402. Protectorate	संरक्षित राज्य	Country under the protection of a more powerful country.
403. Prudent	समझदार	Wise.
404. Pseudonym	कृत्रिम नाम	Name taken by an author instead of his real name
405. Punctitious	अतिशिष्टाचारी	Very careful to behave correctly.
406. Pyrotechnic	आतिशबाजी निर्माण-कला	Art of making fireworks.
407. Quadruped	चौपाया	Four footed-animal.
408. Rebel	द्रोही	One who takes up arms against the government.
409. Recapitulate	संक्षेप में दोहराना	Repeat the main points.
410. Recluse	एकांतवासी	One who lives alone and avoids company.
411. Reconcile	मेल-मिलाप करना	Bring about harmony or agreement.
412. Reconnaissance	किसी स्थान का सैन्य सर्वेक्षण ..	Information gathering activity about enemy forces.
413. Red tapism	लाल फीताशाही	Too much official formality.
414. Redundancy	अनावश्यकता	When something is unnecessary because it is more than what is needed.
415. Regicide	राजा की हत्या	Killing of a king.
416. Relegate/Demote	दर्जा घटाना	Reduce to a lower position.
417. Reluctant	अनिच्छुक	Unwilling
418. Remission	क्षमा	Pardon or forgiveness for breaking religious laws.
419. Rendezvous	मिलन-स्थल	Place fixed for meeting or assembling
420. Renegade	धर्मपरित्यागी	Person who changes his religious belief/support to someone else or some other nation.
421. Repartee	हाजिर जवाबी	Witty and clever answers.

One Word Substitution

422. Repercussion	प्रभाव	Effect of some event, action or decision.
423. Replica	प्रतिकृति	Copy or reproduction of a work of art.
424. Repository	गोदाम	Place where things are stored for safety.
425. Republic	गणतंत्र	A political system in which the supreme power lies in a body of citizens who can elect people to represent them.
426. Requiem	शांति-यज्ञ	Prayer for the dead.
427. Restitution	खोयी/चोरी हुई वस्तु की वापसी .	Return of object stolen or lost.
428. Retaliate	बदला लेना	Return the same sort of ill-treatment.
429. Reticent/Taciturn ..	अल्पभाषी	Person who does not speak too much.
430. Retrospective	पुर्वगामी	An effect which has a reference to the past.
431. Rumous/Hearsay	अफवाह	Unverified information.
432. Sacrilege	पवित्रता भंग करना.....	Treating something holy without respect.
433. Sarcasm	ताना	Bitter and ironical remark.
434. Savage	जंगली	Violent and uncivilized.
435. Scapegoat	बलि का बकरा.....	One who is blamed for the mistakes of others.
436. Sceptic	संदेही	One who is doubtful.
437. Screech	चीखना	Cry out in shrill voice.
438. Scrimmage	खोंचातानी	Confused struggle or fight.
439. Scurvy	छोटे कदमों से तेजी से चलना....	Move hurriedly with short steps.
440. Sedition	राजसत्ता के विरुद्ध आंदोलन..	Act or speech for inciting the public against the government.
441. Senility	जीर्णावस्था	Extreme old age when a man behaves like a fool.
442. Siesta	दोपहर का आराम.....	Period of rest or sleep after lunch.
443. Simultaneous	साथ-साथ	Occurring at the same time.
444. Sinecure	जहाँ कम काम में ज्यादा पैसे मिले .	An office for which high salary is paid for little or no work or responsibility.
445. Smother	दम घोंटना	Kill by suffocation (especially by covering the face with something).
446. Sojourn	थोड़ी देर के लिए रुकना.....	Stay for a short time.
447. Soliloquy	स्वयं से एकांत में बाते करना	Speaking aloud while alone.
448. Somnambulist	नींद में चलने वाला	One who walks in sleep.
449. Somniloquist	नींद में बोलने वाला.....	One who talks in sleep.
450. Sonorous	सुरीला	Having a deep and pleasant sound.
451. Sorocide	बहन की हत्या	Killing of one's own sister.

One Word Substitution

- 452. Spendthrift** फिजूलखर्ची One who spends one's money recklessly.
- 453. Spinster** कुवाँरी महिला An unmarried woman.
- 454. Spiritualist** अध्यात्मिक A person who believes in spiritual things.
- 455. Sporadic** छिटपुट Occurring irregularly.
- 456. Stoic** तटस्थः A person who is indifferent to pleasure and pain.
- 457. Strangulate** गला घोटना/दबाना Kill by putting pressure on the throat/ to apply pressure.
- 458. Subdue** काबू में करना To bring under control.
- 459. Subjugate** अधीन करना To bring under control.
- 460. Suicide** आत्महत्या Taking of one's own life.
- 461. Supercilious** घमंडी Thinking oneself superior to others.
- 462. Sycophant** चापलूस Person who tries to win a favour by flattering other.
- 463. Synagogue** यहूदी उपासनागृह Place where Jews worship.
- 464. Talkative/Garrulous** .. बातूनी Person who is fond of talking.
- 465. Tantrum** आवेश Fit of bad temper or anger.
- 466. Teetotaller** मद्यनिषेधी One who abstains from alcoholic drinks.
- 467. Theist** आस्तिक A person who believes in existence of God.
- 468. Theocracy** पादरीतंत्र A government by religious leaders.
- 469. Thermometer** तापमापक यंत्र An instrument for measuring temperature.
- 470. Traitor** देशद्वेषी One who betrays one's country.
- 471. Transgressor** पापी/ अपराधी One who violates a rule or law.
- 472. Transmigration** आत्मा का शरीर बदलना The passage of soul after death from one body to the other.
- 473. Transmogrification** . कायाकल्प Complete change in appearance or character (especially in a magical or surprising way).
- 474. Transparent** पारदर्शी That allows the passage of rays of light.
- 475. Truant** कामचोर One who stays away from school/work without permission.
- 476. Truism** स्वतः सिद्ध A truth which is often repeated.
- 477. Turncoat** गद्दार Disloyal.
- 478. Unanimous** एकमत Consent of all.

One Word Substitution

- 479. Unavoidable** अपरिहार्य That which cannot be avoided.
- 480. Unique** अनोखा The only one of its type.
- 481. Universal** विश्वव्यापी Belonging to all parts of the world.
- 482. Usurper** सम्पत्ती हड्डपने वाला One who grabs somebody's else property or title.
- 483. Uxoricide** पत्नी हत्या Killing of one's wife.
- 484. Uxorius/Henpecked** जोरु का गुलाम Foolishly fond of one's wife.
- 485. Vacuous** बुद्धिहीन Suggesting absence of thought or intellect.
- 486. Vendetta** वंशानुगत/ पुश्टैनी झगड़ा Feud in which the relatives of the dead or injured take revenge.
- 487. Verbatim** शब्दशः Repetition of a writing, word for word.
- 488. Verbose** बातों से भरा Using or containing more words than are necessary.
- 489. Versatile** बहुमुखी One who possesses many talents.
- 490. Verso** वामपृष्ठ Any left hand page of an open book.
- 491. Vespers** शाम की प्रार्थना Evening prayer in the church.
- 492. Veteran** अनुभवी One who has grown old in or has long experience of (specially military) service or occupation.
- 493. Vincible** जिसे जीता जा सके That which can be conquered.
- 494. Vindictive/Vengeful** .. प्रतिशोधी Having or showing a desire for revenge.
- 495. Virulent** जहरीला Highly poisonous effect.
- 496. Viviparous** सजीव प्रजक Bearing living young ones and not eggs.
- 497. Volte-face** आकस्मिक परिवर्तन Sudden change from one set of beliefs to other.
- 498. Voluntary** स्वेच्छिक Of one's own free will.
- 499. Voyage** समुद्री यात्रा Journey by water or sea.
- 500. Vulnerable** आघात योग्य That which can be easily damaged or hurt.
- 501. Widow** विधवा A woman whose husband is dead.
- 502. Widower** विधूर A man whose wife is dead.
- 503. Wreathe** पुष्पहार Flowers fastened in a circle.
- 504. Zealot** मताग्रही Person who shows great and uncompromising enthusiasm for a religion, party, cause, etc.

21

ONE WORD SUBSTITUTION

CHAPTER

Directions: In question nos.1 to 225, out of the four alternatives, choose the one which can be substituted for the given words/sentence and choose the appropriate alternative which best expresser the sentences.

1. A person who has no money to pay off his debts
(A) Insolvent (B) Poor
(C) Destitute (D) Pauper
2. Words uttered impiously about God
(A) amoral (B) philosophy
(C) logic (D) blasphemy
3. A number of ships.
(a) fleet (b) galaxy
(c) constellation (d) group
4. One who compiles a dictionary
(A) geographer (B) lexicographer
(C) lapidist (D) linguist
5. A test in which cells from diseased organs are removed and tested
(A) Biopsy (B) Autopsy
(C) Operation (D) Amputation
6. A small room in a big house, hotel, ship etc. where glasses, dishes, spoons, food etc. are kept.
(A) Portico (B) Pantry
(C) Mezzanine (D) Kitchen
7. A foreigner who settles in a country.
(A) Immigrant (B) Emigrant
(C) Alien (D) Visitor
8. Doing something according to one's own free will.
(A) Willfully (B) Obligingly
(C) Voluntarily (D) Compulsorily
9. Place that provides refuge
(A) shelter (B) house
(C) country (D) asylum
10. A person who gambles or bets
(A) punter (B) backer
(C) customer (D) client
11. Art of writing for newspapers and magazines
(A) Literature (B) Journalism
(C) Biography (D) Artistry
12. An abandoned child of unknown parents who is found by somebody.
(A) Foundling (B) Sibling
(C) Urchin (D) Orphan
13. Parts of a country behind the coast or a river bank.
(A) Swamps (B) Marshes
(C) Hinterland (D) Isthmuses
14. A written statement about someone's character, usually provided by an employer
(A) testimonial (B) memorandum
(C) certificate (D) license
15. One who does not make mistakes
(A) Pessimist (B) Optimist
(C) Infallible (D) Hypocrite
16. Able to use the left hand and right hand equally well
(A) ambivert (B) ambidextrous
(C) ambivalent (D) ambitious

One Word Substitution

- 17. One who hates women**
 (A) philanthropist (B) ascetic
 (C) misogamist (D) misogynist
- 18. a system of naming things**
 (A) horticulture (B) miniature
 (C) genocide (D) nomenclature
- 19. A raised passageway in a building**
 (A) walkway (B) walkout
 (C) walkabout (D) walkover
- 20. A cure for all diseases**
 (A) laxative (B) panacea
 (C) antidote (D) purgative
- 21. One who cannot speak**
 (A) deaf (B) dumb
 (C) visionless (D) lame
- 22. Pertaining to cattle**
 (A) Canine (B) Feline
 (C) Bovine (D) Verminous
- 23. To look at someone in an angry or threatening way**
 (A) Glower (B) Gnaw
 (C) Gnash (D) Grind
- 24. A post with little work but high salary**
 (A) Director (B) Trustee
 (C) Sinecure (D) Ombudsman
- 25. Something that causes death**
 (A) Dangerous (B) Fatal
 (C) Brutal (D) Horrible
- 26. A person who writes decoratively**
 (A) Calligrapher (B) Colliery
 (C) Choreographer (D) Cartographer
- 27. A person who loves mankind**
 (A) misanthrope (B) anthropologist
 (C) philanthropist (D) mercenary
- 28. Capable of being interpreted in two ways**
 (A) confusing (B) unclear
 (C) ambiguous (D) ambivert
- 29. One who has narrow and prejudiced religious views**
 (A) religious (B) fanatic
 (C) bigot (D) god-fearing
- 30. The action of looking within or into one's own mind**
 (A) observation (B) examination
 (C) introspection (D) introvert
- 31. To confirm with the help of evidence**
 (A) corroborate (B) implicate
 (C) designate (D) extricate
- 32. One who is a dabbler in arts, science or literature:**
 (A) Dilettante (B) Aesthete
 (C) Maestro (D) Connoisseur
- 33. The time between midnight and noon:**
 (A) Afternoon (B) Antipodes
 (C) Ante – meridiem (D) Antenatal
- 34. Still existing and known :**
 (A) Extent (B) Extant
 (C) Eternal (D) Immanent
- 35. Fear of height:**
 (A) Agoraphobia (B) Hydrophobia
 (C) Acrophobia (D) Pyrophobia
- 36. The highest point**
 (A) zenith (B) height
 (C) zeal (D) ridge
- 37. Feeling inside you which tells you what is right and what is wrong :**
 (A) cleverness (B) conscience
 (C) consciousness (D) fear
- 38. Release of a prisoner from jail on certain terms and condition**
 (A) Parole (B) Parley
 (C) Pardon (D) Acquittal
- 39. Loss of memory**
 (A) Ambrosia (B) Amnesia
 (C) Insomnia (D) Forgetting
- 40. To struggle helplessly**
 (A) Flounder (B) Founder
 (C) Fumble (D) Finger
- 41. One who tends to take a hopeful view of life**
 (A) Magnate (B) creator
 (C) pacifist (D) optimist

One Word Substitution

- 42. Belonging to all parts of the world**
(A) Common (B) universal
(C) worldly (D) international
- 43. To be known for bad acts**
(A) Famous (B) notorious
(C) criminal (D) terrorist
- 44. Words of similar meaning**
(A) Homonyms (B) pseudonyms
(C) antonyms (D) synonyms
- 45. Instrument to measure atmospheric pressure**
(A) Metronome (B) compass
(C) pedometer (D) barometer
- 46. A speech delivered without previous preparation**
(A) Soliloquy (B) Extempore
(C) Rhetoric (D) Expression
- 47. One who pretends to be what he is not**
(A) crocodile (B) flatterer
(C) hypocrite (D) counterfeiter
- 48. Study of heavenly bodies**
(A) astrology (B) astronomy
(C) stargazing (D) astrophysics
- 49. An official call to appear in a court of law**
(A) summon (B) notice
(C) memorandum (D) petition
- 50. To cut apart a person's body**
(A) amputate (B) mutilate
(C) ambush (D) mitigate
- 51. Murder of a brother**
(A) Patricide (B) Fratricide
(C) Homicide (D) Parricide
- 52. One who is filled with excessive and mistaken enthusiasm about his religion**
(A) Fatalist (B) Lunatic
(C) Fanatic (D) Stoic
- 53. A list of items to be transacted at a meeting**
(A) Menu (B) Agenda
(C) Minutes (D) Records
- 54. An involuntary action under a stimulus is described as a**
(A) complex (B) reflex
(C) reflection (D) response
- 55. A continuous process of change is known as**
(A) transformation (B) metamorphosis
(C) flux (D) dynamism
- 56. The use of many words where only a few are necessary.**
(A) circumlocution (B) circumspection
(C) circumscription (D) circumvention
- 57. Circular building or hall with a dome.**
(A) edifice (B) palace
(C) rotunda (D) spire
- 58. One who is a citizen not of a country but of the world.**
(A) Bohemian (B) Cosmopolitan
(C) Philanthropist (D) Internationalist
- 59. An order requiring a person to attend a court.**
(A) Courtship (B) Agreement
(C) Subpoena (D) Command
- 60. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise.**
(A) Facsimile (B) Surname
(C) Alias (D) Pseudonym
- 61. An extreme fear of being in a small confined place.**
(A) Hydrophobia (B) Paraphernalia
(C) Claustrophobia (D) Progeria
- 62. An inscription on a tomb.**
(A) epitaph (B) crypt
(C) obituary (D) legacy
- 63. Allowance due to a wife from her husband on separation.**
(A) patrimony (B) antimony
(C) parsimony (D) alimony
- 64. Practice of employing spies in war.**
(A) Esplanade (B) Espionage
(C) Espadrille (D) Estrangement

One Word Substitution

65. **A fixed territory in which authority can be exercised.**
(A) Jurisdiction (B) judiciary
(C) jurisprudence (D) juristic
66. **An appearance of objects often simulating the appearance of water:**
(A) image (B) mirage
(C) reflection (D) refraction
67. **The art of making fireworks :**
(A) Chromatics (B) Numismatics
(C) Pyrotechnics (D) Cosmetics
68. **Give off bubbles of gas :**
(A) efface (B) effervesce
(C) effloresce (D) effuse
69. **A system of governance controlled by persons of high intellectual ability :**
(A) oligarchy (B) democracy
(C) meritocracy (D) snobbery
70. **Sudden and violent change :**
(A) Cataclysm (B) Catalysis
(C) Catacombs (D) Catechism
71. **A small waterfall or group of waterfalls flowing down a Rocky hill side is called :**
(A) Hurricane (B) Stream
(C) Volcano (D) Cascade
72. **One who eats human flesh**
(A) non-vegetarian (B) vegetarian
(C) cannibal (D) man-eater
73. **Instrument which records earth's tremor:**
(A) Monograph (B) Geographer
(C) Seismograph (D) Barometer
74. **The practice of a woman having more than one husband at the same time:**
(A) Polygamy (B) Polyphony
(C) Polyandry (D) Polygyny
75. **Specializes in nose diseases :**
(A) Otologist (B) Rhinologist
(C) Endocrinologist (D) Gerentologist
76. **Boundary of an area**
(A) Porch (B) Periphery
(C) Balcony (D) Verandah
77. **A war of religions**
(A) Calligraphy (B) Contraband
(C) Cavalry (D) Crusade
78. **The Government by the nobility**
(A) Bureaucracy (B) Aristocracy
(C) Autocracy (D) Oligarchy
79. **To store and stock**
(A) Hail (B) Hide
(C) Hoard (D) Horde
80. **Study of relations of organisms to one another and to their surroundings**
(A) Biology (B) Ecology
(C) Psychology (D) Physiology
81. **A body of persons appointed to hear evidence and give their verdict in trials.**
(A) association (B) council
(C) bar (D) jury
82. **A person who dishonestly pretends to be somebody else :**
(A) Imperialist (B) Impressionist
(C) Implorer (D) Impostor
83. **Violent storm:**
(A) weather (B) rains
(C) breeze (D) tempest
84. **Careful and thorough enquiry :**
(A) Investigation (B) Interview
(C) Examination (D) Exploration
85. **A situation that stops an activity from progressing :**
(A) Bypass (B) Breach
(C) Bottleneck (D) Block head
86. **A disease which is spread by direct contact**
(A) Contagious (B) Infectious
(C) Epidemic (D) Endemic
87. **The study of ancient civilizations**
(A) History (B) Anthropology
(C) Ethnology (D) Archaeology

One Word Substitution

- 88. An animal story with a moral**
 (A) Fable (B) Tale
 (C) Anecdote (D) Parable
- 89. A thing likely to be easily broken**
 (A) vulnerable (B) flexible
 (C) brittle (D) delicate
- 90. Body of singers**
 (A) Coir (B) Quorum
 (C) Quire (D) Choir
- 91. Very dramatic**
 (A) Histrionic (B) Hippocratic
 (C) Hirsute (D) Hoary
- 92. A figure of speech by which a thing is spoken of as being that which it only resembles**
 (A) Metaphor (B) Simile
 (C) Personification (D) Alliteration
- 93. The process by which a person or an organization reduces the amount of money it spends**
 (A) budgeting (B) retrenchment
 (C) saving (D) closure
- 94. An established principle of practical wisdom :**
 (A) Marxism (B) Maxim
 (C) Neologism (D) Platonism
- 95. Person with whom one works**
 (A) contemporary (B) companion
 (C) colleague (D) partner
- 96. Honesty of character**
 (A) integrity (B) rectitude
 (C) honour (D) dignity
- 97. Expressions of sympathy**
 (A) congratulation (B) condolence
 (C) compliment (D) condemnation
- 98. An instrument used to record sound**
 (A) gramophone (B) hydrophone
 (C) phonograph (D) megaphone
- 99. Pertaining to horses**
 (A) Equine (B) equestrian
 (C) equinox (D) equation
- 100. One who cannot be corrected**
 (A) Incurable (B) incorrigible
 (C) hardened (D) vulnerable
- 101. Difficult or impossible to read**
 (A) Illogical (B) illegible
 (C) ineligible (D) legible
- 102. An unexpected piece of good fortune**
 (A) Turnstile (B) Windfall
 (C) Philanthropy (D) Benevolence
- 103. Those who go on to someone else's land without the owner's permission**
 (A) Delinquents (B) trespassers
 (C) offenders (D) culprits
- 104. Something that cannot be taken away.**
 (A) inalienable (B) edible
 (C) legible (D) natural
- 105. Scale used for measuring the strength of an earthquake.**
 (A) Celsius (B) Newtons
 (C) Richter (D) Linear
- 106. Something kept as a reminder of an event.**
 (A) Trophy (B) Souvenir
 (C) Prize (D) Antique
- 107. One who practises one of the fine arts:**
 (A) painter (B) artist
 (C) designer (D) architect
- 108. A general pardon of offenders.**
 (A) Parley (B) Amnesty
 (C) Parole (D) Acquittal
- 109. Place where wine is made**
 (A) bakery (B) cloakroom
 (C) tannery (D) brewery
- 110. A paper written by hand**
 (A) handicraft (B) handiwork
 (C) manuscript (D) thesis
- 111. The art of preserving skin of animals, birds and fish**
 (A) taxonomy (B) taxidermy
 (C) philology (D) seismology
- 112. Related to moon**
 (A) solar (B) moony
 (C) lunar (D) honeymoon
- 113. Sum of money to be paid for freeing a person from captivity.**
 (A) Ransom (B) Compensation
 (C) Tribute (D) Penalty

One Word Substitution

- 114. Book giving information about every branch of knowledge.**
 (A) Directory (B) Dictionary
 (C) Encyclopedia (D) Dissertation
- 115. Member of a tribe that wanders from place to place with no fixed home.**
 (A) Vagabond (B) Nomad
 (C) Wanderer (D) Truant
- 116. Fit to be chosen.**
 (A) Eligible (B) Capable
 (C) Suitable (D) Valuable
- 117. An animal or plant living in or upon another.**
 (A) master (B) dependant
 (C) insect (D) parasite
- 118. Strong dislike between two persons**
 (A) aversion (B) antipathy
 (C) apathy (D) despair
- 119. The killing of whole group of people**
 (A) genocide (B) germicide
 (C) patricide (D) suicide
- 120. The plants and vegetation of a region**
 (A) fauna (B) flora
 (C) landscape (D) environment
- 121. That which is without opposition**
 (A) unaware (B) verdict
 (C) unanimous (D) spontaneous
- 122. Animal that feeds on plants**
 (A) Carnivorous (B) Herbivorous
 (C) Insectivorous (D) Graminivorous
- 123. A number of stars grouped together**
 (A) Orbit (B) Constellation
 (C) Solar system (D) Comet
- 124. Lasting only for a very short while**
 (A) Transparent (B) Temporal
 (C) Temporary (D) Temperate
- 125. Murder of a man**
 (A) Regicide (B) Fratricide
 (C) Homicide (D) Genocide
- 126. Use of force or threats to get someone to agree to something**
 (A) Coercion (B) Conviction
 (C) Confession (D) Cajolement
- 127. A place where gambling is practised**
 (A) hotel (B) casino
 (C) restaurant (D) theatre
- 128. An object or portion serving as a sample**
 (A) Specification (B) Spectre
 (C) Spectacle (D) Specimen
- 129. The practice of submitting a proposal to popular vote**
 (A) Election (B) Reference
 (C) Popularity (D) Referendum
- 130. Code of diplomatic etiquette and precedence**
 (A) Statesmanship (B) Diplomacy
 (C) Hierarchy (D) Protocol
- 131. To renounce a high position of authority or control**
 (A) Abduct (B) Abandon
 (C) Abort (D) Abdicate
- 132. Talking about the affairs of other people**
 (A) teasing (B) gossiping
 (C) criticising (D) slandering
- 133. Medical examination of the body after death**
 (A) diagnosis (B) irradiation
 (C) corpse (D) autopsy
- 134. A person born or living at the same time as another**
 (A) corollary (B) accessory
 (C) contemporary (D) auxiliary
- 135. Bad beyond reform**
 (A) irreversible (B) irrevocable
 (C) irredeemable (D) irreparable
- 136. That which is certain to happen**
 (A) inevitable (B) invincible
 (C) incorrigible (D) immediate
- 137. The process of deciding the nature of a disease by examination**
 (A) test (B) perusal
 (C) diagnosis (D) operation

One Word Substitution

- 138. That which makes it difficult to recognise the presence or real nature of somebody or something.**
 (A) cover (B) camouflage
 (C) pretence (D) mask
- 139. To bear a hand**
 (A) interfere (B) join
 (C) assist (D) rejoice
- 140. One who makes an official examination of accounts**
 (A) auditor (B) accountant
 (C) clerk (D) official
- 141. A government by the officials**
 (A) Plutocracy (B) Aristocracy
 (C) Bureaucracy (D) Monarchy
- 142. One who offers his services without charging for it**
 (A) Philanderer (B) Volunteer
 (C) Mercenary (D) Missionary
- 143. A tank where fish or water plants are kept**
 (A) aviary (B) aquarium
 (C) nursery (D) sanatorium
- 144. Avoiding wastage**
 (A) economic (B) economical
 (C) minimal (D) optimational
- 145. Sole right to make and sell some invention**
 (A) Franchise (B) Authorize
 (C) Dealership (D) Patent
- 146. The scientific study of living organisms**
 (A) Biochemistry (B) Zoology
 (C) Organic chemistry (D) Biology
- 147. One who lives for more than a hundred years**
 (A) saint (B) meteorologist
 (C) demagogue (D) centenarian
- 148. Detaining and confining someone**
 (A) Interruption (B) Interrogation
 (C) Interment (D) Internment
- 149. An underhand device resorted to in order to justify misconduct**
 (A) Subterfuge (B) Manoeuvre
 (C) Stratagem (D) Complicity
- 150. Science of the races of mankind**
 (A) Genealogy (B) Etiology
 (C) Ethnology (D) Sociology
- 151. Impossible to describe**
 (A) Miraculous (B) Ineffable
 (C) Stupendous (D) Appalling
- 152. One who criticises popular beliefs which he thinks is mistaken or unwise**
 (A) Philistine (B) Iconoclast
 (C) Imposter (D) Cannibal
- 153. One who hides away on a ship to obtain a free passage.**
 (A) Compositor (B) Stoker
 (C) Stowaway (D) Shipwright
- 154. Clues available at a scene**
 (A) Circumstantial (B) derivative
 (C) inferential (D) suggestive
- 155. An emolument over and above fixed income or salary.**
 (A) Honorarium (B) Sinecure
 (C) Perquisite (D) Prerogative
- 156. The animals of a particular region.**
 (A) Flora (B) Museum
 (C) Zoo (D) Fauna
- 157. A person who is physically dependent on a substance.**
 (A) Criminal (B) Martyr
 (C) Gladiator (D) Addict
- 158. A child born after the death of its father is called.**
 (A) A deprived child (B) An orphan
 (C) A posthumous child (D) A waif
- 159. A legal agreement by which a person borrows money from a bank usually to buy a house.**
 (A) Document (B) Mortgage
 (C) Lease (D) Invoice
- 160. Failing to discharge one's duty.**
 (A) Debacle (B) Dereliction
 (C) Determination (D) Deterrent
- 161. A movement of part of the body to express an idea or feeling.**
 (A) Jibe (B) Gesture
 (C) Pose (D) Mimicry

One Word Substitution

- 162. To surround a place with the intention of capturing it**
 (A) Bivouac (B) Besiege
 (C) Invade (D) Intern
- 163. To send back a person to one's country**
 (A) Repatriate (B) Expatriate
 (C) Migrate (D) Emigrate
- 164. One who is opposed to intellectual progress**
 (A) Impostor (B) Chaperon
 (C) Prospector (D) Obscurant
- 165. A woman with dark brown hair**
 (A) Blonde (B) Brunette
 (C) Termagant (D) Coiffure
- 166. One who has special skill in judging art, music, tastes, etc.**
 (A) Connoisseur (B) Raconteur
 (C) Sybarite (D) Amateur
- 167. One who devotes his life to the welfare and the interests of other people**
 (A) Minion (B) Martyr
 (C) Altruist (D) Fugitive
- 168. A place where animals are kept alive, and nearly as possible as in their natural state**
 (A) Vivarium (B) Orchard
 (C) Paddock (D) Zoo
- 169. One who hates mankind**
 (A) Misanthropist (B) Misnomer
 (C) Misogynist (D) Philanthropist
- 170. The period between two reigns**
 (A) Interregnum (B) Interval
 (C) Interdict (D) Intercept
- 171. One who walks in one's sleep.**
 (A) dreamer (B) somnambulist
 (C) neomatic (D) ignorant
- 172. A place where money is coined.**
 (A) mint (B) press
 (C) treasury (D) bank
- 173. The house of an Eskimo.**
 (A) hamlet (B) downy
 (C) igloo (D) hut
- 174. One who collects postage stamp.**
 (A) philatelist (B) stamp collector
 (C) vendor (D) lexicographer
- 175. What cannot be heard.**
 (A) inaudible (B) audible
 (C) unheard (D) ineffaceable
- 176. A poem of mourning.**
 (A) elegy (B) sonnet
 (C) lyric (D) epic
- 177. A game in which no one wins.**
 (A) abandoned (B) drawn
 (C) postponed (D) obsolete
- 178. Too much official formality.**
 (A) delayed (B) officiousness
 (C) formality (D) red tapism
- 179. One who knows many languages.**
 (A) linguist (B) polyglot
 (C) stylist (D) debator
- 180. That which can be carried.**
 (A) portable (B) edible
 (C) potable (D) bearable
- 181. A writer who steals ideas from others.**
 (A) plagiarist (B) copier
 (C) editor (D) translator
- 182. Examination of a dead body.**
 (A) autopsy (B) surgery
 (C) operation (D) tanning
- 183. A speech made to oneself.**
 (A) dialogue (B) speech
 (C) soliloquy (D) monologue
- 184. A commonplace remark.**
 (A) platitude (B) ramark
 (C) statement (D) epigram
- 185. That which cannot be captured.**
 (A) impregnable (B) incorrigible
 (C) imperishable (D) invincible
- 186. The study of birds**
 (A) ornithology (B) philology
 (C) ontology (D) geology
- 187. An insect with many legs is called.**
 (A) centipede (B) mammal
 (C) herbivorous (D) vertebrate

One Word Substitution

- 188. Government in which all religions are honoured.**
- (A) fanatic (B) secular
 (C) catholic (D) progressive
- 189. One who lives among strangers.**
- (A) recluse (B) alien
 (C) stoic (D) rustic
- 190. A word no longer in use.**
- (A) extant (B) obsolete
 (C) out-dated (D) nervous
- 191. A sneering person who always finds faults.**
- (A) cupid (B) kleptomaniac
 (C) cynic (D) crone
- 192. A place for keeping bees.**
- (A) aviary (B) apairy
 (C) cage (D) nest
- 193. A long journey, especially by sea.**
- (A) flight (B) voyage
 (C) odyssey (D) safari
- 194. A short walk for pleasure or exercise.**
- (A) stroll (B) gallop
 (C) jog (D) promenade
- 195. A place where government or public records are kept.**
- (A) attic (B) museum
 (C) cellar (D) archive
- 196. A person who kills somebody especially for political reasons.**
- (A) criminal (B) assassin
 (C) murderer (D) hangman
- 197. A person who opposes another.**
- (A) soldier (B) fighter
 (C) antagonist (D) prophet
- 198. A person who does not want to see the realities of life and tries to escape.**
- (A) escapist (B) hovel
 (C) plunderer (D) scavenger
- 199. A person who is very selective, disgusted easily, and is hard to please.**
- (A) misanthrope (B) fastidious
 (C) selector (D) ambiguous
- 200. A person who can be cheated easily.**
- (A) credulous (B) faithful
 (C) client (D) egoist
- 201. A sweet music.**
- (A) lullaby (B) melody
 (C) folk song (D) duet
- 202. A place where everything is perfect.**
- (A) heaven (B) platoon
 (C) cosmos (D) utopia
- 203. Decision that cannot be taken back.**
- (A) irrevocable (B) rigid
 (C) order (D) brief
- 204. Fear of strangers.**
- (A) sitophobia (B) hydrophobia
 (C) xenophobia (D) whoopee
- 205. Physical features of an area.**
- (A) geography (B) sociology
 (C) contour (D) topography
- 206. Scientific study of fungi.**
- (A) mycology (B) botany
 (C) physiology (D) zoology
- 207. A funeral bell.**
- (A) knell (B) replica
 (C) windfall (D) call
- 208. A person who is pure and clean.**
- (A) immaculate (B) neat
 (C) clean (D) irrevocable
- 209. A person who has just started learning.**
- (A) novice (B) foreman
 (C) supervisor (D) apprentice
- 210. A person who is appointed by two parties to solve a dispute.**
- (A) judge (B) arbitrator
 (C) advocate (D) barrister
- 211. A person who wishes to throw over all establishments.**
- (A) anarchist (B) hooligan
 (C) criminal (D) rebel
- 212. A person who is bad in spelling.**
- (A) cacographist (B) linguist
 (C) calligraphist (D) pedant
- 213. A person leaving his native country to settle in another.**
- (A) immigrant (B) emigrant
 (C) traveller (D) nomad
- 214. A person who is always dissatisfied.**
- (A) heresy (B) malcontent
 (C) felon (D) surrogate

One Word Substitution

- 215. A person who enters without any invitation.** (A) thief (B) burglar (C) vandal (D) intruder
- 216. A person who is talkative.** (A) garrulous (B) faithful (C) client (D) egoist
- 217. One who cuts precious stones.** (A) lapidist (B) philatelist (C) teweller (D) drover
- 218. A hospital for recuperation or for the treatment of chronic diseases** (A) sanatorium (B) asylum (C) funny farm (D) bedlam
- 219. A professional rider in horse races** (A) horse rider (B) jockey (C) screw (D) rider
- 220. One who champions the cause of women**
- (A) lover (B) beloved (C) feminist (D) womanizer
- 221. A man who hates marriage** (A) polyandrist (B) bigot (C) misogamist (D) widower
- 222. Thick skinned animal** (A) pachyderm (B) prehensile (C) monotreme (D) hand-skinned
- 223. Cow - like** (A) aquiline (B) bovine (C) feline (D) vulpine
- 224. The words with opposite meanings used together** (A) oxymoron (B) irony (C) pun (D) alliteration
- 225. Specialist of kidney** (A) nephrologist (B) paediatrician (C) orthopaedist (D) oncologist

ANSWER KEY

1. (A) 24. (C) 47. (C) 70. (A) 93. (B) 116. (A) 139. (C) 162. (B) 185. (A) 208. (A)
2. (D) 25. (B) 48. (B) 71. (D) 94. (B) 117. (D) 140. (A) 163. (A) 186. (A) 209. (A)
3. (A) 26. (A) 49. (A) 72. (C) 95. (C) 118. (B) 141. (C) 164. (D) 187. (A) 210. (B)
4. (B) 27. (C) 50. (B) 73. (C) 96. (B) 119. (A) 142. (B) 165. (B) 188. (B) 211. (A)
5. (A) 28. (C) 51. (B) 74. (C) 97. (B) 120. (B) 143. (B) 166. (A) 189. (B) 212. (A)
6. (B) 29. (C) 52. (C) 75. (B) 98. (C) 121. (C) 144. (B) 167. (C) 190. (B) 213. (B)
7. (A) 30. (C) 53. (B) 76. (B) 99. (A) 122. (B) 145. (D) 168. (A) 191. (C) 214. (B)
8. (C) 31. (A) 54. (B) 77. (D) 100. (B) 123. (B) 146. (D) 169. (A) 192. (B) 215. (D)
9. (D) 32. (A) 55. (B) 78. (B) 101. (B) 124. (C) 147. (D) 170. (A) 193. (B) 216. (A)
10. (A) 33. (C) 56. (A) 79. (C) 102. (B) 125. (C) 148. (D) 171. (B) 194. (A) 217. (A)
11. (B) 34. (B) 57. (C) 80. (B) 103. (B) 126. (A) 149. (B) 172. (A) 195. (D) 218. (A)
12. (A) 35. (C) 58. (B) 81. (D) 104. (A) 127. (B) 150. (C) 173. (C) 196. (B) 219. (B)
13. (C) 36. (A) 59. (C) 82. (D) 105. (C) 128. (D) 151. (B) 174. (A) 197. (C) 220. (C)
14. (A) 37. (B) 60. (D) 83. (D) 106. (B) 129. (D) 152. (B) 175. (A) 198. (A) 221. (C)
15. (C) 38. (A) 61. (C) 84. (A) 107. (B) 130. (D) 153. (C) 176. (A) 199. (B) 222. (A)
16. (B) 39. (B) 62. (A) 85. (C) 108. (B) 131. (D) 154. (A) 177. (B) 200. (A) 223. (B)
17. (D) 40. (A) 63. (D) 86. (A) 109. (D) 132. (B) 155. (C) 178. (D) 201. (B) 224. (A)
18. (D) 41. (D) 64. (B) 87. (D) 110. (C) 133. (D) 156. (D) 179. (B) 202. (D) 225. (A)
19. (A) 42. (B) 65. (A) 88. (A) 111. (B) 134. (C) 157. (D) 180. (A) 203. (A)
20. (B) 43. (B) 66. (B) 89. (C) 112. (C) 135. (C) 158. (C) 181. (A) 204. (C)
21. (B) 44. (D) 67. (C) 90. (D) 113. (A) 136. (A) 159. (B) 182. (A) 205. (D)
22. (C) 45. (D) 68. (B) 91. (A) 114. (C) 137. (C) 160. (B) 183. (C) 206. (A)
23. (A) 46. (B) 69. (C) 92. (A) 115. (B) 138. (B) 161. (B) 184. (A) 207. (A)

22

IDIOMS AND PHRASES -I

CHAPTER

S.N.	PHRASES	हिन्दी में अर्थ	Meaning in English
1.	Achilles' heels	कमज़ोर पक्ष	A small but fatal weakness.
2.	Add fuel to fire	आग में घी डालना	To make a matter worse.
3.	An arm chair job	आसान एवं अच्छी आय	Good income job with high comfort.
4.	An axe to grind	स्वार्थ से भरा उद्देश्य	Something done for selfish reasons.
5.	An iron-will	दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति	Strong will power.
6.	An old flame	पुराना प्यार	A person, one had a romantic relationship with, in the past.
7.	An old head on young shoulders	अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा समझदार होना	A child or young person who thinks and talks like an older and experienced person.
8.	An olive branch	शांति निवेदन	Peace request/ peace treaty.
9.	Apple of discord	झगड़े का कारण	Matter of dispute.
10.	Apple of one's eye	दुलारा, प्यारा	Very lovable/ dearest one.
11.	Apple-pie-order	बिल्कुल ठीक हालत में	In good condition
12.	At a loss	निर्णय न ले पाना	To be unable to decide.
13.	At a pinch	समस्या में होना	In a trouble.
14.	At arm's length	दूर रखना (दोस्ती न रखना)	Avoid becoming too friendly.
15.	At daggers drawn	कट्टर दुश्मनी होना	To have bitter enmity.
16.	At ease	चिन्ता रहित	Free from pain and anxiety.
17.	At one's finger's ends	पूर्ण जानकारी होना	To have complete knowledge.
18.	At one's wit's end	चकित	Puzzled / confused / perplexed.
19.	At sixes and sevens	अस्त-व्यस्त	In disorder.
20.	At stake	दाव पर	At risk and insecure.
21.	At the eleventh hour	अन्तिम समय में	At the last moment.
22.	Back stairs gossip	नौकरों के बीच का गपशप	Talk among servants/ unfair talks.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

23. **Bad blood** शत्रुता Enmity/ bitter relations.
24. **Bag and baggage** बोरिया-बिस्तर समेत With all belongings.
25. **Baker's dozen** संख्या में तेरह Thirteen in number.
26. **Be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth** धनी परिवार में पैदा होना To be born in a rich family.
27. **Be in the driving seat** सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना .. Bearing all responsibilities.
28. **Bear the brunt of** परिणाम भुगतना To bear the main part of something unpleasant.
29. **Beat about the bush** घुमा-फिरा कर बातें करना To talk in a roundabout manner/ circumlocution.
30. **Beat black and blue** अत्यधिक पिटाई करना Beating mercilessly.
31. **Beat hollow** काफी आसानी To defeat thoroughly and even बुरी तरह से पराजित करना convincingly.
32. **Beck and call** आज्ञा में रहना Ready to obey order instantly.
33. **Bed of roses** आनंद से भरपूर Pleasant situation of comfort.
34. **Bed of thorns** दुःख एवं तकलीफ से भरपूर A situation of extreme difficulty.
35. **Beggar description** अवर्णनीय A person with no resource.
36. **Bell the cat** जोखिम उठाना Taking first step at personal risk.
37. **Between the devil and the deep sea** दो गंभीर परेशानियों के बीच Between two difficult situations.
38. **Big gun** ऊँची पहुँच वाला व्यक्ति An influential person
39. **Bird of passage** यदा-कदा आनेवाला One who comes occasionally.
40. **Bird's eye view** सरसरी निगाह Overview.
41. **Birds of feather** एक ही प्रवृत्ति के लोग People with the same idea, characteristics and interests.
42. **Bite the dust** पराजित होना To be defeated.
43. **Black sheep** ऐसा व्यक्ति जो परिवार / टीम के . A person who is regarded as लिए शर्मदागी का कारण बनें disgrace for his family/ team etc.
44. **Blind alley** कार्य जिसमें आगे प्रगति A situation in which no further संभव नहीं progress can be made.
45. **Blind date** किसी अंजान व्यक्ति से मिलना.. A meeting between a girl and a boy, who have not met before.
46. **Blow one's own trumpet** अपने मुँह मिर्च मिट्ठू To praise oneself.
47. **Blue blood** शाही व्यक्ति Royal or aristocratic descent.
48. **Blue book** सरकारी रिपोर्ट Government report.
49. **Body and soul** पूर्णतया Entirely.
50. **Bolt from the blue** आकस्मिक विपत्ति Unexpected problem.
51. **Bone of contention** झगड़े की वस्तु/कारण Subject of a dispute.

Idioms And Phrases - 1

52. **Boon/blessing in disguise** छिपा हुआ वरदान Hidden blessing.
53. **Bosom friend** जिगरी दोस्त Fast friend.
54. **Break the ice** चुप्पी तोड़ना To start a conversation.
55. **Breathe one's last** मर जाना To pass away/ to die.
56. **Broad day light** दिन-दहाड़े In day light (when crime cannot be hidden).
57. **Broken reed** अविश्वासी व्यक्ति A weak, unreliable person.
58. **Brown study** विचारमग्नता A state of deep thought.
59. **Bull in the china shop** ... जो जगह के अनुकूल न हो One who is out of place in a delicate situation.
60. **Burn a hole in the pocket** शीघ्रता से खर्च करना Money spent quickly.
61. **Burn one's fingers** खुद का नुकसान कर बैठना..... To get oneself into trouble.
62. **Burn the candle at both ends** फिजूलखर्ची करना To waste money.
63. **Burn the midnight oil** ... देर रात तक मेहनत करना Labouring/studying till late night.
64. **Burning question** ज्वलन्त प्रश्न Hot issue.
65. **Bury the hatchet** दुश्मनी खत्म करना To end a hostility.
66. **By fits and starts** रुक-रुक कर अनियमित रूप से Irregularly.
67. **By hook or by crook** गलत या सही किसी भी ढंग से.. By any means, right or wrong.
68. **By leaps and bounds** दिन दूनी और रात चौगुनी..... At a rapid pace.
69. **By the skin of one's teeth/** थोड़े से अंतराल से Narrowly/by a hair breadth by a whisker
70. **Carry the coal to newcastle** बेवजह मेहनत करना Spending time and energy in doing something that is useless and wastage of energy.
71. **Cast pearls before swine** बंदर के हाथ में नारियल A right thing in a wrong hand.
(किसी वस्तु को ऐसे व्यक्ति
को देना जो उसका मूल्य न समझे)
72. **Castles in the air** हवाई किला बनाना Day dream/ a hope or desire unlikely to be realized.
73. **Cat and dog life** कलहपूर्ण जीवन Troublesome life.
74. **Catch a tartar** शत्रु या बहुत बड़ी परेशानी से ... To grapple with a unexpectedly. सामना होना formidable opponent.
75. **Cat's paw** निजी स्वार्थ के पूर्ति में जिस A person used by another as व्यक्ति का प्रयोग किया जाए..... a dupe or tool.
76. **Chew the cud** मनन करना..... To ponder over / meditate.
77. **Chicken hearted** कायर Lacking courage / cowardly.
78. **Cock-and-bull story** मनगढ़त कहानी A concocted story.
79. **Crocodile tears** दिखावटी आँसू An false display of grief.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

80. **Cross swords** लड़ना To quarrel or fight.
81. **Cry for the moon** किसी असंभव वस्तु की कामना To desire the unattainable.
करना
82. **Cry over spilled milk** व्यर्थ पछताना..... Regret in vain for what cannot be undone.
83. **Cut a sorry figure** अपने प्रयास से तनिक भी To give a poor show.
प्रभाव न छोड़ना
84. **Cut both ways** दोनों ही पार्टी के पक्ष में Argue in favour of both sides.
तर्क करना
85. **Cut no ice** कोई असर नहीं डालना To fail to make an impression.
86. **Cut one's coat according to one's cloth** अपनी आय के अनुसार To live within one's means.
व्यय करना
87. **Dance to one's tune** हुक्म का पालन करना Obeying one's order.
88. **Dark horse** जो अप्रत्याशित रूप से जीत जाए..One who wins unexpectedly.
89. **Dead letter** कानून, जो कभी लागू..... A law or ordinance that is no longer enforced.
था लेकिन अब लागू नहीं है।
90. **Democle's sword** सिर पर मंडराता खतरा..... Constant threat.
91. **Die a dog's death** लज्जाजनक मौत मरना..... To die a shameful death.
92. **Die in harness** अपने कार्यावधि के दैशन Die while in service.
ही मृत्यु होना
93. **Dog in the manger** जो दूसरों को उस सुख A person who prevents others from enjoying what he cannot.
का भोग करने नहीं देता है
जो उसके किसी काम का नहीं
94. **Donkey's years** काफी समय बाद A long time.
95. **Draw a line** मर्यादा तय करना Set a limit.
96. **Duck in a thunder storm** व्यथा में In a painful condition.
97. **Eagle eyed** तेज नजर वाला With keen eye sight.
98. **Eat humble pie** शर्मीन्दगी झेलना To apologize.
99. **Eat one's words** शब्द वापस लेना..... Take a statement back.
100. **Elbow room** काम करने की स्वतंत्रता Sufficient scope to move or function.
101. **End in smoke** कोई परिणाम न निकलना..... Come to nothing.
102. **Escape one's lips** बोल जाना Speak unintentionally or unexpectedly.
103. **Fabian policy** सावधानीपूर्ण मन्दगति नीति..... Deliberate slow policy/ policy of delaying decisions.
104. **Fair and square** निष्पक्ष In an honest way .
105. **Fair sex** नारी जाति Women.
106. **Fair weather friend** मुसीबत में साथ न Selfish friends who are with us

Idioms And Phrases - 1-

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| | देने वाला मित्र | only in comfortable situation. | |
| 107. Fancy price | मुंहमांगी कीमत | At any cost/ at demanded price. | |
| 108. Feather in the cap | अच्छी उपलब्धि | Additional success. | |
| 109. Feather one's nest | अपने पद का लाभ.....
उठा कर कमाई करना, भविष्य
के लिए जुगाड़ करना | To enrich oneself by taking
advantage of one's position. | |
| 110. Fight shy of | यालना | To attempt to avoid a thing or
person. | |
| 111. Fish in troubled waters .. | विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ उठाना . | To take advantage of the problems
of others. | |
| 112. Fish out of water | कष्टप्रद अवस्था में | Out of one's usual and comfortable
place. | |
| 113. Fly in the ointment | असुविधा | A slight unpleasant thing that
obstruct the enjoyment of
something. | |
| 114. Fool's paradise | झूठी उम्मीद में खुश होना | A state of being happy for foolish
or unfounded reasons. | |
| 115. Forty winks | झपकी | A nap. | |
| 116. French leave | बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना . | A leave without information or
permission. | |
| 117. Fringe benefits | वेतन के अलावा मिलने | An additional benefit apart
बाला लाभ | from salary. |
| 118. From hand to mouth | सिर्फ गुजारा भर | Providing only bare essentials. | |
| 119. Gala day | आनंदोत्सव का दिन | Celebration day. | |
| 120. Get away with | बच निकलना | To escape. | |
| 121. Get down to | काम गंभीरतापूर्वक आरंभ करना . | To attend to work seriously. | |
| 122. Get into a soup | झंझट में पड़ना | Get into trouble. | |
| 123. Get into hot water | समस्या में फँसना..... | Get into trouble. | |
| 124. Get off scot free | अदण्डित निकल जाना | To escape without punishment. | |
| 125. Get on one's nerves | तंग करना | To irritate or annoy. | |
| 126. Gibble-gabble | मूर्खतापूर्ण वार्तालाप | Foolish talk. | |
| 127. Gift of the gab | चतुराईपूर्वक धारा प्रवाह | Talent for speaking.
बोलने की शक्ति | |
| 128. Give a piece of mind | डॉटना | To rebuke or scold. | |
| 129. Go through fire and water कोई भी खतरा मोल लेना..... | To brave any danger. | | |
| 130. Go to dogs | ब्यर्थ होना | To deteriorate/ degenerate. | |
| 131. Go to rack and ruin | विनाश होना | To decay or get destroyed. | |
| 132. Good Samaritan | दयालु व्यक्ति | A person who helps and pays | |

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

- sympathy to those in distress.
- 133. Grass widow** ऐसी विवाहिता जिस का A woman who is separated, पति उससे दूर हो divorced or lives apart from her husband.
- 134. Grease the palm** रिश्वत देना To bribe.
- 135. Green room** अभिनेता का भेष-भूषा का कमरा A lounge in a theater or studio for the performers to get ready.
- 136. Grist to one's mill** फायदेमंद Something that can be used for one's advantage.
- 137. Halcyon days** खुशगवार दिन Peaceful days.
- 138. Hammer and sickle** समाजवाद का प्रतीक A symbolic representation of communism in general.
- 139. Hammer and tongs** बहुत अधिक मेहनत से With great effort or energy.
- 140. Hand and glove with** अच्छे सहयोग से In close co-operation.
- 141. Hang by a thread** बहुत नाजुक स्थिति में होना Be in a risky situation.
- 142. Hard nut to crack** जटिल समस्या/ व्यक्ति A difficult problem to solve/ A person difficult to understand.
- 143. Haul over the coals** कोसना, भर्त्सना करना To take to task, to reprimand.
- 144. Have finger in the pie** ... किसी कार्य में शामिल रहना To be involved in something.
- 145. Have one's hands full** काम की कमी नहीं होना To be completely occupied.
- 146. Have one's way** अपनी इच्छा के अनुसार The way one wants.
- 147. Have several irons** एक ही समय कई कार्यों में To be involved in many projects **in the fire** शामिल होना or activities at the same time.
- 148. Hen-pecked husband** जोरु का गुलाम Admirer of one's own wife in a servile manner.
- 149. Herculean task** बहुत कठिन कार्य Task requiring tremendous effort.
- 150. High and dry** अकेला In a deprived situation (alone).
- 151. High handed** निरंकुश Overbearing.
- 152. High living** ऐश आराम की जिन्दगी Living with comfort and ease.
- 153. Hit below the belt** गलत तरीके से प्रहर करना To strike unfairly.
- 154. Hit the jackpot** बड़ी कामयाबी मिलना Gaining a big/ great success (speci-ally by luck).
- 155. Hit the nail on the head** सही समय पर सही To do the right thing at the बात/कार्य करना right time
- 156. Hobson's choice** कोई विकल्प न होना No alternative.
- 157. Hole and corner policy** .. गुप्त नीति Secret policy.
- 158. Hue and cry** हो-हल्ला Any loud public outcry.

Idioms And Phrases - 1

- 159. Hush money** किसी बात को गुप्त रखने के Money given to someone to
लिए दिया जाने वाला पैसा..... keep something secret.
- 160. In a nutshell** संक्षेप में In very brief form.
- 161. In black and white** लिखित में In printed or written form.
- 162. In full swing** पूरे जोरों पर At the height of activity.
- 163. In the blues** दुःख/संताप में In dumps depressed.
- 164. In the long run** अन्ततः:..... Ultimately.
- 165. In the nick of time** ठीक समय पर At the last possible moment.
- 166. In the same boat** एक ही हालात में Sharing the same problems.
- 167. In vogue** प्रचलित In the current fashions.
- 168. Ins and outs** विस्तृत विवरण Intricacies or complications/ full
detail.
- 169. Iron hand/ Iron fist** कड़ाई से Rigorous control.
- 170. Itching palm** रिश्वत लेने की आदत होना..... Craving for bribe.
- 171. Itsy bitsy** अत्यन्त छोटा Very small or tiny.
- 172. Jack of all trades and master of none** जो आदमी किसी भी काम में ... A person who knows many
निपुण न हो, लेकिन सभी different kinds of work but is a
कार्यों की जानकारी रखता हो master of none.
- 173. Jail bird** जो जेल में हो या पहले' A person who is or has been
रह चुका हा confined to jail.
- 174. Jaundiced eye** पक्षपातपूर्ण दृष्टिकोण To look at something with a
prejudiced view.
- 175. Judas kiss** झूठा प्यार False love.
- 176. Jump to a conclusion** बिना सोचे-समझे नतीजे पर To come to a conclusion
पहुँच जाना prematurely.
- 177. Kangaroo court** गैर-कानूनी न्यायालय An illegal court.
- 178. Keep one's cards close to one's chest** किसी बात को छिपाना Hiding something.
- 179. Keep one's fingers crossed** किसी अच्छी घटना के होने की . To wait expectantly.
कामना करना
- 180. Keep one's word** प्रतीजा पूरी करना To keep one's promise.
- 181. Keep the ball rolling** जारी रखना To maintain the progress of a
project or plan.
- 182. Keep the wolf from the door** दरिद्रता से संघर्ष करना To avert poverty/ starvation.
- 183. Kill two birds with one stone** एक कार्य करके दो समस्याओं से Doing two things at the same
निपट लेना time while effort is made for one
- 184. Kith and kin** बन्धु-बान्धव Blood relations.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

- 185. Knit one's brow** त्वैरियाँ चढ़ाना (गुस्सा करना) .. To frown.
- 186. Lady's man** जो महिलाओं के संगत में रहना . A man who is fond of the
पसंद करता हो company of women.
- 187. Lame excuse** असंतोषजनक बहाना False excuse/ baseless excuse.
- 188. Left- handed compliment** प्रशंसा के रूप में अपमान An insult disguised as a
compliment.
- 189. Lion's share** सबसे बड़ा हिस्सा Large part.
- 190. Live in an ivory tower** ... सम्पन्नता में जीना एवं Living in comfort and being
आम लोगों के दुःख से unaware of realities of others'
खुद को दूर रखना miseries.
- 191. Loaves and fishes** व्यक्तिगत लाभ Material benefit.
- 192. Look off colours** अस्वस्थ दिखाई देना Look ill or unhealthy.
- 193. Look through coloured glasses** इरुठे आवरण से देखना To see with different/ wrong
views.
- 194. Lump in the throat** गला भर जाना (भावनात्मक क्षण में) A tight or uncomfortable feeling
in throat due to emotions.
- 195. Mad as a march hare** सिरफिरा Crazy and insane.
- 196. Make a clean breast** सच कबूल लेना To confess especially something
bad or illegal.
- 197. Maiden name** विवाहिता स्त्री का विवाह से A women's surname before
पूर्व का नाम marriage.
- 198. Maiden speech** प्रथम सार्वजनिक भाषण First speech.
- 199. Make a hash** गड़बड़ कर देना To mess up.
- 200. Make a mountain out of a mole hill** बात का बतांगड़ बनाना To exaggerate a minor difficulty.
- 201. Make both ends meet** ... आय के अंदर ही गुजारा करना.. To live within one's means.
- 202. Make hay while the sun shines** मौके का लाभ उठाना To take the benefit of an
opportunity.
- 203. Make or mar** बनाना या बिगाड़ना To make or destroy.
- 204. Make the best of both the worlds** दोनों हाथ में लड्डू Getting benefited from both the
sides.
- 205. Make up one's mind** निश्चय करना To decide.
- 206. Man of means** समृद्ध व्यक्ति A wealthy man.
- 207. Man of iron** दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति वाला Man with strong will-power.
- 208. Man of letter** विद्वान आदमी Learned person.
- 209. Man of parts** सुयोग्य व्यक्ति A man of qualities.
- 210. Man of spirit** उत्साहित व्यक्ति A man full of enthusiasm.
- 211. Man of straw** वह आदमी जिसका कोई मत न हो A weak person.

Idioms And Phrases - 1

- 212. Man of the world** अनुभवी व्यक्ति An experienced person.
- 213. Man of word** जुबान का सच्चा True to one's word.
- 214. Mare's nest** झूठी अफवाह A false invention.
- 215. Midas touch** जादूई शक्ति (जिस काम में हाथ A man with extraordinary लगाए वह लाभदायक सिद्ध हो) power or capacity to make any venture profitable.
- 216. Mince matters** ज्यादा सख्त शब्दों के प्रयोग से बचना To moderate or restrain one's language.
- 217. To Mind one's P's and Q's** शिष्टाचार का पूरा ध्यान रखना .. Taking care of behaviour properly.
- 218. Miss the beat** अवसर खोना To lose an opportunity.
- 219. Mother wit** आम जानकारी Common sense.
- 220. Move heaven and earth** आकाश-पाताल एक करना To try one's best.
- 221. Much cry and little wool/राई का पहाड़ बनाना** Lot of fanfare for something which has very little importance.
- 222. Narrow escape/Close Shave** बाल-बाल बचना To escape by a little margin.
- 223. Nig-nag** जो लगातार परेशान करें A noun used to address someone (African-American (with joke or frustration).
के लिए नस्ल-सूचक शब्द
के रूप में प्रयुक्त शब्द)
- 224. Nine day's wonder** कम समय का सुख (चार दिन की चाँती) Something that arouses great interest but for a very short period.
- 225. Nip in the bud** आरंभ में ही नष्ट कर देना..... To put on end to something in its initial stage.
- 226. Null and void** बेकार Ineffective.
- 227. Nurse a grudge** शत्रुता भाव कायम रखना Bear resentment for long period.
- 228. Oily tongue** खुशामद की भाषा Flattering words.
- 229. On one's guard** सावधान/सचेत रहना Vigilant.
- 230. On one's last legs** खत्म होने की स्थिति में होना ... Close to collapsing.
- 231. Once for all** हमेशा के लिए (काम खत्म करना) For the last time/ Conclusively.
- 232. Open question** सवाल जिस का एक से अधिक . A question which may have more उत्तर हो सकता है। than one answer.
- 233. Palmy days** अच्छे व शांतिपूर्ण दिन Prosperous/ affluent days.
- 234. Pandora's box** समस्याओं का भंडार A source of extensive but (जिससे वाकिफ न हो) unforeseen troubles.
- 235. Part and parcel** आवश्यक अंग Inseparable part.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

- 236. Past master** विशेषज्ञ An expert.
- 237. Pay the piper** खर्च वहन करना To bear the cost of something/ some service rendered.
- 238. Pay through his nose** अत्यधिक खर्च वहन करना To pay dearly.
- 239. Penny wise pound foolish** छोटे खर्च में किफायत करना Careful about trifles but wasteful और बड़ी रकम उड़ाना in large ventures.
- 240. Pick up the gauntlet** चैलेंज कबूल कर लेना To accept the challenge.
- 241. Play ducks and drakes** .. पैसे बर्बाद करना To waste money.
- 242. Play second fiddle** निचला स्थान स्वीकारना To be at a subordinate position.
- 243. Play truant** बिना इजाजत काम से To be absent from duty without गायब रहना permission.
- 244. Poison someone's ears** .. कान भरना To speak against one to another.
- 245. Poke one's nose** टाँग अड़ाना To Interfere.
- 246. Pour oil on troubled waters** क्रोध शांत करना To pacify the matters.
- 247. Pros and cons** पक्ष और विपक्ष For and against.
- 248. Pull ones' legs** टाँग खिंचना (मजाक उड़ाना) ... To make fun of or to tease.
- 249. Pull the wool over somebody's eyes** धोखा देना To mislead.
- 250. Put a spoke in one's wheel** तंग करना/ बाधा उत्पन्न करना ... To obstruct.
- 251. Put in cold storage** काम को लम्बित कर देना To keep a work pending.
- 252. Put one's foot down** अपने प्राधिकार को दर्शाना To act firmly.
- 253. Put one's shoulders to the wheel** स्वयं अपने प्रयासो से किसी To work or exert oneself heavily.
- 254. Put the cart before the horse** कोई काम उल्टे सिरे से To do things wrongly.
- प्रारंभ करना
- 255. Put the cat among pigeons** गलत काम/ बात से काफी To say/ do something that लोगों का गुस्सा भड़का देना causes trouble or make many very angry.
- 256. Quarrel with one's bread and butter** जहाँ से रोजी-रोटी मिलती To fight with the executive or है, वहाँ के वरिष्ठ अधिकारी employer, who is providing one's से लड़ना means of living.
- 257. Queer fish** अजीब व्यवहार वाला व्यक्ति Strange person.
- 258. Rain cats and dogs** तेज बारिश होना Rain very heavily.
- 259. Rainy day** आर्थिक कष्ट के दिन Future time of need, especially financial need.
- 260. Read between the lines** . छिपा हुआ अर्थ समझ जाना To understand the hidden meaning.

Idioms And Phrases - 1

- 261. Red handed** अपराध करते समय Exactly while committing a crime or doing something wrong
- 262. Red letter day** सौभाग्य का अत्यन्त A memorably important or happy महत्वपूर्ण दिन occasion.
- 263. Red tapism** लाल फीताशाही Strict adherence to excessive paper work and official formalities.
- 264. Rest on one's laurels** भूतकाल के उपलब्धि Depending on the achievement पर निर्भर रहना made in the past.
- 265. Rhyme or reason** किसी भी कारण से Sense, logic or meaning.
- 266. Right hand man** मुख्य सहायक व्यक्ति One's most valuable assistant or supporter.
- 267. Rise like a phoenix** बहुत बड़ी समस्या से उबर कर .. निकल आना To make a miraculous comeback after a seemingly insurmountable setback.
- 268. Rock the boat** संतुलन बिगाड़ना To disturb a situation which was otherwise stable.
- 269. Rolling stone** जो स्थिरता के साथ कार्य नहीं करता है A restless person.
- 270. Royal road** आसान रास्ता An easy or direct way of achieving a desired result.
- 271. Rule the roost** रोब जमाना To dominate.
- 272. Run amuck** सनक सवार होना Mad with murderous frenzy.
- 273. Run in the same groove** संबंधों को मधुर बनाए रखना Maintaining a sweet relationship.
- 274. Run-of-the mill** सामान्य Average/ common.
- 275. Run the gauntlet** बुरे अनुभव से गुजरना To go through an unpleasant experience.
- 276. Sail under false colours** धोखा देना To pretend to be something that you are not.
- 277. Save ones' skin** स्वयं को बचाना To save oneself.
- 278. See eye-to-eye** पूर्णतः सहमत होना Showing agreement/ to agree.
- 279. See pink elephants** अत्यधिक नशा के Any visual hallucination arising कारण उन चीज़ों को देखना due to intoxication.
जो वास्तव में न हो
- 280. See red** गुस्से में होना Be very angry.
- 281. See through** समझ जाना Comprehend/ understand.
- 282. Set at naught** असम्मान करना To disregard or treat as of no importance.
- 283. Set one's face against** ... कड़ा विरोध करना To oppose with determination.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

- 284. Set one's heart on** बहुत चाहना To have as one's ambition to obtain something.
- 285. Set one's teeth on edge**. परेशान करना To irritate or annoy someone.
- 286. Set the Thames on fire** . आश्चर्यजनक कार्य करना To achieve something amazing.
- 287. Shoulder to shoulder** पूर्ण सहयोग के साथ With united effort.
- 288. Show white feather** भय प्रदर्शित करना To show cowardice.
- 289. Sine die** अनिश्चित काल के लिए Indefinitely.
- 290. Sit on the fence** किसी का पक्ष नहीं लेना Refuse to take side in a dispute.
- 291. Slip of the tongue** जुबान फिसलना Spoken unintentionally.
- 292. Slow coach** आलसी व्यक्ति A person with lazy approach of working.
- 293. Small fry** गैर महत्वपूर्ण व्यक्ति Insignificant person.
- 294. Smell a rat** कुछ गलत है-ये To suspect of something wrong done.
- 295. Smooth sailing** परेशानी के बिना Easy progress.
- 296. Snake in the grass** आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र ... A secret enemy.
- 297. Shake in the shoes** डर से काँपना A tremble with fear or apprehension.
- 298. Sow the dragon's teeth** . भविष्य के लिए फेरशानी To create future troubles for yourself or others.
- 299. Speak one's mind** मन की बात करना Speak what one really thinks.
- 300. Spick and span** साफ-सुथरा In order/ neat and clean.
-
- 301. Stand on one's own legs** आत्म-निर्भर होना To be self dependent.
- 302. Stand/Stick to one's guns** अटल रहना To be strict and determined.
- 303. Stand somebody in** लाभदायक सिद्ध होना To be of great use and benefit to someone.
- 304. Steal a march** चुपके से लाभ प्राप्त कर लेना... To obtain an advantage by secret means.
- 305. Step into another's shoes** किसी दूसरे की जगह लेना To take over a job/responsibility of some other person.
- 306. Stiff-necked person** ढीट Stubborn or arrogant.
- 307. Stir a finger** कोशिश करना Making effort.
- 308. Stone's throw** बहुत नजदीक Very near.
- 309. Street Arabs** बेघर एवं अनाथ A homeless person (especially who survives by begging).
- 310. Sum and substance** सारांश Main idea or gist.
- 311. Swan song** मरने/ सेवानिवृति के पहले की... The last ceremony or farewell. बिदाई संगीत या समारोह

Idioms And Phrases - 1

- 312. Sweat of one's brow** कड़ी मेहनत Hard labour.
- 313. Swelled head** घमड़ी Grand opinion of oneself/conceited.
- 314. Sworn enemies** कट्टर दुश्मन People hating each other a lot.
- 315. Take away one's breath**. भौचक्का कर देना To overwhelm with surprise.
- 316. Take by storm** अचानक प्रभावित करना To surprise unexpectedly.
- 317. Take into account** पर विचार करना To consider.
- 318. Take one at one's word**.. किसी के कहने पर..... To be convinced of one's sincerity and act in accordance with his/her statement.
- 319. Take the bull by the horns** संकट का सीधा एवं खतरनाक ... To adopt the most direct but the most dangerous way of facing adifficulty.
- 320. Take to one's heels** भाग जाना To run away.
- 321. Talk big** डोंगे मारना To boast or brag.
- 322. Talk of the town** चर्चित बात To be the person or subject everyone is talking about.
- 323. The printer's devils** छपाई त्रुटि Error in printing.
- 324. Think twice** सोच समझ कर निर्णय लेना To consider carefully before deciding.
- 325. Through thick and thin** . सभी परिस्थितियों में In good and bad times.
- 326. Throw cold water upon** .. हातोत्साहित करना To discourage.
- 327. Throw down the gauntlet** चैलेंज करना To challenge.
- 328. Tooth and nail** पूरी ताकत से Violently.
- 329. True to one's salt** वफादार/ नमक हलाल Loyal person.
- 330. Turn a deaf ear to** अनसुना करना Not to pay attention to.
- 331. Turn over a new leaf** बुरे आचरण छोड़ अच्छी दिशा .. To be entirely changed (for good). में पूर्ण रूप से बदलना
- 332. Turn the corner** किसी कार्य में आये संकटपूर्ण ... To pass through a critical point स्थिति से उबर जाना in a process.
- 333. Turn turtle** उलट-पलट जाना To overturn.
- 334. Turn up one's nose at**.... नीचा समझना To take lightly with contempt.
- 335. Under the nose of** आँखों के सामने, नाक के नीचे . Right in front of someone.
- 336. Under the thumb of** के वश में होना Under the power or influence of.
- 337. Up and doing** काम में सक्रिय रूप से लगना ... Active in work.
- 338. Up one's sleeves** छिपा के रखी गई वस्तु जिसका . An item kept hidden and used प्रयोग जरूरत पड़ने पर करें whenever required.

Idioms Ans Phrases - 1

- 339. Uphill task** बहुत कठिन कार्य Difficult task.
- 340. Upon one's sweet will** अपनी इच्छा पर On self desire or wish.
- 341. Ups and downs** उतार-चढ़ाव Good and bad times.
- 342. Utopian scheme** आदर्श किन्तु कार्यान्वित न A visionary scheme though होने वाली योजना Impractical.
- 343. Weather the storm** समस्या से मुकाबला कर Survive by coming out of सुरक्षित बाहर निकलना difficulties.
- 344. Well-to-do** सम्प्रांत Affluent.
- 345. Wet blanket** मजा किरकिरा करने वाला One who spoils the enjoyment.
- 346. Wheels within wheels** ... जटिल कार्य का और A series of intricately connected जटिल होना events
- 347. White elephant** महंगा परंतु बेकार Expensive but of no use.
- 348. White lie** छोटा एवं गैर-महत्वपूर्ण झूठ A minor lie.
- 349. Will O' the wisp** भ्रामक उम्मीद Elusive/ unreal.
- 350. Windfall** ऐसा लाभ जिस की Sudden gain received उम्मीद ना हो unexpectedly.
- 351. With a grain of salt** स्वीकार करना लेकिन शंका के साथ To accept with misgiving.
- 352. With one accord/ in one voice** एक स्वर में Unanimously.
- 353. Wolf in sheep's clothing** मित्रता जताने वाला A malicious person in harmless खतरनाक आदमी or benevolent disguise.
- 354. Word for word** शब्दशः In exactly the same word.
- 355. Word of mouth** अनौपचारिक वार्तालाप Informal oral communication.
- 356. Yeoman's service** अति उत्तम Excellent work.

23

IDIOMS AND PHRASES - 2

CHAPTER

'LET'S USE THEM IN SENTENCES'

1. **Above board** (*honest and straightforward, इमानदारी एवं निःछल*) - Gandhi ji was above board and hence had nothing to hide.
2. **Adam's ale** (*pure water, शुद्ध जल*) - In the remotest parts of Rajasthan, people walk miles for Adam's ale.
3. **Add a new feather in one's cap** (*to acquire a new honour or distinction, कोई नया सम्मान प्राप्त करना*) - Paramount Coaching Centre has added a new feather in its cap by starting Paramount Reader Publication .
4. **Add insult to injury** (*to harm as well as humiliate, जले पर नमक छिड़कना*) - She has added insult to injury by returning the gift and sending a 'get lost' note.
5. **After one's own heart** (*similar to you, जो आप के जैसा ही है*) - Seeing your inclination towards art and Literature, I can say that you are clearly a person after my own heart.
6. **An eye wash** (*a pretence, दिखावा*) - The whole investigation was just an eye wash as no one was held guilty.
7. **An hair-breadth escape** (*very narrow escape, बाल-बाल बचना*) - He had a hair-breadth escape when his bike skid on the oil drenched road.
8. **An old flame** (*long time love, पुराना आग*) - He met his old flame in the market yesterday but prudently avoided eye contact .
9. **An old head on young shoulders** (*to be more matured than one's own age, अपनी उम्र से ज्यादा समझदार होना*) - He is an old head on young shoulders as he teaches Physics at a university at an young age of 25 .
10. **As fit as a fiddle** (*strong and healthy, स्वस्थ*) - He feigned illness but I knew that he was as fit as a fiddle.
11. **Assume airs** (*to pretend superiority, बड़प्पन दिखाना*) - After becoming an IAS officer he has assumed airs.
12. **At a stone's throw** (*at a little distance, थोड़ी दूरी पर*) - Lal Quila is at a stone's throw from my house.
13. **At large** (*absconding, कानून के गिरफ्त से दूर*) - Many terrorists are at large and posing serious threat to the security of India.
14. **At logger heads** (*to be at strife, शत्रुता की अवस्था*) - Congress is always at logger heads with the BJP.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

15. **At naught** (*to disregard or treat as of no importance*, असम्मान करना)- Leaders today set Gandhiji's ideals at naught.
16. **At odds** (*in disagreement*, असहमत होना)- Various political parties are at odds in the matter of Women Reservation Bill.
17. **At sea** (*to be confused*, उलझन में)- He was at sea when he saw the question paper.
18. **At one's beck and call** (*at service*, आज्ञा में हाजिर रहना)- The servants were always at the beck and call of the rich merchant.
19. **Back stairs influence** (*improper and private influence*, ऐसा प्रभाव जो असार्वजनिक हो एवं सही नहीं है)- He tried to get a government job by back stair influence.
20. **Bad egg** (*a worthless person*, अवाञ्छित व्यक्ति)- Often a prodigal son of a rich father becomes a bad egg for the society.
21. **Bandy words** (*to argue*, जुबान लड़ना)- The two neighbours usually bandy words and create a lot of nuisance.
22. **Bank upon** (*depend on, count on*, पर निर्भर होना)- You can bank upon us at the time of need.
23. **Bated breath** (*holding your breath, in anxiety*, चिंता इत्यादि से साँस रुकना)- We waited for the good news outside the delivery room with bated breath.
24. **Caught red-handed** (*to be caught while committing a crime*, रंगे हाथ पकड़े जाना)- My brother felt ashamed when he was caught red handed reading my personal diary.
25. **Be in bad books of** (*out of favour*, कृपा पात्र न होना)- She is in bad books of her parents as she went to see a movie without informing them.
26. **Be in bad odour of** (*to be out of favour*, किसी की बुरी राय में होना)- A corrupt minister is always in bad odour of the public.
27. **Be in good books of** (*to be in kind favour*, कृपा पात्र होना)- She is in good books of her employer as she is very efficient and hardworking.
28. **Be in good odour of** (*to be in good favour*, किसी की अच्छी राय में होना)- An honest minister is always in good odour of the public.
29. **Be in the driving seat** (*to take the whole responsibility*, सारी जिम्मेदारी का भार उठाना)- Ramesh is the eldest son and so he is in the driving seat after his father's death.
30. **Bear the palm** (*to be victorious*, विजयी होना)- Our school bore the palm in the dance competition held at the district level.
31. **Beat the air** (*to make useless efforts*, व्यर्थ प्रयास करना)- Trying to reform a hard-core criminal is like beating the air.
32. **Bed of roses** (*an easy and comfortable situation*, सरल और आराम की स्थिति)- The life of the prince was a bed of roses.
33. **Bee in one's bonnet** (*go on talking about something which other people think is not important*, राग अलापना उस बात का जो दूसरों के लिए महत्वपूर्ण नहीं हो)- She has a bee in her bonnet about recycling of waste material.
34. **Behind the scene** (*secretly, छिपे रूप में*)- The minister is the mastermind behind the scene and the police are arresting small fries.
35. **Below the belt** (*to strike unfairly*, गलत तरीके से प्रहर करना)- One must compete with others in a fair manner and should not hit anyone below the belt.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

36. **Beside oneself** (*to feel extremely nervous or worried*, बहुत अधिक चिन्तीत या व्याकल होना)- Before any exam I am beside myself.
37. **Beside the mark** (*irrelevant*, अप्रासंगिक)- The judge did not hear any argument that was beside the mark.
38. **Between Scylla and Charybdis** (*between two great dangers*, दो कठिन परिस्थितियों के बीच)- She is between Scylla and Charybdis: If she obeys her mother-in-law she will lose her job and if she does not she will lose her family.
39. **Bid defiance** (*to defy*, अवज्ञा करना)- The army is bidding defiance by going against the government.
40. **Bite the dust** (*to be defeated*, हार जाना)- In every match , the Pakistani team bit the dust.
41. **Blaze the trail** (*to be pioneer and make path for others*, दूसरों के लिए रास्ता बनाना)- Only a man of iron can blaze the trail.
42. **Blessing in disguise** (*something intrinsically good but having a bad appearance*, ऊपर से बुरी दिखने वाली पर वास्तव में अच्छी बात)- He missed the train but it was a blessing in disguise as the train met with an accident.
43. **Blow one's own trumpet** (*to praise one's ownself*, अपनी ही शोखी बधारना)- Every political party always blows its own trumpet and denounces the other political parties.
44. **Blue stocking** (*an educated intellectual lady*, पढ़ी लिखी महिला)- A blue stocking was rarely found in Medieval India.
45. **Book worm** (*a bibliophilic person*, किताबी कोड़ा)- She is not a book worm but still comes first.
46. **Break the ice** (*to break silence by speaking first*, निस्तब्धाता तोड़ना)- Shyam broke the ice by talking to me after a long time.
47. **Bring down the house** (*receive great applause*, भरपूर तारीफ पाना)- The performance of Lata Mangeshkar brought the house down.
48. **Bring home** (*to explain*, समझाना)- I was unable to bring my views home before my parents.
49. **Bring to book** (*to punish*, सजा देना)- The guilty should be brought to book.
50. **Bring to light** (*to disclose*, पता लगाना, छिपी बात को प्रकाश में लाना)- The CBI has brought many indiscretions to light in many high profile cases.
51. **Brow beat** (*to intimidate*, डराना)- The Government must not brow beat the social reformers if they protest against any unjust law.
52. **Burn one's boats** (*point of no return*, वापसी का रास्ता बंद कर देना)- By signing the agreement he burnt his boat. Now he will have to work in this organization for two more years.
53. **By and by** (*gradually*, धीरे-धीरे)- You will learn the norms of this organization by and by.
54. **By and large** (*on the whole*, संपूर्ण रूप से देखने पर)- My friend is by and large an honest person.
55. **By dint of** (*by means of*, के बल पर)- You can succeed by dint of hard work only.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

56. **By fair or foul means** (*by any way right or wrong*, सही या गलत किसी भी प्रकार से)- He will try to get a job by fair or foul means but will ultimately lose his peace of mind.
57. **By the rule of thumb** (*according to practical experience*, व्यवहारिक रूप से)- By rule of thumb we must not allow children to take major decisions.
58. **Call a spade and spade** (*to be frank*, मुंहफट बात करना)- He never hesitated in calling a spade a spade and hence he has few friends.
59. **Call names** (*to abuse*, गाली देना)- He has a bad habit of calling names.
60. **Capital punishment** (*death penalty*, मौत की सजा)- Capital punishment should be abolished as it is the cruelest form of punishment.
61. **Carrot and stick policy** (*reward and punishment policy*, इनाम और सजा की पॉलिसी)- The multinational companies adopt carrot and stick policy to get maximum output.
62. **Carry matters with a high hand** (*to deal with a person strictly*, सख्ती से निपटना)- The police carry matters with high hand.
63. **Cast a slur** (*to bring disgrace*, अपयोग का कारण बनना)- Taking bribe could cast a slur on the honour of your family.
64. **Cave in** (*yield*, झुक जाना)- One must not cave in under pressure or temptation.
65. **Chapter and verse** (*in full detail*, पूर्ण विवरण के साथ)- I cannot narrate the whole incident in chapter and verse.
66. **Cheek by jowl** (*close together*, साथ-साथ)- Many poor people live cheek by jowl in a small room.
67. **Child's play** (*a very easy task*, बच्चों का खेल)- It is not a child's play to address a crowd.
68. **Clinch the issue** (*to clear the controversy*, विवाद खत्म करना)- The college administration clinched the issue by accepting the demands of the students.
69. **Clip one's wings** (*to weaken the power*, पर करना)- Sonia Gandhi clipped the wings of some ministers by withdrawing the powers delegated to them.
70. **Close shave** (*a narrow escape*, बाल-बाल बचना)- His family had a close shave in the bus accident.
71. **Cloven hoof** (*symbol of disgrace or evil intention*, असम्मान या शैतानी इरादे का प्रतीक)- Usually some or other leader of the BJP shows cloven hoof to the BJP leadership.
72. **Cock a snook** (*to show impudent contempt*, असम्मान प्रकट करना)- He refused to accept the award, cocking a snook at the Filmfare Award jury.
73. **Cock sure** (*very sure and certain*, सुनिश्चित होना)- I am cock sure, we will win the match.
74. **Cold reception** (*not a hearty welcome*, जो गर्मजोरी से भरा स्वागत नहीं हो)- We were very unhappy when we were given cold reception at his marriage party.
75. **Come across** (*meet by chance*, अचानक मुलाकात होना)- I came across a problem when I was solving the equation.
76. **Come home to** (*to understand*, समझ में आना)- At last, it came home and we got the correct answer.
77. **Come in handy** (*to be useful*, काम का होना)- This opener comes in handy when we need to open this container.
78. **Come to a pass** (*a difficult situation*, किसी घटना का होना)- The accident came to pass due to the negligence of the driver.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

79. **Come true** (*to prove true, सही साबित होना*) – My dreams have come true as I have got selected.
80. **Cool one's heels** (*to be kept waiting, इन्तजार कराया जाना*) – We sat down and cooled our heels for the minister who didn't turn up.
81. **Corporal punishment** (*bodily punishment, शारीरिक दण्ड*) – Corporal punishment is banned in schools.
82. **Count chickens before they are hatched** (*To anticipate profit before hand, पहले से लाभ का विवास कर लेना*) – Don't dream of profit now as it is futile to count your chickens before they are hatched.
83. **Cross one's mind** (*to occur to oneself, अचानक दिमाग में आना*) – I was resting when suddenly a new idea crossed my mind.
84. **Curry favour** (*to win favour by flattery, खुशामद करके के कृपा का पात्र बनना*) – Many developing countries curry favour with America.
85. **Curtain lecture** (*a private scolding by wife to her husband, अकेले में पति को दी गई डॉट*) – Don't tell me that your father has never got any curtain lecture in his life.
86. **Cut both ends** (*to argue in support of both sides of the issue, दोनों पक्षों के तरफ से तर्क देना*) – Mahesh always cuts both ends and hence he has neither friends nor foes.
87. **Cut the Gordian knot** (*to solve a difficult problem, किसी कठिन समस्या का हल निकालना*) – The national leaders cut the Gordian knot by making India a secular country.
88. **Cut throat** (*tough, कठीन*) – We face cut throat competition in every field.
89. **Damp squib** (*complete failure though earlier thought to be exciting, पूर्ण असफलता, जो लगता था उत्तेजनात्मक होगा*) – The performance of team India turned out to be a damp squib.
90. **Dance attendance upon** (*to be in servile attitude all the time, चापलत्सी करना/ हाजिरी बजाना*) – The mother-in-law wanted the lady to dance attendance upon her.
91. **Dark Horse** (*unexpected winner, अप्रत्याशित विजेता*) – An unknown independent candidate came out as a dark horse after the election.
92. **Days of reckoning** (*a time when the effects of one's past mistakes or misdeed catch up with one, जब भूतकाल में की गई गलतियों का असर दिखने लगे*) – You have been manipulating the account for a long time. Now days of reckoning have come.
93. **Dead broke** (*penniless, दिवालिया*) – Due to recession he has become a dead broke.
94. **Die-hard** (*obstinately resistant to change, परिवर्तन के खिलाफ दृढ़ता से होना*) – He is a die-hard fan of Devanand.
95. **Dig one's own grave** (*to do something which causes you harm, ऐसा कृत्य जो मुसीबत में डाल दे*) – You are digging your own grave by writing your pass word in your diary.
96. **Dog's life** (*very miserable life, कष्टदायक जीवन*) – Due to unchecked inflation, the poor are living a dog's life.
97. **Double dealing** (*deceitful actions, धोखेबाजी के कार्य*) – The double dealing of the lawyer was exposed by a sting operation.
98. **Double-edged sword** (*act that will harm oneself as well as the others, ऐसा कार्य जो दूसरे को और स्वयं को भी नुकसान पहुंचा सके*) – Corruption is a doubled edged sword for the public as well as the Government.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

99. **Down and out** (*lacking funds, resources or prospects*, फण्ड, संपदा इत्यादि की कमी होना)- He was down and out when his factory was burnt to the ground.
100. **Down in the mouth** (*filled with melancholy and despondency*, दुख एवं निराशा से भा होना)- She was down in the mouth when she saw her husband's dead body.
101. **Draconian law** (*extremely severe law*, अत्यन्त क्रूर कानून)- There are still many draconian laws in under developed countries.
102. **Draw the long bow** (*to tell large stories or to exaggerate*, लम्बी कहानियाँ बनाना या बढ़ा-चढ़ा कर कुछ बताना)- Come to the point. Don't draw a long bow.
103. **Drawn battle / match** (*a battle or match in which no party wins*, बराबर की बाजी होना)- The drawn battle created a lot of excitement till the last ball.
104. **Drop in the ocean** (*very insignificant amount*, अत्यन्त ही थोड़ी मात्रा)- My knowledge about Archeology is only a drop in the ocean.
105. **Ducks and drakes** (*to waste money*, पैसे बर्बाद करना)- I cannot allow you to play ducks and drakes with my hard earned money.
106. **Dutch courage** (*bravery under alcoholic influence*, शराब के नशे में दिखाये जाना वाला साहस)- His dutch courage will vanish when he will gain his sense.
107. **Easy money** (*bribe, रिश्वत*)- Many officers make easy money.
108. **Eat one's word** (*to admit that something you said in the past was wrong*, ये स्वीकार करना कि कही हुई बात गलत थी)- Those who said that Amitabh Bachhan's charm was over had to eat their word after the success of Kaun Banega Crorepati.
109. **Egg on** (*to urge somebody to do some thing that is generally wrong*, कुछ गलत कार्य करने के लिए प्रोत्साहित करना)- He egged me on to drive faster.
110. **Eke out** (*to support (existence) with difficulty and effort or to add (something insufficient), especially with effort*, बहुत मुश्किल से कुछ उपलब्ध कराना)- He is trying to eke out an income by doing over time.
111. **Elixir of life** (*nectar of life*, जीवन का अमृत)- Contentment is the elixir of life.
112. **Enough and to spare** (*plentiful, प्रचुर मात्रा में*)- He earns enough and to spare.
113. **Ever and Anon** (*now and then, जब-जब*)- The night was dark and we could hear the howling of dogs ever and anon.
114. **Every dog has his day** (*good fortune comes sooner or later*, अच्छा दिन सबका आता है)- When he bagged three movies in a row, he realized that every dog has his day.
115. **Every Inch** (*Completely, पूर्ण रूप से*- She is an honest person by every inch .
116. **Eye wash** (*ineffective remedy which is just for show*, सिर्फ दिखावे का)- The committee set up to look into the multiple scams was just an eye wash.
117. **See eye-to-eye** (*showing agreement/ to agree*, पूर्णतः सहमत होना)- The two competitors never see eye to eye.
118. **Face the music** (*to face opposition*, कठिनाई या विरोध का सामना करना)- Every leader has to face the music if he doesn't fulfill promises made by him.
119. **Fan the flame** (*to aggravate*, बढ़ाव बनाना)- I don't want to fan the flame of the tension between the husband and the wife.
120. **Few and far between** (*very rare*, बहुत कम)- The houses in this remote village are few and far away.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

121. **Fight to the finish** (*to fight to the end*, आखिरी नतीजे तक लड़ना)- When she was blamed and sued without any rhyme or reason, she pledged to fight the case to the finish.
122. **Fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the difficulties of others*, दूसरों की परेशानी का लाभ उठाना)- Many lawyers don't hesitate from fishing in troubled waters.
123. **Fit to hold a candle to** (*match for, equal in quality*, बराबरी का होना)- He is such a miser that he is not fit to hold a candle of such a lavish reception.
124. **Flash in the pan** (*something or someone that became successful quickly and is unlikely to be repeated*, अस्कमात सफलता पाना जो क्षणिक हो और भविष्य में फिर शायद न हो)- The success of Kumar Gaurav in his debut movie 'Love Story' was a flash in the pan.
125. **Flesh and blood** (*human nature or physical existence, together with its weaknesses / substance and depth in artistic portrayal*, हाड़-माँस का होना/ किसी कला में पायी जाने वाली गहराई)- The movies of late seventies lacked flesh and blood with their ketchup blood and round the tree romance.
126. **Flog a dead horse** (*to waste one's energy*, बेकार की कोशीश करना)- Trying to reform a terrorist is like flogging a dead horse.
127. **Fly in the face of** (*to defy/ to brave/ to withstand*, अवज्ञा करना/ साहस से सामना करना)- The theory about the existence of heaven and hell flies in the face of all logic and common sense.
128. **Fly into a passion** (*to be enraged*, क्रोधित होना)- He flies into a passion within seconds if someone ignores his instructions.
129. **Fool's errand** (*a fruitless mission or undertaking*, निष्फल कार्य)- Many projects of Mohammad -bin-tuglaq were fool's errand.
130. **Foot the bill** (*bear expenses*, खर्च वहन करना)- You had ordered these tasteless pizzas . Now you will have to foot the bill.
131. **For good** (*for ever*, हमेशा के लिए) He educated him and sent him to America for good.
132. **For the rainy day** (*precaution for emergency*, कठिन परिस्थितियों के लिये प्रबन्ध)- I have kept some money in the bank for the rainy days.
133. **Foul Play** (*treachery*, धोखाधड़ी)- Foul play destroys the fun of life.
134. **French leave** (*leave without information*, बिना सूचना के अनुपस्थित होना)- If you take french leave, you will be fined.
135. **From the bottom of one's heart** (*very sincerely*, अन्तर मन से)- I thanked him from the bottom of my heart for his timely help.
136. **Gain ground** (*to progress/ advance*, तरक्की करना/ वर्चस्व बढ़ाना)- Due to the misgovernance by the ruling party, the opposition is gaining ground.
137. **Gentleman at large** (*wealthy man with time on his hands*, धनी व्यक्ति जिसके पास समय की कमी न हो)- Here he was, talking like a gentleman at large who was free to come and go and roam about the world at pleasure,
138. **Get down to brass tacks** (*discuss the basic facts or realities/ to deal with the matter straight*, किसी मुख्य विषय पर चर्चा करना)- After avoiding the thorny question of tax reforms for months, the ruling party finally got down to brass tacks last week and drafted a preliminary proposal.
139. **Get into a scrape** (*find oneself in a difficult or awkward situation*, खुद को मुश्किल हालात में पाना)- By signing the bond he will get into a scrape.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 140. Get the better of** (*to overcome, काबू पा लेना*) – At last he got the better of his problems and opponents.
- 141. Get wind of** (*to know the secret, भेद जान लेना*) – The opposition got the wind of the plans of the ruling party.
- 142. Gird up the loin** (*to be well prepared for some difficult task, किसी कठिन कार्य को करने के लिए कमर कस कर तैयार होना*) – If we all gird up the loin, we can remove illiteracy.
- 143. Give a wide berth** (*to give ample space or distance to avoid an unwanted consequence, किसी अवांछनिय नतीजे से बचने के लिए दूरी बनाये रखना*) – Being an understanding father, you should give a wide berth to your son and wait for the right time to talk to him.
- 144. Give cold shoulder** (*pay no attention to, ध्यान न देना*) – He went to the police for help but they gave him cold shoulder.
- 145. Give somebody enough rope (to hang themselves)** (*to allow someone to do what he wants to, knowing that he will probably fail or get into trouble, किसी को कुछ करने की अनुमति दे देना ये जानते हुए कि वह असफल हो जाएगा।*) – Don't stop him. Give him enough rope to hang. He will be rejected for his poor performance and will return home.
- 146. Give the devil his due** (*even the wicked person should be given the credit due to him, बुरे आदमी की भी उचित प्रशंसा करना*) – In spite of being so rude, he helped me in need. The devil should be given his due.
- 147. Give up the ghost** (*to die, मर जाना*) – My grandfather gave up to ghost last Sunday.
- 148. Give vent to** (*to express one's thoughts or feelings, अपने विचारों या भावनाओं को प्रकट करना*) – Every Indian is free to give vent to his thoughts.
- 149. Wool-gathering** (*to engage in fanciful daydreaming, मनभावन कल्पना में खोए रहना*) – Work hard. Wool gathering will not help you in any way.
- 150. Go back on one's word** (*to change one's mind about/ repudiate, बात से पीछे हट जाना*) – She has decided to do charity and she should not go back on her word.
- 151. Go broke** (*become bankrupt, दिवालिया होना*) – He has gone broke and is unable to make both ends meet..
- 152. Whole hog** (*the whole way/ Completely, पूर्ण रूप से*) – She went the whole hog and checked the account of the whole month in one go.
- 153. Golden opportunity** (*very favourable opportunity or chance, सुनहरा अवसर*) – He missed the golden opportunity by declining the offer.
- 154. Green horn** (*an inexperienced or immature person, especially one who is easily deceived, अनुभवहीन व्यक्ति जिसे बेवकूफ बनाना आसान हो*) – He incurred heavy loss because he relied on the green horn who was his own nephew.
- 155. Hang in balance** (*have two equally possible results/ be uncertain, अनिश्चय की स्थिति*) – After the opposition party won the election, whether or not the new highway will be built, hangs in the balance.
- 156. Hang over one's head** (*to have something bothering or worrying one, परेशानी या समस्या का बने रहना*) – He committed suicide because troubles and court cases hung over his head.
- 157. Hard and fast** (*definite, निश्चित*) – There is no hard and fast rule for solving these numericals.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 158. Harp on the same string** (*to keep on talking on the same topic*, एक ही विषय पर बात करते रहना)- Some obsessed people have the habit of harping on the same string.
- 159. At the nick of time** (*at the last possible moment*, ठीक समय पर)- I reached the examination hall at the nick of time.
- 160. Heart and soul** (*with complete faith and dedication*, सच्चे दिल से)- He has put heart and soul in his work.
- 161. Heart to heart** (*very frankly*, पूरे दिल से, खुले रूप से)- The two friends had a heart to heart talk as they met after many years.
- 162. Hen-pecked husband** (*admirer of one's own wife in a servile manner*, जोरु का गुलाम)- Every boy boasts, "I will never become a hen pecked husband."
- 163. Himalayan blunder** (*a serious mistake*, गंभीर गलती)- He committed a Himalayan blunder by leaving for work without his body guards and was shot dead.
- 164. Hit the nail on the head** (*to act in the right way*, ठीक नियाने पर चोट मारना)- You have hit the nail on the head by making the bid at the right time.
- 165. Hold good** (*valid/ applicable*, लागू/ उचित रहना)- Rule of triple talaq doesn't hold good even in the Islamic countries.
- 166. Hold one's ground** (*to stand firm*, दृढ़ता से डटे रहना)- The Indian soldiers held their ground to the end.
- 167. Hold one's jaw** (*to stop talking*, बोलना बन्द होना)- Please hold your jaw else I shall go away.
- 168. Hold the fort** (*to stand firm on one's position*, अपने स्थान पर डटे रहना)- Our soldiers held the fort and proved their valour.
- 169. Hold the scales even** (*to be impartial*, निष्पक्ष रहना)- The Judge must hold the scales even.
- 170. Hold water** (*to stand up to critical examination*, सही साक्षित होना)- Your argument does not hold water.
- 171. Hot water** (*trouble*, परेशानियाँ)- Your cousin is in hot water due to his controversial speech.
- 172. In a fix** (*in a difficult mental state*, मानसिक उलझन में)- He was in a fix when he saw his mother in ICU.
- 173. In a tight corner** (*in difficult situation*, मुश्किल हालात में)- I found myself in a tight corner when I lost my journey ticket.
- 174. In doldrums** (*to be depressed*, निराशा में)- He was found in doldrum when he could not succeed even in his third attempt.
- 175. In embryo** (*immature/ in the making*, अविकसित अवस्था में)- My plan of expanding my business is still in embryo.
- 176. In no time** (*in a very short time*, थोड़ी ही देर में)- He can solve any mathematical problem in no time.
- 177. In one's teens** (*from thirteen to nineteen years of age*, तेरह से उन्हीं साल तक)- A person in his teen is spirited, full of dreams and optimistic.
- 178. In the air** (*in circulation/ in people's thoughts*, चर्चा में)- News of his cold blooded murder is very much in the air.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 179. Down in the dumps** (*unhappy, depressed, दुखी/ निराश*)– He is down in the dumps after his father's death.
- 180. In the family way** (*pregnant, गर्भवती*)– She has applied for leave as she is in the family way.
- 181. In the good books of** (*to be in favour with a person, पक्ष में करना*)– People usually flatter their boss to remain in their good books.
- 182. In the jaws of** (*in the grip of, दांतों के बीच, किसी के कब्जे में*)– The boy was in the jaws of the kidnappers.
- 183. In the limelight** (*at the centre of attention, आकर्षण का केंद्र*)– Film stars are habitual of remaining in the lime light.
- 184. In the lurch** (*in a difficult and embarrassing position, मुश्किल एवं बीच मङ्गधार वाली स्थिति में*)– when the experiment failed, the subordinates left the eminent scientist in lurch.
- 185. Melting pot** (*a place where immigrants of different cultures or races form an integrated society, ऐसा स्थान जहाँ अप्रवासी लोग अपनी-अपनी सम्यता के साथ एक समाज बनाते हैं*)– With immigrants from all over the world getting an easy passage to India, our country is becoming a melting pot.
- 186. In the red** (*in debt, कर्ज में*)– The company is in the red due to its unfeasible projects.
- 187. In the teeth of** (*in opposition to or defiance of/facing danger or threats, के विरुद्ध/ खतरे का सामना करना*)– The tribe was in the teeth of starvation.
- 188. In the twinkling of an eye** (*in a moment/in no time, क्षण भर में*)– The house came down in the twinkling of an eye.
- 189. To fish in troubled waters** (*to take advantage of the problems of others, विषम परिस्थिति का लाभ उठाना*)– Many self-centred lawyers fish in troubled water.
- 190. For all intents and purposes** (*for all practical purposes, हर व्यावहारिक उद्देश्य के लिए*)– This dictionary is useful for all intents and purposes.
- 191. Snake in the grass** (*a secret enemy, आस्तीन का सांप/ कपटी मित्र*)– Politicians playing caste based politics are snakes in the grass.
- 192. Keep abreast of** (*not to fall behind, फ़ौछे न रह जाना*)– We must keep ourselves abreast of the latest development in technology.
- 193. Keep an eye on** (*to watch, नज़र रखना*)– It is very necessary for us to keep an eye on our growing children.
- 194. Keep an open table** (*to entertain all, सब का स्वागत करना*)– It is not very difficult to keep an open table in a party.
- 195. Keep at an arm's length** (*to keep at a distance, दूरी बना कर रखना*)– You must keep bad habits at arm's length.
- 196. Keep at bay** (*To keep someone at a distance, दूर रखना*)– He held the police at bay with a gun for several hours.
- 197. Keep body and soul together** (*to be able to pay for just those things that you need in order to live, सिर्फ जीवन-यापन भर का जुगाड़ कर पाना*)– They can barely keep body and soul together on what he earns.
- 198. Keep the pot boiling** (*to keep going on actively, जीवन चर्चा जारी रखना*)– One has to keep the pot boiling inspite of all odds one has to face in life.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 199. Keep up appearance** (*to keep one's prestige/to maintain outward show*, बाहरी दिखावा बनाये रखना)- Inspite of being a bankrupt, he is able to keep up his appearance.
- 200. Kick one's heels** (*wait impatiently to be summoned*, बुलावे के लिए बेसब्री से इंतजार करना)- The whole day we kicked our heels outside the court room.
- 201. Kick the bucket** (*to die*, मर जाना)- He kicked the bucket and left his family in extreme financial difficulty.
- 202. Kill the fat calf for** (*to arrange a lavish reception for someone*, किसी का धूमधाम से स्वागत करना)- India killed the fat calf for the Common Wealth Games.
- 203. Kiss the dust** (*to be humiliated*, अपमानित होना)- In Indo-Pak war our enemies had to kiss the dust.
- 204. Knock against** (*to hit against*, टक्कर खाना)- I couldn't see the transparent door and knocked against it.
- 205. Lapped in luxury** (*brought up in luxury*, विलासिता में पलना)- Great people are generally not lapped in luxury.
- 206. Laugh in one's sleeves** (*to laugh secretly*, चुपके से)- Our neighbours laughed in their sleeves when they saw my grand father wearing a pair of fashionable googles.
- 207. Lead by the nose** (*to lead someone by coercion/ to guide someone very carefully*, दबाव में या माफिदशन करने हेतु किसी को रास्ता दिखाना)- *I had to lead him by the nose to the meeting. He will never find his way through the admission form unless you lead him by the nose.*
- 208. Lead to the altar** (*to marry*, शादी करने जाना)- He promised her to lead her to the altar.
- 209. Leap in the dark** (*to do something though there is uncertainty about the outcome*, अनिश्चित परिणाम होने पर भी कोई कार्य करना)- To play lottery is to leap in the dark.
- 210. Leave no stone unturned** (*to make all possible efforts*, कोई भी प्रयत्न बाकी न छोड़ना)- He worked very hard to pass the Civil Services Exams and left no stone unturned.
- 211. Leave one in the lurch** (*to leave one in difficulties*, किसी का कठिनाईयों में साथ छोड़ देना)- He kicked the bucket and left his family in the lurch.
- 212. Let by-gones be by-gones** (*to forget old things*, पुरानी बातों को भूल जाना)- India and Pakistan must start bi-lateral talks and let by-gones be by-gones.
- 213. Lick the dust** (*to get defeated*, हार जाना)- The team licked the dust in the final match.
- 214. Lie in wait** (*wait in hiding to attack*, घात लगाये बैठे रहना)- The policemen were lying in wait for the kidnappers.
- 215. Live in an Ivory tower** (*where one can be aloof from the realities of life*, जहाँ जीवन की वास्तविकता से दूर रहते हैं)- The queen lived in an ivory tower and did not know the meaning of poverty.
- 216. Long and short** (*all that can or need be said*, सारांश)- The long and short of the whole discussion will be made available to all in black and white.
- 217. Look down upon** (*To hate a person*, किसी व्यक्ति से घृणा करना)- I hate those people who look down upon the poor.
- 218. Lose the day** (*to be defeated*, हार जाना)- My favourite football team lost the day.
- 219. Make a fortune** (*To grow rich*, धनी बन जाना)- He made a fortune by selling smuggled goods.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 220. Make after** (*to pursue or chase, पीछा करना*) – The people made after the chain snatcher and caught him.
- 221. Make amends** (*to compensate, हर्जाना देना*) – He had to make amends for his bad behavior.
- 222. Make head or tail of** (*to understand, समझना*) – The doctor could not make the head or tail of his illness.
- 223. Make one's mark** (*to achieve distinction, अपना प्रभाव छोड़ना*) – India has made its mark in the field of technology.
- 224. Make out** (*to understand, समझ लेना*) – I could not make out what he was saying.
- 225. Make up the leeway** (*struggle out of a bad position, especially by recovering lost time, गवां चुके समय की क्षतिपूर्ति करके बुरे हालात से निकलना*) – The Government will have to make up the leeway by taking remedial actions immediately.
- 226. Make up one's mind** (*To determine, निश्चय करना*) – She has made up her mind to divorce her cruel husband.
- 227. Make a clean breast** (*to confess especially something bad or illegal, किसी गुनाह का सच कबूल लेना*) – After months of lying about the money, he decided to make a clean breast of it and tell the truth.
- 228. Man in the street** (*common man, साधारण व्यक्ति*) – The life of a man in the street has become very difficult because of rising price.
- 229. Man of iron** (*man with strong will-power, दृढ़ इच्छा शक्ति वाला*) – Nothing can deter a man of iron .
- 230. Meet half-way** (*to be prepared for compromise, समझौते के लिए राजी होना*) – We were ready to meet the other party half way and settle all litigation.
- 231. Milk of human kindness** (*human compassion, मानवता से भरा हृदय*) – Milk of human kindness is necessary for the existence of humanity.
- 232. Narrow circumstances** (*hard days/ poverty, गरीबी के दिन*) – After his father's death, he is living in narrow circumstances.
- 233. Neither chick nor child** (*no child, कोई बच्चे का न होना*) – She feels very lonely because she has neither chick nor child.
- 234. No love lost** (*having no love, किसी प्रकार का प्रेम/मित्रता का न होना*) – There is no love lost between these two neighbours who are fighting an endless court case.
- 235. Nook and corner** (*at every place, प्रत्येक स्थान पर*) – I searched for my book at every nook and corner of the house.
- 236. Oil someone's hands** (*to bribe, रिश्वत देना*) – We should stop oiling the officials' hands.
- 237. Beauty is only skin deep** (*physical beauty is not important, बाहरी सुन्दरता महत्वपूर्ण नहीं*) – She took a wrong decision by not marrying this gentleman. She doesn't know that beauty is only skin deep.
- 238. On and on** (*to continue, जारी रखना*) – She went on and on but nobody listened to her.
- 239. On the horns of a dilemma** (*to face a difficult situation between two problems, मुसीबत में फंसना, दो कठिन अवस्थाओं के बीच में*) – The demolition drive has put many shops on the horns of a dilemma because if they do not shut down, their shops will be sealed and if they do, they lose their means of livelihood.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 240. On the wrong side of** (*one's age being more than*, अधिक उम्र का होना)- He is on the wrong side of fifty now.
- 241. Open secret** (*known to all*, सर्वविदित)- He is bankrupt and this is an open secret now.
- 242. Order of the day** (*some common things of the time*, कोई प्रचलित बात)- Following new fashion is the order of the day.
- 243. Out of the wood** (*out of difficulties*, मुसीबत से छुटकारा)- At last India came out of the wood and got independence.
- 244. Pay one back in one's own coin** (*tit for tat*, जैसे को तैसा)- The person doing wrong should be paid back in his own coin.
- 245. Pell mell** (*very fast and not organised*, बहुत जल्द और अस्त-व्यस्त तरीके से)- Every thing was done pell mell as we got the order at the eleventh hour.
- 246. Petticoat-Government** (*undue influence of women*, स्त्रियों का अनुचित दबाव)- Petticoat-government may adversely influence your whole project.
- 247. Pick holes in** (*to find fault with*, दूसरों में दोष निकालना)- My boss has the habit of picking holes in our performance.
- 248. Pin prick** (*troubles that are for short time*, जो समस्याएँ कुछ सिर्फ समय के लिए हो)- We should ignore such pin pricks and get on with the job.
- 249. Play a double game** (*to act dubiously*, धोखाधाड़ी करना)- My friend was playing a double game.
- 250. Play fast and loose** (*be unreliable*, अविश्वसनीय होना)- How can you trust a man who plays fast and loose changing his statement every minute?
- 251. Play one false** (*to deceive*, किसी को धोखा देना)- He played her false and married again.
- 252. Play one's cards well** (*to do the correct things to achieve a desired result*, समझदारी से काम करना)- If you play your cards well, you will get selected..
- 253. Play the fool** (*to act foolishly*, बेवकूफी करना)- Why do you play the fool when it comes to spending money?
- 254. Pocket an insult** (*to bear insult*, अपमान सहन कर लेना)- Indians had to pocket much insult during their fight for Independence.
- 255. Poison one's ears against** (*to set a person against another*, किसी के विरुद्ध कान भरना)- She has poisoned the ears of my mother-in-law.
- 256. Past master** (*an expert*, किसी क्षेत्र का विशेषज्ञ)- He is a past master in cheating others.
- 257. Pour oil on troubled waters** (*to pacify the anger of others*, क्रोध को शान्त करने का प्रयत्न)- He solved the matter by pouring oil on troubled waters with his good behaviour.
- 258. Pull the string** (*to exercise secret influence*, छिपे रूप से प्रभाव डालना)- When I saw extreme level of red-tapism in the organization, I had to pull my strings to get my work done.
- 259. Pull to pieces** (*to criticise severely*, कटु आलोचना करना)- The leader of opposition has pulled the ruling party to pieces.
- 260. Put an end to** (*to finish*, समाप्त कर देना)- She has put an end to her unfeasible ideas.
- 261. Put pen to paper** (*to start writing*, लिखना आरम्भ कर देना)- In my board examination I put my pen to paper without wasting a second.
- 262. Put the saddle on the right horse** (*to blame the really guilty person*, सही अपराधी पर आरोप लगाना) The court put the saddle on the right horse and passed the right order.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 263. Put to the sword** (*to kill, मार देना*)– Nadir Shah put even children to the sword.
- 264. Put up with** (*to tolerate, सहन करना*)– Maharana Pratap could not put up with insult.
- 265. Rank and file** (*lower middle class people, साधारण श्रेणी के लोग*)– The extra-ordinary speeches of the great orators cannot be appreciated by the rank and file.
- 266. Red rag to a bull** (*something that will surely produce a violent reaction, निश्चित ही उत्तेजित करने वाली बात*)– The racial comments against the Indians proved to be a red rag to a bull and the riot took place.
- 267. Rise to the occasion** (*to show that you can deal with a difficult situation, ये दिखा देना कि आप मुश्किल हालात का सामना कर सकते हैं*)– Mahatma Gandhi rose to the occasion and dared the British.
- 268. Roll up one's sleeves** (*to be prepared for hard work, कड़ी मेहनत के लिये तैयार रहना*)– We will have to roll up our sleeves as the time of examination has come.
- 269. Rub shoulders with** (*to meet and spend time with, किसी के निकट सम्पर्क में आना*)– He claims to have rubbed shoulders with Salman Khan during his journey to Sydney.
- 270. Run down** (*reduced in health/to criticize, स्वास्थ्य में गिरावट/ निन्दा करना*)– I was worried because she looked run down .
Do not run down your friends in public.
- 271. Run short/ Hard up** (*not proving sufficient, shortage of money/ something, किसी चीज/ पैसे की कमी*)– I am running short of money these days.
If you are hard up, you can come to me.
- 272. Scratch one's head** (*to be perplexed, परेशान हो जाना*)– I scratched my head when I saw the puzzles in the PO exam.
- 273. Screw up one's courage** (*to gather courage, साहस बढ़ाना*)– Working women have to screw up their courage to handle eve teasing incidents at their working places.
- 274. Seal of love** (*kiss, चुम्बन*)– They validated their marriage with a seal of love.
- 275. See the light** (*to be born, जन्म लेना*)– Many female babies are aborted before they see the light.
- 276. Set price on one's head** (*to offer reward for killing or helping in the arrest of a criminal, किसी अपराधी को मारने या पकड़वाने में मदद करने पर इनाम की घोषणा*)– The government of America had set price on Osama's head.
- 277. Show a clean pair of heels** (*to run away, भाग जाना*)– The chain snatcher showed a clean pair of heels and the people were unable to catch him.
- 278. Sink fast** (*to deteriorate in quality or condition, बद से बदतर होना*)– The patient was sinking fast.
- 279. Slip of the pen** (*a small unintentional mistake in writing, लिखने में अनजाने में की जाने वाली गलती*)– The slip of the pen created a lot of confusion.
- 280. Snake in the grass** (*some hidden enemy, अज्ञात शत्रु*)– Many leaders are snake in the grass creating disharmony in the society.
- 281. Sow wild oats** (*indulgence in youthful follies, युवावस्था की बेवकूफियां करना*)– Mothers always keeps an eye on their daughters to see that they do not sow wild oats.
- 282. Square meal** (*full meal, पूरे भर भोजन*)– A poor person does not get even one square meal a day.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 283. Stand in good stead** (*to be of great service, बहुत सहायक होना*) – Your experience will always stand in good stead when you join a full time job.
- 284. Storm in a tea cup** (*much hue and cry over a little matter, छोटी सी बात पर बहुत शोरगुल करना*) – Do not worry about these silly rows. They are just storm in a tea cup.
- 285. Strain every nerve** (*to make every possible effort, हर प्रकार का प्रयत्न करना*) – I strained every nerve to get out of the problem.
- 286. Sword of Damocles** (*an imminent danger, सिर पर लटकी तलवार*) – Terrorism is a sword of Damocles hanging over the whole world.
- 287. Take a leaf out of another man's book** (*to imitate another person, नकल करना*) – He has no originality of thought; he only takes a leaf out of another man's book to make quick money.
- 288. Take an exception to** (*to be offended by something, किसी बात का बुरा मानना*) – She took an exception to his joke.
- 289. Take into one's head** (*to suddenly decide to do some thing, often silly or surprising, कुछ बेवकूफी भरी हरकत करने का अचानक निर्णय लेना*) – It took into their heads to get married next sunday.
- 290. Take pains** (*to work hard, कठिन परिश्रम करना*) – She took pains to bring up her children after her husband's death.
- 291. Take the bull by the horns** (*to face danger with courage, खतरे का हिम्मत से सामना करना*) – Bhagat Singh took the bull by the horns and bravely challenged the British empire.
- 292. Take to one's heels** (*to run away, भाग जाना*) – when the police came, the robber took to his heels.
- 293. Tall talk** (*boasting, शेखी मारना*) – One of my friends Rajesh is famous for his tall talks.
- 294. The Fourth Estate** (*the press, प्रेस*) – Today the fourth estate can influence the court proceedings of any case.
- 295. The knock down price** (*very low price, बहुत कम कीमत*) – I bought every thing at the mega sale at knock down prices.
- 296. Sheet anchor** (*a person or thing to be relied upon in an emergency, आपातकाल में काम आने वाला व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु*) – His uncle proved to be his sheet anchor after his father's death.
- 297. Thick-skinned person** (*not easily offended, insensitive, लज्जाहीन या संवेदनशील व्यक्ति*) – He is such a thick-skinned person that he laughed when people cursed and abused him.
- 298. Think lightly** (*not to be serious about a thing, मजाक के रूप में लेना*) – Don't think of your married life lightly.
- 299. Throw light on** (*to make something easier to understand, किसी विषय पर प्रकाश डालना*) – I wanted to throw light on the pitiful life of the bar dancers.
- 300. Throw mud at** (*try to make a low opinion of someone by saying unpleasant things about him, बदनाम करना*) – Companies should think carefully before slinging mud at someone who may respond with a libel action costing it crores of rupees.
- 301. Tool in the hands of** (*under the authority of another, दूसरे के हाथ में कठपुतली की भाँति*) – The whole legal system has become a tool in the hands of the politicians.
- 302. Turn one's coat** (*to change one's party, दल बदल लेना*) – Some people are so ambitious that they often turn their coat.

Idioms And Phrases - 2

- 303. Turn the tables** (*to change the situation completely, स्थिति को बिलकुल बदल देना*) - The ruling party had an easy victory in the last Lok Sabha election but inflation and corruption have totally turned the table.
- 304. Under a cloud** (*under suspicious conditions, संदेहपूर्ण स्थिति में*) - Ever since the rumours of corruption started, the former chief minister has been under a cloud .
- 305. Under the rose** (*secretly, गुप्त रूप से*) - He is selling confidential documents under the rose.
- 306. Under the thumb of** (*completely under one's power or influence, किसी के वर्चस्व में दबा होना*) - He is under the thumb of his mother and does not listen to the problems of his wife.
- 307. Up to the mark** (*up to standard, उचित स्तर तक*) - I have to watch my staff all the time to keep them up to the mark.
- 308. Vexed question** (*much debated and discussed, जिस प्रश्न पर काफी बहस हो चुकी हो*) - 'Mercy killing should be granted or not' has become a vexed question.
- 309. Wash dirty linen in public** (*to expose private affairs in public, व्यक्तिगत बातों को बाहर उछालना*) - There is nothing as bad as washing one's dirty linen in public.
- 310. Wash one's hand of** (*to be free from, किसी बात से मुक्त हो जाना*) - Police have washed their hands of the kidnapping case.
- 311. Wear a long face** (*to look gloomy, उदास दिखाई देना*) - Inspite of losing his job, he did not wear a long face.
- 312. Wild goose chase** (*useless efforts, व्यर्थ का प्रयत्न*) - Pakistan's efforts to grab Kashmir have proved to be a wild goose chase.
- 313. Win laurels** (*to win honours, यह प्राप्त करना*) - Sachin won laurels for India.
- 314. Without rhyme or reason** (*without any justification, अकारण*) - Don't shout at anyone without rhyme or reason.

24

IDIOMS AND PHRASES

CHAPTER

(PRACTICE SET)

Directions : In questions 1 to 300, four alternatives are given for the idiom/ phrase underlined in the sentence. Choose the alternative which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase and mark it in the Answer Sheet.

Idioms And Phrases

- 12. To take to one's heels**
(A) to walk slowly
(B) to run away
(C) to march forward
(D) to hop and jump
- 13. To bite the dust**
(A) eat voraciously
(B) have nothing to eat
(C) eat roots
(D) to fail
- 14. A bolt from the blue**
(A) a delayed event
(B) an inexplicable event
(C) an unexpected event
(D) an unpleasant event
- 15. Cold comfort**
(A) absurdity
(B) deception
(C) slight satisfaction
(D) foolish proposal
- 16. The reputed company is in the red due to the recession.**
(A) making money
(B) losing money
(C) in danger
(D) spending money
- 17. When the Principal was entering the class, all my friends quietly disappeared, leaving me alone to face the music.**
(A) to listen to him
(B) to enter into the class
(C) to bear the criticism
(D) to listen to a favourable comment
- 18. The Kenyan team proved to be the dark horse in the ICC World Cup Cricket.**
(A) a strong intruder
(B) a skilled team
(C) the most powerful
(D) an unexpected winner
- 19. Having no arguments to defend his point, the speaker began to beat about the bush.**
- (A) wander across the words
(B) speak in a haphazard manner
(C) speak in a round-about manner
(D) make use of irrelevant reference
- 20. They were offered six months' rent in lieu of notice to vacate the building.**
(A) in spite of
(B) in place of
(C) despite of
(D) in addition to
- 21. We know that he is the one responsible for the discord but as he is well-connected all we can do is send him to Coventry.**
(A) transfer him
(B) commend him
(C) boycott him
(D) dismiss him
- 22. The noble man gave up the ghost.**
(A) left the ghost
(B) lived like a ghost
(C) invited ghost
(D) died
- 23. A Prime Minister cannot ride roughshod over his ministerial colleagues for long.**
(A) deal unkindly with
(B) take for granted
(C) be high-handed with
(D) exploit wilfully
- 24. He was down in the mouth as he was defeated in the elections.**
(A) unable to speak
(B) very depressed
(C) very angry
(D) very confused
- 25. They say, join the Army to drink life to the lees.**
(A) to have the best of fun and fortune
(B) to enjoy a life of drinking and dancing
(C) to have a life full of adventures
(D) to have the best of life

Idioms And Phrases

26. **The car in the backyard is proving to be a white elephant.**
(A) very huge item
(B) costly and useless possession
(C) very expensive investment
(D) useful material
27. **He takes leave once in a blue moon.**
(A) regularly
(B) often
(C) rarely
(D) once a fortnight
28. **The meeting has been put off indefinitely.**
(A) cancelled
(B) postponed
(C) advanced
(D) announced
29. **The rules of the deal are set forth in the brochure.**
(A) stated
(B) accepted
(C) contradicted
(D) printed
30. **She bought her new house for a song.**
(A) very cheaply
(B) on loan
(C) at a loss
(D) very easily
31. **Raju had given up doing exercise after surgery.**
(A) learned (B) started
(C) continued (D) stopped
32. **The chairman tried to get his point across, but the members just wouldn't listen.**
(A) give them a lesson
(B) insist on
(C) make them understand
(D) motivate them
33. **Ashok had all fair-weather friends.**
(A) friends who face difficulties calmly.
(B) favourable friends
(C) friends who desert you in difficulties
(D) reliable friends
34. **Since the company has lost a good deal of time and money, you will have to make good the loss.**
(A) make a good effort
(B) try to minimize the loss
(C) compensate for the loss
(D) ensure that there are no forth losses
35. **a damp squib**
(A) rainy weather
(B) a disappointing result
(C) a skirt in a laundry
(D) none of the above
36. **in cold blood**
(A) angrily
(B) deliberately
(C) excitedly
(D) slowly
37. **to take someone for a ride**
(A) to give a ride to someone
(B) to deceive someone
(C) to be indifferent
(D) to disclose a secret
38. **to move heaven and earth**
(A) to cause an earthquake
(B) to try everything possible
(C) to pray to all Gods
(D) to travel in a rocket
39. **to smell a rat**
(A) to smell foul
(B) to see a rat
(C) to chase a rat
(D) to be suspicious
40. **The possession of Jerusalem is a bone of contention between Israel and Palestine.**
(A) a subject of peace
(B) a subject of trade
(C) a subject of dispute
(D) a subject of exports
41. **My friend turned a deaf ear to my tale of loss and refused to help me.**
(A) paid no heed
(B) went far away
(C) listened carefully
(D) turned his ear away

Idioms And Phrases

Idioms And Phrases

Idioms And Phrases

72. **This fashion of long flowing skirts will run its course.**
(A) continue for a long time
(B) become very popular
(C) develop and then come to its usual end
(D) end very soon
73. **The police caught the thief red-handed.**
(A) in a red uniform
(B) with blood in hands
(C) at the time of committing the crime
(D) after reading the rules
74. **I was so disappointed when my close friend left me in the lurch.**
(A) went away without waiting for me
(B) helped me in difficult times
(C) abandoned me when I needed help
(D) stopped helping me in emergency
75. **His position in the company was on the brink of disaster.**
(A) at the top of
(B) at the point of
(C) on the side of
(D) on the back of
76. **The car broke down just as it reached the edge of a cliff. It was indeed a close shave.**
(A) to share one's brand
(B) very risky
(C) narrow escape from danger
(D) to be happy
77. **The parents are in high spirits as their son has got a decent job.**
(A) in good position (B) drunk
(C) cheerful (D) shocked
78. **When she realised that she had bought a fake product, she knew that her money had gone down the drain.**
(A) was lost forever
(B) dropped in the drain
(C) got washed away
(D) her money was safe
79. **Even though the new clerk was given a difficult task, he remained cool as a cucumber.**
(A) not nervous or emotional
(B) caught cold
(C) was happy
(D) was scared
80. **Some people do not grease anybody's palm on any account.**
(A) bribe (B) flatter
(C) cheat (D) fight
81. **I had to pull strings to put up a good show.**
(A) play music
(B) use personal influence
(C) use the instrument
(D) play a song
82. **You can easily overcome this situation if you keep your head.**
(A) keep faith in
(B) remain calm
(C) believe in
(D) trust the others
83. **It is clear that the ideas of both reformers ran in the same groove.**
(A) promoted each other
(B) clashed with each other
(C) moved in harmony
(D) moved in different directions
84. **This place affords a bird's eye view of the green valley below.**
(A) a beautiful view
(B) a narrow view
(C) an overview
(D) an ugly view
85. **To foam at one's mouth**
(A) to brush properly
(B) to get very angry
(C) to salivate on seeing food
(D) none of the above
86. **To feel like a fish out of water**
(A) disgusted
(B) uncomfortable
(C) disappointed
(D) homeless

Idioms And Phrases

87. At the eleventh hour

- (A) too late
- (B) too early
- (C) immediately
- (D) at the last moment

88. to burn one's fingers

- (A) to get hurt physically
- (B) to suffer financial losses
- (C) to find work
- (D) to suffer nervous breakdown

89. to add fuel to fire

- (A) to investigate
- (B) to insulate
- (C) to initiate
- (D) to incite

90. To bring to light

- (A) to reveal
- (B) to conceal
- (C) to provide luminescence
- (D) to appeal

91. To hit the jackpot

- (A) to gamble
- (B) to get an unexpected victory
- (C) to be wealthy
- (D) to make money quickly

92. To burn the candle at both ends

- (A) to spend cautiously
- (B) to be stingy
- (C) to be extravagant
- (D) to survive difficulty

93. Status quo

- (A) unchanged position
- (B) excellent place
- (C) unbreakable statue
- (D) long queue

94. By fair means or foul

- (A) without using common sense
- (B) without difficulty
- (C) in any way, honest or dishonest
- (D) having been instigated

95. at one's beck and call

- (A) to attend a call
- (B) to be helped by someone
- (C) to be useful to someone
- (D) to be dominated by someone

96. to explore every avenue

- (A) to search all streets
- (B) to scout the wilderness
- (C) to find adventure
- (D) to try every opportunity

97. a red letter day

- (A) a dangerous day in one's life
- (B) a sorrowful day in one's life
- (C) an important or joyful occasion in one's life
- (D) both a dangerous and sorrowful day in one's life

98. to have something up one's sleeve

- (A) to hide something in the sleeve
- (B) to play a magician trick
- (C) to have a secret plan
- (D) to play hide and seek

99. on the spur of the moment

- (A) to act at once
- (B) to ride a horse in a race
- (C) to act deliberately
- (D) to act at the appointed time

100. When my friend was in Kolkata, he ran into an old friend at the theatre.

- (A) hit
- (B) met accidentally
- (C) planned to meet
- (D) invited

101. The news of the President's death spread like wild fire.

- (A) spread rapidly
- (B) caused a major confusion
- (C) was a wild rumour
- (D) set the nation on fire

102. Going abroad for a holiday was out of the question.

- (A) undesirable
- (B) impossible
- (C) unpleasant
- (D) irresistible

- Idioms And Phrases

Idioms And Phrases

119. to shed crocodile tears

- (A) to weep profusely
- (B) to pretend grief
- (C) to grieve seriously
- (D) to mock something

120. To call it a day

- (A) to conclude proceedings
- (B) to initiate proceedings
- (C) to work through the day
- (D) None of the above

121. To put up with

- (A) to accommodate (B) to adjust
- (C) to understand (D) to tolerate

122. To take to heart

- (A) to be encouraged
- (B) to grieve over
- (C) to like
- (D) to hate

123. Yeoman's service

- (A) medical help
- (B) excellent work
- (C) social work
- (D) hard work

124. to go scot-free

- (A) to walk like a native of Scotland
- (B) to get something free
- (C) to escape without punishment
- (D) to save tax

125. to see red

- (A) get broke
- (B) get angry
- (C) feel lucky
- (D) become rich

126. in the nick of time

- (A) in an unexpected time
- (B) after some time
- (C) at a time when it was too late
- (D) precisely in the right time

127. the stage has been set

- (A) the conditions are beyond control
- (B) the platform for meeting is ready
- (C) the situation is getting worse
- (D) the situation is conducive

128. on this side of the grave

- (A) outside the grave
- (B) by the side of the grave
- (C) in this world
- (D) before going to grave

129. A man who, while pretending to be your friend, sets a spy to watch your activities is indeed a snake in the grass.

- (A) secret enemy
- (B) mean fellow
- (C) dangerous man
- (D) cunning fellow

130. The audience was greatly impressed though I spoke off the cuff.

- (A) away from the mike
- (B) without preparation
- (C) off the subject
- (D) about the cuff

131. After listening to the student's statements, the teacher had to eat her words.

- (A) withdraw her words
- (B) stop speaking
- (C) apologize
- (D) quarrel

132. to lose ground

- (A) to become less powerful
- (B) to become less popular
- (C) to lose foundation
- (D) to be without a leader

133. to make both ends meet

- (A) to buy costly articles
- (B) live a luxurious life
- (C) to live within one's income
- (D) to please all people

134. to fall back on

- (A) to oppose something important
- (B) to suffer an injury on the back in an accident
- (C) to fail to do something important in time
- (D) to seek support out of necessity

- Idioms And Phrases

- 135. to make one's blood boil**
(A) to make somebody furious
(B) to develop fever
(C) to get excited
(D) to make someone nervous

136. She decided that she would get this job by hook or by crook.
(A) by compromising or other responsibilities
(B) by impressing the interviewers
(C) by any means, right or wrong
(D) by becoming a specialist in the field

137. In a debate, no one is allowed to sit on the fence.
(A) to avoid taking sides
(B) to insult a speaker
(C) to relax while others speak
(D) to agree with everyone

138. The matter has been sorted out.
(A) revised (B) supported
(C) resolved (D) changed

139. The soldiers carried out the orders of the General very effectively.
(A) exited (B) executed
(C) supported (D) applied

140. They set off by car for Mumbai late in the evening.
(A) started (B) travelled
(C) entered (D) resonated

141. Once his crime was discovered, he had no option but to come clean.
(A) to deny the crime
(B) to confess to the crime
(C) to accuse someone else of the crime
(D) to apologize for the crime

142. The employees were kept in the dark about the latest developments.
(A) were informed after office hours
(B) were informed when it was too late
(C) were given secret information
(D) were not informed at all

143. When things go wrong, everyone starts passing the buck.
(A) analyses the problem
(B) prepares to resign
(C) pays a bribe
(D) blames someone else

144. To keep the wolf away from the door.
(A) to avoid a bad person
(B) to clean the house
(C) to avoid extreme poverty
(D) to visit the zoo

145. To break the ice
(A) to clear the snow
(B) to start quarreling
(C) to commence an interaction
(D) to revive old enmity

146. Spick and span
(A) neat and clean
(B) hard-working
(C) kitchen implements
(D) calm and quiet

147. The pros and cons
(A) good and evil
(B) first and last
(C) fair and foul
(D) for and against

148. Build castles in the air
(A) waste time (B) daydream
(C) build houses (D) work hard

149. Sought after
(A) highly paid
(B) pursued by
(C) in great demand
(D) with great talent

150. All at sea
(A) very proud (B) overjoyed
(C) puzzled (D) excited

151. To hit below the belt
(A) to punish
(B) to tie with a belt
(C) to hit with a belt
(D) to attack unfairly

Idioms And Phrases

152. Pot-luck dinner

- (A) dinner where everybody brings something to eat
- (B) dinner where everybody brings his food
- (C) dinner where only soup is served
- (D) dinner where people eat and play games at the same time

153. His friends beat the boy to pay off old scores.

- (A) to refund old dues.
- (B) to take revenge.
- (C) to force him to be a scorer in a match.
- (D) because he had not scored well earlier.

154. Chintan is so innocent that he wears his heart on his sleeve.

- (A) Wears dress that does not match.
- (B) Expresses his feelings openly.
- (C) Wears colourful dresses.
- (D) Expresses his feelings with the shape of a heart printed on its sleeve.

155. Tagore was a man of letters.

- (A) of wide contacts.
- (B) an excellent letter dictator.
- (C) a great writer of letters.
- (D) proficient in literary art.

156. The poor subordinates are made scapegoats by their superiors.

- (A) punished for others' misdeeds.
- (B) developed poor relations.
- (C) treated humbly and respectfully.
- (D) scolded with arrogant reactions.

157. She was on the horns of a dilemma as she had either to leave her job or divorce her husband.

- (A) in nervous condition
- (B) in terrible mood
- (C) in difficult situation
- (D) in suspense

158. Brown study

- (A) to study sincerely
- (B) to study uselessly

- (C) deep in thought
- (D) practical advantage

159. The young boy was kicking his heels inspite of his mother's stern warnings.

- (A) playing happily
- (B) kicking someone
- (C) forced to wait
- (D) passing a gesture of disrespect

160. She denied point-blank her involvement in the crime.

- (A) directly
- (B) desperately
- (C) stubbornly
- (D) rudely

161. It is hard to strike a bargain with a woman.

- (A) to finalize a deal
- (B) to negotiate a deal
- (C) to negotiate
- (D) to deal

162. He took his father's advice to heart.

- (A) casually
- (B) patiently
- (C) seriously
- (D) quietly

163. Can you give me a hand with this luggage?

- (A) keep a watch on
- (B) handle
- (C) provide me with
- (D) help me with

164. Fling away

- (A) to have an affair
- (B) to flare up
- (C) to throw violently
- (D) to swing

165. Stick by

- (A) to adhere closely
- (B) stand by someone
- (C) to paste
- (D) to pass by

166. Wink at

- (A) to tease somebody
- (B) to like someone
- (C) to pretend not to see
- (D) to stare at

Idioms And Phrases

167. To be on the wane

- (A) to complain
- (B) to be sick
- (C) to be on boat
- (D) to be diminishing

168. To give a person the cold shoulder

- (A) to offer someone ice-cream
- (B) to be humble
- (C) to threaten
- (D) to treat coldly

169. To get one's back up

- (A) to become irritated or angry
- (B) to sit straight
- (C) to act proud
- (D) to give support

170. To strike oil

- (A) to have found an oil well
- (B) to have lucky success
- (C) to have a close escape
- (D) to be unsuccessful

171. To talk shop

- (A) to talk a lot
- (B) to use phrases peculiar to one's employment
- (C) to like to shop
- (D) to lie

172. To draw a line

- (A) to fix a limit
- (B) to caution someone
- (C) to be stern
- (D) to insult someone

173. A swan song

- (A) melodious song
- (B) disharmonious display
- (C) utterance/statement made just before death or retirement
- (D) concocted tale

174. Knit one's brows

- (A) to disappoint somebody
- (B) to frown
- (C) to have a headache
- (D) to express discontentment

175. To plough the sands

- (A) to be extremely accomplished
- (B) to be resourceful
- (C) to be dejected
- (D) to busy oneself in an unprofitable proposition

176. To rip up old sores

- (A) to destroy something
- (B) to act cruelly
- (C) to reopen a quarrel
- (D) to inflict pain on someone

177. To rate soundly

- (A) to censure strongly
- (B) to acquire heavy profits
- (C) to be at peace
- (D) to assure somebody

178. To be no spring chicken

- (A) to be brave
- (B) to be honest
- (C) to be no longer young
- (D) to be childish

179. To take to one's bed

- (A) to be very attached to one's belongings
- (B) to lie in bed due to illness
- (C) to fight with one's husband
- (D) to agree with someone

180. To stand on ceremony

- (A) to celebrate an occasion in a grand way
- (B) to be extravagant
- (C) to get married
- (D) to insist on excessive formality

181. To be at sixes and sevens

- (A) a state of total confusion and disorder
- (B) to be a great success
- (C) to be certain
- (D) to give away generously

182. To break the ice

- (A) a strong man
- (B) to start a quarrel
- (C) to break the awkward silence
- (D) to become violent

Idioms And Phrases

183. Put one's foot down

- (A) to demand
- (B) to take rest
- (C) to be firm about something
- (D) to do something stupid

184. Backstairs influence

- (A) one who is easily influenced
- (B) influential person
- (C) influence exerted secretly
- (D) wife's influence on her husband

185. Long in the tooth

- (A) distant journey (B) rather old
- (C) ailment (D) young

186. A brazen-faced fellow

- (A) cruel person
- (B) ugly person
- (C) dark-complexioned person
- (D) impudent fellow

187. To see pink elephants

- (A) to dream
- (B) to anticipate luck
- (C) to be afraid of
- (D) to have hallucination due to excessive alcoholic intake.

188. Elbow room

- (A) opportunity for freedom of action
- (B) special room for the guest
- (C) to give enough space to move or work in
- (D) to add a new room to the house

189. French leave

- (A) a person who does not take leave
- (B) leave without permission
- (C) to take long leave
- (D) to take a day off and have fun

190. To commit to memory

- (A) to learn by heart
- (B) to tax one's memory
- (C) to be forgetful
- (D) to commit oneself totally to a task

191. To burn a hole in the pocket

- (A) to steal from someone's pocket
- (B) to destroy other's belongings
- (C) to be very miserly
- (D) money that is spent quickly

192. To bury the hatchet

- (A) to have found a treasure
- (B) to make peace
- (C) to purchase something without discretion
- (D) to act in a suspicious manner

193. To beggar description

- (A) something of least importance
- (B) something beyond description
- (C) to describe a beggar
- (D) an accurate description

194. To beat the air

- (A) efforts that are vain or useless
- (B) to be satisfied with one's performance
- (C) to be extremely relieved
- (D) to be very happy

195. To provide against a rainy day

- (A) to provide plentiful
- (B) to provide for a possible future, in time of difficulty or need
- (C) to store for the family
- (D) to store for the rainy season

196. To be all eyes

- (A) to be cautious
- (B) watching closely and attentively
- (C) to be amazed
- (D) to be non-plussed

197. Swollen headed

- (A) to be suffering from illness
- (B) to be conceited
- (C) to be narrow-minded
- (D) to be dumb

198. To stir up a hornet's nest

- (A) to excite the hostility of people
- (B) to do some social service
- (C) to be totally at a loss in a situation
- (D) to be bankrupt

199. My hands are full

- (A) I am having a lot of things to carry
- (B) I am having lots of money
- (C) I am very busy
- (D) I am anxious

Idioms And Phrases

200. No love lost between them

- (A) to have a fight
- (B) to dislike each other
- (C) to be as friendly as ever
- (D) to be upset

201. To be hand and glove with someone

- (A) to be social
- (B) to be playful
- (C) to be annoyed
- (D) to be intimate

202. To play fast and loose

- (A) to deceive someone
- (B) to be agile
- (C) say one thing and do another
- (D) to be efficient

203. To take stock of

- (A) to imagine
- (B) to supply
- (C) to survey
- (D) to attract

204. A man of straw

- (A) a man of no substance
- (B) a man without means
- (C) a man of character
- (D) a generous man

205. Wolf in sheep's clothing

- (A) to act on the sly
- (B) to be a good actor
- (C) to be a hypocrite
- (D) to be money-minded or materialistic

206. To cut someone short

- (A) to oblige someone
- (B) to assist someone
- (C) to interrupt someone
- (D) to insult someone

207. To stick to one's colours

- (A) to refuse to yield
- (B) to be patriotic
- (C) to be notorious
- (D) to be straightforward

208. An old head on young shoulders

- (A) to be old before one's age
- (B) to be wise beyond one's age
- (C) to be youthful in spite of one's old age
- (D) to maintain good health

209. To snap one's fingers at

- (A) to honour someone
- (B) to greet someone
- (C) to beckon someone
- (D) to treat with contempt

210. Falling foul of

- (A) quarrelling with
- (B) becoming friends with
- (C) being dishonest with
- (D) being scared of

211. Harp on the same string

- (A) to play music
- (B) to dwell tediously on the same subject
- (C) to beat someone
- (D) to acknowledge

212. Keep a good table

- (A) to have an artistic taste
- (B) to throw a party
- (C) to be a good host
- (D) to be extravagant

213. Take up the cudgels

- (A) to take notice
- (B) to accept a present
- (C) to defend someone vigorously
- (D) to accept a challenge

214. Splitting hairs

- (A) to be worried
- (B) to be venturesome
- (C) to trouble someone
- (D) to dispute over petty points

215. A great hand at

- (A) to be a good artist
- (B) to be an expert
- (C) to be a good player
- (D) to be generous

216. To make a pile

- (A) to make a fortune
- (B) to make a mess
- (C) to be absent-minded
- (D) to be corrupt

217. Under someone's wing

- (A) to work under someone
- (B) to be under someone's protection
- (C) to be alert
- (D) to be in the army

Idioms And Phrases

218. To sow one's wild oats

- (A) to swear
- (B) to be at ease
- (C) to engage in youthful excesses
- (D) to till the land

219. An olive branch

- (A) an offer of peace
- (B) an idea
- (C) a lady
- (D) a wicked person

220. Not worth a rap

- (A) worth nothing
- (B) very expensive
- (C) worth a lot
- (D) modestly priced

221. In merry pin

- (A) perplexed
- (B) merry making
- (C) embarrassed
- (D) in a cheerful mood

222. To leap the pale

- (A) to throw a bucket
- (B) to get into debt, to spend more than one's income
- (C) to have much of fear
- (D) to become pale

223. To cut the gordian knot

- (A) to perform the opening ceremony
- (B) to be present at the opening ceremony
- (C) to solve a difficult problem
- (D) to get a sharp cut

224. To sow the wind and reap the whirlwind

- (A) to enjoy the fruits of hard work
- (B) to be deprived of one's reward
- (C) to act wisely
- (D) to suffer for one's foolish conduct

225. To play possum

- (A) to play hide and seek
- (B) to feign ignorance or pretend the be sleeping or dead
- (C) to cheat somebody
- (D) to play seriously

226. A grass widow

- (A) a young widow
- (B) widow who has illicit relations with men
- (C) a woman whose husband is temporarily away from her
- (D) a working old woman

227. Mad as a March hare

- (A) sane
- (B) intoxicated
- (C) as mad as a hare in spring
- (D) slightly touched in the brain

228. Halcyon days

- (A) long days
- (B) short days
- (C) happy and peaceful days
- (D) disturbed days

229. Mother wit

- (A) to have an intelligent mother
- (B) university
- (C) silly
- (D) common sense

230. A blind date

- (A) a cloudy day
- (B) unknown future
- (C) meeting with someone you do not know
- (D) death-day

231. Much ado about nothing

- (A) to take something seriously
- (B) to play false
- (C) to make a fuss
- (D) to add

232. Judas' kiss

- (A) wooing
- (B) a narrow escape
- (C) hypocritical affection
- (D) a religious person

233. To have no truck with

- (A) have no means of conveyance
- (B) scientifically backward
- (C) to have no trade with
- (D) to have no dealings with

234. To clean the Augean stables

- (A) to purge/ clean the administration of its abuses
- (B) to buy horses
- (C) to sell horses
- (D) to improve working conditions

235. A fly in the ointment

- (A) to clean a thing
- (B) to sterilise
- (C) Small annoyance that spoils a pleasant experience.
- (D) an unsuccessful attempt

236. Of the deepest dye

- (A) of the worst/ extreme type
- (B) of the best type
- (C) of the most colourless type
- (D) of the colourless type

237. To throw up the sponge

- (A) to accept the challenge
- (B) to forget the past offences
- (C) to admit defeat
- (D) to send message

238. To rule the roost

- (A) to measure the height of something
- (B) to measure the depth
- (C) to strike with a stick
- (D) to dominate

239. Bats in the belfry

- (A) to be mad
- (B) something needed cleanliness
- (C) an impending danger
- (D) to be deceived

240. To have a jaundice eye

- (A) to have jaundice
- (B) to have fever
- (C) to be prejudiced
- (D) to lose colour

241. Rank and file

- (A) Common people
- (B) Officers
- (C) People of high rank
- (D) Army personnel

242. To egg on

- (A) to egg on slowly
- (B) to destroy slowly
- (C) to give a walk over
- (D) to instigate/ cause to proceed further

243. To haul over the coals

- (A) to walk over the fire
- (B) to burn
- (C) to scold for something done wrong
- (D) to throw into fire

244. To draw a bead on

- (A) to say prayers
- (B) to count the beads
- (C) to do one's best
- (D) to take careful aim at

245. Fabian policy

- (A) dictatorial policy
- (B) democratic policy
- (C) systematic policy
- (D) policy of cautious persistence

246. To play to the gallery

- (A) to try to get the appreciation from the least intelligent people
- (B) to try to win appreciation of intelligent people
- (C) to play in the gallery
- (D) to disturb people sitting in the gallery

247. Pyrrhic victory

- (A) Permanent victory
- (B) Defeat
- (C) Easy victory
- (D) Victory at high cost

248. Go the whole hog

- (A) to do something thoroughly
- (B) sleep
- (C) to neglect duty
- (D) to mishandle the case

249. To bite one's lips

- (A) to feel sorry
- (B) to repress one's anger or other emotions
- (C) laugh at others
- (D) to have doubt

Idioms And Phrases

250. To hold someone in leash

- (A) to restrain
- (B) to be firm
- (C) to be unsure
- (D) to touch the exact point

251. To cool one's heels

- (A) to give a cold treatment to somebody
- (B) to be kept waiting for sometime
- (C) a closed chapter
- (D) a hot issue

252. Bag of bones

- (A) a bag full of bones
- (B) a dead person
- (C) a person about to die
- (D) an extremely weak person

253. All moonshine

- (A) show
- (B) lighted only by moon
- (C) false
- (D) far from reality

254. To shake the dust off one's feet

- (A) to wash feet
- (B) to walk fast
- (C) to leave a place with a sense of resentment
- (D) to rest after a long journey

255. Off hand

- (A) Without preparation
- (B) Out of hand
- (C) Rehearsed
- (D) In hand

256. A bird of passage

- (A) a flying bird
- (B) an unreliable person
- (C) one who stays for a short time
- (D) bad time

257. Count on

- (A) Depend on
- (B) as a result of
- (C) ceremonially
- (D) to wait for the benefactor

258. With a string

- (A) not to give any aid
- (B) to give unconditional aid
- (C) gift or aid with condition
- (D) to accept aid

259. To set stores by

- (A) to value highly
- (B) to hoard a large quantity of something
- (C) to set up store
- (D) fix a price

260. To draw the long bow

- (A) to shoot
- (B) to exaggerate
- (C) to criticize
- (D) to admire

261. To know the ropes

- (A) to recognize the lost things
- (B) to do rigging
- (C) to know the procedure of doing a job
- (D) to flog

262. To give the devil his due

- (A) to be just to a person even though he does not deserve such treatment
- (B) to surrender oneself willingly when one's mistake is detected
- (C) to punish an innocent person
- (D) to punish a guilty person

263. In the swim

- (A) knowing latest current things
- (B) to cross a river by a boat
- (C) to cross a river by swimming
- (D) to be in the river

264. To knuckle under

- (A) to be in a crisis
- (B) to submit
- (C) to take rest
- (D) to go to bed

265. To have a dig at

- (A) to criticise someone
- (B) to sow seeds
- (C) to weed out
- (D) to praise someone

Idioms And Phrases

- 266. In vogue**
 (A) in fashion
 (B) fair
 (C) smooth
 (D) total absence
- 267. Three R's**
 (A) radiogram, radiograph, radio telescope
 (B) rabble, rattle, razzle
 (C) reading, writing, arithmetic
 (D) rail, radar, raft
- 268. A wild goose chase**
 (A) foolish and useless enterprise
 (B) to hunt
 (C) a violent chase
 (D) to speak harshly
- 269. To rest on one's laurels**
 (A) to cease to strive for further glory
 (B) to be lazy
 (C) to be proud of one's victory
 (D) to die
- 270. Raw deal**
 (A) unjust treatment
 (B) unripe fruit
 (C) early stage of business
 (D) contract not yet finally decided
- 271. A forlorn hope**
 (A) a plan which has remote chances of success
 (B) hope about unforeseeable future
 (C) hope of a single person
 (D) hope of a silly person
- 272. Printer's devil**
 (A) an apprentice in a printing office
 (B) blunder
 (C) low type of printed material
 (D) delay in printing
- 273. To call on the carpet**
 (A) subject to criticism
 (B) to summon for a scolding
 (C) a heartfelt welcome
 (D) on the ground
- 274. To bring the house down**
 (A) to appeal greatly to the audience
- (B) to pull down a building
 (C) to defame one's family
 (D) to pass a bill unanimously
- 275. To have an edge on**
 (A) to cut with a knife
 (B) to threaten to wound
 (C) to be slightly better than
 (D) to be in a dangerous situation
- 276. In sackcloth and ashes**
 (A) to cremate
 (B) in a state of great mourning
 (C) dirty clothes
 (D) cheap clothes
- 277. To put two and two together**
 (A) to progress steadily
 (B) to compare the debit and credit
 (C) to conclude keeping in view the merits and demerits
 (D) to oppose as a last resort
- 278. To weather the storm**
 (A) to face a crisis
 (B) to survive a crisis
 (C) to be the victim of a crisis
 (D) to create crisis
- 279. Lump in the throat**
 (A) to be hoarse
 (B) a highly emotional state
 (C) food of low type
 (D) wind-pipe
- 280. To fight shy of**
 (A) to keep aloof from
 (B) to fight social evils
 (C) to be bold
 (D) to fight and win
- 281. Hobson's choice**
 (A) lion's share
 (B) the best choice
 (C) option of taking the one offered or nothing
 (D) the last chance
- 282. To hit it off**
 (A) to quarrel
 (B) to be hostile
 (C) to agree or be congenial
 (D) to threaten

Idioms And Phrases

283. To whitewash

- (A) to clean a place
- (B) to work hard
- (C) to retrieve damaged reputation
- (D) to use cosmetics

284. Within an ace of

- (A) very close
- (B) within one's means
- (C) within a narrow circle
- (D) near centre

285. To keep an open mind

- (A) to remember
- (B) to forget
- (C) to come to no decision on a subject until one knows all the facts
- (D) to be clear-headed

286. Open question

- (A) a question put to all
- (B) a question without any generally agreed answer
- (C) a permanent problem
- (D) a clearly-written/expressed question

287. On one's mettle

- (A) roused to do one's best
- (B) to put on an overcoat
- (C) to safeguard against attack
- (D) to use one's own money properly

288. To keep the pot boiling

- (A) to maintain interest
- (B) to heat
- (C) to show anger
- (D) to do experiments

289. Grist to one's mill

- (A) grain to be ground
- (B) useful for one's purpose
- (C) income from will
- (D) to work one's machine

290. Kangaroo court

- (A) a group of kangaroos
- (B) the young kangaroo
- (C) unofficial court
- (D) unofficial estimate

291. Wool gathering

- (A) to become a shepherd
- (B) to shear sheep

- (C) to engage in idle or aimless day dreaming
- (D) to live in the countryside

292. Between Scylla and Charybdis

- (A) between two hills
- (B) between two rivers
- (C) between two enemies
- (D) between two dangers

293. Achilles' heel

- (A) bare-foot
- (B) to run fast
- (C) to wait on somebody
- (D) one's vulnerable or susceptible spot

294. To know which side the bread is buttered on

- (A) to know where one's interest lies
- (B) to be a glutton
- (C) to be fond of rich diet
- (D) to know how to increase one's income

295. To eke out

- (A) to subtract
- (B) to supplement
- (C) to etch
- (D) to oust

296. To be in the doldrums

- (A) to be in low spirits
- (B) to be within doors
- (C) to praise loudly
- (D) to be in a crisis

297. Wild cat strike

- (A) a furious attack
- (B) strike not approved by the trade union
- (C) a strike in which violence is committed
- (D) to face a strong enemy

298. Blind alley

- (A) blindness due to old age
- (B) a dark room
- (C) unprofitable action
- (D) to continue to make efforts in spite of confusion

Idioms And Phrases

299. Tied to the apron strings of

- (A) be independent
- (B) to be dominated by
- (C) to live together
- (D) to fall in love with

300. Our school is within a stone's throw from the railway station

- (A) Very far-off
- (B) with a certain radius
- (C) at a short distance
- (D) within a definite circumference

ANSWER KEY

- | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----|
| 1. | (A) 31. | (D) 61. | (D) 91. | (D) 121. | (B) 151. | (D) 181. | (A) 211. | (B) 241. | (A) 271. | (A) |
| 2. | (B) 32. | (C) 62. | (A) 92. | (C) 122. | (A) 152. | (B) 182. | (C) 212. | (C) 242. | (D) 272. | (A) |
| 3. | (B) 33. | (C) 63. | (B) 93. | (A) 123. | (B) 153. | (B) 183. | (C) 213. | (C) 243. | (C) 273. | (B) |
| 4. | (C) 34. | (C) 64. | (B) 94. | (C) 124. | (C) 154. | (B) 184. | (C) 214. | (D) 244. | (D) 274. | (A) |
| 5. | (C) 35. | (B) 65. | (A) 95. | (D) 125. | (B) 155. | (D) 185. | (B) 215. | (B) 245. | (D) 275. | (C) |
| 6. | (D) 36. | (A) 66. | (C) 96. | (D) 126. | (D) 156. | (A) 186. | (D) 216. | (A) 246. | (A) 276. | (B) |
| 7. | (A) 37. | (B) 67. | (C) 97. | (C) 127. | (D) 157. | (C) 187. | (D) 217. | (B) 247. | (D) 277. | (C) |
| 8. | (C) 38. | (B) 68. | (A) 98. | (C) 128. | (C) 158. | (C) 188. | (C) 218. | (C) 248. | (A) 278. | (B) |
| 9. | (B) 39. | (D) 69. | (B) 99. | (A) 129. | (A) 159. | (C) 189. | (B) 219. | (A) 249. | (B) 279. | (B) |
| 10. | (C) 40. | (C) 70. | (A) 100. | (B) 130. | (B) 160. | (A) 190. | (A) 220. | (A) 250. | (A) 280. | (A) |
| 11. | (B) 41. | (A) 71. | (B) 101. | (A) 131. | (A) 161. | (A) 191. | (D) 221. | (D) 251. | (B) 281. | (C) |
| 12. | (B) 42. | (B) 72. | (C) 102. | (B) 132. | (B) 162. | (C) 192. | (B) 222. | (B) 252. | (D) 282. | (C) |
| 13. | (D) 43. | (B) 73. | (C) 103. | (D) 133. | (C) 163. | (D) 193. | (B) 223. | (C) 253. | (D) 283. | (C) |
| 14. | (D) 44. | (B) 74. | (C) 104. | (A) 134. | (D) 164. | (C) 194. | (A) 224. | (D) 254. | (C) 284. | (A) |
| 15. | (C) 45. | (B) 75. | (B) 105. | (D) 135. | (A) 165. | (A) 195. | (B) 225. | (B) 255. | (A) 285. | (C) |
| 16. | (C) 46. | (D) 76. | (C) 106. | (B) 136. | (C) 166. | (C) 196. | (B) 226. | (C) 256. | (C) 286. | (B) |
| 17. | (C) 47. | (A) 77. | (C) 107. | (C) 137. | (A) 167. | (D) 197. | (B) 227. | (C) 257. | (A) 287. | (A) |
| 18. | (D) 48. | (A) 78. | (A) 108. | (A) 138. | (C) 168. | (D) 198. | (A) 228. | (C) 258. | (C) 288. | (A) |
| 19. | (C) 49. | (C) 79. | (A) 109. | (D) 139. | (B) 169. | (A) 199. | (C) 229. | (D) 259. | (A) 289. | (B) |
| 20. | (B) 50. | (C) 80. | (A) 110. | (B) 140. | (A) 170. | (B) 200. | (C) 230. | (C) 260. | (B) 290. | (C) |
| 21. | (C) 51. | (D) 81. | (B) 111. | (B) 141. | (B) 171. | (B) 201. | (D) 231. | (C) 261. | (C) 291. | (C) |
| 22. | (D) 52. | (A) 82. | (B) 112. | (C) 142. | (D) 172. | (A) 202. | (C) 232. | (C) 262. | (A) 292. | (D) |
| 23. | (C) 53. | (C) 83. | (C) 113. | (B) 143. | (D) 173. | (C) 203. | (C) 233. | (D) 263. | (A) 293. | (D) |
| 24. | (B) 54. | (C) 84. | (C) 114. | (D) 144. | (C) 174. | (B) 204. | (A) 234. | (A) 264. | (B) 294. | (A) |
| 25. | (C) 55. | (D) 85. | (C) 115. | (D) 145. | (C) 175. | (D) 205. | (C) 235. | (C) 265. | (A) 295. | (B) |
| 26. | (B) 56. | (C) 86. | (B) 116. | (A) 146. | (A) 176. | (C) 206. | (C) 236. | (A) 266. | (A) 296. | (A) |
| 27. | (C) 57. | (B) 87. | (D) 117. | (D) 147. | (D) 177. | (A) 207. | (A) 237. | (C) 267. | (C) 297. | (B) |
| 28. | (B) 58. | (C) 88. | (B) 118. | (D) 148. | (B) 178. | (C) 208. | (B) 238. | (D) 268. | (A) 298. | (C) |
| 29. | (A) 59. | (A) 89. | (D) 119. | (B) 149. | (C) 179. | (B) 209. | (D) 239. | (A) 269. | (A) 299. | (B) |
| 30. | (A) 60. | (D) 90. | (A) 120. | (A) 150. | (C) 180. | (D) 210. | (A) 240. | (C) 270. | (A) 300. | (C) |

Paramount Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd.

An Introduction

PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD. AN ISO 9001:2008 CERTIFIED COMPANY was established with the sacred objective of imparting quality education to the students of various competitive examinations such as SSC (GL/+2/ML), Delhi police, CDS, Assistant Commandant, Bank (PO/CLERK), B.ED etc at a reasonable rate. The core members of paramount team adopted innovative, meticulous and extremely lucid methods of teaching supplemented by self developed conceptual tricks and techniques. With absolutely no capital in hand, Paramount was started in a small room of just 25 students' capacity with only strong determination, belief in self and hard work. Slowly but steadily the name Paramount spread amongst the students and students from far off places flocked to study at **PARAMOUNT**. Today Paramount has six (6) branches, each equipped with all modern amenities to provide the students a conducive and comfortable environment for distraction free discussion.

PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE- THE MECCA OF QUALITY EDUCATION in real sense believes in giving nothing but the best. The teaching faculty includes highly qualified and experienced teachers, who with their simple and lucid methods and conceptual short cut tricks and techniques help the students, solve maximum number of questions in minimum amount of time and hence they not only get selected but also secure topmost positions. Each subject is handled by its expert as we simply denounce the concept of Jack of all trades and master of none. Our students are excelling largely due to the faculty's unique teaching methodology, commitment and dedication. All doubts of students are cleared and concepts are made crystal clear to them in the classroom itself. With separate teachers for every subject, and many experts for every subject, Paramount stands much ahead of all other Institutes. Paramount is today a leading name in the field of education for its innovative teaching methodology, impeccable quality and honesty. With the names of toppers of SSC and thousands of other selections in its kitty, today **PARAMOUNT** is reaching places.

For our constant endeavour in bringing awareness among the students of rural areas and our commitment towards the students, **PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD.** has been conferred the **BEST COACHING INSTITUTE OF DELHI-NCR AWARD**. Our students constructive feedback and suggestions are our guiding light and **PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE PVT. LTD.** has today become the epitome of quality education.

PARAMOUNT COACHING CENTRE has added another feather to its cap by starting its own publication division in the name of **PARAMOUNT READER PUBLICATION** to meet the pressing demand of the students for various competitive exams.



Paramount Reader Publication

704, 1st floor, Dr. Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-110009